~~6.50~~
50 ¢

Feb. 23, 1918.

PRINCIPLES

OF

MECHANISM.

LONDON: PRINTED BY
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE
AND PARLIAMENT STREET

PRINCIPLES

OF

MECHANISM.

DESIGNED FOR THE USE

OF STUDENTS IN THE UNIVERSITIES, AND FOR ENGINEERING

STUDENTS GENERALLY.

BY

ROBERT WILLIS, M.A., F.R.S.,

Jacksonian Professor of Natural and Experimental Philosophy in the University of Cambridge; Hon. Fellow of the Institution of Civil Engineers; Hon. Member and Royal Medallist of the Royal Institute of British Architects; Corresponding Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences, Turin; Member of the Board of Visitors of Royal Observatory, Greenwich; Member of the Imperial Legion of Honor; Member of the Society of Arts; President of the British Association for the Advancement of Science at Cambridge, 1862; formerly Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge.

SECOND EDITION.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

NEW YORK:
JOHN WILEY & SON, 15 ASTOR PLACE.
1870.

PREFACE.

In the present work I have employed the term Mechanism as applying to combinations of machinery solely when considered as governing the relations of motion. Machinery as a modifier of force, has in the science of Mechanics occupied the attention of nearly every mathematician of eminence who has arisen in the world; but, by some strange chance, very few have attempted to give a scientific form to the attractive and valuable results of mechanism; for it cannot be said that the few and simple machines which form the examples in books of mechanics, are to be regarded as even forming a foundation for the principles upon which is to be based a science that will enable us either to reduce the movements and actions of a complex engine to system, or to give answers to the questions that naturally arise upon considering such engines;—for example, are the means by which the results are obtained the best that might have been employed? or what are the various methods that might have been substituted for them? Yet there appears no reason why the construction of a machine for a given purpose should not, like any usual problem, be so reduced to the dominion of the mathematician, as to enable him to obtain, by direct and certain methods, all the forms and arrangements that are applicable to the desired purpose, from which he may select at pleasure. At present, questions of this kind can only be solved by that species of intuition which long familiarity with a subject usually confers upon experienced persons, but which they are totally unable to communicate to others.

When the mind of a mechanician is occupied with the contrivance of a machine, he must wait until, in the midst of his meditations, some happy combination presents itself to his mind which may answer his purpose. Yet upon analysing the mental operations by which the nascent contrivance is gradually made to assume form and consistency, it will generally be observed, that the motions of the machine are the principal subject of contemplation, rather than the forces applied to it, or the work it has to do. For every machine will be found to consist of a train of pieces connected together in various ways, so that if one be made to move they all receive a motion, the relation of which to that of the first is governed by the nature of the connection. The work which the machine has to do will require that the pieces appropriated to this work shall move with respect to each other in some given manner, and the forces applied to the machine to set it in motion must also move the piece which receives them in some other manner. Thus the question of contriving a machine by which a given kind of power may be made to perform given work, is reduced to a problem of mere motion—to a question of connecting the pieces which receive the power and those which do the work; so that when the first move according to the law required by the economy of the power, the last shall necessarily receive the motion which will enable them to do the work. There are, of course, many essential considerations of force and arrangement which must be entered into before the machine can be completed, but they admit of being abstracted in the first instance; and it is only by so doing that we can hope to create a science of mechanism. Yet this view seems to have presented itself but lately, with due clearness, to the minds of writers on this subject; and it may be interesting to trace the history of its rise and progress.

Apart from the writings on the science of Mechanics, the history of which is well known, a number of books have been produced from time to time, having for their subject *Machinery*. At first, however, the leading principle of classification in these is derived from the purpose for which each machine is designed, and accordingly these books are either confined to machines destined for one particular kind of work, as in the early treatises of Valturius (1472) and Agricola (1550) on warlike and mining machinery respectively; or else they are collections of machines classed and described with reference to the objects for which they are constructed; divided, for example, into machines for raising water, for grinding flour, sawing timber, and so on. The earliest of these collections are the treatises of Besson (1569), Ramelli (1580), Strada (1618), Zonca (1621), Branca (1629), Bockler (1662); and the list might be continued without interruption to the present day.* The voluminous 'Theatrum Machinarum' (1724) of Leupold, although it falls under the same description, yet in its first volume contains the first attempt to consider the parts of machinery separated from their work, and referred to the modifications of motion. And although these parts are made to follow the usual mechanical powers, and are mixed up with considerations of force, yet we find chapters on the *crank*, on *cams*, on machines for *converting a circular motion into a rectilinear*, or a *back and forwards motion*, and for converting a *back and forwards motion into a continued circular motion*, and so on. This must, in fact, be considered as the first attempt to produce a systematic treatise on Mechanism. But the first clear statement of the true principles upon which the science of Kinematics must be based, was made by Euler,

* This list might be preceded by Vitruvius, Book x., the works of Hero and other Greek mechanists, &c. *Vide Veterum Mathematicorum Opera.* Par. 1693.

in 1775 ('Nov. Comm. Petrop.' xx.), in a memoir,* of which I present a translation of the opening paragraph; in which it appears that 'The investigation of the motion of a rigid body may be conveniently separated into two parts, the one geometrical, the other mechanical. In the first part, the transference of the body from a given position to any other position must be investigated without respect to the causes of the motion, and must be represented by analytical formulæ, which will define the position of each point of the body after the transference with respect to its initial place. This investigation will therefore be referable solely to geometry, or rather to stereotomy.

'It is clear that by the separation of this part of the question from the other, which belongs properly to Mechanics, the determination of the motion from dynamical principles will be made much easier than if the two parts were undertaken conjointly.'

The next step appears to have been made in 1794, by Monge, who, in planning the organisation of the École Polytechnique, proposed to devote two months of the first year of study to the *elements of machines*. 'By these *elements* are to be understood the means by which the directions of motion are changed; those by which progressive motion in a right line, rotative motion, and reciprocating motion, are made each to produce the others. The most complicated machines being merely the result of a combination of some of these elements, it is necessary that a complete enumeration of them should be drawn up.† This enumeration formed the subject of part of his lectures, and was the basis of the two similar systems of Hachette, and of Lanz and Bétancourt. The latter was finally adopted for the École Polytechnique, and printed

* Reprinted in his *Theoria motus corporum*, in the first chapter of the *Additamentum*, headed 'Formulæ generales pro translatione quacunque corporum rigidorum,' p. 449, ed. 1790.

† *Vide Essai sur la Composition des Machines*, par MM. Lanz and Bétancourt, Par. 1808. p. 1.

in 1808, under the title of 'An Essay on the Composition of Machines.' It was subsequently translated into English. Postponing for the moment the discussion of the system, we may observe that Monge, in the above programme, distinctly proposes to study machines by treating them merely as contrivances for changing one kind of motion into another, apart from any considerations of force. We shall see presently, however, that this plan did not extend beyond the mere enumeration and description of the elements, without containing a provision for the calculation of the laws of the motion, or changes of motion produced. Ampère, however, appears to have contemplated the formation of a system that would also include these latter objects; for in his 'Essay on the Philosophy of the Sciences,' published in 1834, we find it distinctly asserted, 'that there exist certain considerations which if sufficiently developed would constitute a complete science, but which have been hitherto neglected, or have formed only the subject of memoirs or special essays. This science [which he terms *Kinematics*] ought to include all that can be said with respect to *motion* in its different kinds, independently of the forces by which it is produced. It should treat in the first place of spaces passed over, and of times employed in different motions, and of the determination of velocities according to the different relations which may exist between those spaces and times.

'It ought then to develope the different instruments by the help of which one motion may be converted into another, so that, calling these instruments by the usual name of *machines*, this science will define a machine to be, not as usual, *an instrument by means of which we may change the direction and intensity of a given force*; but, *an instrument by means of which we may change the direction and velocity of a given motion.* The definition is thus freed from the consideration of the forces which act on the machine; a consideration which merely distracts the attention of those who endeavour to unravel the mechanism.

'To understand, for example, the wheel-work by means of which the minute-hand of a watch makes twelve turns while the hour-hand makes but one, why need we trouble ourselves with the force that sets the watch in motion? The effect of the wheel-work, so far as it governs the relative velocity of the hands, is the same, by whatever cause the motion may be produced, as, for example, when the minute-hand is turned by the finger.

'After these general considerations relating to motion and velocity, this new science might pass on to the determination of the ratios that exist between the velocities of the different points of a machine, or generally of any system of material points, in all the movements of which the machine or system is susceptible; in a word, to the determination, independently of the forces applied to the material points, of what are called *virtual velocities*; a determination which is infinitely more comprehensible when thus separated from considerations of Force.' *

It is much to be regretted that this distinguished writer did not attempt to follow up this clear and able view of the subject, by actually developing the science in question.

A similar separation of the principles of motion and force formed the basis of the Lectures on Mechanism, which I delivered for the first time to the University of Cambridge, in 1837; and the same views were subsequently sanctioned by the high authority of Professor Whewell, who, in his 'Philosophy of the Inductive Sciences,' has assigned a chapter to the Doctrine of Motion,† in which, under the title of Pure Mechanism, he has defined this science nearly in the above words of Ampère, whom he quotes.

* *Vide* Ampère, *Essai sur la Philosophie des Sciences*, 1835, p. 50.

† Whewell, *Philosophy of the Inductive Sciences*, 1840, p. 144.

To make the plan of the following pages more intelligible, it will be necessary in the first place to take a short review of the system of MM. Lanz and Bétancourt, which, as we have seen, is founded upon the views of Monge. Their system is thus detailed at the opening of their work :

'The motions of the parts of machines are either (1) *rectilinear*, (2) *circular*, or (3) *curvilinear* ; and each of these may be *continuous* in direction or *alternate*, that is *back and forward.* These six motions admit of being combined two and two in twenty-one different ways, each motion being supposed to be also combined with itself. The object of every simple machine being to counterchange or communicate these motions, the following system will include them all.

Continuous Rectilinear,* changed into	rectilinear	continuous†	1
		alternate†	2
	circular	continuous†	3
		alternate†	4
	curvilinear	continuous†	5
		alternate†	6
Continuous Circular,* into	rectilinear	alternate†	7
	circular	continuous†	8
		alternate†	9
	curvilinear	continuous†	10
		alternate†	11
Continuous Curvilinear,* into	rectilinear	alternate†	12
	circular	alternate†	13
	curvilinear	continuous†	14
		alternate†	15
Alternate Rectilinear* into	rectilinear	alternate†	16
	circular	alternate†	17
	curvilinear	alternate†	18
Alternate Circular,* into	circular	alternate†	19
	curvilinear	alternate†	20
Alternate Curvilinear,* into	curvilinear	alternate†	21.'

Of many of these combinations, however, no direct solution is given. Thus for (2) we are told to convert rectilinear motion into circular by one of the combinations

* With velocity either uniform or varying according to a given law.

† With a velocity of the same nature as that which produces it, preserving a constant proportion to it or varying according to a given law. In the same or in different planes.

in (3), and then to convert this into alternate rectilinear by one of those in (7). In this way also classes 5, 6, 11, 12, 13, 15, 16, 18, and 21, are disposed of; so that there remain only twelve, under which our authors proceed to arrange the elementary combinations into which, according to them, mechanism may be resolved.

This celebrated system, which was pretty generally received, must, however, be considered as a merely popular arrangement, notwithstanding the apparently scientific simplicity of the scheme. In the first place, it is not confined to pure combinations of mechanism, but is embarrassed by the intrusion of several dynamical and even hydraulic contrivances. Thus, a water-wheel and a windmill-sail are considered to be a means of converting continuous rectilinear motion into continuous circular; and a ferry-boat attached to one end of a long rope, of which the other is fixed to the bank, is admitted into Class 4, as a means of converting continuous rectilinear motion into alternate circular. Fly-wheels, pendulums with their escapements, parallel motions, are all placed in one class or other of this scheme. No attempt is made to subject the motions to calculation, or to reduce these laws to general formulæ, for which indeed the system is totally unfitted.

The plan of the great work of Borgnis, published in 1818, is much more comprehensive and complete, really embracing the whole subject of machinery, instead of being confined by its plan to elementary combinations for the modification of motion. Borgnis, in the volume on the *Composition of Machines*, divides mechanical organs into six orders, each of which have subordinate classes. His orders are; * (1) Receivers of power; (2) Communicators; (3) Modifiers; (4) Frame-work, fixed and movable; (5) Regulators; (6) Working parts.

For the mere purposes of descriptive mechanism this

* In the original, (1) Récepteurs, (2) Communicateurs, (3) Modificateurs, (4) Supports, (5) Régulateurs, (6) Opérateurs.

system is much better adapted than that of MM. Lanz and Bétancourt, but still does not provide for the investigation of the laws of the modifications of motion, which is an especial object of the proposed science of Kinematics. Many essays, however, have been from time to time written concerning various detached portions of this science. The teeth of wheels is the most remarkable of these, from having occupied the attention of so many of the best mathematicians. But in fact, the description of all the mechanical curves, as epicycloids and conchoids, may be held to belong to this science, which would thus be made to include a great mass of matter that has hitherto been classed with geometry. The calculation of trains of wheel-work is also a branch of it, to which the first contribution was made by Huyghens, who employed continued fractions for the purpose of obtaining approximate numbers for the trains of his Planetarium.*

The following pages must not, however, be considered as an attempt to carry out the able and comprehensive views of Ampère; being confined to machinery alone, and not passing from it to the more abstract generalities of motion, which he seems to have contemplated.

My object has been to form a system that would embrace all the elementary combinations of mechanism, and at the same time admit of a mathematical investigation of the laws by which their modifications of motion are governed. I have confined myself to the Elements of Pure Mechanism, that is, to those contrivances by which motion is communicated purely by the connection of parts, without requiring the essential intermixture of dynamical effects.

I have taken a different course from the one hitherto followed, in respect that, instead of considering a machine to be an instrument by means of which we may change the

* *Vide* also Young's *Natural Philosophy*, vol. ii. p. 55, Arts 365, 366, the substance of which will be found in this work, Arts. 32 and 336.

direction and velocity of a *given motion*, I have treated it as an instrument by means of which we may produce any *relations of motion* between two pieces.

For Monge and his followers began by dividing motion into rectilinear and rotative, continuous and reciprocating, and so based their system upon the *actual motion* of the parts; and Ampère defines his machine in the words quoted above as modifying a *given motion*. But a little consideration will show that any given element of machinery can only govern the *relations of velocity and direction* of the pieces it serves to connect; and that this connection and the law of its action are for the most part independent of the *actual velocities*. By establishing a system upon the relations of motion instead of upon the actual motions, it will be found that many of the redundancies and difficulties that have hitherto obscured the subject are got rid of.

Thus, to follow up the example given by Ampère of the hands of a watch, it is clear that the connection governs the relation of their angular velocities, which at every instant is in the proportion of twelve to one; and also provides that they shall both revolve the same way, whether that be to the right or to the left. If, then, the one be made to revolve through a small angle back and forwards, the other will also revolve back and forwards through an angle of one twelfth of that described by the first. Now in the usual system this identical contrivance, which in its ordinary employment belongs to the class of conversion from continuous circular into continuous circular, is thus also thrown into the class of alternate circular changed into alternate circular. In the system which I propose, this contrivance at once finds its place as a combination in which the velocity ratio and directional relation are constant.

I have also dismissed, or given a subordinate place to, the distinction between circular and rectilinear motion, and have introduced a new distinction between those motions which are capable of being from the nature of the contrivance continued indefinitely in either direction, and those of which the extent is limited by the nature of the contrivance.

The first ground of my classification, and the one by means of which the calculation of the law of communication of the velocities and directions is effected, is the *mode in which the motion is transmitted*; a part of the subject which appears wholly neglected by the writers already referred to. These modes I have divided into Rolling and Sliding Contact, Link-work, Wrapping Connection, and Reduplication. The relative motions produced by each of these methods will be found to be governed by a different geometrical principle, and every possible mode of communication may be placed under one or other of these divisions. Many combinations, however, derive their principle of action from a mixture of two or more of these methods of communication. In this case their place in the system is always determined by that method which has the greatest influence; besides which, each combination is reduced to its equivalent simple form, and its position determined by that alone; for the object of the system is to reduce the motions to calculation; and for this purpose the equivalent simple form of every combination must be employed.

For example, the action of combinations in which rows of teeth are used depends partly upon rolling contact and partly upon sliding contact; for the action of the individual teeth is of the latter kind, but the total action of them is equivalent to the rolling contact of their pitch-lines, and the pitch-lines only need be considered in calculating the motion. Accordingly, all combinations in which rows of teeth are employed will be found under the head of Rolling Contact. Again, when cam-plates or curves are used a friction roller is often employed for these plates to act against. At first sight this would appear to convert the action of the combination into rolling contact. But besides that this contrivance merely transfers the sliding action to the axis of the roller, and that our definition of rolling contact supposes the two axes of motion of the rolling curves to be fixed in position, the calculation of the motion of all such combinations is effected by supposing the roller reduced to a point, and the curve thus obtained upon the principles of pure sliding contact, is afterwards adapted to the roller by tracing a second curve within it at a normal distance equal to the radius of the roller. All combinations of this kind are therefore placed under Sliding Contact, notwithstanding the employment of friction rollers.

The second ground of my classification is the effect of the combination upon the velocity ratio of the pieces, and upon the relation of their directions of motion, or directional relation; from which considerations I have divided all the elementary combinations into three classes.

Either of these considerations, the velocity ratio, and directional relation, or the modes of communication, might have been made the primary ground of the classification. In the first edition I was induced to select the former, because it enabled me to separate from the others all that most important class of combinations in which the velocity ratio and directional relation remain constant and which are also the foundation of most of those contained in the subsequent classes.

But my experience as a lecturer soon taught me that the exhibition of models for illustrating the various forms assumed by the practical modes of communication must be conducted by classing them with primary reference to the modes of *communication*, and that consequently a second edition of this work must be also subjected to this change.

I have accordingly taken the four divisions of (A)

Rolling Contact, (B) Sliding Contact, (C) Wrapping Contact, and (D) Link-work, for the primary groups of examples; each division being separated into classes defined by constancy or variation of the directional relation or velocity ratios. With the exception of this change, the arrangement of the work is very little altered; new combinations have been inserted here and there, and drawings of many models contrived by me for the elucidation of motions described in lectures have been introduced into the text.

I have also added an essay on Frictional Combinations, which forms the fourth part of the work. This is a very attractive subject, and I have contrived and introduced many models to exemplify its laws and its practical applications.

The work is terminated by a chapter on Universal Joints, the history and various forms and uses of which I have endeavoured to exemplify practically and theoretically, concluding with my own observations of the existence of such joints in the articulations of the crustaceous animals and insects. This discovery ultimately suggested to me the systems of link-work which terminate Chapter XII. and which I have termed *prismatic* and *solid-angular*.*

The Synoptical Table, which immediately follows this Preface, will show the general arrangement of the elementary combinations under the new system.

In the second part of the work is assembled a number of contrivances which appeared to me to be connected by a general principle which had not hitherto been defined; these I ventured to term Aggregate Motions. One portion only of these contrivances had usually been treated as a separate class, under the name of Differential Motions.

* *Vide* p. 245.

The third part, on Adjustments, contains several problems relating to the calculation and arrangement of mechanism in which it is necessary to have the power of altering the velocity ratios, changing the directional relations, or breaking off the communication of motion at pleasure.

I have, in the course of the work, endeavoured in every case to acknowledge the sources from whence I have derived any portion of its contents, by references at the foot of the page. But so little of its peculiar subject had been treated mathematically when I wrote my first edition, that I must hold myself answerable for the greatest portion of it. The teeth of wheels was then the only branch of mechanism in which the original papers had been already wrought into a system, and published in a collected form. This was first done by Camus, and was subsequently effected by Buchanan in his Essays, and by Hachette, Ferguson, and Sir D. Brewster, and others (*vide* note to p. 87 below).

I have incorporated into Chapter V. extracts from the valuable paper of Professor Airy, as well as the entire contents of my own paper from the 'Transactions of the Society of Civil Engineers,' and have added several original investigations relating to the proportions of the teeth, and their least numbers.

In the present edition, Art. 124, I have restored to Camus the discovery of the method of describing teeth of wheels by employing the same describing circle or curve to trace their forms within and without the respective pitch-lines.*

It will be found that I have calculated all the results that are required in practice, and have arranged them in tables for reference.

On the whole, it will be seen that the present volume is

* I may also be pardoned for referring to the description and theory of my Odontograph, for facilitating the setting out of the teeth of wheels; which has been extensively employed since its invention in 1838. *Vide* below, p. 130.

limited to that portion of the important subject of machinery which deals with the communication of motion. The object of it was, as has been already stated, to systematise this portion of the subject, and to free it from the considerations of force, with which it had been usually mixed up.

In the preface of the first edition I stated that to complete the plan of a treatise on mechanism, it would be necessary to apply these considerations of force to the combinations thus obtained, as well as to describe and investigate those parts of machinery in the action of which forces are essential, adding a hint that I should probably undertake this task at some future time.

But in the year of its publication (1841) Professor Whewell also published his 'Mechanics of Engineering;' into which he introduced many of the results of the French writers, Navier, Poncelet, Morin, &c., who had with so much success applied themselves to this purpose; and he also flattered me by the adoption of my own views upon the classification of the modes in which motion is communicated from one piece to another of a machine, adding to them the investigation of the effects of force and resistance; which might be considered as carrying out a portion of the plan above alluded to, as necessary to complete this arrangement of the science of Machinery.

In concluding the preface of the first edition, I expressed my hopes that, in addition to its principal object of giving a scientific and systematic form to its subject, the results of the volume which I then ventured to present to the world might be found a useful addition to mathematical studies in general, by affording simple illustrations of the application and interpretation of formulæ, and by suggesting new subjects for problems, and for farther investigation.

After the appearance of the first edition at the end of 1841, it took its place as a text-book to my Lectures and others, but it was not quoted or mentioned in any new mechanical work until Monsieur Tom Richard published in 1848 in Paris, his 'Aide-mémoire des Ingénieurs,' into which he introduced the whole of my articles on link-work (*Bielles*), duly acknowledging the author.

This was the first of a series of works on mechanism, of which I present a list below, which comprises every subsequent work on that subject, in which my classifications, nomenclature and figures have been more or less adopted; and, with two or three exceptions, the source from whence borrowed properly mentioned.

1.	M. Tom Richard, *Aide-Mémoire des Ingénieurs*	1848
2.	M. Laboulaye, *Traité de Cinematique*	1849
3.	Tate, *Elements of Mechanism*, 12mo	1851
4.	Baker, *Elements of Mechanism*, 12mo	1852
5.	Rankine, *Applied Mechanics*	1858
6.	M. Girault, *Transformation du Mouvement*	1858
7.	Goodeve, *Elements of Mechanism*, 12mo	1860
8.	Laboulaye, *Traité de Cinematique*	1861
9.	M. J. N. Haton de la Goupillière	1864
10.	Bélanger, *Traité de Cinematique*	1864
11.	Fairbairn, *Treatise on Mills and Mill-Work*	1864
12.	Bour, *Cours de Mécanique et Machines*	1865
13.	Rankine, *Manual of Machinery aud Mill-work*	1869

I venture to acknowledge in this numerous progeny, proofs that my hopes of advancing my favourite science have not been fruitless.

CAMBRIDGE: *Nov.* 1870.

SYNOPTICAL TABLE

OF THE

ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS OF PURE MECHANISM.

	DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT		DIRECTIONAL RELATION CHANGING PERIODICALLY
	Velocity-Ratio Constant	*Velocity-Ratio Varying*	*Velocity-Ratio Constant or Varying*
	CLASS A	CLASS B	CLASS C
DIVISION A. By Rolling Contact	Rolling cylinders, cones, and hyperboloids General arrangement and form of toothed wheels Pitch	Rolling curves and rolling-curve wheels Roëmer's & Huyghens' wheels, &c. Wheels with intermitted teeth Rolling-curve levers	Mangle-wheels Mangle-racks Escaping geerings
DIVISION B. By Sliding Contact	Forms of the individual teeth of wheels Cams Screws Endless screws or worms and their wheels	Pin and slit lever Cams Unequal worm Geneva stop and other intermittent motions	Pin and slit lever Cams in general Swash plate Double screw Spiral and solid cams Escapements
DIVISION C. By Wrapping Connectors	Arrangement and material of bands Form of their pullies Guide pullies Geering chains Arrangements for limited motions	Curvilinear pully Fusees	Curvilinear pully and lever
DIVISION D. By Link-work.	Cranks and link-work for equal rotations Cranks for limited motions Bell-crank work	Link-work Hooke's joints	Cranks, excentrics, and other link-work Ratchet wheels and clicks Intermittent link-work
DIVISION E. By Reduplication.	Tackle of all kinds, with parallel cords and in trains	Tackle with unparallel cords	

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART THE FIRST.

ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

PART THE SECOND.

ON AGGREGATE COMBINATIONS.

PART THE THIRD.

ON ADJUSTMENTS.

PART THE FOURTH.

ON COMBINATIONS FOR THE ACTION OF WHICH PROPERTIES OF FRICTION ARE EMPLOYED.

PART THE FIFTH.

ON UNIVERSAL JOINTS.

CONTENTS

OF

THE SEPARATE ARTICLES.

INTRODUCTION.

PART THE FIRST.

CHAPTER I.

ON TRAINS OF MECHANISM IN GENERAL.

By Mechanistic Connections.

ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

DIVISION A.

ROLLING CONTACT.

CHAPTER II.

CLASS A. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT. VELOCITY RATIO CONSTANT. }

To apply these Solutions to Practice.

CHAPTER III.

CLASS B. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT. VELOCITY RATIO VARYING. }

CHAPTER IV.

CLASS C. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CHANGING. VELOCITY RATIO VARYING. }

DIVISION B.

SLIDING CONTACT.

CHAPTER V.

CLASS A. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT. VELOCITY RATIO CONSTANT. }

On the Teeth of Wheels.

Arts. 128–139. First solution. 140–154. Second solution. 155–164. Third solution. 165–171. Involutes. 172–182. Solutions by arcs of circles. 183–186. Odontograph. 187. Cutters. 189. Strong form of teeth. 190. Hooke's teeth. 191–195. Teeth of bevil wheels. 196–199. Teeth for face wheels. 200. Teeth for skew bevils. 201. Ollivier's property of involute teeth. 202–208. Cams and screws. 211. Right or left-handed screws. 212. Endless screw. 216. Hindley's screw.

CHAPTER VI.

CLASS B. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT. VELOCITY RATIO VARYING.

Art. 219. Pin and slit. 220–225. Intermittent motion.

CHAPTER VII.

CLASS C. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CHANGING. VELOCITY RATIO VARYING.

Arts. 226–232. Plane cams. 233. Swash plate. 234–237. Solid cams. 238, 239. Various cams. 240–8. Escapements.

DIVISION C.

WRAPPING CONNECTORS.

CHAPTER VIII.

CLASS A. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT. VELOCITY RATIO CONSTANT.

Arts. 249–51. Bands, round or flat. 252. Forms of pullies. 253. Varley's arrangement. 254–257. Pullies employed for flat bands. 259–261. Pullies for round bands. 262, 263. Guide pullies. 264. Stretching pullies. 265. Geering chains. 266–268. Band or rope arrangements for communicating long reciprocating motions. 269. Forms of chains for coiling on revolving barrels. 270. Arrangement of bands for connecting sliding pieces with sectors.

CHAPTER IX.

CLASS B. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT. VELOCITY RATIO VARYING.

Arts. 271, 272. Fusees.

CHAPTER X.

CLASS C. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT OR VARYING. VELOCITY RATIO VARYING.

273–275. Apparatus to show these motions. 276. Varied motions given to an oscillating arm by an excentric pully.

DIVISION D.

LINK-WORK.

CHAPTER XI.

CLASS A. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT. VELOCITY RATIO CONSTANT.

CHAPTER XII.

CLASS C. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION AND VELOCITY RATIO CONSTANT OR VARYING

CHAPTER XIII.

TRAINS OF ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

CHAPTER XIV.

MECHANICAL NOTATION.

DIVISION E.

CHAPTER XV.

REDUPLICATION.

PART THE SECOND.

ON AGGREGATE COMBINATIONS.

CHAPTER I.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF AGGREGATE MOTION.

Arts 377–380. General principles to connect a driver and follower, the relative position of whose paths is variable. 381, 382. Long screw, long pinion, &c. 383. Travelling pully frame. 384. Link-work.

CHAPTER II.

COMBINATIONS FOR PRODUCING AGGREGATE VELOCITY.

By Link-work.

Art. 386. Bar. 387. Compound bar.

By Wrapping Connection.

Art. 388, 389. Sliding pully. 390. Lever and pully. 391, 392. Chinese windlass.

By Sliding Contact.

Art. 393. Differential screw. 394. White's differential nut and screw. 395. Wollaston's Odometer. 396. Thick pinion driving two wheels.

By Epicyclic Trains.

Art. 397. General forms. 398–404. Formulæ of. 405, 406. Uses of epicylic trains.

Examples of the first use.

Art. 407. Ferguson's paradox. 408. Sun and planet wheels. 409. Planetary mechanism. 410. Pearson's Planetarium.

Examples of the second use.

Arts. 411–415. Francœur's method.

Examples of the third use.

Arts. 416–419. Differential wheelwork.

Examples of the fourth use.

Arts. 420–422. Equation clocks.

CHAPTER III.

COMBINATIONS FOR PRODUCING AGGREGATE PATHS.

Art. 423. Rectangular co-ordinates. 424. Polar co-ordinates. 425. Example. 426. General principles. 427. Screw-cutting and boring motions. 428. Trammel. 429. Suardi's pen. 430. Parallel motions.

On Parallel Motions.

Art. 431. Definition. 432–434. First simple form. 435, 436. Calculation of error. 437. Second simple form. 438–440. Compound parallel motion of steam-engine. 441. Of marine engine. 442. Robert's parallel motion. 443. Third simple form. 444. Parallel motions by toothed wheels. 445. White's. 446. By two spur-wheels.

PART THE THIRD.

ON ADJUSTMENTS.

CHAPTER I.

CHAPTER II.

TO ALTER THE VELOCITY RATIO BY DETERMINATE CHANGES.

CHAPTER III.

TO ALTER THE VELOCITY RATIO BY GRADUAL CHANGES.

PART THE FOURTH.

COMBINATIONS FOR THE ACTION OF WHICH PROPERTIES OF FRICTION ARE EMPLOYED.

CHAPTER I.

FRICTION IN GENERAL, AND THE MODES OF DEMONSTRATING ITS PROPERTIES.

CHAPTER II.

EMPLOYMENT OF BUTTING FRICTION.

CHAPTER II.

CONSTRUCTIONAL FORMS AND THEORY.

CHAPTER III.

UNIVERSAL FLEXURE JOINTS AND SWIVEL JOINTS.

LIST

OF

TECHNICAL AND NEW TERMS,

WHICH ARE DEFINED OR EXPLAINED IN THE FOLLOWING ARTICLES.

NOTE *to page* 309.

The following mode of communicating an aggregate velocity to a worm-wheel, ought to have been inserted at page 309, as a mixture of sliding and rolling contact.

In fig. 272, let the axis of motion of the worm-wheel *B* be supposed fixed in position. Then, if the endless screw or long worm *Aa* revolve, it will communicate a rotation to the wheel *B* in the usual manner, at the rate of one tooth of the latter for each turn of the former. Again, if an endlong travelling motion without rotation be communicated to *Aa*, it will now act as a rack upon the teeth of *B*. If, therefore, the two motions of rotation and travelling be communicated to the endless screw, which can be done in various ways from two sources, the wheel *B* will receive the aggregate motion, and its angular velocity be affected accordingly. For example, let the screw revolve uniformly, and at the same time travel back and forwards through a small space endlong, the wheel will then revolve with a hobbling motion, making a short trip in one direction and a long trip in the other direction continually.

PRINCIPLES

OF

MECHANISM.

INTRODUCTION.

1. Every machine is constructed for the purpose of performing certain mechanical operations, each of which supposes the existence of two other things beside the machine in question, namely, a moving power, and an object subjected to the operation, which may be termed the work to be done.

Machines, in fact, are interposed between the power and the work, for the purpose of adapting the one to the other.

2. As an example of a machine whose construction is familiar to all, the grinding machine so commonly seen in our streets may be cited, in which the grindstone is made to revolve by the application of the foot to a treadle.

Here the *moving power* is derived from muscular action. The *operation* is carried on by pressing the edge of the cutting instrument, which is the subject of it, against the surface of the grindstone, which is caused to travel rapidly under it.

The arrangement and form of this surface, and its connection with the foot in such a manner that the pressure of the latter shall communicate the required motion to the former, is the office and object of the machine.

Two portions of the machine are given, the one by the nature of the power, and the other by that of the work. The first is a treadle placed at a proper level to receive the pressure of the foot, by the action of which it may be made to perform, without unnatural exertion, about eighty or ninety vertical oscillations in a minute. The second part of the machine is the cylindrical grindstone, which is mounted on a horizontal axis at the upper part of the frame, and at a convenient height to allow the tool to be pressed upon its revolving surface. The surface should pass under the edge of the tool at the rate of about 500 feet in a minute, and therefore supposing the diameter of the grindstone to be eight inches, it must revolve at the rate of 250 turns in a minute. The remainder of the mechanism serves to connect the treadle and grindstone, and may consist of any contrivance that will compel the latter to revolve when the former is made to oscillate, and in the proportion of 250 revolutions to 80 oscillations, or about three to one.

3. It appears, then, that this machine consists of a series of connected pieces, beginning with the treadle, whose construction, position, and motion are determined by the nature of the moving power, and ending with the grindstone, which in like manner is peculiar and adapted to the work. But this is, in fact, the description of every machine. There is always one or more series of connected pieces, at one end of each of which is a part especially adapted to receive the action of the power, such as a water-wheel, a windmill-sail or a horse-lever, the sliding piston of a steam-cylinder, a handle, or a treadle. At the other end of each series will be a set of parts determined in form, position, and motion by the nature of the work they have to do, and which may be called the working pieces. Between them are placed trains of mechanism connecting them, so that when the first parts move according to the law assigned them by the action of the power, the second must necessarily move according to the law required by the nature of the work.

4. These three classes of mechanical organs are so far independent of each other, that any given set of working parts may be supplied with power from any source: thus a grindstone may be turned either by the foot or by the hand of an assistant, by water or by a horse. Again, a given water-wheel or other receiver of power may be employed to give motion to any required set of working parts for whatever purpose. Also between a given receiver of power and set of working parts the interposed mechanism may be varied in many ways. Moreover the principles upon which the construction and arrangement of these three classes are founded are different. The *receivers of power* derive their form from a combination of mechanical principles with the physical laws which govern the respective sources of power. The *working parts* from a combination of mechanical principles, with conside-

rations derived from the processes or objects in view. But the principles of the *interposed mechanism* admit of being developed without reference to the powers employed or transmitted, or to the resistances or work to be done, or, in fact, to the objects for which machinery is constructed. By defining mechanism in the abstract to be a combination of parts for the purpose of connecting two or more pieces, so that when one moves according to a given law, the others must move according to certain other given laws, this branch of the subject may be reduced to geometrical principles alone: whereas by considering mechanism as usual, as a modifier of force, the subject becomes embarrassed by a condition foreign to the connection of parts by which the modification is produced; and which condition and its consequences admit more conveniently of subsequent consideration and separate investigation.

5. The hour-hand of a clock, for example, is connected with the minute-hand by a mechanism which compels the former to perform one revolution while the latter completes twelve; or generally, the angular velocity of the first is always one-twelfth of that of the second. The connection is independent of the force which puts the minute-hand in motion, and also of the actual velocity of the minute-hand. If this be turned by hand quickly or slowly, uniformly or variably, back or forwards, the hour-hand will still follow these motions at an angular rate of one-twelfth of the original. The constant relation of the angular velocities depends in this as in other similar cases only upon the proportion between the diameters or number of teeth of the wheel-work that connects the two hands—a purely geometrical relation, the comprehension of which is rather obscured than assisted by the introduction of statical principles, of which the connection is independent, but which find their proper place, when it becomes necessary to investigate the proportion between the forces and resistances in any given case, and the strains thrown upon the different parts of the mechanism by their application, and thus to find the requisite strength of each part.

6. The term *mechanism*, then, must be understood to be in this work confined to those mechanical combinations which govern the relations of motion only, and which therefore admit of being entirely separated from the consideration of force. This, of course, excludes not only those mechanical organs which have been already alluded to, as receivers of power and working parts, but also those which are employed to govern the motions of machinery; such as the escapements of clocks, and contrivances

by which machinery is made self-acting and self-regulating; all of which are derived from combinations of pure mechanism with statical or dynamical principles, but from which they do not admit of separation. The exposition of such contrivances will naturally and easily follow from the principles of the present work, but are excluded from it by its plan, which is, to reduce the various combinations of *Pure Mechanism* to system, and to investigate them upon geometrical principles alone.

7. Neither is it my purpose to enter into minute details of the actual construction of machinery, of the different forms which each combination may assume, or of the infinitely varied methods of framing and putting them together; for, in the first place, the choice of these forms in every particular case is mainly determined by the strains to which the machinery is to be exposed; and, in the next place, this branch of the subject is sufficiently important and extensive to admit of separation from the others, under the name of *Constructive Mechanism.* Although some details of this kind are unavoidable in the present work, I have carefully avoided them when possible, and for this purpose have excluded from the drawings all unnecessary and extraneous framing or connections that tend to individualise the combinations, and thus to oppose the very object which I have proposed to myself, namely, to introduce such a degree of generalisation and system, as would give to *Pure Mechanism* a claim for admission into the ranks of the Sciences.

8. I must here recapitulate the ordinary definitions and measures of motion and velocity, for the purpose of introducing certain modifications which they require to adapt them to our present purposes.

A body is absolutely at *rest* when it remains in the same position in space, and at rest relatively to another body when it continues in the same relative position to that body, as it is usually said to be at rest when it remains in the same relative position to the earth. Thus, too, a body which remains in the same place in a boat or a carriage, is at rest with respect to that boat or carriage, although these may be in motion; and so a wheel or other portion of a machine may be carried into different positions relatively to the fixed frame, and yet remain at rest with respect to the arm or carriage upon which it is mounted.

A body is in *motion* when it occupies successively different positions in space with respect to some other body; motion being relative as well as rest. Two bodies moving with respect to a third will be at rest with respect to each other, if they retain in their motions the same relative positions; or a body absolutely at rest may be said to move with respect to another moving body, if the latter be assumed as the standard to which the motion is to be referred.

9. Motion is essentially continuous; that is to say, a point cannot pass from one position to another without going through a series of intermediate positions. Thus the motion of a point describes in space a line necessarily continuous, which line is termed its *path*. The motion of a solid body is defined by the paths of certain selected points in it, as will appear below.

The path being assigned, there are only two *directions* in which it can move in that path.* Direction of motion being relative, may be defined by naming some fixed point which the body is approaching or retiring from: as, for example, the points of the compass, the zenith or nadir, or by personal or other relations, such as right and left, larboard and starboard, windward and leeward, upwards and downwards, &c.; otherwise its direction of motion may be defined by comparing it with that of the sun or of the hands of a watch. The latter is an exceedingly convenient standard for rotative motion. By supposing the path of the sun projected upon the plane of motion, it may be employed as a standard for rotative direction in every case except that of motion in a plane perpendicular to its orbit; but the hour circle of a watch-face can be imagined as described on either surface of a given plane, whatever be its position.

The path and direction of a given point being assigned, it may move in this path and direction quickly or slowly, with a greater or less *velocity*; and this velocity is estimated by comparing the space passed over with the time occupied in describing it.

10. When a point describes equal portions of its path in equal successive times, the motion is said to be uniform, and the velocity measured by the space (that is, the length of path) described in the unit of time. The units usually employed are feet and seconds. Thus a body is said to move at the rate of 3 feet per second.

Since the same space is described in every unit of time, the entire space described is proportional to the time employed in

* In diagrams, the direction of motion in a given path is usually indicated by the order of the letters of reference, i.e., from the first towards the second, which are applied to that path. When a body or point is said to move *in the direction BA*, the meaning is, that the point travelling in the line *BA* moves from *B* towards *A*. Similarly, a force acting in the direction *BA* means a force which tends to move the point of its application from *B* to *A*, whether by pushing or pulling, repulsion or attraction, propulsion or traction.

describing it, and the measure of velocity is obtained by dividing the number of feet passed over by that of the seconds employed.

If V be the velocity, S the space in feet, T the time in seconds, $V=\frac{S}{T}$. The direction is indicated analytically by the sign of the velocity for a given path; if the velocity in one direction be assumed positive, that in the opposite direction will be negative.

Rotation is defined by the lexicographers to be the act of whirling round like a wheel, and by mathematicians as the circumvolution of a line, surface or solid round an immovable line, called the axis of rotation.

Revolution is 'the course of anything which returns to the point at which it began to move' (Johnson), but is often employed in common language and by mathematicians in the same general sense as rotation. In astronomy revolution is limited to express the period of a heavenly body, that is its course from any point of its orbit till it return to the same again.

In mechanism the term *rotation* ought to be employed only for the act of turning about an axis, and *revolution*, or *turn*, for the course of a rotating body from one position with respect to some other given object to its return to the same relative position. These terms are thus limited in the present work.

Period should be confined to the sense of 'time in which anything is performed so as to begin again in the same manner' (Johnson).

11. The motion of a rotating body may be measured by the linear velocity of a point whose radial distance is equal to the unit of space. This is termed the angular velocity of the body, which is said to rotate uniformly when its angular velocity is uniform.

In uniform angular velocity the angles described by a given radius are manifestly proportional to the times; and since the linear velocity of every point is the arc described in the unit of time, which arc is proportional to the radius, so the linear velocity of every point is proportional to its radius. If A be the angular velocity, R the radius of the point in feet, the linear velocity $V=RA$.

The motion of a uniformly rotating body may also be conveniently measured by the number of revolutions performed in a given time. In uniform rotation the angles described are proportional to the times, and any given point describes its own circle with uniform linear velocity. Let T be the time of performing k revolutions, where k may be a whole number or a fraction. Then, since 2π is the circumference whose radius is unity; $2\pi k$ will be the space described in k revolutions by the point whose radius is unity, but A is the space described by the same point in the unit of time;

$$\therefore \mathrm{A} : 2\pi k :: 1 : T; \therefore T = \frac{2\pi k}{A} \, (1); \; k = \frac{TA}{2\pi} \, (2);$$

hence the number of turns in a given time varies as the angular velocity.

Let R be the radius of a wheel and V its perimetral velocity;

$$\therefore V = RA. \quad \text{And } k = \frac{TV}{2\pi R} \, (3);$$

whence the number of turns in a given time varies directly as the perimetral velocity, and inversely as the radius or diameter of the wheel.*

Let the time in which a wheel performs one complete revolution be termed its Period $(=P)$; $\therefore P = \frac{2\pi}{A}$ {putting $k=1$ in (1)}; and the period varies inversely as the angular velocity;

Also from (2) $k = \frac{T}{P}$; whence the period varies inversely as the number of turns in a given time. When the rotations of two wheels are to be compared, the number of turns they respectively make in a given time may be termed their synchronal rotations.

12. When the velocity is not uniform, these expressions can no longer be applied, because the velocity is different at different times. In this case, then, the velocity at every instant is measured by the space that would be described in the succeeding unit of time, were the velocity with which that unit is commenced continued uniformly throughout it.

If the velocity of a body increase, it is said to be accelerated, and if the velocity diminish, to be retarded.

* In practice linear velocity is commonly referred to seconds and feet, but angular velocity to minutes and revolutions or turns; thus a millwright will define the velocity of a given wheel by either saying that it performs twenty revolutions in a minute, or that its circumference moves at the rate of three feet per second. In the expression (3) if k and T be expressed in minutes, and V is to be expressed in seconds, we must put $60V$ for V;

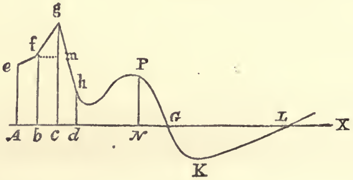
$$\therefore k = \frac{60\,TV}{2\pi\,R} = \frac{10\,TV}{R} \text{ very nearly.}$$

Railroad velocities are so high that they are stated in miles per minute.

13. Varied motion admits of convenient graphical representation, by which its characteristic points and general laws are rendered much more easy of comprehension than they are by the use of formulæ alone.

Thus to represent the motion of a point of which the velocities at certain given intervals of time are known, take an indefinite straight line AX, and from A set off abscissæ Ab, Ac, Ad...... proportional to the given intervals of time as measured from the

Fig. 1.



beginning of the motion. Upon A, b, c, d...... erect ordinates Ae, bf, cg, dh, respectively proportional to the velocity of the point at the beginning of the motion and after each interval of time. By joining the extremities of these ordinates, a polygon $efgh$...... is obtained, which, if the intervals of time be taken with their differences sufficiently small, will become a curve as $hPGKL$, of which the abscissa AN at any given point P, will represent the time elapsed from the beginning, and the ordinate NP the corresponding velocity of the point.

If the motion of the point cease, its velocity becomes zero, and the curve meets the axis, as at G and L. If the point change its *direction* in its path, this is indicated by the change of sign in the velocity; for either direction being assumed positive, the other will be negative; and so in this curvilinear representation, the ordinates representing the velocity for one direction being set off upwards from the line, as from e to G, those of the opposite direction will be set off downwards as from G to L.

14. By another method a curve is constructed of which the abscissæ shall represent the time as before, but the ordinates the space described by the point. Thus, if the last figure be supposed to be constructed on this second hypothesis, Ae will represent the distance of the point at the beginning of the motion from that point of its path whence the space is to be measured; bf its distance from the same point at the end of the time Ab; cg its distance after the time Ac; and so on. But the motion in one direction being accounted positive, that in the opposite direc-

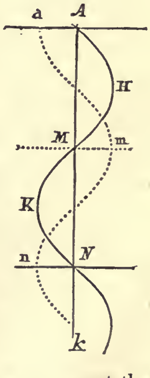
tion will be negative. If then the point change its direction in the interval *cd*, the ordinates will decrease.

And, as in the former case, if the ordinates are taken in sufficient number, a continuous curve is obtained, as *pPGKL*, which will tend upwards when the point moves in one direction, and downwards when in the other direction.

Now since the space described in any interval of time is represented by the difference of the two ordinates corresponding to the beginning and end of that interval, so the velocity is proportional to that difference divided by the difference of the abscissæ. Thus in the interval bc ($=fm$), gm is the space described, and $\frac{gm}{fm}$ the velocity, which is proportional to the tangent of gfm, or ultimately to the tangent of the angle which the curve makes with the axis Ax.

15. This method is better adapted for representing the motion of the parts of mechanism than the other, because the tendency of the sinuous line corresponds with the direction of the body, changing from upwards to downwards, and *vice versâ*, as the direction changes; while its more or less rapid inclination indicates the change of velocity. Thus the line is a complete picture of the motion, as the line formed by the notes in music is a picture of the undulations of the melody; whereas by the first method where the ordinates represent the velocities, the directions are indicated by the situation of the curve above or below the axis, which is a distinction of a different kind from the thing it represents, and requires an effort of thought for its comprehension.

Fig. 2.



Sometimes the axis Ax of the time is drawn vertically, and the ordinates consequently are horizontal.

16. The two methods are compared in the following figure, which represents the motion of the lower extremity of a pendulum, the continuous line upon the first hypothesis, and the dotted line upon the second.

The axis of the abscissæ Ak is vertical, AM is the interval of time corresponding to one oscillation from left to right, and MN to the returning oscillation from right to left.

In the continuous line the horizontal ordinates represent the velocities, which beginning from zero at the left extremity of the vibration at A, reach their maximum values in the middle of each oscillation at H and K, and vanish at the extremities of the oscillations at M and N. The right side of the axis is appropriated to the direction of motion from left to right, and the left side to the opposite direction.

In the dotted line the ordinates represent the distances from the middle or lowest point, which are greatest at the beginnings and ends of the oscillations at a, m, n. But the curve in this case moves from right to left, and *vice versâ*, as the pendulum moves.*

17. In the varied motion of mechanical organs it generally happens that the changes of velocity recur perpetually in the same order, in which case the movement is said to be *Periodic*. The *period* is the interval of time which includes in itself one complete succession of changes, and the motion is made up of a continual series of similar periods. But the changes of velocity in the different periods may be similar in the law of their succession only, and may differ either in the actual values, or in the interval of time required for each period. In most cases, however, the periods are precisely alike in the law and value of the successive velocities, as well as in the interval of time assigned to each. Such motion is termed a *Uniform Periodic Motion*; of which examples are the motion of pendulums, or of the saws in a saw-mill, supposing the prime mover to revolve uniformly.

The complete set of changes in velocity included in one period may be termed the *Cycle* of Velocities. This phrase is, indeed, generally applicable to anything that is subject to recurring variations, whereas *Period* is applicable to time alone. The successive phenomena of motion in each period are sometimes termed its *Phases*, so that the periodic motion is thus a recurring series of phases. The choice of the phase in this series, which shall be reckoned as the beginning and end of the period, is arbitrary. Thus we may reckon the beginning of the periods of a pendulum, either from one of the extremities of its oscillation, or from the middle and lowest point.

* If a pencil be attached to the lower part of the pendulum so as to touch a vertical surface of paper behind it, and this surface travel by means of clockwork with a uniform motion upwards, the pencil will trace this very curve. This supposes that the circular arc described by the pencil in each oscillation belongs to so small an angle that it may be taken as a horizontal right line.

Upon this principle apparatus is constructed for the registration of the motion of machinery, in which such motion curves are traced either by pencils or by the photographic image of some moving *point* of the machine upon paper applied to the surface of a revolving cylinder. The machines to which such apparatus is applied are those employed for measuring atmospheric phenomena, as barometers, hygrometers, wind-gauges, &c., or for the appreciation of magnetic variations, the recording of the variations of pressure in the cylinders of steam engines, and the like.

PART THE FIRST.

CHAPTER I.

ON TRAINS OF MECHANISM IN GENERAL.

18. MECHANISM may be defined to be a combination of parts so connecting two or more pieces, that the motion of one compels the motion of the others, according to a law of connection depending on the nature of the combination. The motion of elementary combinations are *single* or *aggregate.*

Aggregate motions are produced by combining in a peculiar manner two or more *single* combinations, as will hereafter appear in Part II. All that follows in this Part relates to the *single* combinations alone.

19. The motion of every point of a given piece in a machine being defined, as in the Introduction, by path, direction, and velocity, it will be found that its path is assigned to it by the connection of the piece with the frame-work of the machine; but its direction and velocity are determined by its connection with some other moving piece in the train. Thus the points of a wheel describe circles, because its axis is supported by holes in the frame; but they describe them swiftly or slowly, backwards or forwards, by virtue of its connection with the next wheel in the train, which lies between it and the receiver of power.

This connection affects the *ratio* of the velocities, and the *relative* direction of motion of the two pieces in question, but its action is independent of the *actual* velocities or directions of either piece,* as in the familiar example already quoted of the two hands of a clock, where the connection by wheel-work is so contrived, that while one hand revolves uniformly in an hour, the

* We shall find a few contrivances in which this is not strictly true with respect to the direction, but they are not of a nature to vitiate the generality of the principle.

other shall revolve uniformly in twelve. But this connection has this more general property, that it will also compel the latter to revolve with an angular velocity of one-twelfth of the former, whatever be the actual velocity communicated to either; as, for example, when we set the clock by moving the minute-hand rapidly to a new place on the dial, and similarly with respect to direction, the two hands will always revolve the same way, whether that be backwards or forwards.

Since Mechanism is a connection between two or more bodies, governing their proportional velocities and relative directions, and not affected by their actual velocities or directions; it follows that a systematic arrangement of the principles of mechanism must be based upon the proportions and relations between the velocities and directions of the pieces, and not upon their actual and separate motions.

20. Proportional velocities may be divided into those in which the ratio is constant, and those in which it varies.

Let V and v be the velocities of two bodies, then $\frac{V}{v}$ is the velocity ratio; and if the velocities are uniform, let S, s be the spaces described in the same time T; $\therefore \frac{V}{v} = \frac{S}{s}$ a constant ratio; consequently between uniform velocities the velocity ratio is constant, which indeed is sufficiently obvious.

If, however, the velocities be not uniform, and yet the velocity ratio constant, let the bodies in any successive intervals of time T, $T_{\prime}$, $T_{\prime\prime}$ ... move with velocities V, $V_{\prime}$, $V_{\prime\prime}$ ... and v, $v_{\prime}$, $v_{\prime\prime}$ respectively, of any different magnitudes, but so that the two velocities at the same instant always preserve the same ratio;

$$\therefore \frac{V}{v} = \frac{V_{\prime}}{v_{\prime}} = \frac{V_{\prime\prime}}{v_{\prime\prime}}, \text{ \&c. } \ldots = c.$$

Hence if S, $S_{\prime}$, $S_{\prime\prime}$ ... and s, $s_{\prime}$, $s_{\prime\prime}$ be the spaces described with these velocities by the two bodies in the intervals T, $T_{\prime}$, $T_{\prime\prime}$ respectively, we have

$$c = \frac{S}{s} = \frac{S_{\prime}}{s_{\prime}} = \frac{S_{\prime\prime}}{s_{\prime\prime}} \ldots\ldots = \frac{S + S_{\prime} + S_{\prime\prime} + \ldots}{s + s_{\prime} + s_{\prime\prime} + \ldots}.$$

And as this is true whatever be the magnitude of the intervals of time, it is also true when they are taken so small that the changes of velocity become continuous, and therefore *when the velocity ratio is constant it is obtained by comparing the entire* *spaces described in the same interval of time, whatever changes the actual velocities of the bodies may have undergone during that time.*

And in the same manner it may be shown that in revolving bodies the angular velocity ratio, if constant, is equal to the ratio of the synchronal revolutions, notwithstanding the velocities of rotation may vary, and also to the inverse ratio of the periods if the angular velocities be uniform.

When the velocity ratio varies, the relations of motion between two pieces may often be more simply defined by means of the law of their corresponding positions than by the ratio of their velocities.

21. With respect to actual direction we have seen that it has only two values, but the relation of direction between two bodies moving in given paths may be conveniently divided into two classes. In the first, while one continues to move in the same direction, the other shall also persevere in its own direction; but if one change the other shall change. To this class belongs the clock-hands; and in this instance both hands move the same way round the circle. But this is not necessary; it may be that when one piece revolves to the right the other may revolve to the left, and *vice versâ,* as in a pair of flatting rollers; or again in the old simple mangle, so long as the handle is turned in one direction, the bed of the mangle will travel forwards, but when the motion of the handle is reversed, the bed of the mangle also returns. In all these cases *the directional relation is constant.* In another class the connection is of this nature, that while one body perseveres in the same direction, the other shall change its direction; as, for example, in a saw-mill. The saw-frame moves up and down, changing its direction periodically, but the piece from which it derives this motion revolves continually in the same direction. In cases of this kind *the directional relation changes.*

22. We have thus two kinds of directional relation, and two of the velocity ratio, by means of which all the simple combinations of mechanism, for the modification of motion, may be conveniently grouped under the following heads or divisions.

DIVISION 1. *Directional relation and Velocity ratio constant.*

DIVISION 2. *Directional relation constant—Velocity ratio varying.*

DIVISION 3. *Directional relation changing periodically—Velocity ratio either constant or varying.**

* The third division might have been separated into two by arranging the constant and varying velocities under different heads, but it will be found that the contrivances

Division 4. *Intermittent Motions.—The continuous motion of one piece communicates a motion to the other with intervals of perfect rest.*

23. In those classes of combinations in which either the velocity ratio or the directional relations change, it will generally happen, from the very nature of mechanism, that the changes will recur in cycles. But, since these changes are independent of the actual velocities of the bodies, the cycles cannot be periodic in *time*, but will recur with reference to the *path-movement* of one of the bodies, the same velocity ratio and directional relation generally corresponding to the arrival of this body at the same point of its path, and so on in succession for the different phases. The true *argument*,* as it is called, of the change being in fact the *path* of one of the bodies, and not the *time* of its motion.

24. A train of mechanism is composed of a series of movable pieces, each of which is so connected with the frame-work of the machine, that when in motion every point of it is constrained to move in a certain path, in which, however, if considered separately from the other pieces, it is at liberty to move in the two opposite directions, and with any velocity. Thus wheels, pullies, shafts, and rotating pieces generally, are so connected with the frame of the machine, that any given point is compelled when in motion to describe a circle round the axis, and in a plane perpendicular to it. Sliding pieces are compelled by fixed guides to describe straight lines, other pieces to move so that their points describe more complicated paths, and so on.

25. These pieces are connected in successive order in various ways, so that when the first piece in the series is moved from any external cause, it compels the second to move, which again gives motion to the third, and so on.

26. The act of giving motion to a piece is termed *driving* it, and that of receiving motion from a piece is termed *following* it. The piece or part of a piece which is appropriated to transmitting motion to the next is the *driver*, and the part which receives motion is the *follower*.

27. The law of motion of one piece in a train may differ in any way from the law of motion of the next piece in the series, and the change is effected by the mode of connection. The different cases under which these modes of transforming motion

for effecting these two conditions are so much alike that this would only have introduced needless complication.

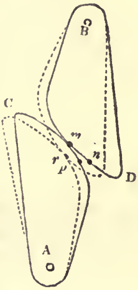
* Vide Whewell's *Philosophy of the Inductive Sciences*, vol. ii. p. 542.

by transmission are arranged, are termed in this work the '*mechanistic connections.*'

One piece may drive another either by immediate contact or by an intermediate or connecting piece. The different modes of doing it will be best explained by taking an example of each in its most elementary and general shape.

28. *Communication of Motion by Contact.* Let AC, BD be two successive pieces of a train of mechanism, moving on centers A and B respectively, and let BD be the driver, and AC the follower, the curved edge of the first touching that of the second. If the driver be moved into a new position near the first, as shown by dotted lines, its edge will press that of the follower, and move it also into a new position. Let m be the point of contact in the first position, and let n and p be the respective points of the edges that will come into contact at r in the second position. Now, during the motion every point between p and m in the following curve AC, has been successively in contact with some other point between n and m in the driver BD; and if from the nature of the curves, nm is not equal to pm, sliding must have taken place between the edges through a space equal to the difference. But if nm be equal to pm, no sliding will have happened. In the first case the communication of motion is said to be by *sliding contact,* and in the second by *rolling contact.**

Fig 3.

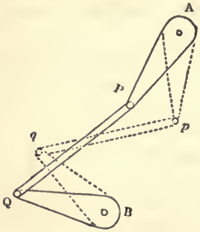


This mode of action supposes either that the curves are both convex; or should the curvature lie in the same direction, that the convex edge has a greater curvature than that of the concave edge at the point of contact. If this be not the case, successive contacts may take place at discontinuous points.

* The distinction of contacts was first discussed by Olaus Römer, and more exactly by Leibnitz (1710), *Miscellanea Berolinensia* t. 1. In his words, 'The motion of a body which is superposed upon a horizontal fixed surface is either *radens* (scraping), *volvens* (rolling), or a mixture of the two. *Scraping motion* is when every point of the moving body which is in contact with the fixed at starting is brought in succession into contact with different points of the latter. *Rolling motion* is when each point of contact of the upper body with the lower is continually changed, so that the line joining any given pair of upper points of contact shall be equal in length to the line joining their respective lower points. *Mixed motion* is when each point of contact of the upper body with the lower is continually changed, but so that the line joining the upper points is not equal to the line joining the respective lower points.' This *mixed motion* is that to which the term *sliding contact* is now by common consent applied, for it occupies so conspicuous a part in the theory of the motions produced by the contact of curved edges as to require a more definite name than *mixed contact.*

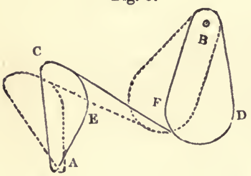
29. *Communication of Motion by Intermediate Pieces.* Let *AP*, *BQ* be a driver and follower, moving on centers at *A* and *B* respectively, and let a rod or *link*,* *PQ*, be jointed at its extremities to the driver and follower at *P* and *Q*. Then, if the driver be moved into a new position *Ap*, it will by means of the link place the follower in a position *Bq*. If the driver push the follower before it, the link *must* be rigid, but if the driver drag the follower after it, the link may be flexible, the principle of link-work only requiring that the connection between the link and its pieces shall be at constant points, and the distance on the link between the two points of attachment invariable.

Fig. 4.



In the next place, let *ACE* be a driver, *BDF* a follower whose centers of motion are *A* and *B*, and whose edges *CE*, *DF*, are curved and connected by a flexible band, which is attached at *C* and *D* to the curves, and wraps round them, but lies between them in a state of tension in the direction of the common tangent of the curves. If the driver be moved, it will through this connection drag the follower after it, and the connector will wrap and unwrap itself from the edges respectively, so as always to lie in the direction of the common tangent.

Fig. 5.



Such a wrapping connector may also be considered as a rigid right line—a narrow bar, which is always a common tangent of the curved edges of the driver and follower, and which is compelled to roll upon those edges during the motion of the system.† The practical connections between the curve and this rolling bar will be shown below. *Link-work* includes all kinds of jointed work, cranks with connecting rods, bell-hanging, and the like, while *wrapping connections* are employed for endless bands and

* I adopted the term from the hanging rods of Watt's parallel motion. In his patent, 1784, he describes these as 'bars of wood or iron having joints at each end, and calls them *links* in the subsequent details. *Vide* Muirhead's *Mechanical Inventions of J. Watt*, pp. 95, 96, &c., vol. iii.

† Vide chap. iv. on 'Wrapping Connectors.'

belts, fusees in clock and watch-work, and a variety of devices for complex motions.

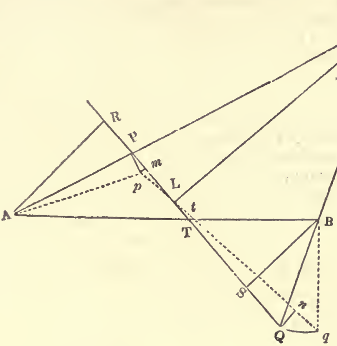
Every elementary combination of mechanism may be placed in one or other of the four divisions of mechanistic connections above defined, namely,

Actual contact by	Rolling-edges	2
	Sliding-edges	3
Intermediate connection by a	Link . . .	1
	Wrapping connector	4

We may now proceed to investigate the velocity ratio of these combinations, in doing which it is convenient to take them in the order indicated by the numerals placed opposite to them in the last Article.

30. *To find the velocity ratio in Link-work.* Let AP, BQ be two arms moving on fixed centers A and B respectively, and

Fig. 6.



let them be connected by a link PQ, jointed to their extremities at P and Q. Let AR, BS be perpendiculars from the centers upon the direction of the link produced, if necessary, and let AP, BQ, PQ be moved into the new positions Ap, Bq, pq, very near to the first. Draw pm and Qn perpendicular to PQ, then in the right-angled triangles Ppm, APR, Pp is perpendicular to AP, and Pm to AR; therefore the angle at P in the small triangle is equal to the angle at A in the large triangle, and the triangles are similar. In like manner the small triangle qnQ is similar to BSQ; whence

$$Pp : Pm :: PA : AR,$$
$$qn : Qq :: BS : BQ,$$
$$\text{also } AT : BT :: AR : BS......(1),$$

by similar triangles ART, BTS. Compounding these proportions and arranging the terms, remarking that $qn = Pm$ ultimately since the length of the link $PQ = pq$, we finally obtain

$$\frac{Pp}{AP} : \frac{Qq}{BQ} :: BT : AT............(2),$$

that is to say, *the angular velocities of the arms AP, BQ are to each other inversely as the segments into which the link divides the line AB, which joins the centers of motion, and which is technically termed the line of centers.**

* The following demonstration of this problem, which I gave in my paper on the Teeth of Wheels, in 1838, is in some respects preferable to the above. It is founded upon Euler's principle of the instantaneous axis of rotation.

The rod PQ, fig. 6, during its motion may be considered as always turning round some center or other in space, although the relative position of that center to it is continually shifting. Produce the arms AP, BQ in the requisite directions to meet in K, then will this point K be the momentary center. For as the extremity P moves round the center A, the direction of its motion at starting from P must be perpendicular to AP, therefore the momentary center will lie somewhere in AP produced. In like manner the initial motion of the other extremity Q must be perpendicular to BQ, and the momentary center must also lie somewhere in the direction of BQ; therefore it must be in the intersection K of the two lines AP and BQ produced. But since the rod PQ turns on the momentary center K, the direct motion of P and Q are to each other at any given instant as their radial distances from K, that is, as PK to QK, which is true, whether we consider them as the extremities of the rod PQ or of the radii AP,BQ; also the angular motions of the latter will be found by dividing these direct motions by their respective radii; therefore we have,

Angular motion of P round A : angular motion of Q round B :: $\frac{PK}{AP} : \frac{QK}{BQ}$.

Draw KL, AR, BS, perpendicular to PQ. Then we have

$PK : AP :: KL : AR$ by similar triangles KPL; APR
$BQ : QK :: BR : KL$ . . . . BQS; KLQ
$AT : BT :: AR : BS$ . . . . ATR; TBS,

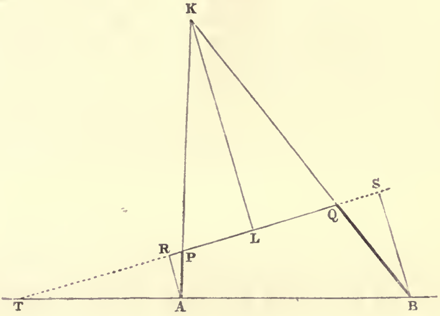
and compounding these three proportions we obtain

$$\frac{PK}{AP} : \frac{QK}{BQ} :: BT : AT;$$

that is to say, *the angular motion of the arms are to each other at any moment inversely as the segments into which the direction of the link divides the line joining the centers of motion, or 'line of centers.'* If now it happens that when the link PQ moves into its new position pq, very near to the first, this second position intersects the first in a point L above (or below) the line of centers, as in the figure; then the ratio of the segments AT, BT will be altered into that of At, Bt, consequently the ratio of the angular motion will be an increasing or decreasing ratio, as the case may be. But if the point L coincide with the line of centers, this ratio will for the moment remain constant.

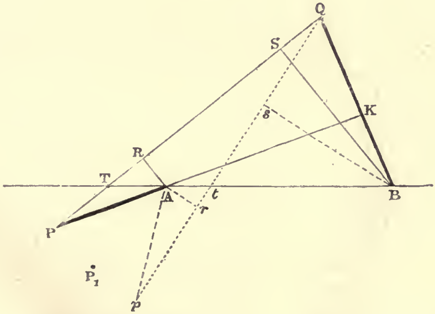
COR. 1. $\frac{Pp}{AP} : \frac{Qq}{BQ} :: BS : AR$, by compounding (1) and (2); therefore *the angular velocities of the arms AP, BQ are inversely as the perpendiculars from their centers of motion upon the link.*

Fig. 7.



These perpendiculars are necessarily parallel. But they may be placed by the motion of the system with their extremities in the same aspect with respect to their center points A and B as in figs. 7, 8 (BS, AR), or in opposite aspects, as in fig. 6 and in fig. 8 at Ar, Bs.

Fig. 8.



When in the same aspect the motion of AP is communicated to BQ by the link on the same side of their respective centers AB, consequently their arms revolve in the same direction;

also the similar triangles TAR, TBS lie on the same side of the line of centers and the point T beyond the line AB.

On the contrary, when the perpendiculars are placed with their extremities in opposite aspects with respect to AB, as in fig. 6, the motion of AP is communicated to BQ on the opposite side of their centers, consequently the arms revolve in opposite directions. The similar triangles tAr, tBS, fig. 8, or TAR, TBS, fig. 6, lie on opposite sides of the line of centers, and the points t, and T between A and B. We obtain therefore the following theorems and results.

COR. 2. In any position of a given piece of link-work the relative directions of motion of the arms is shown by the place of the intersection, T, of the link-line with the line of centers, whether beyond or within the points AB.

COR. 3. The relative angular motions of the arms are at every instant the same as if the system consisted of arms AR, BS, connected by a link RS, to which they are perpendicular, and are inversely as those lines.

COR. 4. In fig. 8, let the arm AP move into a position AP^1, so as to place the link PQ in coincidence with the center A. The arm AP now coincides with the link. Also the perpendicular AR vanishes, and the point T coincides with A.

Hence at this instant motion given to AP communicates none to BQ, for the motion of AP^1 is to that of BQ as BS to AR and $AR = O$. The system in this case is said to be at a *dead point.*

Let AP^1 continue its rotation from P to p. The link will be carried over the center A to pQ accompanied by the perpendicular Ar. Bs will be the perpendicular from B, and the intersection T will now lie at t between A and B. The rotation communicated to BQ is therefore reversed. It is thus shown that when an arm approaches and passes a dead point, the motion communicated to the link and opposite arm decreases, vanishes, and then increases in a reverse direction.

COR. 5. Produce AP and BQ to meet in K, and drop KL perpendicular to PQ,

$$\text{then } pm : Pm :: PL : KL,$$
$$\text{and } qn : Qn :: KL : QL;$$

whence, compounding, $pm : Qn :: PL : QL$, which shows that L is the intersection of the two positions of the link.

COR. 6. If the path of the pieces be rectilinear, or any other curve than a circle, let Pp, Qq be the elements of the paths;

then since $Pm = qn$, $Pp \cdot \cos pPm = Qq \cdot \cos Qqn$;

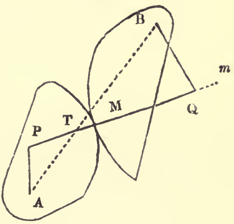
$$\therefore \frac{Pp}{Qq} = \frac{\cos Qqn}{\cos pPm},$$

where the angles are those made by the link with the respective directions of motion: and hence

The linear velocities are to each other inversely as the cosines of the angles which the link makes with the respective paths.

31. *To find the Velocity Ratio in Contact Motions.* Let A, B be the centers of motion of two pieces connected by the contact of curved edges, and let M be the point of contact in a given position.

Fig. 9.



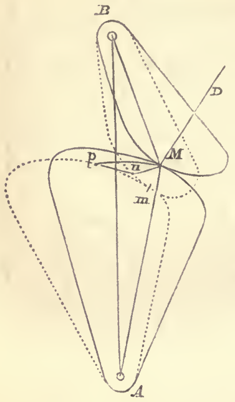
Let P, Q be the respective centers of curvature of the edges, corresponding to the point of contact M; join PQ; therefore this line will pass through the point of contact M. Now in considering the communication of motion through a small angle, the circles of curvature may be substituted for the curved edges. But the line PQ being thus equal to the sum of the radii of two circles, will be constant during that small motion, and hence the motion be the same if a pair of rods AP, BQ, connected by a link PQ, be substituted. Let T be the intersection of PQ with the line of centers AB, then by the last proposition, the angular motions of the arms AP, BQ are to each other as the segments BT, AT, and PQ is the common normal to the two curves; whence *in the communication of motion by contact, the angular motions of the pieces are inversely as the segments into which the common normal divides the line of centers.*

32. *To find the quantity of sliding in Contact Motions.* Let A and B be the two centers, M the point of contact, MD the common normal; then,

Suppose the curves to move into the new positions, shown by the dotted lines, and very near the first, and let m be the new point of contact, and p and n the new positions of the points which were in contact at M.

Now since every point of mn must have necessarily touched some point or other of mp, during the change from the first to the second position, a sliding or shifting of the surfaces must have taken place equal to the difference between mp and mn. Join pn, which will ultimately represent this difference, and become a right line perpendicular to the normal MD. Also Mp, Mn are ultimately perpendicular to AM, BM.

Fig. 10.



In the small triangle Mpn, the sides Mp, Mn, pn are respectively perpendicular to AM, BM, MD, and consequently make mutually the same angles with each other as these latter lines;

therefore $\frac{pn}{pM} = \frac{\sin pMn}{\sin pnM} = \frac{\sin BMA}{\sin DMB}$,

in which expression $\frac{pn}{pM}$ is the ratio of the sliding to the elementary quantity of motion of the point of contact in one of the pieces, DMB is the angle between the normal and the radius of contact of the other piece, and $\sin BMA = \sin\ (BAM + ABM) =$ the sine of the sum of the angular distances of the radii of contact from the line of centers.

$$\text{Similarly, } \frac{pn}{nM} = \frac{\sin BMA}{\sin DMA}.$$

33. From these expressions it appears that in the small triangle pnM, pn can only vanish with respect to nM or pM when $\sin BMA$ vanishes; that is, when the radii of contact coincide with the line of centers. But when pn vanishes the sliding vanishes, and the contact becomes *rolling contact.* Hence it appears that in rolling contact the curves must be so formed, that the point of contact shall always lie on the line of centers. Also the common normal will cut the line of centers at the point T (fig. 7), which will be now the point of contact, and therefore *in rolling contact, the angular velocities are inversely as the segments into which the point of contact divides the line of centers.*

34. *Examples.* Let the curves be a pair of involutes of circles, and let BD be a perpendicular from B upon MD. But this perpendicular is constant in the involute;

$$\text{therefore } \sin DMB = \frac{BD}{BM} \propto \frac{1}{BM};$$

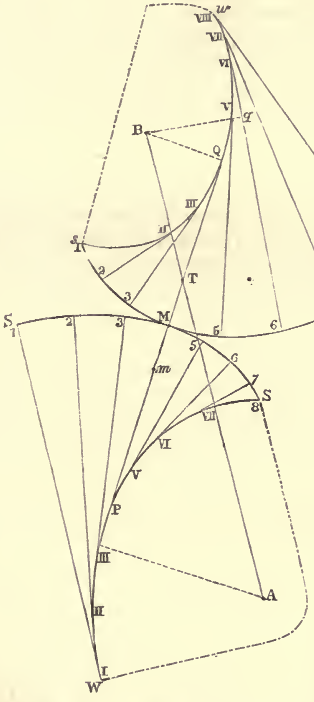
$\therefore \frac{pn}{pM} \propto BM \times \sin BMA$, that is to say as the perpendicular upon AM produced.

But if the curves be an epicycloid turning on the center A, in contact with a radial line which turns round B; then DMB is a right angle,

$$\text{and } \frac{pn}{pM} \propto \sin BMA.$$

To find the velocity ratio in wrapping connectors (*correlation of sliding and wrapping*). Let AB be the respective centers of

Fig. 11.



motion of a pair of curves, S_1S_8, s_1s_8, in contact at M, and let S_1s_1, S_2s_2 . . . S_8s_8 be respective points of contact when the curve S_1S_8 drives s_1s_8 by sliding or rolling contact.

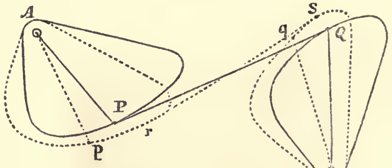
Let WPS_8 be the evolute of S_1MS_8, described on the plane of that curve, and wQs_1 the evolute of s_1Mw, described on the plane of that curve. The curve S_1MS_8 may be, therefore, described by the point M of the inextensible string WPM, and similarly the curve $s_1 Qw$ by the inextensible string wQM, and as these strings are always normal to their respective involutes S_1MS_8, they together form a common normal at every point of contact of those curves as at M. Consequently, if we suppose an inextensible flexible string $WPTQw$ to be attached at W, w respectively to the evolutes of the contact curves, and the latter move with their edges in contact, this string will wrap upon one evolute and unwrap from the other evolute, always remaining a common normal to the contact curves, and a common tangent to their evolutes, the wrapping curves, and the point M on the string will coincide in every position with the point of contact of the curves. Hence, if the contact curves be removed, the evolutes and the string constitute a pair of curves with a wrapping connector, whose action is equivalent to that of the contact curves, and as the wrapping connector is the common normal of the latter, the proposition (Art. 31) shows that in wrapping connectors the angular motion of the pieces are inversely as the segments into which *the connector*, or (which is the same thing) the *common tangent* of the wrapping curves divides the line of centers.*

If any other point m be taken on the wrapping connector, it will trace, during the motion, another pair of involutes, normally

* In the former edition of this work the following demonstration was given:—

To find the Velocity Ratio in wrapping connections.—Let A, B be the centers of motion, PQ the wrapping connector touching the curves at P and Q, and let the point P be moved to p very near to its first position, then will Q be drawn to q, and the connector will touch the curves in two new points of contact, which may be r and s

Fig. 12.

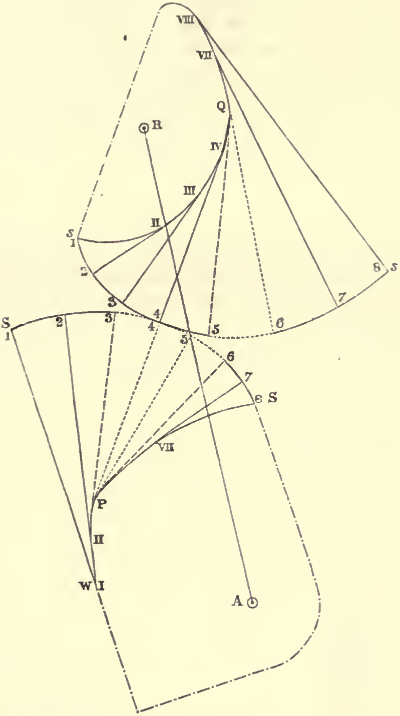


respectively. Now, in the action of wrapping or unwrapping, the connector touches the curves in a series of consecutive points between q and S or p and r, and ultimately q coincides with S and p with r. The extremities of the connector may therefore be considered at any given moment as if jointed to the two curves at the points of contact, and turning upon these points in the manner of a link. The relative velocities of the curves are therefore momentarily the same as if AP, BQ were a pair of rods connected by a link PQ. *Hence the angular velocities of the pieces are to each other inversely as the segments into which the connector divides the line of centers.*

equidistant from the first, on their respective planes. This new pair may be substituted for the first, if more convenient.

It may happen that one or both of the wrapping curves may have salient points,* as at *P*, which is the meeting point of the two tangents *P*3 and *P*6, and at *Q*, which is the meeting point of the tangents *Q*5 and *Q*6. Consequently, the lower sliding

Fig. 13.



curve from 3 to 6 and the upper one from 5 to 6 are arcs of excentric circles, described about *P* and *Q*.

The effect of this is that the wrapping connector in the positions between *P*5, 5*Q* and *P*6, 6*Q* acts in the manner of a link

* In the points of certain curves changes of curvature take place which are termed points of *inflexion*, *cusps*, or *salient points*.

At a point of *inflexion*, *I*, fig. 14, the curvature changes its aspect, and the direction whose centers are P and Q. But between the positions $P3$, 3III, and $P5$, $5Q$ the connector is jointed as a link at P, but wraps on the curve III IVQ at the other extremity.

This shows that a link is in effect a wrapping connector, of which the wrapping curves are reduced to a point, and that *link-work is a particular case of wrapping connection* (F), in which one or both of the wrapping curves are reduced to a point.

35. If the line of direction of the link in *link-work*, of the common normal to the curves in the *rolling* and *sliding* contact motions, and of the connector in *wrapping motion*, be severally termed the line of action, we can express the separate propositions which relate to the Velocity Ratio, by saying that *the angular velocities of two rotating pieces provided with either of the four mechanistic connections, are to each other inversely as the segments into which the line of action divides the line of centers*, or inversely as the perpendiculars from the centers of motion upon the line of action (A).

I have confined these investigations, for the present, to motions in the same plane. The cases of motions in different planes are more simply examined as the individual combinations which require them occur.

36. It has been shown that the points of the principal pieces which constitute a train of mechanism are compelled, by their

of the tangents *II*, *It* on each side of the point coincide in one straight line so that the curve *ab* cuts its tangent at that point.

Fig. 14.

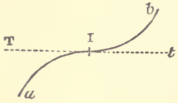


Fig. 15.

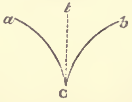
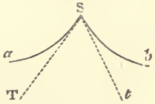


Fig. 16.



At a point of *cuspidation*, *C*, fig. 15, the curve *aC* is abruptly reflected as at *C*, so that the tangents of the two branches *Ca*, *Cb* at that point or *cusp* coalesce in one straight line *Ct*.

Fig. 17.

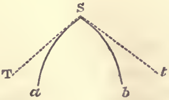
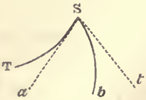


Fig. 18.



At a *salient* point, *S*, figs. 16, 17, 18, the curve *aSb* is abruptly reflected so that two tangents *ST*, *St* meet at that point of the curve at an angle *TSt*. The salient point may be *concave*, fig. 16, *convex*, fig. 17, or *concavo-convex*, fig. 18.

connection with the frame, to move each in a given path. Strictly speaking, therefore, we ought in the first place to examine the principles upon which frame-connections may be arranged so to guide a piece in any given *path-motion*, and then to show how its *time* and *direction-motions* may be governed by its mechanistic connections with its driver.

But an examination into path-motions in general would lead us at the opening of our subject into many details which, however curious and useful, belong to a class of contrivances of limited and special employment. I have, therefore, postponed this portion of the subject of mechanism to the latter part of this treatise, and have confined the first part to the motions of pieces that either rotate or move in right lines, for this is the case in the vast majority of mechanistic combinations.

It will also appear as we proceed that many of the contrivances by which motion is communicated in a rectilinear path, are the same as those by which it is given to a revolving piece, and derived from the latter by that familiar geometrical artifice by which a right line is considered as the arc of a circle whose radius is infinite. In this way much complication of classes will be avoided. Thus, for example, a pinion driving a rack is plainly the same contrivance as a pinion driving a toothed wheel, the rack being considered as a portion of a toothed wheel whose radius is infinite.

37. The path-motion of a rotating piece may be considered as *unlimited* in extent in either direction, since the piece may go on performing any number of revolutions in the same direction. But a piece that travels in a right line is necessarily *limited* in its motion either way, to the length of that line.

Again, the method by which motion is communicated from one piece to another, may be of such a nature as to limit the motion of these pieces, although, by their connection with the frame they may be capable of unlimited motion, considered apart from this connection. For example, if the driver and follower be rotating cylinders, and therefore capable of unlimited motion in either direction, the communication of motion may be effected by a string whose ends are fixed one to each cylinder, and coiled round it, so that when the driver rotates it shall communicate motion to the follower by coiling the string round itself and uncoiling it from the follower; in which case the revolutions of each cylinder are limited to the number of coils which its circumference contains when the other is empty.

It appears, then, that the motion of a pair of connected pieces may be limited either by the figure of one or both of their paths, or by the nature of their connection; and a *limited* connection may be formed between *unlimited* paths, or *vice versâ*, but if either the paths or the connection be *limited*, the motion of the pieces will be limited.

In classifying the communication of motion, however, the union of *unlimited* connections with *limited* paths, will require but little attention, as the modifications to which they lead are, in general, sufficiently obvious; but the distinction between limited and unlimited methods of communication is of more importance.

CHAPTER II.

ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

DIVISION A. COMMUNICATION OF MOTION BY ROLLING CONTACT.

CLASS A { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT. VELOCITY RATIO CONSTANT.

38. IN the rolling contact of curves rotating about fixed centers it has been shown (Art. 33) that the point of contact is always in the line of centers; and the angular velocities are inversely as the segments into which the point of contact divides that line. Therefore if the velocity ratio is constant, the segments must be constant, and the curves become circles, revolving round their centers, and whose radii are the segments, and no other curves will answer the purpose.

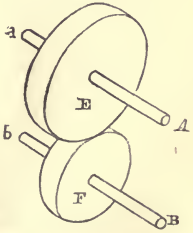
Let R be the radius of the driving circle, and r that of the following circle; L and l their synchronal rotations; then as they are (by § 20) in the ratio of the angular velocities:

$$\therefore \frac{L}{l}=\frac{r}{R}.$$

This ratio will be preserved, whatever be the absolute velocity of the driver, but when this is uniform, which is generally the case, let P and p be the respective periods of the driver and follower;

$$\therefore \text{(by § 20)} \frac{P}{p}=\frac{l}{L}=\frac{R}{r}.$$

Fig. 19.



The motions being supposed hitherto to be in the same plane, the axis of rotation of the circles will be parallel.

39. *When the axes are parallel.* Let Aa, Bb, be two parallel axes, mounted in any kind of framework that will allow them to revolve freely, but retain them parallel to each other at a constant distance, and prevent endlong motion, and let two cylinders or rollers, E, F, be fixed opposite to each other, one on

each axis, and concentric to it; the sum of their radii being equal to the distance of the axes. The cylinders will therefore be in contact in all positions, and if one of these axes, and consequently its attached cylinder, be made to revolve, its superficial motion will be communicated to the surface of the other cylinder by the adhesion of the parts which are brought successively into contact; and thus the second cylinder will be *driven* by the first by rolling contact, and their perimetral velocities will be equal.

Let R be the radius of the driver, and r of the follower; then a section of the cylinders, made by a plane passing through them at any point at right angles to the axis, will present a pair of circles in contact, whose radii are R and r;

and therefore, as before, $\frac{P}{p}=\frac{l}{L}=\frac{R}{r}$;

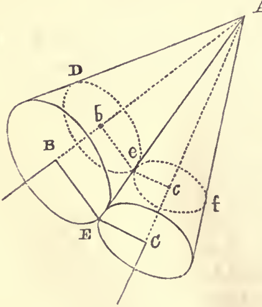
which is indeed manifest, for since the same length of circumference of the driver and of the follower passes the line of centers* in the same time, let M. circumferences of the driver, equal m. circumferences of the follower;

$$\therefore\ 2\pi RM=2\pi rm, \text{ and } \frac{M}{m}=\frac{r}{R}.$$

But the number of circumferences that pass a given point measure the number of revolutions of the wheel;

$$\therefore\ \frac{M}{m}=\frac{L}{l}=\frac{r}{R}, \text{ as before.}$$

Fig. 20.



40. If the axes of rotation be not parallel, they may either meet in direction or not, and these cases must be considered separately.

Axes meeting. Let AB, AC be two axes of rotation intersecting in A, to which are attached cones ABE, AEC, whose apices coincide with A, and which have angles at their vertices of such a magnitude that their surfaces are in contact. Let AE be the line of contact, and Dbe, ecf sections of the cones at any point e of the line and re-

* The *line of centers* is the right line which joins the centers of motion, as already stated, and, in the case of rolling circles, passes through their point of contact. The *plane of centers* is the plane which contains the two axes, whether they be parallel or intersect. These two phrases are of continual use.

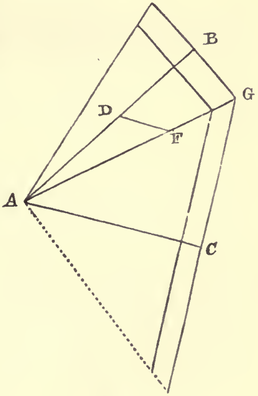
spectively perpendicular to their axes, which sections are necessarily circles touching at *e*, whose radii are *be*, *ce*. If angular velocities *A*, *a* be given to the cones *ABE*, *AEC*, the perimetral velocities of these sections will be *A.be* and *a.ce*, and if these are equal,

$$\frac{A}{a}=\frac{ce}{be}=\frac{CE}{BE}$$

a constant ratio. If then the perimetral velocities of any pair of corresponding sections be equal, those of every other such pair will be equal; therefore the cones will roll together as in the former case, and the ratio of the angular velocities be inversely as the radii of the bases of the cones.

41. In practice, a thin frustum only of each cone is employed. Let the position of the axes be given, and also the ratio of the angular velocities, it is required to describe the cones, or rather the frusta.

Fig. 21.



Let *AB*, *AC* be the axes intersecting in *A*. Through any point *D* in *AB* draw *DF* parallel to *AC*, and make *DF* : *AD* in the ratio of the angular velocity of *AB* to that of *AC*. Join *AF*, then will *AF* be the line of contact of the two cones, by means of which the required frusta may be described at any convenient distance from *A*,

for $$\frac{DF}{AD}=\frac{\sin DAF}{\sin AFD}$$

$$=\frac{\sin DAF}{\sin FAC}=\frac{BG}{CG};$$

that is, the angular velocities are in the ratio required by last Article.

Cor. The angles at the vertices of the cones may be readily found thus:

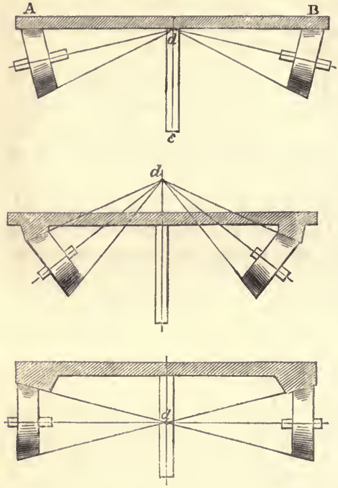
Let θ be the angle *BAC*, κ the semiangle of the vertex of the cone of *AB*, $\frac{m}{n}$ the given ratio of the angular velocities;

$$\therefore \frac{\sin \kappa}{\sin \overline{\theta-\kappa}}=\frac{m}{n}; \text{ (} m \text{ being the less)}$$

$$\text{whence } \tan \kappa = \frac{\sin \theta}{\frac{n}{m}+\cos \theta};$$

which may be adapted to logarithms by taking a subsidiary angle ϕ, so that $\cos\phi=\frac{m}{n}\cos\theta$;

Fig. 22.



whence $\tan\kappa=\dfrac{m\sin\theta}{2n\cos^2\frac{\phi}{2}}$.

If θ be a right angle, which is generally the case, then

$$\tan\kappa=\frac{m}{n}.$$

The same principle applies to the arrangement of friction rollers for the support of circular tables, as *AB* fig. 22, that are required to turn about a vertical axis, such as the 'turn-tables' of railways. Three conical rollers at least must be employed, the portion of the lower surface of the table which rests upon them must be a circular ring, flat or conical, generated by a line which meets the vertical axis of rotation of the table in the same point *d*, as that which generates the conical friction rollers as shown in the diagrams. The latter are mounted in suitable fixed supports.

42. *Axes neither parallel nor meeting.* The hyperboloid of revolution is a well-known solid, whose surface is generated by the revolution of a straight line about an axis to which it is not parallel and which it does not meet.*

* In the former edition of this work, after giving the known method of connecting pairs of parallel axes and of axes that meet in direction by employing cylinders for the former and cones for the latter, I proceeded to show that the then newly introduced skew bevil wheels for connecting axes whose directions were neither parallel nor meeting must be similarly referred to hyperboloids of revolution, and gave a simple construction to enable the proportions and relative positions of the pair of conical frusta required, as in bevil geer, to be obtained.

After twenty years had elapsed M. J. P. Bélanger, an eminent French mathematician, inserted in the *Comptes-rendus de l'Académie des Sciences*, t. lii. p. 126, 1861, a *Résumé d'une théorie de l'engrenage hyperboloïde*, which he afterwards included in his excellent treatise on *Cinematique*, Paris, 1864, p. 144. In this memoir, after giving me full credit for first showing that these solids gave the true solution of the

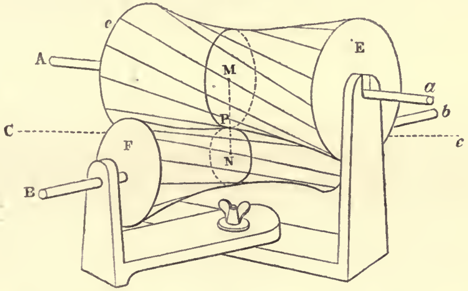
Let Aa, Bb be two axes neither parallel nor meeting, MN their shortest distance or common normal.

E, F two hyperboloids of revolution in contact along the line Cc.

P the intersection of the contact line with the common normal, which is also necessarily perpendicular to Cc.

The name of the solid is derived from the fact that, from the mode of its generation, by a right line revolving about an axis to which it is neither parallel nor meeting, it can be proved that the section of the solid by a plane passed through this axis is an hyperbola, and the axis of rotation its conjugate axis.

Fig. 23.



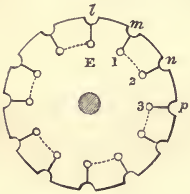
The lines traced on the curved surface at equal distances represent successive positions of the rectilinear generator. If the two solids be exactly alike in form and dimensions it is only necessary to place them in a frame so that the upper traced line of the lower solid and the lower line of the upper solid shall together coincide with the actual line of contingence of the two surfaces. Then motion given to the lower solid will by the rolling contact be imparted to the upper, and the lines drawn on the

problem, he proceeds to point out that 'M. Willis—faute d'une étude suffisamment approfondie de la question—a inexactement indiqué la détermination de ces deux surfaces, en supposant, comme d'autres auteurs l'ont admis après lui, que la génératrice de contact doit partager la plus courte distance des deux axes en deux parties réciproques aux vitesses angulaires.' The perfect truth of this criticism I am bound to admit, as well as the polite terms in which it is expressed by its able and ingenious author, to whom I feel greatly indebted. His own solution, which occupies a dozen pages and five figures, is obtained by a complex method unsuited to English readers. I have in the following pages given one which is directly derived from the rolling action of the pair of hyperboloids, and although totally different from that of my critic, has led me to expressions which are identical with his.

surfaces will come successively in pairs into contact on the common contingent line *Cc*. But as the axes of rotation are not parallel, the relative motion of each pair of lines during the short time of their mutual action is compounded of a direct approach and recess, combined with a sliding motion parallel to their common direction as will appear below.

43. The nature of these hyperboloids and their mutual action are best explained by models, in which the solid is represented by two equal disks *E*, *e* fixed to the axis *Aa*, and provided with a series of equidistant notches *l*, *m*, *n*, *p* &c. In the circumference an equal number of holes, 1, 2, 3...... are bored, one opposite to each notch, as shown in fig. 24, which represents the outside of the disk.

Fig. 24.



A string passed through *E* and secured with a knot inside is carried over the notch *l*, and thence to the corresponding notch in the opposite disk, which places the string in the position of the generator. This string is laced backwards and forwards, always carrying over the notch of the disk as *m* to the outside, then through the hole (1) next on the inside from 1 to 2, and on the outside over *n* to the opposite disk and so on. When completed this forms a skeleton frame. If two such skeletons are mounted in contact in a proper frame, in the relative positions of the figure, and revolved by hand, the respective strings will come into successive contact, sliding lengthwise in opposite directions. In practice these solids are required as above stated for the construction of toothed wheels whose axes are neither parallel nor meeting and only a comparatively thin frustum or slice of the solid is required. The successive lines on the surface are replaced by teeth which must be in the same direction as the lines to enable them to come into successive contact. Also these wheels generally require to be in pairs, of which the teeth are different; but the dimensions and relative proportions of two hyperboloids required to communicate the rotation of one axis to another in any ratio can only be effected by formulæ and constructions, which may be obtained as follows.

44. In fig. 25 the two hyperboloids are shown in contact. *EE'* is the axis of the larger, and *FN* that of the smaller, the farther part of which is concealed by being necessarily passed behind the larger one. Its general outline is, however, shown by the dotted lines.

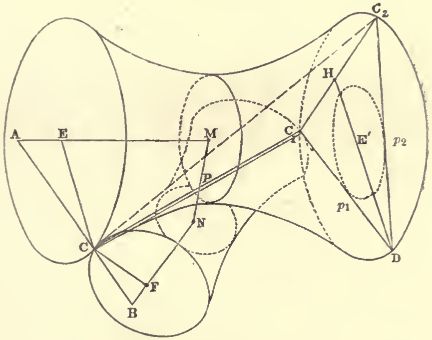
The circle of least diameter in the center of the length of the hyperboloid, assuming its extremities to have equal radii, is termed the *gorge circle.*

MPN is the common perpendicular of the axes EE', FN, and also contains the radii MP, NP of the gorge circles which touch at a point P, in this common perpendicular.

CC_1 is the contact line of the two hyperboloids, and composed of two generators of the respective surfaces which coincide along their whole length.

Now the condition required for the contact of two curved surfaces at any two points belonging respectively to these surfaces, is that the direction of the two normals shall coincide into

Fig. 25.



one right line when the two surface points come together. Manifestly this condition is fulfilled in the contact point P of the gorge circles which are not in the same plane.

To show that the same condition is complied with at every other point of the common generator, it must be observed that, through every point of the surface of a hyperboloid, as at C, it is possible to draw two lines CC_1 CC_2, both of which will coincide with the surface throughout its length, and consequently each separately would generate the surface by revolving about the axis EME'.

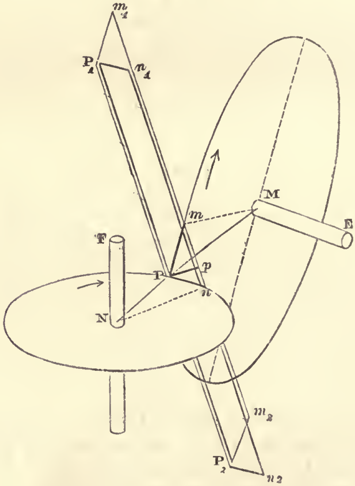
The projections of these generators on the base circle C_1DC_2 are obtained by projecting the upper extremity C on the base at D, drawing DC_1 to meet the lower extremity. This line will touch the projection $p_1E'p_2$ of the gorge circle at p_1.

A line similarly drawn from D to the extremity C_2 of the companion generator CC_2 will touch the projected circle at p_2. Join these lower extremities by a line CC_2. We have now an isosceles triangle DC_1C_2 with apex D and base C_1C_2.

This triangle, of which the two legs are in contact with the solid, determines the position of the tangent plane at their concourse at C.

A plane, DE_1CE, passing through CD and EE_1 will bisect the angle C_1DC_2, and also pass through the intersection C of the two opposite generators. But, as CC_1 is common to the two curve surfaces, and C a point of contingence, the normal CA

Fig. 26.



must be perpendicular to the plane C_1CC_2 at the apex, and in the same direction with the normal CB of the other hyperboloid.

45. Fig. 26 shows the small central circles, or *gorge circles* (as they are termed), in action.

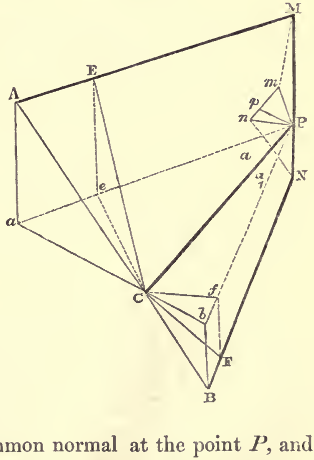
EM, FN are the respective axes, MN their common normal, P the point of contingence of the circles. P_1PP_2 is the line of contact of the two solids, along which their respective generators are also represented in coincidence.

Let the larger gorge circle move through a small angle PMm, so as to carry the radius MP into the position Mm. This will remove the point P of its generator into the position m, and the whole generator of the larger hyperboloid into the position m_1m_2 very near to the first. By the contact of the surfaces the generator of the smaller hyperboloid will be carried along with the first generator, and the motion being small, the two will remain in longitudinal contact. But the point of the second generator is carried about the axis NF in the direction Pn, and thus the whole generator is removed to the position n_1n_2, where P_1n_1, P_2n_2 are parallel to Pn. Thus the motion of the generators through a small distance is performed with a coincidence of direction, accompanied by a longitudinal sliding, measured by the ratio of $\frac{mn}{Pp}$, where Pp is the shortest distance between the successive positions.

Manifestly the motion of the larger gorge circle through the small angle mMP compels the smaller gorge circle to describe the small angle PNn. Hence as the angular velocities of two bodies are measured by the magnitude of the angles they describe simultaneously, let $\frac{w}{w_1}$ be the angular velocities of the greater and lesser hyperboloids, and R, R_1 be the radii MP, NP of the respective gorge circles.

$$\therefore \frac{w}{w_1} = \frac{Pm}{R} \times \frac{R_1}{Pn}.$$

Fig. 27.



46. In fig. 27 the leading lines of the left half of fig. 25 are delineated, with the same letters of reference and the addition of other lines for the purpose of obtaining the necessary formulæ.

MPM is the common normal composed of the two gorge radii R and R_1.

MA the axis of the greater hyperboloid, NB that of the lesser, Pab a plane passed perpendicularly through the common normal at the point P, and therefore parallel to the axes of the hyperboloids, which are projected upon this plane at Pa, Pb. PC is the position of contact of the generators, ACB the common normal of the hyperboloids at their upper extremities.

Through the extremity C of the united generators, and perpendicular to them, a plane $Aa\ bB$ is passed.

In this combination it is evident that the intersection lines of the latter plane with the previously explained elements of the figure, describe upon it two similar right-angled triangles ACa, BCb, in which $Aa = MP = R$ and $Bb = NP = R_1$.

Let the angle $CPa = a$. $CPb = a_1$.

In the plane aCP draw a line mn parallel to PC, and from P lines Pm, Pp, Pn respectively perpendicular to Pa, PC, Pb. This triangle, mPn, supposed small, is manifestly the same as the triangle mPn in fig. 26, for, in both mn is parallel to the coupled generators PC and mP, nP, pP, are in planes respectively perpendicular to the two axes and the generator.

$$\text{Consequently } \frac{Pm}{Pn} = \frac{Pa}{Pb} = \frac{\cos a_1}{\cos a} \therefore \frac{w}{w_1} = \frac{R_1 \cos a_1}{R \cos a} \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

$$\text{Now } \frac{R_1}{R} = \frac{PN}{PM} = \frac{Bb}{Aa} = \frac{bC}{aC} = \frac{\tan a_1}{\tan a} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

$$\therefore \text{By (1) and (2) } \frac{w}{w_1} = \frac{\sin a_1}{\sin a} = \frac{Cf}{Ce}.$$

Through C let a plane CeE pass, intersecting normally the axis MA in E. Therefore CE (H) is the radius of the greater hyperboloid. A second plane, CfF, through C perpendicular to the axis NB, contains the radius CF of the lesser hyperboloid $CE = \sqrt{Ee^2 + Ce^2} = \sqrt{R^2 + PC^2 \sin^2 a}$ where PC is the half-length from the gorge circle of the generators ($= G$) and similarly

$$CF = \sqrt{R_1{}^2 + PC^2 \sin^2 a_1}.$$

$$H^2 = Ee^2 + Ce^2 = R^2 + G^2.$$

when H is the greater radius of the hyperboloid.

$$H_1{}^2 = \qquad R_1{}^2 + G^2,$$

and G the half length of the generator.

If from any point of the line PC normals be drawn to meet the axes MA NB, they will be in one right line and in the constant ratio of MP to PN. If drawn very near together, they constitute a ruled surface, bounded by AM, BN, and generated by a right line, which travels in contact with those lines and with PC, but always at right angles to the latter.

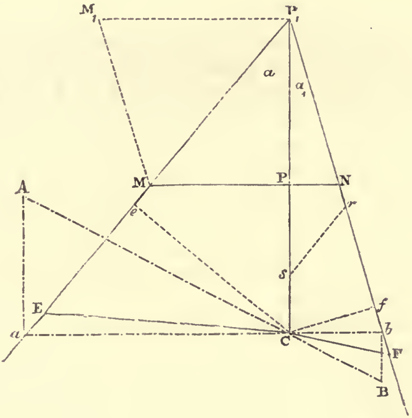
It is manifest that the same surface would be generated by a right line whose extremities rest against AB and MN, and travel on those lines with uniform velocities proportional to their lengths.

47. These formulæ may be employed either by calculation or by descriptive geometry, as shown by fig. 28 and by proceeding as follows.

From a point P_1 draw lines P_1E, P_1F of sufficient length, and making an angle $= a + a_1$.

From any point r on one line, as P_1F, draw rs parallel to the opposite line, and make rs to P_1r as w to w_1 in the given velocity ratio. Join P_1s producing N downwards. In the triangle P_1rs we have $\frac{\sin s}{\sin P_1} = \frac{P_1r}{rs} = \frac{w_1}{w}$ by construction, and the angle at s is equal to the angle PP_1M. Therefore the entire angle MP_1N is divided in the required ratio.

Fig. 28.



The length of the common normal MN being given, may be divided into its segments thus. From P_1 draw M_1P_1 perpendicular to P_1C, and equal to that given length. Also M_1M parallel to P_1F, and intersecting P_1E in M. Draw MN perpendicular to P_1C, which will be divided in P in the required ratio of $\frac{\tan a_1}{\tan a} = \frac{R_1}{R}$.

Set off on the bisecting line a length P_1C equal to the half length PC of the common generator (figs. 25 and 27), and from C drop perpendiculars Ce, Cf on the legs of the angle, and set off from e, f on those legs the respective lengths $eE=PM$ and $fF=PN$. Joining C with E and F we obtain the radii of the upper disks of the hyperboloids, and also the distances ME, NF, of the upper and lower disk from the gorge circles of those solids. For fig. 27 shows that these distances ME, NF are respectively equal to Pe, Pf already constructed in fig. 28 at P_1e, P_1f.

48. If one hyperboloid be given, and it be required to construct another to roll with it in the ratio $\frac{w}{w_1}$, the same diagram, fig. 28, may be constructed in the following order. From the given hyperboloid we obtain the angle a, the gorge radius PM, and the half length P_1C of its generator, by which the triangle P_1eC and the line MP can be drawn.

To construct the dimensions of the required hyperboloid draw an arc from C as a center with radius $Cf=Ce\frac{w}{w_1}$ and from P_1 a line P_1F touching the arc. This gives the angle a_1. Producing MP to meet P_1F at N, we obtain the radius PN of the new gorge circle, and by setting off its length from f to F and joining CF, the radius of the outer disk of the required hyperboloid.

49. In practice, as in the case of cones, a thin frustum only is required of each hyperboloid, and these frusta include so small a portion of the curve surface, that a frustum of the tangent cone at the mean point of contact may be substituted without sensible error, and may be found as follows: Set off on the axis Ee, ME, and Me equal to the given distance from the center M to the midpoint of the frustum.

Make EC perpendicular to ME, and equal to the mean radius of the frustum.

On the base line ceT draw (in plan) two semicircles, one with radius ep = the radius of the gorge plane or least corresponding segment MP of the common normal. The other with radius $ec=EC$.

From c draw cs tangent to the gorge circle meeting the outer circumference in s, project s on T, join TC intersecting the axis in t. tC is the tangent to the point C of the hyperbola, and consequently t is the apex of the tangent cone required.

This construction is given by Le Roy, *Géométrie descriptive*, 1834, p. 73, No. 148. cs is the plan of that generator, CT, which touches the hyperbola at C.

50. The wheels may be placed so that their mid-planes coincide with the gorge circles of their hyperboloidal frusta. These frusta

must be made in the form of a thick pulley, with a shallow concave groove in its circumference.

When these pullies are placed together, contact takes place along a line, as in the former arrangement, which determines the direction of the teeth.

Fig. 29.

The mean and extreme radii of the pullies may be obtained by the construction already given by setting off from *N* upon the lines *NF*, fig. 28, the half thickness of one of the pullies, and proceeding as before to determine that of the other, and also the radii of the extreme diameter of the pulley. The construction, fig. 31, shows how by

Fig. 30.

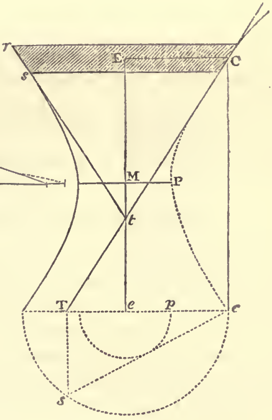
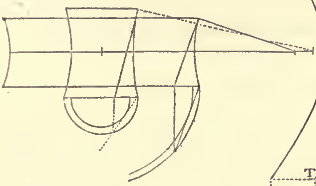


Fig. 31.



proceeding in the same manner as in fig. 30, the radius may be obtained by which approximate circular arcs are described, which are the respective sections of the concave grooves of the pullies. Or these radii may be obtained on the assumption that they may be considered as the radii of curvature of the hyperbola, which by rotation about the axis of the pulley generates its section. This radius is equal to the latus rectum of the hyperbola.

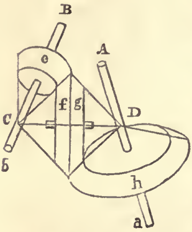
51. This third case of axes, neither parallel nor meeting,

* Vide p. 34, above.

admits of solution by means of the cones of the second case; thus: *

Let Aa, Bb be the two axes, take a third line intersecting the axes at any convenient points C and D respectively; and let a short axis be mounted so as to revolve in the direction of this third line between the other two axes.

Fig. 32.



Now a pair of rolling cones, e, f, with a common apex at c, will communicate motion from the axis Bb to the intermediate axis; and another pair g, h, with a common apex at D, will communicate motion from the intermediate axis to Aa; and thus the rotation of Bb is communicated to Aa by pure rolling contact.

Let A, $A_{,}$, a, be the respective angular velocities of the axes Bb, CD, Aa; and R, $R_{,}$, r the radii of the bases of their cones, those of the cones, f, g, being the same;

$$\therefore \frac{A}{A_{,}}=\frac{R_{,}}{R}, \text{ and } \frac{A_{,}}{a}=\frac{r}{R_1}, \text{ whence } \frac{A}{a}=\frac{r}{R},$$

exactly as if the cones e, h, were in immediate contact.

To apply these Solutions to Practice.

52. Theoretically we have now the complete solution of the problem in all the three cases; having shown how to find a pair of cylinders in the first case, and of conical frusta in the other cases, by which a given angular velocity ratio will be effected. If these solids could be formed with mathematical precision, then, the axes having been once adjusted in distance so that the surfaces should touch in one position, they would touch in every other position; but in practice this is impossible, and various artifices are employed to maintain the adhesion upon which the communication of motion depends.

The surface of one or both rollers may be covered with thick leather, which by giving elasticity to the surface enables it to maintain adhesional contact, notwithstanding any small errors of form.

One of the axes may be either made to run in slits at its extremities instead of round holes, or else it may be mounted in a swing frame. Both methods allowing of a little variation of

* Vide Hachette *Traité des Machines*, second edition, 1819, p. 313, N. 81. The figure is copied from Poncelet, *Mécanique industrielle*, p. 300.

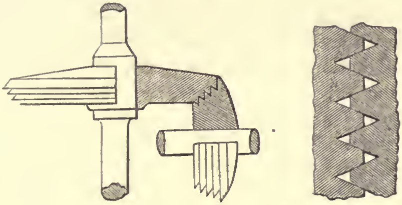
distance between the two axes, the contact of the rollers will in this way also be maintained, notwithstanding small errors of form.

If the weight of the uppermost roller is not sufficient to produce the required adhesion, or if the rollers lie with their axes in the same horizontal plane, then weights or springs may be employed to press the axes together. The practical details of these methods belong rather to the department of Constructive Mechanism than to the plan of the present work.

Another method is to provide the circumferences of two wheels in rolling contact with three or four angular grooves in the manner shown in fig. 33.

The bottoms of the grooves in the right hand section are of an acute angular section, but the projecting edges which separate them are finished with fillets, so as to allow the projections to be mutually wedged into the hollows. This method appears to have

Fig. 33.



been introduced and patented by Mr. Robertson, who terms it 'wedge and grooved frictional geering.'

In the Paris Exposition of 1855, M. Minotto exhibited a model of wedge and groove rollers, in which only one groove was used. This device was termed 'engrenage à coin.'

53. But the most certain method of maintaining the action of the surfaces is to provide them with teeth. The plain cylindrical or conical surfaces of contact are exchanged for a series of projecting ridges with hollow spaces between. These ridges or *teeth* are distributed at equal distances from each other on the two surfaces, and generally in the direction of planes passing through the axis, so that when the driving wheel is turned, its teeth enter in succession the spaces between those of the follower. They are so adjusted that before one tooth has quitted its corresponding space the next in succession will have entered the next space, and so on continually; consequently, the surfaces cannot escape

from each other, and there can be no slipping, notwithstanding slight errors of form.

The action of this contrivance falls partly under the head of rolling contact, and partly under that of sliding contact; for the teeth considered separately act against each other by sliding contact, and the forms of their acting surfaces must be determined, as we shall see, upon that principle.

On the other hand, the total action of a pair of toothed wheels upon each other is analogous to that of rolling contact. Equal lengths of the two circumferences contain equal numbers of teeth, and therefore equal lengths will pass the line of centers in the same time, if measured by the unit of the space occupied by one tooth and a hollow between. In fact, the adhesion which enables the surface of one plain roller to communicate motion to another arises from the roughness of the surfaces, the irregular projections of one indenting themselves between those of the other, or pressing against similar projections; and the contrivance of teeth is merely a more complete development of this mode of action, by giving to these projections a regular form and arrangement. I shall proceed therefore to explain in this section all that relates to the general action, arrangement, and construction of toothed wheels; leaving the exact form of the individual teeth to the next section, and observing, that this arrangement corresponds to the ordinary practical view of the subject; for all that belongs to the complete action or construction of a pair of toothed wheels is always referred to a pair of corresponding rolling circles, which are termed the *pitch circles*, or *geometrical circles*, or to plain cylinders, cones, and hyperboloids, which may be called pitch solids.

54. *Geering* is a general term applied to trains of toothed wheels. Two toothed wheels are said to be *in geer* when they have their teeth engaged together, and to be *out of geer* when they are separated so as to be put out of action; and generally speaking, a driver and follower, whatever be the nature of their connection, are said to be in geer when the connection is completely adjusted for action, and out of geer when the connection is interrupted.

55. Toothed wheels with few teeth are termed *pinions*. This phrase is merely to be considered as the diminutive of *toothed wheel*; and there is no impropriety or ambiguity in calling a pinion a toothed wheel, if more convenient.

56. The teeth of wheels may be either made in one piece with the body or rim of the wheel, or they may be each made of a separate piece and framed into the rim of the wheel.

The first method is employed in cast-iron wheels of all sizes, from the largest to the smallest; also for brass or other metal wheels in smaller machinery, which are formed out of plain discs by cutting out a series of equidistant notches round the circumference, and thus leaving the teeth standing.

Figure 34 *A* and *C*, represents the form of the modern cast-iron wheels, in which, for the sake of uniting lightness and stiffness, a thin web or fin runs along the inner edge of the rim and on each side of the arms, so that the transverse section of the arm is a cross.

Fig. 34.

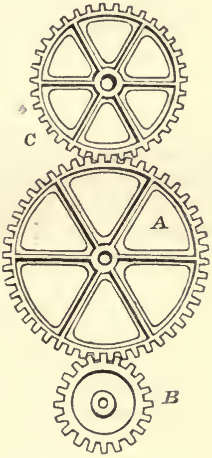
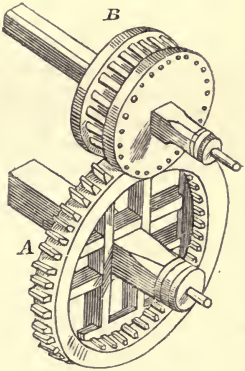


Fig. 35.

Fig. 36.



This cruciform section was abandoned soon after the publication of the first edition of the present work and replaced by an elliptical section (fig. 35).

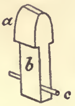
In smaller wheels the arms are omitted, as at *B*, and the rim of teeth united to the central boss by a thin continuous plate. These wheels are *plate* wheels, and when arms are employed, wheels are said to be *crossed out*; but this phrase rather belongs to clock-work. Wooden wheels in one piece with their teeth are too weak to be trusted beyond the construction of models, or wheel-work which transmits little pressure. The wheels of Dutch clocks of the coarser kind are constructed in this manner.

57. Figure 36 exemplifies the construction of mill-work, and larger machinery, previous to the introduction of cast-iron wheels by Messrs. Smeaton and Rennie, at the latter end of the last

century.* The wheel *A* is framed of wood, not like carriage-wheels with radial spokes, but with two pair of parallel bars set at right angles, so as to leave a square opening in the midst for the reception of the shaft, which is also of wood, and square, and the opening being purposely left larger than the section of the shaft, the wheel is secured upon it by driving wedges in the intermediate space. This frame carries the rim of the wheel, which is made truly cylindrical on the outer surface, and annular in front. Equidistant mortises are pierced through the rim in number equal to those of the teeth or *cogs*, as they are called, when made in separate pieces.

The cogs are made of well-seasoned hard wood, such as mountain-beech, hornbeam, or hickory; the grain is laid in the direction of the length, which, being the radial direction, gives them the greatest transverse strength. A cog consists of a head *a*, and a shank *b*, of which the head is the acting part or actual tooth which projects beyond the rim, and the shank or tenon is made to fit its mortise exceedingly tight, and is left long enough to project on the inside of the rim. When the cog is driven into its mortise up to its shoulders a pin *c* is inserted in a hole bored close under the rim of the wheel, by which it is secured in its place.

Fig. 37.



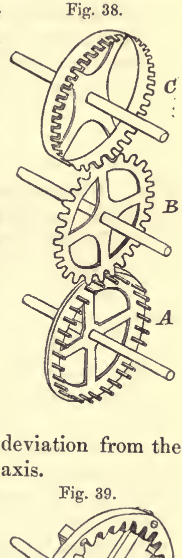
58. This construction of a toothed wheel has been partly imitated in modern mill-work, for it is found that if in a pair of wheels the teeth of one be cast-iron, and in the other of wood, that the pair work together with much less vibration and consequent noise, and that the teeth abrade each other less than if both wheels of the pair had iron teeth. Hence in the best engines one wheel of every large sized pair has wooden cogs fitted to it exactly in the manner just described; only that instead of employing a wooden-framed wheel to receive them, a cast-iron wheel with mortises in its circumference is employed. Such a wheel is termed a *mortise wheel*.

Wheels of the kind hitherto described, in which the teeth are placed radially on the circumference, whether the teeth be in one piece with the wheel, or separate, are termed *spur-wheels*; and when the term *pinion* is applied to a wheel its teeth are usually called *leaves*.

* Mr. Smeaton was the first who began to use cast-iron in mill-work at the Carron Ironworks, in 1769. It was first employed for the large axes of water-wheels, and soon afterwards for large cog-wheels; but the complete introduction of it is due to Mr. Rennie.—Vide *Farey on the Steam Engine*, p. 443.

59. The pinions in large wooden machinery were commonly formed by inserting the extremities of wooden cylinders into equidistant holes, in two parallel discs attached to the axis or shaft,* as at *B* (fig. 36), thus forming a kind of cage, which is termed a *lantern, trundle,* or *wallower*; the cylindrical teeth being named its *staves, spindles,* or *rounds.* This construction was very strong, and the circular section of its teeth or *staves* gave it the advantage of a very smooth motion when the *lantern* was *driven,* as will be shown in its proper place. In Dutch clock-work this plan is imitated on a small scale, and small wire used for the staves.

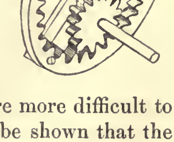
Fig. 38.



60. A similar system to this is of great antiquity, for in early machinery the toothed wheels were often cut out of thin metal plates, fig. 38; and it would be obviously impossible to make a pair of such thin wheels work together; for the smallest deviation of one of the wheels from the plane of rotation of the pair, would cause the teeth to lose hold of each other sideways. For this reason one of the wheels of a pair was always made either in the lantern form as just described, or with pins inserted at one end only into a disc, as at *A*, or else the teeth of one of the wheels were cut out of a hoop, as at *C*, forming what is termed a crown wheel, or contrate wheel.

In this figure it is evident that the thin wheel *B* would retain hold of the pins of *A*, or of the teeth of *C*, notwithstanding a little deviation from the plane of rotation, or a little end-play in the axis.

Fig. 39.



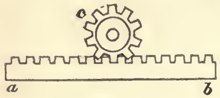
61. *Annular wheels* have their teeth cut on the inside edge of an annulus, so that the pinion which works with them shall lie within the pitch circle. Hence *the two axes revolve in the same direction.* The arms of an annular wheel necessarily lie behind the annulus, in order to make room for the pinion, and the latter must be fixed at the extremity of its axis, otherwise this will stop the wheel by passing between the arms. Annular wheels are more difficult to execute than common spur-wheels, but it will be shown that the

* *Axis* is the general and scientific word, *shaft* the millwright's general term, and *spindle* his term for smaller shafts; *axle* is the wheelwright's word, and *arbor* the watchmaker's.

action of their teeth is smoother. A pin-wheel like *A*, fig. 38, may be employed as an annular wheel, and is much easier to construct.

62. When the path of one of the pieces is rectilinear, or, in other words, if it be a sliding piece, then the teeth are cut on the edge of a bar attached to this piece, so that the teeth may work with those of the wheel or pinion, which is to drive or follow it, as in this figure, where the bar *ab* is supposed to be confined by proper guides, so as to move only in the direction of its length, and the pinion *c* to geer with it either as a driver or a follower.

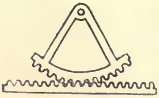
Fig. 40.



Such a toothed bar is termed a *rack*. The teeth admit of all the different forms and arrangements of which the teeth of wheels in general are susceptible; the rack being merely a toothed wheel whose radius is infinite. Similarly, an annular wheel may be considered as a toothed wheel whose radius is negative.

63. If the space through which the bar moves is less than the circumference of the wheel, the latter may assume the form of a sector, as in this figure.

Fig. 41.



64. All these examples belong to the first case of position in the axes, that is, when they are parallel; but the second case, in which their directions meet, presents itself also very early in the history of mechanism.

A water-wheel, for example, has its axis necessarily horizontal, and near the surface of the water. The axis of a mill-stone, on the other hand, is vertical, and it is convenient to place the latter in an upper floor of the building. This is the disposition of the water-mill of Vitruvius, and is in fact universal.

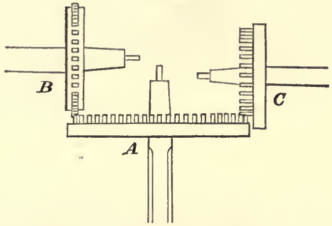
But the exact method of deriving the form of the toothed wheels from a pair of rolling cones, was not introduced until the middle of the last century, when its mathematical principles were completely laid down by Camus, in 1766.*

* Camus, *Cours de Mathématique*, Paris, 1766. The part relating to toothed wheels has been printed separately in England, and is well known. The principle of rolling cones was first published in England by Imison. In his treatise of the *Mechanical Powers*, 1787, he uses the term *bevel geer*, and speaks of such wheels as well known. Schottus, however, or rather his 'Amicus,' in *Technica Curiosa*, 1664, p. 621, describes toothed wheels of various kinds, and amongst them *Conica convexa Rota*, when the teeth are arranged on the surface of a truncated cone, and *conica concava* when on the interior superficies, and at p. 644 employs them to communicate motion between axes or shafts at any angle used to convey the motion of a clock to dial work in the tower above.

He also mentions annular wheels under the name *Cylindrica concava Rota*, and

Previously to this it was thought sufficient to dispose the teeth of the wheels, as in this figure, upon the face of one of the wheels as *A*, so as to catch those of an ordinary spur-wheel *B* with teeth on the circumference; or else to place the teeth of both wheels on the face, as in those of *A* and *C*. Sometimes the teeth of both wheels were placed on the circumference, as in the ordinary spur-wheels; with this difference, that the teeth require to be much

Fig. 42.



longer, to enable them to lay hold of each other in this relative position. For the forms of the individual teeth no certain principles were followed, and for the arrangements in question the only principle appears to have been to place the teeth so that on passing the line or rather plane of centers,* the teeth should present themselves in the same relative position as if they belonged to a pair of wheels with parallel axes.

A similar principle is, indeed, clearly stated by De la Hire, in the extract which follows the next paragraph.

65. When the axes intersected each other at right angles, and one of them revolved much quicker than the other, a cylindrical lantern was universally given to the latter, and the teeth of the former placed on its face, as in fig. 43, at *A* and *B*. This form and arrangement is found in mills of all kinds, from the earliest known printed figures to the wooden mill-work of the last century.

The wheel *B* is termed a face wheel; it generally revolved in a vertical plane. This figure is copied from one in De la Hire's 'Mechanics,'† in a chapter where he proposes to show how the

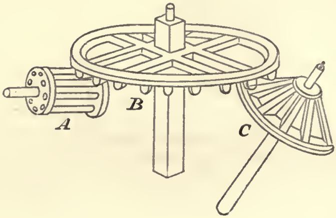
gives the name *Annularis Rota* or *Annulus Rotatilis* to a revolving toothed ring 'which has no solid connection with an axis,' and must consequently be guided at the circumference by rollers or fixed studs.

* Vide note, p. 30.

† De la Hire's *Treatise on Mechanics*, Par. 1695. Prop. lxvi. This was early translated into English, in part, by Mandey, in his *Mechanical Powers*, 1709, p. 304.

direction of motion may be changed by toothed wheels; and after giving the cylindrical lantern *A* for the case of axes at right angles, he proceeds to axes inclined at any other angle, thus:—'If a lantern *C* be constructed having staves inclined to the axis at any given angle, then will the horizontal motion of the power be changed into a motion inclined to it at any angle we please,

Fig. 43.



provided only that the staves of this lantern *C* must be so arranged that they come successively into the horizontal position at the moment of meeting the teeth of the wheel *B*, in order that they may apply themselves to the teeth in the same manner as if this lantern was like the other *B*. These changes of direction in motions may be of great use in machinery.'

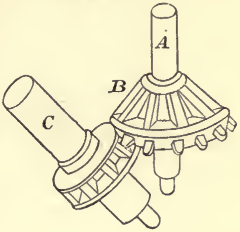
It is interesting to remark, that upon the authority of this conical lantern the invention of *bevil geer* has been attributed to De la Hire, when it is plain that the principle of rolling cones, which is essential to them, has nothing whatever to do with this arrangement; which is solely founded upon the notion of presenting the teeth to each other at the plane of centers, in the same relative position as in spur or face-wheels. The apex of the cone is turned in the wrong direction for bevil-wheels, and the cylindrical lantern is employed for the axes at right angles.

66. But the necessity of changing the direction of motion through other angles than right angles had arisen long before the time of De la Hire; suggested, as I believe, by the use of the Archimedean screw for raising water, which appears to have been a great favourite with the early mechanists, and which from its nature must be placed in an inclined direction. Fig. 44, for example, is part of a complex piece of mill-work extracted from one of the early printed collections of machinery.* The object of the mechanism in question is to enable a water-wheel to give

* *Le Diverse et Artificiose Machine del Capitano A. Ramelli.* Par. 1580, ch. xlviii.

motion to a series of three Archimedean screws placed one above the other. A face-wheel, carried by the axis of the water-wheel, geers with a trundle (Art. 56) at the lower extremity of a vertical axis, which extends to the top of the building, and of which A is a portion.

Fig. 44.

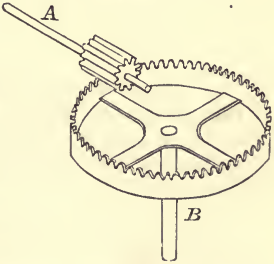


Three conical wheels, similar to B, are placed one opposite to the lower end of each screw, as C, which it turns by geering with a square-staved trundle, as shown in the figure.

These conical wheels are derived from the common spur-wheel, by the same principle of placing the teeth so that they shall, in crossing the line of centers, lie in the same relative position as if the axis of the wheel had been parallel to that of the trundle; which principle it was, in this case, oddly enough, thought necessary to extend also to the spokes or arms of the wheel.

67. The common *crown-wheel* and pinion, fig. 45, which is used in clock and watch-work, in cases where axes meet at right angles, is another example of the same principle. The axis A, which carries the pinion, is at right angles to B, which carries the crown-wheel.

Fig. 45.



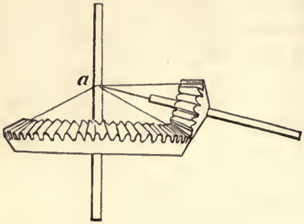
The teeth are cut on the edge of a hoop, and the action of the pinion upon them is nearly the same as if it worked with a rack; the combination being made on the presumption, that the curvature of that portion of the hoop whose teeth are engaged is so small, that it may be neglected; in which case, the hoop coincides with a rack which is tangent to it, along its line of intersection with the plane of centers, and which travels in a direction perpendicular to that plane.

The *crown-wheel* is often termed a *contrate wheel.*

68. *To form a pair of bevil-wheels,* a pair of conical frusta having been described (by Art. 41) to suit the required angular positions of the axes and the given velocity ratio, the smooth surface of these cones must be exchanged for a regular series of equidistant teeth, projecting nearly as much beyond the surface

as the intermediate hollows lie below it, and directed to the apex of the cone, so that a line passing through this apex shall, if brought into contact with any part of the side of a tooth, touch it along its whole length. Thus the contact of one tooth with another will also take place along the line; whereas in face geering the contact of the teeth is between two convex surfaces at a point only.

Fig. 46.



69. It may happen that the common apex of the two cones shall lie so that one of them becomes a plane surface, as in fig. 47; in which case the teeth become radial. Also one of the cones may even be hollow, as in fig. 48.

Fig. 47.

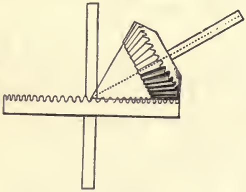
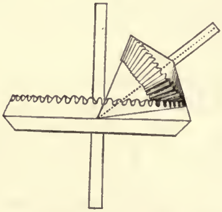


Fig. 48.



For every given position of the axes, however, we have a choice of two positions for the wheel which belongs to that shaft whose direction is carried past the other. In these last figures this wheel is placed below, but if it had been above, a different and smaller pair of cones would have been obtained for the given velocity ratio, in which these peculiarities of form would have been avoided.

Fig. 49.

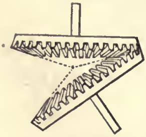


Fig. 49 shows a mode of disposing bevil-wheels when two shafts meet in direction.

Fig. 50 is another mode of constructing the same combination which admits of a steady support for the shafts at their point of intersection.

70. When the axes are inclined to each other without meeting in direction, an intermediate double bevil-wheel may be employed, arranged as in Art. 51, or else frusta are employed, which are derived from the tangent cones of a pair of hyperboloids. (Arts. 42–50.)

The direction of their teeth or flutes must be inclined to the base of the frustum, to enable them to come into contact; and the oblique position thus given to teeth has procured for wheels of this kind the name of *Skew Bevils.* If the teeth be cut in the

Fig. 50.

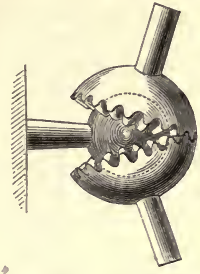
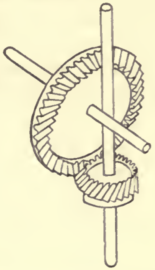


Fig. 51.



direction of the generating line of each hyperboloid, they will obviously meet, since this line is the line of contact of the two surfaces. The mode of projecting this line of contact has been already shown.

But this question was disposed of by the older mechanists upon the principle of face-wheel geering, the teeth being merely arranged in positions that caused them to pass at the instant of contact, in the same relative positions as if the axes had been parallel, or meeting in direction.

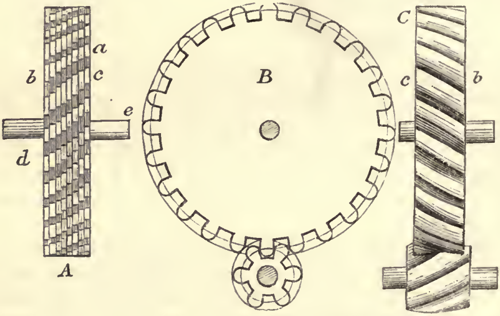
71. It has been already shown that there is no rubbing friction when the point of contact of two edges is on the line of centers. Of this Dr. Hooke was certainly aware, as appears from his remarkable contrivance to get rid of the friction of wheel-work. This, to use his own words, 'I called the perfection of wheel-work; an invention which I made and produced before the Royal Society in 1666.'

'It is, in short, first, to make a piece of wheel-work so that both the wheel and pinion, though of never so small a size, shall have as great a number of teeth as shall be desired, and yet neither weaken the work, nor make the teeth so small as not to be practicable by any ordinary workman. Next, that the motion shall be so equally communicated from the wheel to the pinion, that the work being well made, there can be no inequality of force or motion communicated. Thirdly, that the point of touching and bearing shall be always in the line that joins the two centers together. Fourthly, that it shall have no manner of rubbing, nor be more difficult to be made than the common way of wheel-work, save only that workmen have not been accustomed to make it.'*

This fourth condition of no rubbing is, however, as we have seen (Art. 33), necessarily included in the third.

First, then, if there be a certain large number of teeth required to be made in a small wheel, then must the wheel and pinion consist of several plates or wheels lying one beside the other, as in this figure *A*, where eight plates of equal thickness and size, are each cut into a wheel of twenty-five teeth, as shown in front

Fig. 52.



elevation at *B*; the wheels are fitted close together upon one arbor *de*, and fixed in such order that the teeth of the successive plates follow each other with such steps that the last tooth of each group may within one step answer to the first tooth of the next group. Thus, reckoning from *a* to *b*, the teeth follow each other in equidistant steps of such a magnitude that *b* is distant one such step from *c*, the first tooth of the next group.

The pinion being constructed upon a similar principle, and of the same number of plates, it is clear that the inequalities in the touching, bearing, or rubbing of such wheel-work, would be no more than what would be between the two next teeth of one of the sets, that is, about the same as in a wheel of 200 teeth, and yet the teeth are as large as those of a wheel of 25 teeth.

Secondly, if it be desired that the wheel and pinion should have infinite teeth, all the ends of the teeth must, by a diagonal slope, be filed off and reduced to a straight or rather a spiral edge, as in *C*, which may indeed be best made by one plate of a

* Vide *Cutlerian Lectures*, by R. Hooke, No. 2, entitled *Animadversions on the first part of the Machina Cœlestis*, 1674, p. 70.

convenient thickness, which thickness must be more or less according to the bigness of the sloped tooth. And this is to be always observed in the cutting thereof, that the end of one slope tooth on the one side be full as forward as the beginning of the next tooth on the other: that is, that the end *b* of one tooth on the right side be full as low as *c*, the beginning of the next tooth on the left side.

Thus far I have employed nearly the words of Hooke, who has, however, said nothing respecting the *form* of the teeth, which must evidently, in the second system, be so shaped as to begin and end contact upon the very line of centers; the mode of effecting which will appear in Chapter V.* The contact of the teeth will be at every instant at a single point, which point will, as the wheel revolves, travel from one side of the wheel to the other; a fresh contact always beginning on the first side, just before the last contact has quitted the other side. And as the point of contact is always on the line, or rather plane, of centers, it is strictly rolling, and there will be no sliding or friction between the teeth.

Hooke's system has been several times re-invented, for example, by Mr. White, of Manchester, who patented it before 1808;† and endeavoured, in vain, to introduce it into the machinery of that place. The motion of such wheel-work is remarkably smooth and free from vibratory action, but it has the defect of introducing an endlong pressure upon the axes, occasioned by the obliquity of the surfaces of contact to the planes of rotation. But there are many cases in which this property, when understood and provided for, would not be injurious. The first form of Hooke's geering, in which it appears as separate concentric wheels, as at *A*, has been employed successfully in cases where smooth action is necessary;‡ and is free from the oblique pressure, but loses the advantage of the perfect rolling action.

On Pitch.

72. Let *N* and *n* be the numbers of teeth of the driver and follower respectively, then as the teeth are equally spaced upon

* I have there shown that the simplest mode of effecting this object is to make the flanks of the teeth radial, and the portion of tooth that lies beyond the pitch line a complete semicircle whose center is upon that line, as in fig. 52 *B*.

† Vide White's *Century of Inventions*, 1822; *Memoirs of Lit. and Phil. Soc. of Manchester*; also Sheldrake, *Theory of Inclined Plane wheels*, 1811. It has besides been reproduced as new in America, and in London, under the name of a Helix Lever.

‡ I have seen it in a planing engine by Mr. Collier, of Manchester.

the circumference of the two wheels, these numbers are proportional to the circumferences and radii of their respective wheels; hence

$$\frac{N}{n} = \frac{R}{r} = \frac{P}{p} = \frac{l}{L}. \quad \text{(Vide Art. 39.)}$$

73. The *pitch circle* of a toothed wheel is the circle whose diameter is equal to that of a cylinder, the rolling action of which would be equivalent to that of the toothed wheel (Art. 50); therefore in the above equation R and r are the radii of the pitch circles of the driver and follower respectively; these rolling cylinders being the limit to which the toothed wheels approach, as their teeth are indefinitely diminished in size and increased in number, the distance of the axes remaining the same.

This circle is variously termed the pitch circle of the wheel, the primitive circle, or the geometrical circle. I prefer the term pitch, as less liable to ambiguity, and as, I believe, the one most usually employed. In conical wheels the pitch circle will be the base of the frustum.

74. Let the circumference of the pitch circle be divided into equal parts, in number the same as that of the teeth to be given to the wheel; the length of one of these parts is termed the *pitch* of the teeth, or of the wheel, and evidently contains within itself the exact distance occupied by one complete *tooth and space.* The word *space* is employed here in its technical meaning, as denoting the hollow or gap that separates each tooth from the neighbouring one.

Let C be the pitch, D the diameter of the pitch circle, both expressed in inches and parts; and let N be the number of teeth, then $NC = \pi D$;* from which expression if any two of the quantities C, D, N be given, the third may be found. The arithmetical rules which are immediately deducible from this equation are in constant requisition amongst millwrights.

75. In English practice it has been found convenient to employ only a given number of standard values for the pitch, instead of using an indefinite number. The values most commonly chosen are 1 in., $1\frac{1}{8}$ in., $1\frac{1}{4}$ in., $1\frac{1}{2}$ in., 2 in., $2\frac{1}{2}$ in., 3 in. And it very rarely happens that any intermediate values are necessary. Below inch pitch the values $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{3}{8}$, $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{5}{8}$, and $\frac{3}{4}$, are perhaps sufficient.

These remarks apply to cast-iron wheels principally, as the great utility of this system of definite values for the pitch resides

* Where $\pi = 3{\cdot}1415$. The millwrights commonly use $\frac{22}{7}$ for π.

in its limiting the number of founders' patterns. Cast-iron teeth of less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. pitch are seldom employed; and, for machinery of a less size than this, the wheels would be cut out of discs of metal in a cutting engine. Nevertheless the same system of sizes might be introduced with advantage into wheels of this latter kind.

76. Since the values of C are few and definite, the use of the expression $NC = \pi D$ may be facilitated by calculating beforehand the values of $\frac{C}{\pi}$ and $\frac{\pi}{C}$ that belong to these cases.

For $N = \frac{\pi}{C}.D$, and $D = \frac{C}{\pi}.N$; and the following table furnishes the factor corresponding to each of the established values of the pitch, by the use of which the number of teeth may be readily found for any given diameter, or *vice versâ.*

Pitch in inches	$\frac{\pi}{C}$	$\frac{C}{\pi}$
3	1·0472	·9548
$2\frac{1}{2}$	1·2566	·7958
2	1·5708	·6366
$1\frac{1}{2}$	2·0944	·4774
$1\frac{1}{4}$	2·5132	·3978
$1\frac{1}{8}$	2·7924	·3580
1	3·1416	·3182
$\frac{3}{4}$	4·1888	·2386
$\frac{5}{8}$	5·0265	·1988
$\frac{1}{2}$	6·2832	·1590
$\frac{3}{8}$	8·3776	·1194
$\frac{1}{4}$	12·5664	·0796

EXAMPLES.

Given, a wheel of 42 teeth, 2 inch pitch, to find the diameter of the pitch circle. Here the factor corresponding to the pitch is ·6366, which multiplied by 42 gives 26·7 inches for the diameter required.

Given, a wheel of four feet diameter, $2\frac{1}{2}$ pitch, to find the number of teeth; the factor is 1·257, which multiplied by 48, the diameter in inches, gives 60 for the number of teeth.

Given, a wheel of $30\frac{1}{2}$ inches diameter, and 96 teeth, to find the pitch. Here $\frac{D}{N}=\frac{30{\cdot}5}{96}=\cdot 317=\frac{C}{\pi}$; which value of $\frac{C}{\pi}$ corresponds in the table to inch pitch.

Questions of this kind are continually occurring in the execution of machinery; and simple as the calculation may appear to a mathematician, they require more multiplication and division than is always at the command of a workman. By way of simplifying the expression of the relations between the size of the teeth, their number, and the diameter of the pitch circle, a different mode of sizing the teeth in small machinery has been adopted in Manchester, which may be thus explained.

77. Suppose the diameter of the pitch circle to be divided into as many equal parts as the wheel has teeth; and let one of these parts be taken for a modulus instead of the pitch hitherto employed; and accordingly, let the few necessary values be assigned to it in simple fractions of the inch. Call this new modulus the *diametral pitch* of a wheel, to distinguish it from the common pitch, which may be named the *circular pitch*, and let M be the diametral pitch;

$\therefore \frac{D}{N}=M$, and, as M is a simple fraction of the inch, let $M=\frac{1}{m}$;

$\therefore mD=N$, in which N and m are always whole numbers.

The values of m, commonly employed, are 20, 16, 14, 12, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3; and all wheels being made to correspond to one of the classes indicated by these numbers, the diameter or number of teeth of any required wheel is ascertained with much less calculation than in the common system of circular pitch.

This table* shows the value of the circular pitch C, corresponding to the selected values of m already given.

* This table originated in the well-known factory of Sharp, Roberts, and Co. at Manchester. It is an excellent example of the perfect methods employed in the smaller class of mill-work, or cast-iron mechanism. In this system, a wheel in which $m=10$ would be called a ten-pitch wheel, and so on.

m	C, in decimals of inch	C, in inches to nearest $\frac{1}{16}$
3	1·047	1
4	·785	$\frac{3}{4}$
5	·628	$\frac{5}{8}$
6	·524	$\frac{1}{2}$
7	·449	$\frac{7}{16}$
8	·393	$\frac{3}{8}$
9	·349	
10	·314	$\frac{5}{16}$
12	·262	$\frac{1}{4}$
14	·224	
16	·196	$\frac{3}{16}$
20	·157	$\frac{1}{8}$

Since $\frac{D}{N} = M$, we have $M = \frac{C}{\pi}$; therefore the diametral pitch is the quantity which has been calculated in the second column of the table in page 57. In fact, it is easy to see that this scheme differs from the first, merely in expressing in small whole numbers the quantity $\frac{\pi}{C}$ instead of C.

In small machinery, of the kind that would be classed as clock or watch-work, and in which the wheels are cut out of plain discs by means of a cutting engine, the size of the teeth is often denoted by stating the number of them contained in an inch of the circumference, which may vary from about four to twenty-five. The word pitch is unknown to clockmakers, and their pitch circle is termed the geometrical circle; but, for the sake of uniformity, I shall apply the term pitch indifferently to all kinds of wheel-work. In cut wheels it is necessary to calculate the pitch for the purpose of obtaining the size of the cutter, which, as it operates by cutting out the spaces between the teeth, ought of course to be exactly of the same form and breadth as those spaces. When the number of teeth and geometrical diameter of a wheel are given, the pitch of these small teeth may be determined, in decimals of the inch, from the general expressions already given for the teeth of mill-work; and after the forms of the teeth have been described according to the methods contained in the next chapter, the shape and size of the cutter will be obtained.

CHAPTER III.

ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

DIVISION A. COMMUNICATION OF MOTION BY ROLLING CONTACT.

CLASS B. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT. VELOCITY RATIO VARYING.

78. THE elementary combinations by rolling contact, which are the subject of the preceding chapters, include those which are employed in all the largest and most important machines; for the parts of heavy machinery are always made to move with uniform velocity, if possible; and consequently with a constant velocity ratio and directional relation to each other. In the combinations by rolling contact which are to be considered in this chapter, the velocity ratio varies and the directional relation is constant.

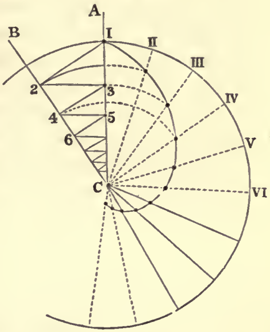
79. It has been already shown, in Art. 35, that when a pair of curves revolving in the same plane about parallel axes in contact are of such a form as to roll together, the point of contact remains in the line of centers. The two radii of contact coincide therefore with this line, and the tangents of the angles made by the common tangent of the curves at the point of contact with their radii respectively are the same.

80. Ex. 1. In the *logarithmic spiral* the tangent makes a constant angle with the radius vector. Let two equal logarithmic spirals be placed in reverse positions, and made to turn round their respective poles as centers of motion, and let these centers be fixed at any distance that will permit the curves to be in contact. Then in every position of contact the common tangent will make the same angle with the radius vector of one curve that it makes on the opposite side with the radius vector of the other. The two radii of contact will therefore be in one line, and coincide with the line of centers, and hence, *equal logarithmic spirals are rolling curves.*

The logarithmic spiral does not return to itself, and is therefore unsuitable as a foundation for wheels which revolve continuously. But it may be employed for the extremities of levers which move each other by actual contact through angles of moderate extent. It is readily laid down by points in the manner shown in the fig. 53, which is due to Mr. Nicholson.

The curve is constructed about its center C by taking radii CI, CII, CIII...... at equal angles and with lengths in geometrical proportion. By Nicholson's method draw two radii AC, BC, and beginning at the outer extremity I of CA draw I 2, perpendicular to CB, then from 2 draw 2, 3, perpendicular to CA, and so on continually in the order of the figures 3, 4—4, 5—&c. We thus obtain a series of radial lengths CI $C2$ $C3$ &c. in geometrical proportion for the lines so drawn from a series of right angled triangles with a common angle at C, $\therefore \frac{C\text{I}}{C2}=\frac{C2}{C3}=\frac{C3}{C4}$, and so on. Transferring, therefore, the successive radial lengths, CI, $C2$, $C3$ &c...... by circular arcs, struck from the common centre C to the radii CI—$C2$—$C3$ &c., we obtain a series of points through which the curve may be drawn, and is, as above shown, self-rolling.

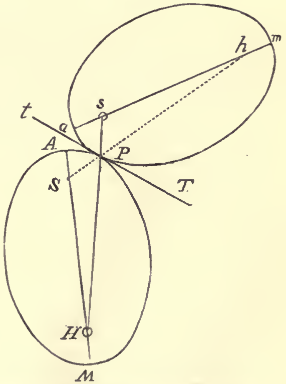
Fig. 53.



Ex. 2. Let aPm, APM be two similar and equal ellipses of which s, h; S, H are the foci, and let them be placed in contact at any point P situated at equal distances aP, AP from the extremities of their major axes, and draw tPT the common tangent at P.

Now by the property of the ellipse the tangent makes equal angles with the radii sP, Ph; and because $aP=AP$, and the ellipses are equal, the tangent makes the same angle with the radii SP, PH; whence $tPs = TPH$, and sPH is a right line. Also $sP=SP$; $\therefore$ $sP+PH = SP+PH=AM$ is a constant distance, whatever be the distance of the point of contact P

Fig. 54.



from the extremity of the axes major. If, therefore, the foci s, H be made centers of motion, and their distance equal to the major axes of the ellipses, the curves will roll together.

The logarithmic spiral and ellipse round the focus appear to be the only two rolling curves that admit of simple independent demonstrations of their possessing this property.

81. Supposing fig. 54 to represent any pair of rolling curves, and let $r = s\,P$ be the distance of their point of contact P from the center of rotation s of the first curve, and $\theta = a\,s\,P$ the angle made by r with a fixed radius sa, and let $r_{,} = PH, \theta_{,} = PHA$, be the corresponding quantities in the second curve, and c the distance sH of the centers; then since r and $r_{,}$ are in the same straight line,

$$r + r_{,} = c, \therefore dr = -dr_{,};$$

also the lengths of those parts of the curves aP, AP, that have been in contact are equal;

$$\therefore \int\sqrt{dr^2 + r^2 d\theta^2} = \int\sqrt{dr^2_{,} + r^2_{,} d\theta^2_{,}},$$

$$\text{and as } dr = -dr_{,}, \therefore rd\theta = r_{,}d\theta_{,} = \overline{c-r}\,.\,d\theta_{,}.$$

Again, $\frac{rd\theta}{dr}$ is the tangent of the angle the first curve makes with r, and $\frac{r_{,}d\theta_{,}}{dr_{,}}$ is the tangent of the angle the second curve makes with $r_{,}$, and these angles are the same;

$$\therefore \frac{rd\theta}{dr} = -\frac{r_{,}d\theta_{,}}{dr_{,}}, \text{ whence } rd\theta = r_{,}d\theta_{,}, \text{ as before.}$$

Hence, if one curve be given by an equation between r and θ, the other is determined by the equations

$$r_{,} = c - r, \text{ and } \theta_{,} = \int\frac{rd\theta}{c-r}.$$

Ex. Let the first curve be the logarithmic spiral (Art. 80), and let ϕ be the constant angle between the radius vector and the curve, $\therefore \theta = \phi \log\frac{r}{b}$ is its equation;

$$\therefore d\theta = \phi\,\frac{dr}{r},\ \theta_{,} = \int\frac{rd\theta}{c-r} = \phi\int\frac{dr}{c-r} = C - \phi\log r.$$

Now when $\theta_{,}$ vanishes, $r = c - b$; $\therefore 0 = C - \phi\log\overline{c-b}$;

$\therefore -\theta_{,} = \phi\log\frac{r}{c-b}$ is the equation to the second curve, which is the same logarithmic spiral in the reverse position.

82. Let there be two logarithmic spirals AMP AM_1P_1 equal, and placed inversely and touching at any point A of the line CC which joins their poles. Let $AM=AM_1$ be two small elements of the curves, and by the definition of this spiral the angles CMA, M_1AC_1 are equal, ∴ the small triangles ANM, AN_1M_1 are also equal and $NM=AN_1$ ∴ $CM+M_1C_1=CA+AC_1=CC_1$. Hence the points M and M_1 will be brought into coincidence with the line of centers at N_1 without sliding.

Fig. 55.

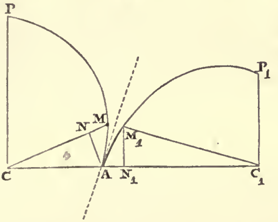
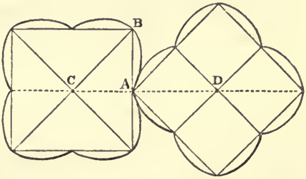


Fig. 56.



These curves may be employed by taking two equal regular polygons (*e.g.* the squares in fig. 56), and replacing each rectilinear side by two arcs of the logarithmic spiral. The compound figures that result from this process will roll together, and may serve as pitch lines for teeth. The ratio of the angular velocities is from $\sqrt{2}$ to $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$, for the maximum and minimum radii are the diagonal AD and the side AC respectively of a right angled triangle with two equal sides.

The general equation of the logarithmic spiral is $r=ae^{m\theta}(1)$, and we have to find the value of the constants a and m that will give an arc of the spiral passing through the points A and B.

Now the parameter a is the radius vector which corresponds to $\theta=0$ and is therefore equal to AB the half-side of the given square.

When $\theta=\frac{\pi}{4}$, $r=a\sqrt{2}$ and consequently (1) $\sqrt{2}=e^{m\frac{\pi}{4}}$ whence

log. $\sqrt{2}=m\frac{\pi}{4}$ and $m=\frac{4l\sqrt{2}}{\pi}=0{,}44128$. This value will give the angle M_1AC_1, made by the tangent of the spiral with its radius vector, $=23°\ 49'$*

83. The general equation of article 81 is given by Euler, in the fifth volume of the 'Acta Petropolitana,' but it is not easy to obtain

* (Weisbach ap Laboulaye *Traité de Cinematique,* 2nd Ed. p. 180, 1861.)

many convenient results in this manner. The properties of one class of rolling curves have been treated in the most complete and able manner, in a paper in the Cambridge 'Philosophical Transactions,' by the late Rev. H. Holditch, to which I must refer those of my readers who are desirous of following out the subject.

This paper, however, led its author to a method of setting out rolling curves, which can be practically employed by persons who are not able to follow the algebraic reasoning which conducted him to it. I was indebted to his kindness for a simpler essay, containing the proofs of this method, which I inserted at length in the former edition of the present work. But I have thought it better now to place it in the Appendix, and merely to explain in the text, his rules for setting out the curves, premising them by the following remarks of my own.

84. We have seen that a pair of equal ellipses revolving in contact about axes, whose distance equals the major axis of the ellipse employed, will furnish a pair of rolling curves which, if their circumferences are connected by teeth, wrapping bands, or other suitable devices, will enable each revolution of the driving ellipse, supposed to rotate uniformly, to communicate to the following ellipse a complete revolution which will have one minimum velocity and one maximum velocity. For in every position of the acting curves (fig. 54), the angular velocities are in the inverse ratio of the radii of contact which are always coincident with the line of centers. But at the maximum and minimum velocity positions, the major axes of the ellipses coincide with the line of centers and the radii of contact are the major and minor apsidal distances *HA* and *SA* with *sa* and *ha* respectively.

But it may be required that there should be two, three, or more maximum velocities, alternating of course with as many minimum velocities in each revolution of the two axes, and it will be shown below that a pair of equal rolling curves may be easily derived from a pair of ellipses or indeed any pair of rolling curves which will satisfy these conditions.

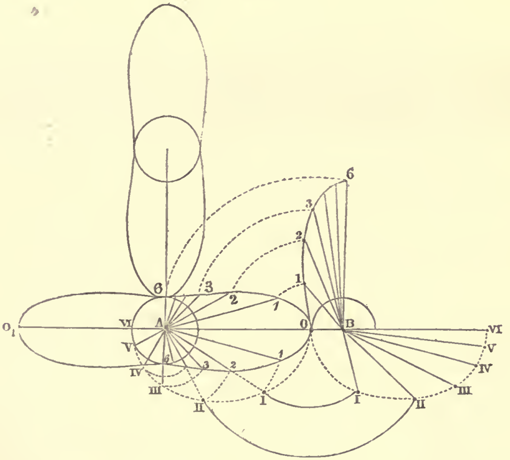
If a pair of rolling curves be given which are contained in angles θ, ϕ, respectively, other pairs contained in angles $m\theta$, $m\phi$, can be constructed by employing the same elementary radii, but contracting or expanding the small angular distances of these radii in the ratio of 1 to m.

For example, we may take the case of a pair of equal ellipses rolling about their foci, in the same manner as in fig. 54.

Let *A*, *B* fig. 57 be two fixed points or axes, each corresponding to one of the foci of a pair of equal regular ellipses placed in contact. In the figure the lower halves only of these ellipses are shown, and their circumferences delineated by dotted lines.

The radii *A*I, *A*II, *A*III......*A*VI, are disposed at six equal angular distances below the axis VI, *O*, and consequently meet the circumference at unequal distances *O*I, I II, II III, &c. In the second ellipse the radii are not at equal angular distances about the center, but are so spaced that the points I. I, II. II, III. III,......VI. VI, in the two circumferences shall come together in the motion. But by the self-rolling property of the ellipse these points will meet on the line of centers *AB*, and thus the sum of every pair of contact radii *AO* + *OB*, *A*I + I*B*, ... *A*IV + IV*B* &c., will be the same and they will have a common tangent at *O*.

Fig. 57.



Now let us construct a curve out of the same group of radii in which the angles made by each with the line of centers shall be diminished by half, thus let *A*1 = *A*I, bisect the angle *OA*I, and *A*2 = *A*II bisect the angle *OA*II and so on, therefore lastly the angle *OA*VI, which is a semicircle, is bisected by the line *A*III.

From *A* strike circular arcs from the extremities of the elliptic radii to meet the respective bisecting lines in points 1, 2, 3.....6, through these points draw the curve, as shown, which will occupy the quarter $OA6$ of a circle, and the other three-quarters must be filled by similar curves in alternate reversion, thus completing a bilobe $O\,6\,O_1 6$, O.

These two new curves are shown in action on the upper side of the line of centers, where AO, 1, 2, 3, ... 6 and BO, 1, 2, 3, ... 6, are in working contact.

By the property of the ellipse the sum of any corresponding radii—e.g. $A\text{I} + B\text{I} = AB$. But the length of the contracted radii remain the same, ∴ we have $A1 + 1B = AB$, and similarly for every other pair. As also all the angles of the elliptic radii are contracted in the same given proportion, every pair of opposite radii will come into contact upon the line of centers simultaneously, and therefore the contact of the contracted curves will be rolling.

In like manner by dividing the entire circle into three times the number of radii of the ellipse we obtain a pair of equal self-rolling curves with three lobes.

85. The curves produced by this method will roll in pairs; bilobe with bilobe, trilobe with trilobe, and so on. But they will not roll unless the number of lobes is the same in each pair, for it is plain that to enable the respective radii to come into line in passing the line of centers the circumferences of the two semi-lobes in contact must be equal, as the diagram shows.

Mr. Holditch's researches* conducted him to a simple construction which enables a series of multilobe curves to be laid down from a given pair of rolling ellipses, from which any two being selected, will roll together, whatever may be the respective numbers of lobes. Fig. 58 shows the geometrical construction, and fig. 59 a set composed of the unilobe, which is the ellipse already described, a bilobe and a trilobe.

His analysis is tedious and obscure, and leads to instructions which are not very plainly given. Referring to the Appendix for this investigation, I will proceed to state his method, which in itself is simple and practical.

86. In fig. 58 let P be the center of the given ellipse which is to be the foundation of the system of multilobes. Draw an indefinite line through P extending both ways, on which set off the foci R, S and length AA^1 of the major axis. From these data the semiellipse must be constructed, and with one of the foci R and a sufficient radius as RC^1 describe the dotted semicircle, which must be divided into equal angles by radii, as shown. In this diagram I have divided the semicircle into six angles only, but

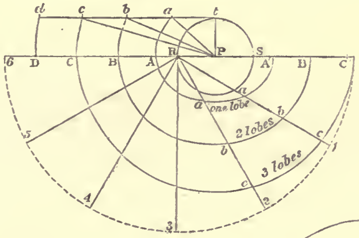
* Vide *Cam. Phil. Transactions*, vol. vii. 1838.

for the accurate laying down of the curves a more numerous subdivision should be employed.

With center P and radius the semifocal distance describe a circle to which draw an indefinite tangent td, parallel to the major axis, and from A with center P and radius PA = semimajor axis draw an arc intersecting the tangent td in a. Upon td with constant distance ta set off the points b, c, d ... as required, and join these points to P with lines Pa, Pb, Pc, &c., which are the secants of a series of right-angled triangles having a constant radius Pt = the semifocal distance of the primitive ellipse.

From the center P set off on the line PD distances $PA = Pa$, $PB = Pb$, $PC = Pc$, and so on, as required.

Fig. 58.



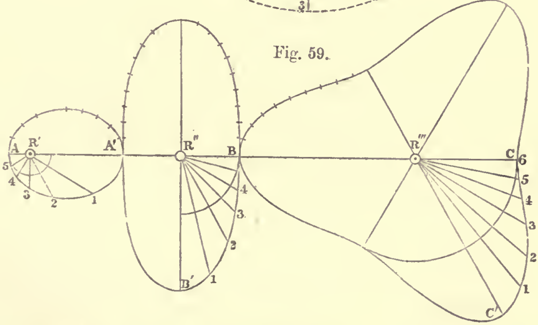


Fig. 59.

These distances are the semimajor axes of a series of concentric ellipses with common foci R and S. Of these ellipses the smallest AA' belongs to the curve of one lobe, the next BB' to the bilobal curve, CC' to the trilobal, and so on to a curve of any number of lobes. Any two curves of this set will roll together whatever be the respective numbers of lobes.

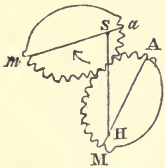
The construction is shown in fig. 59. For a unilobe the ellipse is drawn by assuming a point R' for the axis of rotation, and a circle described about R' is divided by twelve equidistant radii, the lengths of which are the same as in the one lobe ellipse of the diagram fig. 58.

For a bilobal curve whose center is R'' each semilobe is divided as before into six equal angles, and the length of the radii $R''B'$, $R''1$, $R''2$, &c., taken from the lines in fig. 58, which radiate from the focus R to the ellipse $B'B$, and are to be set off in order.

Similarly the trilobal curve in fig. 59 is divided into six primary angles, each containing a semilobe as $CR'''C$, and the lengths of the radii which subdivide the semilobes taken from the ellipse which belongs to the trilobal curve.

87. *To employ rolling curves in practice.* In fig. 54 let the upper curve be the driver, and let it revolve in the direction from T to t. Then since the radius of contact sP increases by this motion, and the corresponding radius PH decreases, the edge of the driver will press against that of the follower, and so communicate a motion to it of which the angular velocity ratio will be $\frac{PH}{sP}$. But when the point m, has reached M, the radii of contact in the driver will begin to diminish, and its edge to retire from that of the follower, so that the communication of motion will cease, unless maintained by some extraneous contrivance. For example, we may provide the retreating edge with teeth, as in fig. 60, which will engage with similar teeth upon the corresponding edge of the follower, and thus maintain the communication of motion until the point a has reached A, when the advancing side of the driver will come into operation, and the teeth be no longer necessary.

Fig. 60.

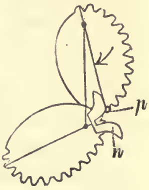


These teeth, however, necessarily destroy the advantage of no friction, and another practical difficulty is introduced. If the curves be not very accurately executed, it may happen that the first pair of teeth and spaces that ought to come together at M, m in each revolution, may not accurately meet, and that either the tooth may get into the wrong space, or become jammed against another tooth, by which the machinery may be broken.

88. To prevent this accident, a curved guide-plate n (fig. 61) may be fixed to one of the wheels, and a pin p to the other. The edge of this plate must be made of such a form that the

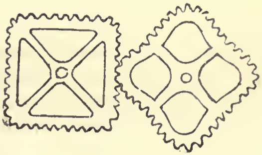
pin p may be certain of engaging with it, even if the wheels are not exactly in their proper relative position. When the pin has fairly entered the fork of the plate, it will press either on the right or left side, and so correct the position, and guide the first pair of teeth into contact. It is easy to see that the edge of this plate should be the epicycloid that would be described by p, if the lower plate were taken as a fixed base, and the upper made to roll upon it; but the outer edge of the plate must be sloped away from the true form, to ensure the entrance of the pin into the fork.

Fig. 61.



89. Another method is to carry the teeth all round the two plates, which effectually prevents them from getting entangled in the above manner, but at the same time entirely destroys the rolling action. This method, however, is the one always adopted in practice, as, for example, in the Cometarium, and in the silk-mills, and is an excellent method of obtaining a varying velocity ratio. Fig. 62 represents a pair of such wheels that were employed by Messrs Bacon and Donkin in a printing machine.

Fig. 62.



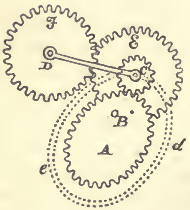
90. The forms of the teeth to be applied to these rolling curves may be obtained by a slight extension of the general solution in division *B* below. For calling the rolling curves pitch curves, it can be shown for them, precisely in the same manner as it will be there shown for pitch circles, that if any given circle or curve be assumed as a describing curve, and if it be made to roll on the inside of one of these pitch curves, and on the outside of the corresponding portion of the other pitch curve, that the motion communicated by the pressure and sliding contact of one of the curved teeth so traced upon the other, will be exactly the same as that effected by the rolling contact of the original pitch curves.

91. *The Cometarium* is a machine which has two parallel axes of motion carrying indices or clock-hands; one of which axes is the center of a circle, and the other the focus of an ellipse, which represents the orbit of a comet. The two axes must be connected by mechanism, so that when the first revolves uniformly, the second shall revolve with an angular velocity that will make it describe equal areas of its ellipse in equal times, and

thus *represent the motion of a comet round the sun*,* for which purpose the machine is constructed. Now, according to what is termed Seth Ward's hypothesis, if one radius vector HP of an ellipse (fig. 54) revolve uniformly round the focus H, the other SP will describe equal areas round the focus S. This, although a very coarse approximation, is considered sufficient for the mechanical representation of planetary or cometary motions in this instrument, and is accordingly obtained by connecting the two axes with a pair of rolling ellipses, as in fig. 54. For by Art. 80, it appears that $HP=hP$, and the angle $SHP=shP$. The motion therefore of HP and hP with respect to the axis major of their respective ellipses is the same, and the ratio of the angular velocities of sP and hP round their foci s and h is the same as those of SP and HP round S and H. Also, since the corresponding radii sP, PH have been shown to coincide with the fixed line of centers, it follows that the angular velocities of SH and sa round the centers H and s are respectively the same as those of HP and sP, that is, of HP and SP with respect to the major axes of the ellipses.

92. This machine was first introduced by Dr. Desaguliers,† and may be considered as the first attempt to employ rolling curves in machinery. He did not, however, furnish his ellipses with teeth, but connected them by means of an endless band of catgut, which embraced the circumference of each ellipse, lying in a groove in the circumference. The addition of teeth was a subsequent improvement.

Fig. 63.



93. When the required periodic variation in the ratio of angular velocity is not very great, a pair of equal common spur-wheels, with their centers of motion a little excentric, may be substituted for the equal ellipses revolving round their foci; but in this method the action of the teeth will become very irregular, unless the excentricity be very small.

* In any ellipse APM (fig. 54), we have

$$\frac{\text{Angular velocity of } SP \text{ round } S}{\text{Angular velocity of } HP \text{ round } H}=\frac{HP}{SP}=\frac{SP\,.\,HP}{SP^2}=\frac{CD^2}{SP^2},$$

where CD is the conjugate diameter of the ellipse. If the ellipse be nearly a circle, *CD may be supposed constant*, in which case if the angular velocity of HP be uniform, that of SP will vary as $\frac{1}{SP^2}$, which is the law of motion of the radius vector of a planet. This is termed Seth Ward's hypothesis, but is a very coarse approximation.

† Vide Rees' *Cyclopædia*, art. *Cometarium*; or Ferguson's *Astronomy*.

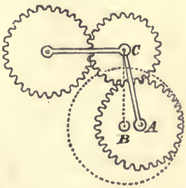
94. The difficulty of forming a *pair* of rolling curves is sometimes evaded in the manner represented by fig. 63. *A* is a curved plate revolving round the center *B*, and having its edge cut into teeth. *C*, a pinion with teeth of the same pitch. The center of this pinion is not fixed, but is carried by an arm or frame, which revolves on a center *D*. So that as *A* revolves, the frame rises and falls to enable the pinion to remain in geer with the curved plate, notwithstanding the variation of its radius of contact. To maintain the teeth at a proper distance for their action, the wheel *A* has a plate attached to it which extends beyond it, and is furnished with a groove *de*, the central line of which is at a constant normal distance from the pitch line of the teeth equal to the pitch radius of the pinion. A pin or small roller attached to the swinging frame *D* and concentric with the pinion *C* rests in this groove. So that as the wheel *A* revolves, the groove and pin act together, and maintain the pitch lines of the wheel and pinion in contact, and at the same time prevent the teeth from getting entangled, or from escaping altogether.

Let R be the radius of C, r the radius of contact of A, ϕ the angle between R and r; then it can be easily shown

$$\text{that } \frac{\text{ang. vel. of } A}{\text{ang. vel. of } C} = \frac{R}{r} \times \cos\phi.$$

But as the center of motion of *C* continually oscillates, and it is generally necessary to communicate the rotation of *A* to a wheel revolving on a fixed center of motion, a wheel *E* must be fixed to the pinion *C*, and this wheel must geer with a second wheel *D* concentric to the center of the swing-frame. When *A* revolves, the rotation of *C* will be communicated through *E* to *F*, but will also be compounded with the oscillation of the swing-frame, in a manner that will be explained under the head of Aggregate Motions, in the Second Part of this work.

Fig. 64.

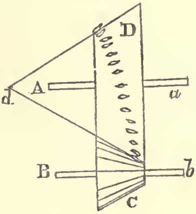


95. If for the curved wheel *A* an ordinary spur-wheel *A*, (fig. 64) moving on an *excentric center of motion B*, be substituted, a simple link *AC* connecting the center of the wheel *A* with that of its pinion *C*, will maintain the proper pitching of the teeth, in a more simple manner than the groove and pin. The wheel *A* must be of course fixed to the extremity of its axis, to

prevent the link from striking it in the course of its revolutions.* This combination being wholly formed of spur-wheels, is one of the simplest modes of effecting a varying angular velocity ratio.

96. *On Roëmers wheels.* These wheels were proposed by the celebrated astronomer Olaus Roëmer,† to effect the varying motion of planetary machines. *Aa, Bb*, fig. 65, are two parallel axes, of which the lower one is provided with a cone *C*, fluted into regular teeth like those of ordinary bevel-wheels, but occupying the surface of a much thicker frustum of the cone than usual. Opposite to this cone is fixed upon the axis *Aa* a smooth frustum *D*, whose apex *d* is in the reverse direction, and this latter cone is so formed as just to clear the tops of the teeth of *C*. Upon the surface of *D* are planted a series of teeth or pins, so arranged as to fall in succession between the teeth of *C*. By placing these pins at different distances from the apex *d*, we can obtain any velocity ratio we please between the extremes; for if R, r be the greatest and least radii of D, and $R_{,}$ $r_{,}$ of C; then the angular velocity ratio of C to D will vary between the limits of $\frac{R}{r_{,}}$ and $\frac{r}{R_{,}}$; the first being obtained by placing the pins close to the large end of *D*, and the second by fixing them at the small end; and when the pins are fixed in any intermediate position, an intermediate velocity ratio will be obtained.

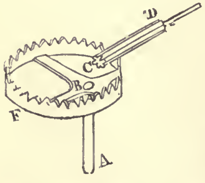
Fig. 65.



97. If the axes be not parallel, a varying ratio of angular velocity may be obtained by the excentric crown-wheel.

This was invented by Huyghens, for the purpose of representing the motion of the planets in his Planetarium.‡

Fig. 66.



AB is an axis, to the extremity of which is fixed a crown-wheel *F*, exactly similar to that represented in fig. 45, p. 51, only that its center of motion *B* is excentric to its circumference. This wheel is driven by a long cylindrical pinion *CD*, whose axis meets that of *AB* in direction, and is at right angles to it. Now since the radius of contact of the pinion is constant, while the radius of contact

* From a machine by Mr. Holtzapfel. † *Machines Approuvées*, t. i.
‡ *Descriptio Automati Planetarii.*

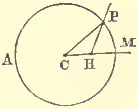
of the teeth of the hoop varies at different points of the circumference by virtue of its excentricity, it follows that the angular velocity ratio of the axes will vary.

In Huyghen's machine the pinion is the driver, and is supposed to revolve uniformly, but if the contrivance be adopted in other machines, the wheel or pinion may be made the driver, according to the law of velocity required. Also, by making the circumference of the crown-wheel of any other curve than a circle, different laws of velocity may be obtained at pleasure. The action of the teeth however will be irregular, if the excentricity of the hoop be too much increased.

98. Let H, fig. 67, be the center of motion of the crown-wheel, C the center of its circumference,

$$CP=R,\ HP=r,\ MHP=\theta, \text{ and } HC=E.$$

Fig. 67.



Then, since the axis of the pinion is directed to H in the line of the excentric radius HP, the perimetral velocity of the pinion will be communicated to this radius in a direction perpendicular to it; and if ρ be the radius of the pinion, we have

$$\frac{\text{angular velocity of pinion}}{\text{angular velocity of crown-wheel}}=\frac{r}{\rho}.$$

$$\text{But } R^2=r^2+E^2\mp 2rE\cos\theta,$$

$$\text{whence } r=\pm E\cos\theta+R.\ \sqrt{1-\frac{E^2}{R^2}\,.\,\sin^2\theta}.$$

Now in planetary machines E is small with respect to R;

$$\therefore r=\pm E\cos\theta+R.$$

And since the pinion revolves uniformly, angular velocity of crown-wheel

$$\propto\frac{1}{r}\propto\frac{1}{R\pm E\cos\theta}\propto R\mp E\cos\theta \text{ nearly.}$$

But if MP were the elliptic orbit of a planet, of which C the center, H the focus, HP the radius vector, and AM $(=2R)$ the axis major, we should have angular velocity of HP

$$\propto\frac{1}{HP^2}\propto(R\mp E\cos\theta)^2\propto R\mp 2E\cos\theta \text{ nearly.}$$

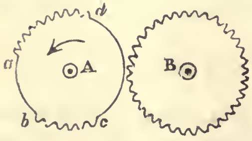
By making therefore the *excentric distance* CH of the crown-wheel equal to the *distance of the foci* of the elliptic orbit, the radius vector HP will revolve with an approximate representation of planetary motion, when the driving pinion revolves uniformly.*

99. Huyghens also proposed another method of obtaining the varying velocity; namely, by varying the pitch of the teeth. If in a pair of ordinary spur-wheels the pitch of one wheel be constant as usual, but in the other it vary so that a given arc of the circumference shall contain N teeth in one part, and an equal arc n teeth in another part of the circumference, and so on; then as every tooth of the first wheel causes one tooth of the other wheel to cross the line of centers, and the driver is supposed to move uniformly, it follows that these equal arcs of the follower will pass the line in times that will be directly as their numbers of teeth N and n, and thus an unequal velocity will be obtained for the follower. But it is evident that this contrivance is but a make-shift, since teeth of unequal pitch will never work well together, although, if the variations from the mean pitch be small, they may be made to act so as to pass tooth for tooth across the line, with a kind of hobbling motion.

Nevertheless, a pair of wheels very similar to these admit of having their teeth formed upon correct geometrical principles; but the difficulty of executing them would be so much greater than those of the rolling curves (Art. 90), that I do not think it worth while to occupy space by developing their theory, which may be easily deduced from the preceding pages.

100. It may happen that the variation of angular velocity in the follower may consist in a sudden change from motion to rest and *vice versâ*; that is, that the follower may be required to move by short trips with intervals of complete rest between, or with an *intermittent* motion.

Fig. 68.



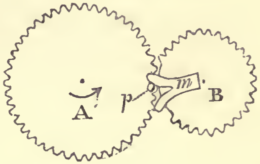
This may readily be effected with a pair of common spur-wheels, by cutting away the teeth of the driver, as in fig. 68, where the follower B is an ordinary spur-wheel, and the driver A is a wheel of the same pitch whose teeth have been cut away between a and b, c and d; consequently, when A revolves it will cease to turn B while the plain parts of its circumference are passing the line of centers,

* In the article *Equation Mechanism*, in Rees' *Cyclopædia*, will be found a minute and popular account of the various contrivances employed to represent planetary motion. Those that I have introduced into the text are applicable to machinery in general, and on this account, as well as from the celebrity of their authors, deserve to be studied.

but will turn it in the usual manner when the teeth come into action. By properly proportioning the plain arcs to those which contain the teeth, we can obtain any desired ratio of rest and motion that can be included within one revolution of the driver.

101. These intermitted teeth are liable to the same objection as those in Art. 87, namely, the chance of the first pair of teeth in each row getting jammed together, and a similar remedy may be employed — a guide-plate and pin. Thus in fig. 69, the wheel A will revolve in the direction of the arrow without communicating any motion to B, until the pin p enters the fork of the guide-plate m, and thus communicates to it a motion which brings the teeth of B into geer with those of A; and A will then continue to turn B until the plate m again reaches the position of the figure, when B will rest until the pin p returns.

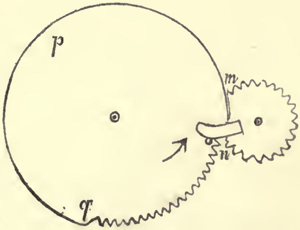
Fig. 69.



In this combination B must make a complete revolution (unless there be more guide-plates than one), and if R, r be the respective radii of driver and follower, it is easy to see that when A revolves uniformly, the time of B's rest is to the time of its motion as $R - r : r$. Also, several pins may be fixed to A if required, and the intermitted teeth may be given to A instead of to B, or to both.

102. As there is no contrivance in the above to protect B from being displaced during its period of rest, and thereby preventing the guide-plate from receiving the pin, the action will be rendered more complete by the arrangement of fig. 70.

Fig. 70.



Here the follower has its edge mn formed into an arc of a circle whose center is the center of motion of the driver, and the circumference of the driver is a plain disk npq of a greater diameter than the pitch circle of the toothed portion qn. This plain edge runs past mn without touching it, but effectually prevents the follower from being moved out of its position of rest, and therefore ensures the meeting of the pin and guide-plate.

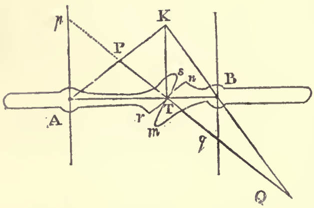
103. Bevil or crown-wheels may be employed if necessary, and

the combinations may be thrown into a great many other different forms. The pin and disc of fig. 68 have this advantage, that, when properly formed, they allow the intermittent wheel to begin and end its motion gradually, whereas in fig. 68 the motions begin with a jerk, and the follower is apt to continue its motion through a small space, after the teeth of the driver have quitted it.

104. In many machines a lever is required to move another by the mere contact of their extremities. As the angular motion required is always small, these extremities may be formed into rolling curves, by which the friction will be entirely got rid of, and the small variation in the angular velocity ratio will generally be of little or no consequence. Arcs of the logarithmic spiral or ellipse round the focus will be the most easily described; but since the motion is small, arcs of circles may be substituted as an approximation for the rolling curves, and these may be described as follows.

Let A, B, fig. 71, be the centers of motion of the levers, AB the line of centers divided in T in the proportion of the radii in their mean position. Draw KT perpendicular to AT, and through T draw PTQ inclined to AT at any angle less than a right angle. Assume a point K in KT. Join AK intersecting PTQ in P, and join KB, producing it to meet PTQ in Q. With center P and radius PT describe an arc rTs, and with center Q and radius QT describe an arc mTn. These arcs will roll together in the mean position of the figure.

Fig. 71.



For by Art. 31, it appears that the action of these arcs is equivalent to that of a pair of rods AP, BQ, connected by a link PQ. Now during the motion of this system the link may be considered as revolving round a momentary center, which center is always changing its position. But as the extremity P of the link begins to move in a direction pependicular to AP, this center must be somewhere in the line AP produced; and in like manner, as the extremity Q begins to move perpendicularly to BQ, the center must be somewhere in BQ produced; it must therefore be in K, the intersection of AP and BQ. But since K is the momentary center of motion of the link, and KT is perpendicular to AB, it follows that the point of contact T of the arcs rs, mn, will begin to move in the line of centers, and therefore the contact will be *rolling contact.*

105. Since the distance of K from T is arbitrary, let it be supposed infinite, in which case AK, QK become parallel to each other, and perpendicular to the line of centers, as at Ap and Bq, and p, q are now the centers of the arcs. This is a simpler construction.

In practice the angle PTA must be made much greater than in the figure, to avoid oblique action.

CHAPTER IV.

ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

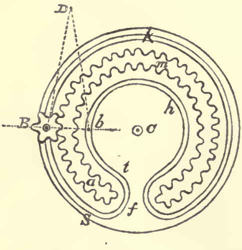
Division A. COMMUNICATION OF MOTION BY ROLLING CONTACT.

CLASS C. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CHANGING. VELOCITY RATIO VARYING.

106. When two spur-wheels act together the axes revolve in opposite directions, but when a spur-wheel acts with an annular wheel the axes revolve in the same direction. By combining a spur-wheel with an annular wheel the *mangle-wheel*, fig. 72, is obtained; in which the directional relation is periodically changed, by causing the driving pinion to act alternately upon the spur-teeth and the annular teeth.

The mangle-wheel in its simplest form is a revolving disc of metal with a center of motion *C*. Upon the face of the disc is fixed a projecting annulus *am*, the outer and inner edges of which are cut into teeth. This annulus is interrupted at *f*, and the teeth are continued round the edges of the interrupted portion so as to form a continued series passing from the outer to the inner edge and back again.

Fig. 72.

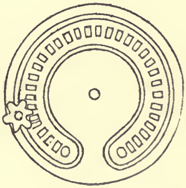


A pinion *B* whose teeth are of the same pitch as those of the wheel is fixed to the end of an axis, and this axis is mounted so as to allow of a short travelling motion in the direction *BC*. This may be effected by supporting this end of it either in a swing-frame moving upon a center as at *D*, or in a sliding piece, according to the nature of the train with which it is connected. A short pivot projects from the center of the pinion, and this rests in and is guided by a groove *BSftbhk* which is cut in the surface of the disc, and made concentric to the pitch circles of the inner and outer rings of teeth, and at a normal distance from them equal to the pitch radius of the pinion.

Now when the pinion revolves it will, if it be on the outside, as in the figure, act upon the spur-teeth and turn the wheel in the opposite direction to its own; but when the interrupted portion *f* of the teeth is thus brought to the pinion, the groove will guide the pinion from the outside to the inside, and thus bring its teeth into action with the annular teeth. The wheel will now receive motion in the same direction as that of the pinion, and this will continue until the gap *f* is again brought to the pinion, when the latter will be carried outwards, and the motion again reversed.

The velocity ratio in either direction will remain constant, but the ratio when the pinion is inside will differ slightly from the ratio when it is outside, for the pitch radius of the annular teeth is necessarily somewhat less than that of the spur-teeth. However, the change of direction is not instantaneous, for the form of the groove *sft*, which connects the inner and outer grooves, is a semicircle, and when the axis of the pinion reaches *s* the velocity of the mangle-wheel begins to diminish gradually till it is brought to rest at *f*, and is again gradually set in motion from *f* to *t*, when the constant ratio begins; and this retardation will be increased by increasing the difference between the inner and outer pitch circles.

Fig. 73.



107. The teeth of a mangle-wheel are, however, most commonly formed by pins projecting from the face of the disc, as in fig. 73.

In this manner the inner and outer pitch-circles coincide, and therefore the velocity ratio is the same within and without; also the space through which the pinion moves in shifting from the outside to the inside is reduced.

108. This space may be still further diminished by arranging the teeth as in fig. 74, that is, by placing the spur-wheel within the annular wheel; but at the same time the difference of the two ratios is increased.

109. If it be required that the velocity ratio vary, then the pitch-lines of the mangle-wheel must no longer be concentric. Thus in fig. 75, the groove *kl* is directed to the center of the mangle-wheel, and therefore the pinion will proceed in this portion of its path without giving any motion to the wheel; and in

the other lines of teeth the pitch radius varies, and therefore the angular velocity ratio will vary.*

The mangle-wheel under all its forms is a very practical and effective contrivance. It derives its name from the first machine

Fig. 74.

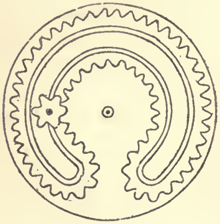
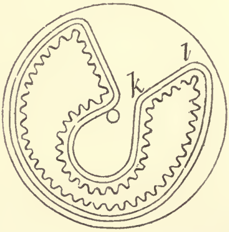


Fig. 75.



to which it was applied, but has since been very generally employed in manufacturing mechanism.

110. In figs. 72, 74, and 75, the curves of the teeth are readily obtained by employing the same describing circle for the whole of them (Art. 90). But when the form fig. 73 is adopted, the shape of the teeth requires some consideration.

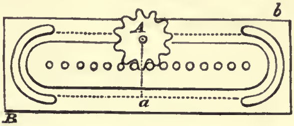
Every tooth of such a mangle-wheel may be considered as formed of two ordinary teeth set back to back, the pitch-line passing through the middle. The outer half, therefore, appropriated to the action of the pinion on the outside of the wheel, resembles that portion of an ordinary spur-wheel tooth that lies beyond its pitch-line, and the inner half which receives the inside action of the pinion resembles the half of an annular wheel tooth that lies within the pitch-circle. But the consequence of this arrangement is, that in both positions the action of the driving pinion must be confined to the approach of its teeth to the line of centers, and consequently these teeth must lie wholly within their pitch-line.

To obtain the forms of the teeth therefore take any convenient describing circle, and employ it to describe the teeth of the pinion by rolling within its pitch-circle, and to describe the teeth of the wheel by rolling within and without its pitch-circle, and the pinion will (Art. 90) then work truly with the teeth of the wheel in both positions. The tooth at each extremity of the series must be a circular one, whose center lies on the pitch-line and whose diameter is equal to half the pitch.

* A mangle-wheel of this kind is employed in Smith's self-acting mule.

111. If the reciprocating piece move in a right line, as it very often does, then the mangle-*wheel* is transformed into a *mangle-rack*, fig. 76, and its teeth may be simply made cylindrical pins, which those of the mangle-wheel do not admit of on correct principle. *Bb* is the sliding piece, and *A* the driving pinion, whose axis must have the power of shifting from *A* to *a* through a space equal to its own diameter, to allow of the change from one side of the rack to the other at each extremity of the motion. The teeth of the mangle-rack may receive any of the forms which are given to common rack-teeth, if the arrangement be derived from either fig. 72 or fig. 74.

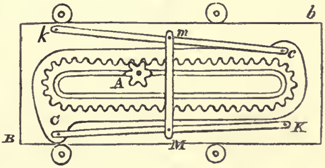
Fig. 76.



112. But the mangle-rack admits of an arrangement by which the shifting motion of the driving pinion, which is often inconvenient, may be dispensed with.

Bb, fig. 77, is the piece which receives the reciprocating motion, and which may be either guided between rollers, as shown, or in any other usual way; *A* the driving pinion, whose axis of motion is fixed; the mangle-rack *Cc* is formed upon a separate plate, and in this example has the teeth upon the inside of the projecting ridge which borders it, and the guide-groove formed within the ring of teeth, similar to fig. 74.

Fig. 77.



This rack is connected with the piece *Bb* in such a manner as to allow of a short transverse motion with respect to that piece, by which the pinion, when it arrives at either end of the course, is enabled by shifting the rack to follow the course of the guide-groove, and thus to reverse the motion by acting upon the opposite row of teeth.

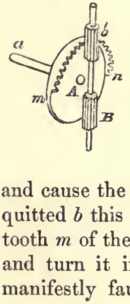
The best mode of connecting the rack and its sliding piece is that represented in the figure, and is the same which is adopted in the well-known cylinder printing-engines of Mr. Cowper. Two guide-rods *KC*, *kc* are jointed at one end *K*, *k* to the reciprocating piece *Bb*, and at the other end *C*, *c* to the shifting-rack; these rods are moreover connected by a rod *Mm* which is jointed to each mid-way between their extremities, so that the angular motion of these guide-rods round their centers *K*, *k* will be the same; and as the angular motion is small, and the rods nearly parallel to the path of the slide, their extremities *C*, *c*, may be supposed to move perpendicularly to that path, and consequently the rack which is jointed to those extremities will also move upon *Bb* in a direction perpendicular to its path, which is the thing required, and admits of no other motion with respect to *Bb*.

The earliest shifting rack of this kind is to be found in the work of De Caus,* in which the rack is moved from one side to the other at each end of its trip by a pair of cam-plates, turned by the same pinion which drives the rack.

113. In the works of the early mechanists a variety of contrivances for reversing motion are to be found, in which the teeth of a driving wheel or pinion are made to quit one set of teeth and engage themselves abruptly with another set, and so on alternately: the two sets being so disposed upon the reciprocating follower as to produce motion respectively in the opposite directions in it.

For example, *Aa*, fig. 78, is an axis which revolves continually in the same direction, *Bb* an axis to which is to be communicated a few rotations to right and left alternately.

Fig. 78.



This axis carries two pinions, *B* and *b*, and the first axis has a crown wheel at its extremity, of which the teeth extend only through half its circumference, as from *m* to *n*.

In the figure the crown-wheel is supposed to revolve in the direction from *n* towards *m*, and its teeth will accordingly act upon those of *b*, and cause the shaft *Bb* to revolve. When the last tooth *n* has quitted *b* this rotation will cease, but at that moment the first tooth *m* of the series will begin to act upon the lower pinion *B*, and turn it in the opposite direction. This contrivance is so manifestly faulty for two reasons, namely, the shock at each change of motion and the danger of the first teeth that come together becoming entangled (Art. 87), that I should hardly have thought it worth describing, were it not for the numerous similar forms that present themselves in the early history of machinery, more especially in the work of Ramelli, in which

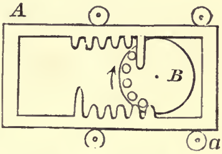
* De Caus, *Les Raisons des Forces mouvantes*, 1615. L. I. probs. xvi. and xvii. Copied in Bockler's *Theatrum Machinarum*, 1662, pl. 94.

this principle is exhibited in a great variety of forms, and applied not only to wheels but also to racks.*

114. Fig. 79 is an application of the same principle to a double rack,† which deserves attention on account of the provision which is made to diminish the shock, and ensure the first engagement of each set of teeth.

Aa is the frame to which the reciprocating motion is to be given, *B* the driving pinion; this is made in the form of a lantern, and the teeth confined to about a quarter of its circumference.

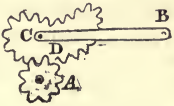
Fig. 79.



These teeth act alternately upon racks fixed to the opposite sides of the frame, and thus the frame receives a back and forward motion from the continued rotation of the pinion. In the figure the pinion revolving in the direction of the arrow is shown at the moment of quitting the lower rack to begin its action upon the upper; the tooth of each rack which receives the first action of the pinion is made longer than the others, and straight-sided, and is so arranged that the action of the first stave upon it shall be oblique, by which the shock is diminished, while at the same time the stave sliding down the long side is safely conducted into the first space, and thus the proper action of the teeth and staves secured.

115. If the driver be a wheel *A*, fig. 80, and the follower an arm *BC* rotating round a center *B*, and having a wheel of an irregular form *D* turning round a pin at its extremity *C*; its teeth being kept in constant action with those of *A* by means of a guide-plate fixed to one or both of the lateral faces and shaped to its pitch curves. These plates must rest upon a pair of circular plates similarly adapted to the pinion *A* and thus keep the teeth of the wheels in proper working distance, then the rotation of *A* will produce a reciprocating motion in the arm *BC*, the law of which will vary according to the figure of the wheel.

Fig. 80.



* Vide Ramelli, i. ii. iii. iv. et passim. De Caus, pr. iii. and iv. Bockler, 109, 110 111, copied from Ramelli. Bessoni, *Theatrum Instrumentorum*, 1569, pl. 34.

† From Bockler, *Theatrum Machinarum*, No. 71.

CHAPTER V.

ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

Division B. COMMUNICATION OF MOTION BY SLIDING CONTACT.

CLASS A. DIRECTIONAL RELATION AND VELOCITY RATIO CONSTANT.

116. The axes of the pieces in contact, as in Art. 31 above, being supposed parallel, it has been shown that in sliding contact the angular velocities are at each instant in the inverse ratio of the segments into which the normal of the curves at the point of contact divides the line of centers.

Any convenient curve being assumed for the edge of one revolving piece, if we can assign such a form of another revolving piece that the common normal of the two curves shall divide the line of centers in a fixed point in all positions of contact, then will these curves preserve a constant angular velocity ratio when one is made to move the other by sliding contact.

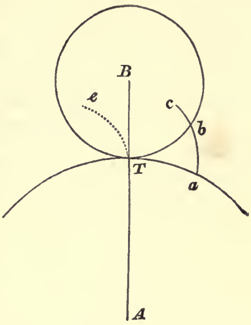
Before proceeding to general principles, I shall give the several ordinary solutions of the problem, as the knowledge of them serves as an instructive introduction to the requirements of the question. For convenience the first step in any given case is to assume two pitch circles in contact, capable of revolving about fixed centers, and the one driving the other by the rolling contact of their edges in the given velocity ratio.

On the planes of these circumferences as bases we proceed to describe opposite curves in contact, which being fixed to the respective circles so as to move each other by the sliding contact of their edges, will exactly replace the rolling contact action of the pitch circles.

117. *First solution, fig.* 81.—Let A, B, be the centers of motion, AB the line of centers divided as usual in T, in the inverse proportion of the angular velocities; describe through T the respective pitch circles, and let abc be a portion of an epicy-

cloid whose base is the pitch circle aT, and whose describing circle has the same diameter as the pitch circle Tb, and let b be a pin whose diameter is exceedingly small, so that it may be considered as a mathematical line. Then if the curve abc be cut out of a thin plate, and caused to turn round the center A, and the pin b carried by a piece capable of turning round the center B, the motion communicated from the edge to the pin will fulfil the required conditions. For at the beginning of the motion let Te be the position of the curve; therefore, the pin b will coincide with T, and if the curve move into any other position abc driving the pin to b, the arc Ta will be equal to Tb; for Tb is an arc of the describing circle, and therefore, if it were made to roll on Ta, the point b would trace an epicycloidal arc coinciding with ba, and the point b would coincide with a. But the arcs Ta, Tb are also those described by the two pitch circles respectively, in moving from T to the second position; and since these equal arcs are described in the same time, the angular velocity ratio of the two pieces is constant, and the same as if the motion had been produced by the rolling contact of the pitch circles.*

Fig. 81.



Otherwise, by the known property of the epicycloid, the normal to any point b passes through the point of contingence T of its describing circle and its base circle. But these latter circles are the two pitch circles of the combination; and since the normal of the curve ab at the point of the contact is thus shown to pass through a constant point T of the line of centers, the angular velocity ratio of the circles will be constant and equal to the inverse ratio of their radii, by the last Article.

118. *Second solution, fig.* 82.—A, B being, as before, the centers of motion, T the point of contingence of the pitch circles. Let abc be an arc of an epicycloid whose describing circle is TbB, of half the diameter of the pitch circle FTd. From the center B draw a radial line through the describing point b, meeting the circle in d; then will this line touch the epicycloid in b. Let motion be communicated by contact from the curved edge abc, which re-

* For the properties of cycloidal curves, vide Peacock's *Examples*, p. 186; Young's *Nat. Philosophy*, vol. ii. p. 555; De la Hire, *Sur les Épicycloïdes*, &c.

volves round A, to the radial line Bbd which revolves round B; and let the beginning of the motion be reckoned from the position in which a coincides with T, and, therefore, d with a. In moving to any other position of contact abc, Bbd; Ta, Td, will be the arcs simultaneously described by the two pitch circles. Now TBb is an angle at the circumference of the circle TbB, and TBd an angle at the center of the circle TdF; therefore Tb measures an angle double of Td. Also the radius of Tb is half that of Td; therefore the arc $Tb = Td$. Again, TbB is the describing circle of the epicycloid abc, and Ta its base; $\therefore Tb = Ta$; whence $Td = Ta$, that is, the arcs of the pitch circles described from the beginning of the motion are equal, and conse-

Fig. 82.

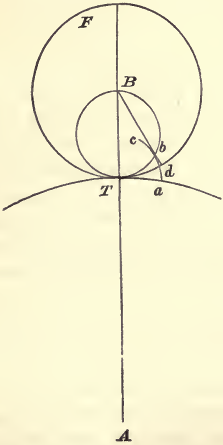
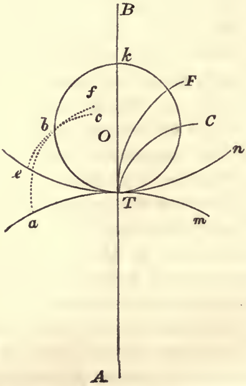


Fig. 83.



quently the angular velocity ratio constant, and the same as would be obtained by the rolling contact of the pitch circles.

Otherwise; as before, the normal of contact at b passes through the constant point T of the line of centers, and therefore divides it into a pair of constant segments; whence by Art. 116, the angular velocity ratio is constant.

Cor. The point of contact b, between the curve ac and the radial line Bd, is always situated in the circle TbB, described through T, with a diameter equal to the radius of the pitch circle of the radial line, and having its center upon the line of centers. This circle is therefore the *locus of contact.*

119. *Third solution, fig.* 83.—A and B being, as before, the centers of motion, T the point of contingence of the pitch circles. Let a describing circle Tbk be taken of any diameter, and with it describe an epicycloid TC by rolling on the outside of the pitch circle Tm, and an hypocycloid TF by rolling on the inside of the pitch circle Tn. Let these curves be cut out and made to revolve in contact, round their respective centers of motion A and B, until they come into a new position where abc is the epicycloid and ebf the hypocycloid. By the known properties of the curves they will have their common point b in the circumference of the describing circle Tb, when its center O is on the line of centers, and they will also have a common tangent there. As before, the circle Tbk is the locus of contact.

Also, if the describing circle Tbk were to roll upon Te from its present position, it would describe the curve be with the point b, and this point would come to e; therefore the arc Tb is equal to the arc Te, and similarly, the arc Tb is equal to the arc Ta; $\therefore Te = Ta$. But these are the arcs respectively described by the two pitch circles in moving from the first position to the second; therefore, as before, the angular velocity ratio is constant and equal to that which would be obtained by the rolling contact of the pitch circles.

Otherwise; as before, the constancy of the angular velocity ratio may be shown from the known property of the curves by which the normal from the point b passes through T.

This third solution includes the two former ones, for it is known that if the diameter of the describing circle of an hypocycloid be made equal to the radius of the base, the hypocycloid becomes a straight line coinciding with a diameter of the latter; and thus the second solution is obtained. Also, if the describing circle of the hypocycloid equal the circle of the base, the hypocycloid is reduced to a point in its circumference, and thus the first solution is obtained.*

120. *Fourth solution.*—Let A, B be the centers of motion, T

* The third solution, like the others, is given by Camus in his well-known *Essay on the Teeth of Wheels*, in 1752, and copied by Ferguson in his *Lectures*, which were reprinted by Sir David Brewster in 1806, and introduced into his *Edinburgh Cyclopædia*, vol. xiii. p. 572.

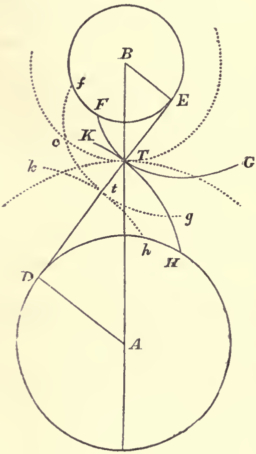
But the enunciation of its application to the formation of a set of wheels '*any two of which will work together*,' was for the first time laid down by myself in the paper *On the Teeth of Wheels* in the second volume of the *Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers*. This enunciation will be found below, Art. 156.

It was soon after claimed for Sir David Brewster in the *Engineer and Machinists' Assistant*, Glasgow, second edition, p. 109, but as no reference was made to the work in which that corollary was published by that distinguished philosopher I reserve my assent to this assertion until I am favoured with a reference to the work in question.

the point of contingence of the pitch circles. Through T draw DTE inclined at any angle to the line of centers, from A and B drop perpendiculars AD, BE upon DTE, and with radii AD, BE and centers A and B describe the circles to which DE will be a common tangent. Also we have $\frac{BE}{DA}=\frac{BT}{AT}$ by similar triangles TAD, TBE.

Through the point T describe an involute KTH of the circle DH, and an involute FTG of the circle FE. If these involutes be made to turn round the centers A and B respectively, and to remain in contact, the perimetral velocities of the pitch circles will be equal.

Fig. 84.



For, let kth, ftg be new positions of the involutes, the point of contact t will be always in the line DE, which is the *locus of contact*, and Hh, Ff are the arcs respectively described by the base circles of the involutes. But $Hh = DH - Dh = DT - Dt = Et - ET = Ef - EF = Ff$. And since these arcs are equal, the perimetral velocities of the base circles are equal, and the angular velocity ratio constant.

But $AD : BE :: AT : BT$ by construction; that is, the radii of the bases are proportional to the radii of the pitch circles. Whence it follows that the perimetral velocities of the pitch circles are also equal, and the angular velocity ratio the same as that which would be obtained by making their circumferences act upon each other by rolling contact.

Otherwise; because the normal to any point of contact t of the involutes coincides with the common tangent of their bases, this normal is a fixed line, and passes through a fixed point T of the line of centers, which also shows, as before, the constancy of the angular velocity ratio.

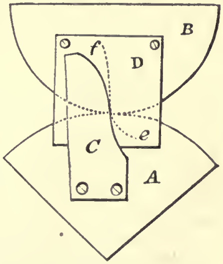
121. If the distance of the centers A, B be altered, but so that the involutes may still remain in contact, then it can be shown, in exactly the same manner, that the velocity of the circumferences of the bases will be equal; and, therefore, that the ratio of the angular motion of the two curves will remain unaltered. This is

a property which distinguishes the involute from the other curves that have been given, and is of some practical importance; for when these curves are employed for the teeth of wheels, it is not only unnecessary to fix the centers of their wheels at a precise distance, but a derangement of the centers, from wearing or settlement in the frame-work, does not impair the action of the teeth. In every other pair of curves that have been assigned, a variation in the distance destroys the equal ratio of the motion, by destroying the principle of their connection.

122. For every given pair of pitch circles an infinite number of pairs of involutes may be assigned, that will answer the conditions required; for the inclination of DTE to the line of centers is arbitrary, and every change of inclination produces a new pair of bases and of involutes.

123. *General solutions.*—De la Hire in his treatise 'On the Employment of Epicycloids in Mechanism' (1694), stated (Prop. VI) the principle that, if the surfaces of two wheels be in the same plane, we may give any convenient figure to the teeth of one and the teeth of the other will be a form compounded of the epicycloid and that of the selected tooth. To construct this latter form he assumes that the pitch circles instead of revolving in rolling contact about two fixed centers, are, the one fixed and the circumference of the other rolled upon it, carrying with it the tooth, and in the next place gives a geometrical construction by which the given tooth can be drawn in a sufficient number of successive positions on the plane of the fixed circle, and proceeds to draw a curve which will touch all these positions, and be, therefore, in the language of modern geometry, the envelope of those positions. If the edge of the required tooth be made in the form of this envelope, it will manifestly be in contact with the assumed tooth at one point or other when the pitch circles revolve.

Fig. 85.



This process, but not the method, is represented in fig. 85, which shows a simple piece of apparatus for lectures, which I constructed and published in 1837.*

Take a pair of boards A and B, whose edges are formed into arcs of the given pitch circles. Attach to one of them the shape of the proposed tooth C, and to the other a piece of drawing-

* Vide *Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers*, vol. ii. p. 89.

paper *D*, the tooth being slightly raised above the surface of the board to allow the paper to pass under it. Keep the circular edges of the boards in contact, and make them roll together.

Draw upon *D*, in a sufficient number of successive positions, the outlines of the edge of *C*. A curve *ef*, which touches all these successive lines, will be the corresponding tooth required for *B*. For by the very mode in which it has been obtained, it will, if cut out, touch *C* in every position; and therefore, the contact of these two curves *C* and *ef* will exactly replace the rolling action of the pitch circles.

124. The problem to be solved is, that any curve being assumed for the edge of one tooth of a given pitch circle, we have to trace the form of a tooth for the other pitch circle, such that the common normal of the two curves in contact, shall in all positions divide the line of centers in the fixed point of contingence of the two circles (vide Art. 116 above).

The complete solution was first stated by François Joseph Camus, in 1733,* in the words of the note below,† of which the translation follows. 'If the pinion is to turn the wheel with a uniform force, the curve of its leaf, and that of the tooth of the wheel must be generated in the manner of epicycloids by *one and the same describing curve*, which must be rolled within the circle of the pinion to describe the inner form of the leaf, and on the outside of the circle of the wheel to describe the outer form of the tooth. Similarly, the outer form of the leaf, and the inner form of the tooth which work together must be described by rolling one and the same describing curve outside the circle of the pinion, and inside the circle of the wheel.' He adds that the curve employed to generate one part may be the same or a different one to that employed to generate the other. The paper includes complete demonstrations and constructions for carrying out his principle.

125. Dr. Young, in his 'Lectures' ‡ in 1807, is the first English writer who states this principle, but without allusion of any kind

* I discovered this paper after the publication of the first edition of the present work. This general principle is not contained in the *Cours de Mathématiques* of M. Camus (t. ii. 1759), from whence the well-known English *Camus on Wheels* was translated; yet the above paper and the *Cours* appear to have been written by the same person.

† Si l'on veut que le pignon tourne comme la roüe avec une force toujours uniforme, la courbure de l'aile *ACH* et la courbure *CZ* de la dent doivent être engendrées comme les épicycloïdes, par une même courbe, qui roulera au-dedans du pignon sur sa circonférence *HB* pour décrire l'aile, et extérieurement sur la circonférence *ZB* de la roüe pour décrire la dent, &c.

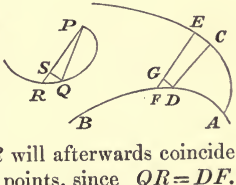
‡ Lecture xv. p. 176.

to its author. It is true that in his invaluable catalogue under the head 'Structure and Proportion of Wheels,' we find 'Camus on the Teeth of Wheels (A.P. 1733, p. 117, H. 81),' a reference which led me to the real author of this remarkable theorem, and to the source from whence Young derived it. In the Cambridge 'Philosophical Transactions'* (1825), there is an excellent paper on the forms of the teeth of wheels, by Mr. Airy, the present astronomer royal, which serves to show the state of that question at the time of its compilation, but was certainly not written with the intention of giving the history of the subject, for the only name mentioned is that of *Euler*. The method employed in the paper is founded upon the theorem which I have above traced to *Camus*, and the demonstrations are essentially the same as those of that writer and De la Hire, but without reference to the original authors.

I have therefore thought it best, after having given the above historical account, to continue with extracts from Mr. Airy's paper, beginning with a theorem borrowed from De la Hire.† '*It is always possible to find a curve, which, by revolving upon a given curve as a base, shall, by some describing point, in the manner of a trochoid, generate a second given curve, provided that the normals from all points of the second curve meet the first. This second curve is termed a "Roulette"* ‡ by De la Hire.'

To prove this, let AB (fig. 86) be the first curve, AC the second, from the points C and E, which are very near, draw the normals CD, EF; if a describing point P be taken, and PQ, PR, be made respectively equal to CD, EF, and QR equal to DF, and this process be continued, a curve will be formed, which, by revolving upon BA, will, by the describing point P, generate the curve

Fig. 86.



AC. For if Q coincide with D, then R will afterwards coincide with F; and so on for all succeeding points, since $QR = DF$. Also, $DC = QP$, &c. And the angles made by these with the tangents are equal, for the cosines of these angles, drawing DG, QS perpendicular to EF, PR are $\frac{FG}{FD}$ and $\frac{RS}{RQ}$, in which the numerators are the differences of equal lines, and the denominators are equal. Hence, P rolling on AB will describe AC. And

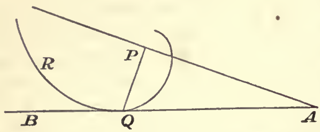
* Vol. ii. p. 276. † A. P. 1706, p. 379.

‡ Roulette may be translated by *Roll-traced curve*.

the formation of the curve RQ is always possible, because RQ is greater than RS, for FD is necessarily greater than FG.

De la Hire gives the following example. Suppose it were required to find the curve, which, revolving on one straight line AB (fig. 87), would generate another straight line AP. Since the angles made by the line PQ with the tangent must be constant, it follows that the curve would be the logarithmic spiral, P being its pole. If the straight lines AB, AP be parallel, the curve will be a circle, and its center the describing point.

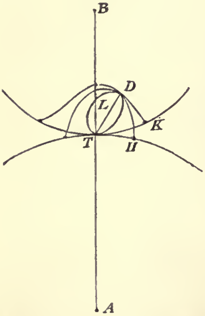
Fig. 87.



126. The mode of employing the method of Camus is clearly shown by the following diagram and demonstration, extracted from Mr. Airy's paper on the teeth of wheels already mentioned.

If the tooth HD (fig. 88) be generated by the revolution of any curve on the outside of the pitch circle HT, and if DK be generated by the revolution of the same curve in the same direction, in the inside of the pitch circle KT, then the normal at the point of contact of the teeth will pass through T. For, let the generating curve be brought into the position LT, so as to touch the circle HT at T, DT will be the normal of HD at D; and that the teeth may be in contact, the same generating curve in the other circle must touch KT at T, in which case it will coincide with this; D therefore will be in the surfaces of both of the teeth, and TD the normal of both at that point; therefore they will touch at D, and the line of action TD will pass through the fixed point T; * which being true in every position, the angular velocity ratio will be constant, and equal to that which would be obtained from the rolling contact of the pitch circles.

Fig. 88.



* In the involutes, fig. 84, page 88, the separation of the circles of the bases would seem to exclude them from this general proposition. But, however, in the involute ct the normal Et is inclined at a constant angle to BT, and therefore to the tangent of the pitch circle at T, and the constructions just given show that the involute ct may be generated by the revolution of a logarithmic spiral upon the pitch circle cT; the describing point being the pole of the spiral, and the angle between its radius and tangent the same as the angle made by ET with the tangent of the circle at T. In the

127. We are now able to solve the problem in its most general form. *Given, the form of the teeth of one wheel to find the form of those of another that they may work together correctly.* Describe the pitch circles of the required wheels. Find the curve which, revolving upon the one, will describe the given tooth. Make the same curve revolve within the other, and with the same describing point it will generate the tooth required.

That these forms may be applicable in practice, however, it is necessary that the curvature of the convexity of one tooth should be greater than that of the concavity of the other, or else that both should be convex.

ON THE TEETH OF WHEELS.

128. The formation and arrangement of the teeth of wheels forms so important and interesting a branch of our subject, that I have thought it better to allot a separate Section of this Chapter to it. For the convenience of reference, it will be seen that I have distinguished, by number, the several solutions of the problem which requires curves to be found that will produce a constant velocity ratio when revolving together in sliding contact; and I shall now proceed to show, in order, how these solutions are to be applied to the formation of the teeth of wheels.

To apply the first solution to the formation of the teeth of wheels.

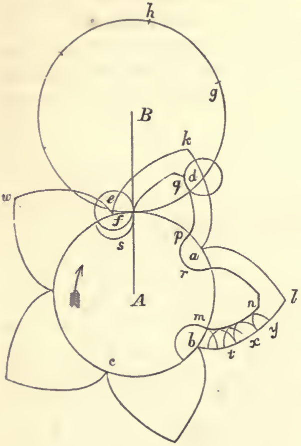
129. This solution shows that an epicycloid traced on the pitch circle of the driver, by a describing circle equal to the pitch circle of the follower, will drive a pin in the circumference of the follower with the same motion as if the pitch circles rolled together. Let the pitch circles (fig. 89) be divided respectively into a number of equal parts, *ed*, *dg*, *gh*, &c.... *fa*, *ab*, *bc*, &c.... corresponding to the number of teeth proposed to be given to them; let fine pins be fixed into the follower at the points *e*, *d*, *g*, *h*, &c....and let a series of epicycloidal arcs *fk*, *ka*, *al*, *lb*, &c....be traced with a describing circle equal to the pitch circle

same way, the revolution of this spiral within the second pitch circle kT will generate another involute kt, which will work correctly with the first.

The portions of the two involutes which lie respectively within and without the pitch circles, as TG, TH, being thus included in the general proposition, the remaining portions TF, KT can be in the same manner included in it.

of the follower, and through the points *f, a, b*,...alternately to right and left, meeting at *k, l*.... If motion be given to the driver in the direction of the arrow, then the curved face *ak*, will press against the pin *d*, and move it in the same direction. But as the motion continues the pin *d* will slide upwards until it reaches *k*, when this tooth and pin will quit contact. Before this happens the pin *e* will have reached the point *f*, and the face *fw* of the next tooth will have commenced a similar action upon the pin *e*, which will in like manner be succeeded by the next pair; and so on continually.

Fig. 89.



130. But the demonstration supposes the pins to be mathematical points having no sensible diameter, which is practically impossible. Take therefore, a sufficient number of points *t, x, y*,...in the epicycloidal face of the tooth *bl*, and with a radius equal to that which the pin requires describe a series of small arcs, and draw a curve *mn* touching them all. Repeat this operation upon every tooth, so as to produce curves *sq, qp, rn*...respectively parallel to the original epicycloids. For example, let the curve *pq* be substituted for the epicycloid *ak*, and at the same time a pin of the given radius be substituted for the point *d*. In every relative position of contact between this new pin and the curve *pq* the epicycloid *ak* will pass through its center *d*. For by the mode of its description the circle must touch the curve *pq*, when its center is in any point of the epicycloid. Therefore the tooth *w* derived from the epicycloid will drive a pin of any required diameter, exactly in the same manner as the original curve would have driven the mathematical point. A space *pr* must also be cut out within the pitch circle of the driver and between the bases of the teeth, to allow the pin to pass. But as the sides of this space never touch the pin, the form of it is immaterial, provided it be made sufficiently large to ensure that there shall be no accidental contact.

131. This solution is applicable to trundles or pin-wheels of all kinds (Art. 59). In the figure it appears, that while any given tooth *ka* is in contact with, and drives a pin *d*, the back *kf* of this tooth will be in contact with the succeeding pin *e;* and consequently, if the motion of the driver were reversed, the back of the tooth would begin to drive the tooth *e* without any shake taking place, and the wheels would work as well in one direction as the other. This perfection is unattainable in practice, as the smallest error in excess of the figure, or position of the tooth, or pin, would cause the teeth to wedge themselves fast between the two contiguous pins. It is necessary to allow a small space for play between the teeth and pins, and this play is termed *backlash.* The same principle and phrase applies to all forms of teeth which are capable of being so arranged as to work in both directions.

132. When the pin is reduced to a mathematical point, the contact of any tooth *ak* begins at the moment its base *a* has reached the line of centers; and during the action of the tooth the point of contact gradually slides upwards, remaining always in the pitch circle of the pin-wheel, and at the same time it recedes from the line of centers until the contact is finally terminated at the point of the tooth *k*; the action being wholly confined to the recess from the line of centers. But if, on the other hand, the *pin-wheel* were made to *drive the teeth,* the reverse would happen; the contact would begin at the top of the teeth, and end at their base, and the action would be confined to the approach to the line of centers.

Now, in practice, the friction which takes place between surfaces whose points of contact are approaching the line of centers, is found to be of a much more vibratory and injurious character than that which happens while the points of contact are receding from it. It is therefore necessary to avoid the first kind of contact as much as possible, and for this reason the teeth are always given to the drivers, and the pins to the followers, in this kind of wheel-work. For the most part, the diameter of the pin is made equal to that of the tooth, with an allowance for play equal to one tenth of the pitch. The radius of the pin will be, therefore, rather less than a quarter of the pitch. When the stave has a sensible diameter, the first contact will take place, as before, when the center of the stave reaches the line of centers, and therefore at a distance before that line equal to the radius of the stave, or rather less than a quarter of the pitch.

But, plainly, one tooth must not quit contact before the succeeding tooth is engaged; therefore, when the point *f* has reached the line of centers, the tooth pq must not have quitted contact with the pin d; and the point q, when contact ceases, must therefore be at an angular distance from the line of centers, equal at least to half the distance fa, or half the pitch; so that in a pin-wheel the action that takes place before coming to the line of centers, is less than half that which must take place after passing it.

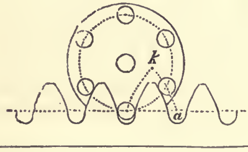
133. *A rack* may be considered as a wheel, the radius of whose pitch line is infinite (Art. 62); and on this hypothesis the form of its teeth may be derived from those of spur-wheels with finite radii, by very simple considerations.

The rack may drive or follow; in the first case the pins will be given to the wheel, and in the second case to the rack.

Now if the rack drive, the line Ta, fig. 81, (which is an arc of the pitch circle of the driver) will become a right line perpendicular to the line of centers, and abc will become a cycloid.

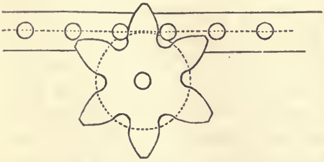
The teeth of the rack, fig. 90, must be derived from the cycloid ka, by the method already explained, of tracing a parallel curve at a distance from it equal to the radius of the pin.

Fig. 90.



If, however, the rack be driven, as in fig. 91, then the arc Tb, fig. 81, will become a right line, and abc will become the involute of the pitch circle of the driver Ta. From which involute a parallel curve might be obtained, as before, for the teeth of the pinion; but this is unnecessary, inasmuch as this process would merely reproduce the same involute in a different position.

Fig. 91.

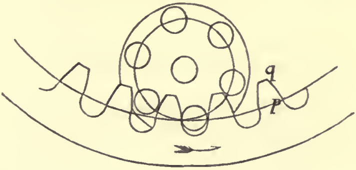


It follows, that to describe the teeth of a wheel which is to drive a pin rack, involutes of its pitch circle must be traced to right and left alternately, and at a distance from each other rather greater than the diameter of the pins.

134. In a similar way *an annular wheel* may either *drive or follow*.

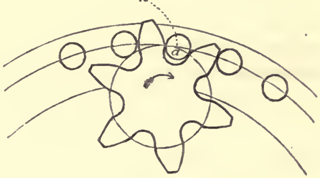
If it *drive*, the pitch circle Ta, fig. 81. will become concave; and if the radius of the pins be small, the sides of the teeth will be hypocycloids, as at *pq*, fig. 92, traced by the rolling of the pitch circle of the follower within the pitch circle of the driver; or, as before, if the radius of the pins be considerable, then the sides of the teeth will be drawn parallel to the hypocycloids at a normal distance equal to the radius of the pins.

Fig. 92.



If the annular wheel *follow*, it will carry the pins, and the teeth of the driver will be traced by rolling the *inside* of the annular pitch circle upon the *outside* of that of the driver, making, as before, the true edge of the teeth equidistant from the epicycloid so obtained, *ka*, fig. 93, by a distance equal to the radius of the pin.

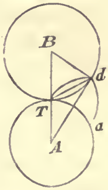
Fig. 93.



135. *To find the smallest number of teeth or pins that can be employed, when the pins have no sensible diameter.*

Let T, d, be two successive pins in a pin-wheel, Tda the tooth of the driver, and let the pin d coincide with the point of the tooth Tda, at the moment the next pin T arrives at the line of centers; then one tooth ceases its action at the moment the next tooth begins.

Fig. 94.



Let $AT=R$, $BT=r$, $BAd=\theta$, $ABd=\phi$

Now, from the nature of the curve ad, Ta which is equal to the pitch must be equal to $Td=r\phi$; and the angle BAd includes in the position of the figure half a tooth or half the pitch; $\therefore\ 2R\theta=r\phi$.

If the pin d had not quite reached the extremity of the tooth, when T arrived at the line of centers, TAd would have been less than half the pitch angle; but the action of the wheels would not be interrupted, but rather improved; whereas, on the contrary, were TAd greater than half the pitch angle, one tooth would quit its pin before the next could begin contact; therefore, we may have TAd equal to, or less than, half the pitch angle, but not greater;

$$\text{or } 2R\theta \left\{ \begin{matrix} = \\ < \end{matrix} \right\} r\phi.$$

$$\text{Now } \frac{Bd}{AB}=\frac{\sin BAd}{\sin AdB};$$

$$\text{that is, } \frac{r}{R+r}=\frac{\sin\theta}{\sin(\phi+\theta)}=\frac{\sin\theta}{\sin\left(1+\frac{2R}{r}\right)\theta};$$

in which equation, substituting different values of the ratio $\frac{R}{r}$, it will appear whether the value of θ is sufficiently small to answer the conditions; for example, let $R=r$;

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2}=\frac{\sin\theta}{\sin 3\theta}, \text{ or } 2\sin\theta=\sin 3\theta=3\sin\theta-4\sin^3\theta;$$

$$\therefore \sin\theta=\frac{1}{2}, \text{ and } \theta=30^\circ;$$

by which it appears that six teeth and six pins will exactly fulfil the conditions, and that the pin will exactly reach the extremity of its tooth when the next pin comes into action. Also any number greater than six may be employed, but with less than six the action will be interrupted.

$$\text{If } r=2R, \cos\theta=\frac{3}{4}, \text{ and } \theta=41^\circ.36;\ \therefore 2\theta=83^\circ.12';$$

which corresponds to four teeth and a fraction; the smallest whole numbers are five teeth to drive ten pins.

136. In this manner the following set of results were obtained.

A pinion of four pins may be driven by a wheel of any number of teeth greater than about sixteen, but a pinion of three pins cannot be driven even by a rack, that is, by a wheel of an infinite number of teeth.

Five pins may be driven by any number of teeth greater than about ten.

Six is the least number that admits of being employed in the case of the number of teeth and pins being equal.

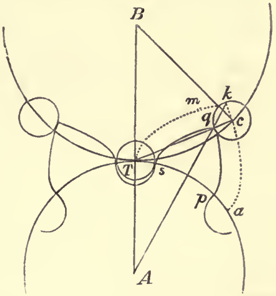
Five teeth will drive a pin-wheel of any number from eight upwards, and four teeth require at least twelve pins; but three teeth will just drive a pin-rack, and consequently will not work with a wheel.

It must be recollected, that in this class of wheel-work the pins are always given to the follower.

137. In the last Article the pin was supposed to be a mathematical point; but as this is impracticable, let us examine the question, supposing the pin to have a sensible radius.

It has been shown (Art. 129) that the form of tooth for such a stave is derived from the epicycloid *ak* (fig. 95), that would serve when the stave is reduced to a point; by tracing a curve pq at a normal distance from it, equal to the radius cq of the stave. Let pqs be such a tooth, then, if it be quitting contact at the moment the next stave and tooth are coming into action, the center of this next stave T must coincide with the line of centers; and as the line Tc, which joins the center of the pin c with the tangent point T of the pitch circles, is the normal to the epicycloid ak, it necessarily passes through the point of contingence of the curve pq and the stave: this point q will also be the extremity of the tooth.

Fig. 95.



Let TBc (the pitch angle of the pin-wheel) $=\phi$,
and BAq (half the pitch angle of the toothed wheel) $=\theta$;
let $AT=R$, $BT=r$, and cq, the radius of the pin, $=\rho$;

$$\therefore r\phi=2R\theta \quad (1).$$

$$\text{* But } cm=cq.\frac{\sin cqm}{\sin cmq}=\rho.\frac{\cos\left(\frac{\phi}{2}+\theta\right)}{\sin(\phi+\theta)}.$$

$$\text{Also, } \frac{\sin BAm}{\sin AmB}=\frac{Bm}{AB},$$

$$\text{that is, } \frac{\sin\theta}{\sin(\phi+\theta)}=\frac{r-(cm)}{R+r}=\frac{r-\rho.\frac{\cos\left(\frac{\phi}{2}+\theta\right)}{\sin(\phi+\theta)}}{R+r}.$$

From this equation θ may be eliminated by (1.)

Let k be the ratio of the diameter of the pin to the pitch, which is the most convenient term in which to express the result;

$$\therefore k=\frac{2\rho}{2R\theta};\ \therefore \rho=kR\theta.$$

Substituting this value of ρ, and arranging the terms, we finally obtain

* In fig. 95, m should be at the intersection of Bc and Ak.

$$k = \frac{\sin\left(\frac{2R+r}{2R}.\phi\right) - \frac{R+r}{r}.\sin\left(\frac{r\phi}{2R}\right)}{\frac{\phi}{2}.\cos\left(\frac{R+r}{2R}.\phi\right)}.$$

From this equation, by substituting in each particular case the value of ϕ, and of $\frac{R}{r}$, the necessary diameter of k will be obtained, which will cause one tooth to quit contact at the instant the other begins. Should k come out negative, the case is thus shown to be impossible; and if zero, then it corresponds to the arrangement in which the pin is a mathematical point. In practice it would not answer to arrange teeth so that one pair should quit contact at the instant the next pair begins it, because the least wearing or inaccuracy would cause an interruption in the action. It is necessary, therefore, to allow more teeth than our Tables will show, or to make the stave of less diameter and the tooth of greater.

TABLE I.

Pinion drives, and Staves are given to the Wheel								
	Value of $\frac{r}{R}$	Diameter of Stave						
		Number of Teeth in the Pinion						
		2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Annular Wheel	3	·63	+	+	+	+	+	+
	4	·28	+	+	+	+	+	+
	8	—	·64	+	+	+	+	+
	Rack	—	·34	·73	+	+	+	+
Spur-Wheel	8	—	—	·58	+	+	+	+
	6	—	—	·51	+	+	+	+
	5	—	—	·46	+	+	+	+
	4	—	—	·37	+	+	+	+
	3	—	—	·18	·59	+	+	+
	2	—	—	—	·37	·63	·75	+
	1	—	—	—	—	0	·38	·57

TABLE II.

Wheel drives, and Staves are given to the Pinion								
	Value of $\frac{R}{r}$	Diameter of Stave — Number of Staves in the Pinion						
		2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Spur-Wheel	1	–	–	–	–	0	·38	·57
	2	–	–	–	·20	·51	·66	+
	3	–	–	–	·39	+	+	+
	4	–	–	·01	·46	+	+	+
	5	–	–	·10	·50	+	+	+
	6	–	–	·16	+	+	+	+
	8	–	–	·22	+	+	+	+
	10	–	–	·26	+	+	+	+
	Rack	–	–	·38	+	+	+	+
Annular Wheel	8	–	·01	·49	+	+	+	+
	6	–	·10	+	+	+	+	+
	4	–	·23	+	+	+	+	+

I have not thought it necessary to give the diagram for the case of annular wheels, but I have inserted the results which apply to them in the table. They may be obtained from the formulæ, by considering that R and r lie on the same side, instead of opposite, and therefore R and r must have opposite signs; also the angle AmB will, for the same reason, be taken equal to the difference, instead of the sum of θ and ϕ.

138. The preceding Tables show that diameter of the stave or pin in parts of the pitch which allows one pair of teeth and pins to quit contact at the instant the next pair begin it.

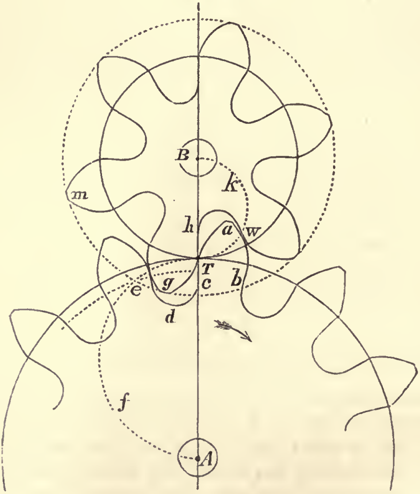
The impossible cases are marked –, but when the character + is inserted, the necessary diameter of the stave is greater than half the pitch, and consequently all such cases may be employed in practice.

139. *Example.* A wheel is required to drive a pinion of one

fourth of its diameter; to find the least number of teeth and pins that can be employed.

This example belongs to the second table; and in the line appropriated to $\frac{R}{r}=4$ it appears that if four staves be given to the pinion, and consequently sixteen teeth to the wheel, the diameter of the stave is reduced to the hundredth part of the pitch; but that if the numbers 5 and 20 be employed, the pin may be made nearly half the pitch. In practice it would not be safe, therefore, to employ less numbers than 6, 24, or 7, 28.

Fig. 96.



To apply the second solution to the formation of the teeth of wheels.

140. The forms of teeth derived from this solution are the most generally employed at present, they having been found the best adapted for metal wheels, whereas those which have been derived from the first solution belong rather to the ancient practice of wooden mill-work, although they may still be occasionally employed in metal work, as pin-wheels.

Fig. 96 represents a pair of wheels whose teeth are derived from the second solution. A and B are their centers of motion, T the point of contingence of the pitch circles; and as the forms of the teeth in each wheel are obtained from the same principles, either wheel will act as driver or follower. The complete side of each tooth, as cTa, or hTg, is made up of two parts, one of which lies within the pitch circle, and the other without; the portion aT or Tg that lies without the pitch circle is technically termed the *face* of the tooth, and that which lies within as Th or Tc is termed its *flank*, which terms I shall employ.

With respect to the portions Tc, Tg of the pair of teeth gTh, cTa, Tc is a radial line to A, and Tg an arc of an epicycloid whose describing circle is $Tefa$, equal in diameter to the radius TA of the lower pitch circle. On the other hand, Th is a radial line to B, and Ta an arc of an epicycloid whose describing circle is TkB, equal in diameter to the radius TB of the upper pitch circle; that is, the flanks or portions of teeth in both wheels that lie within their respective pitch circles are radial lines, and the faces, or those that lie without, are arcs of epicycloids traced in each wheel with a describing circle equal in diameter to the pitch radius of the other wheel. By the second solution, therefore, each flank and face will act in contact to produce a constant angular velocity ratio, but the action of each pair will be confined to its own side of the line of centers.

As the two sides of each tooth are precisely alike, and symmetrical to a line joining the centers of the wheel and point of the tooth, the wheels will turn each other in either direction at pleasure. The form of the curved line cde which connects each tooth with the next is indifferent, provided it afford sufficient room for the point of the opposite tooth; for it manifestly never comes into contact action, since that is entirely confined to the portions of the tooth before described. The curved part cde is termed the *clearing*.

141. To examine the action of the teeth, let the lower wheel of the figure be the driver, and let it revolve in the direction of the arrow; therefore the right sides of its teeth will press the left sides of the follower's teeth. Now, the locus of contact is the semicircle feT during the approach to the line of centers, and the semicircle TkB during the recess. The contact, therefore, of every pair of teeth begins at the root of the driver's tooth, that is, at that point of the flank which is nearest the center, and proceeds gradually outwards till it ceases at the point of the tooth. But in the follower the contrary action takes place. The contact begins at the point of its teeth, and ends at their root.

This is evident, since the path of the point of contact is the sinuous line *eTk*.

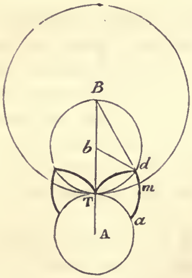
Also, in every pair of teeth the extent of face that comes into contact action is much greater than the extent of flank with which it works. For, let *Tg* be a given length of the curve of a tooth in the upper wheel, then, to find the required length of flank in the lower wheel, describe with radius *Bg* an arc of a circle *gm*, intersecting the locus of contact *Tef* in *e*; therefore *e* will be the radial distance of the first point of contact of the flank with *g*, and *AT*—*Ae* the length of flank through which the action is continued; which is manifestly less than the face *Tg*.

142. *To find the smallest number of teeth that can be employed when the teeth of the driver are epicycloids whose describing circle is half the pitch circle of the follower, and the teeth of the follower radial lines having no sensible thickness.*

Radial teeth of this kind might be formed by inserting thin plates of metal edgewise into the surface of a block, in the same way that pins are when employed for teeth; and this arrangement falls under the second solution, as well as the last, although the form of the teeth appears different.

In fig. 97, *B* is the center of the follower, *A* of the driver, *Tda* one of the teeth of the latter, and *Bdm** the radial tooth of the follower, with which the face *ad* has been in contact during its motion from *T* to *a*.

Fig. 97.



The semicircle *TdB* described upon the radius *TB* is the locus of contact; let the apex *d* of the tooth *ad* be quitting contact at the same moment that the succeeding tooth begins it; therefore *d* will lie in the semicircle *Tdb*, and the base of the succeeding tooth coincide with *T*.

Join *bd*, then comparing this figure with fig. 94, Art. 135, it will appear that in fig. 97, if *b* were the center of a pin-wheel, and *d* the pin acting with the tooth *ad*, *Tbd* would be the pitch angle that would cause the tooth *ad* to quit contact with the pin at the moment the next began it; but *TBd* is the similar pitch angle in the case of radial teeth, and $TBd = \frac{1}{2} Tbd$.

The least number of radii, therefore, that will work with a given

* The line from *d* to *m* is obliterated in the woodcut, but can easily be supplied, since it is the mere prolongation of *Bd*.

number of epicycloidal teeth is equal to twice the least number of pins.

The results obtained upon this principle, from the formula of Art. 93, are as follows.

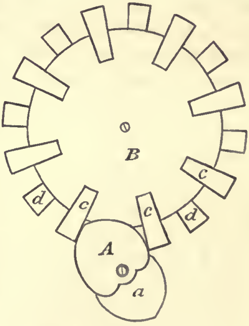
A pinion of—

7 radii may be driven by a wheel of 56 teeth and upwards.
8 „ „ 16 „
9 „ „ 12 „
10 is the least number when equal numbers of teeth and radii are employed.
9 teeth will drive a wheel of 10 radii and upwards.
8 „ 11 „
7 „ 12 „
6 „ 12 „
5 „ 16 „
4 „ 24 „
3 teeth will drive a rack whose teeth are straight, and have no sensible thickness.

143. Although it appears from these tables that a pinion of three teeth will but just drive a rack, and that four is the least that can be employed to drive a wheel, supposing the radii to be very narrow, yet two teeth may be made to answer this purpose very practically by fixing them in two planes, as in fig. 98.

B represents a disk to which teeth *c*, *c*, *c*, ... *d*, *d*, ... are fixed alternately on one side and on the other, the sides or rather flanks of these teeth are straight, and radiate in direction from the center of *B*; and the extreme diameter of *B* measured from the opposite extremities of the teeth is equal to that of its pitch circle. The driver is formed of a pair of double epicycloids, of which *A* is in the plane of the upper teeth *c*, *c*, *c*, ... and *a* in the plane of the lower teeth *d*, *d*.... The describing circle of these epicycloids is of course equal to half the pitch circle of the follower. The action of this combination is very smooth.

Fig. 98.



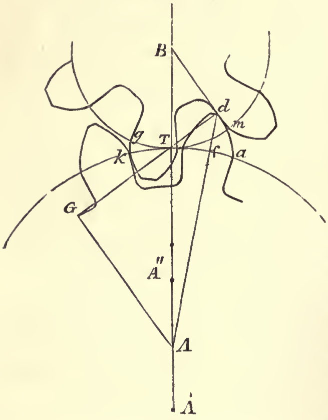
A pinion of one tooth communicating a constant angular velocity ratio between parallel axes appears absolutely impossible.

The endless screw is equivalent, however, as we shall see, to a single tooth.

144. *To show the geometrical conditions that limit the employment of low-numbered pinions, when the teeth are formed in the usual manner, as in fig.* 96.

The usual general construction and letters being made, fig. 99. Let TBd be the angle through which it is desired that the contact

Fig. 99.



of the tooth ad should continue after passing the line of centers. Therefore, as the contact is now ended, the point of contact will be at the extremity d of the tooth. Join Td, which will be perpendicular to the radius Bdm. Join Ad. Then, since a was in contact with m at the line of centers, the arc $Ta = Tm$, and is given, being that proportion of the pitch through which the contact of the teeth is required to continue. Also af is half the tooth, if the tooth be pointed, or else, if it be blunted by a certain quantity, then af is half the tooth diminished by that quantity and in either case is given. Now ka is equal to the pitch, and must contain one tooth, and the space between; and since af cannot be greater than half a tooth, and may be less, therefore kf must contain at least half a tooth and a space, always supposing the tooth and space to be equal. Now for every given wheel BTm, and value of TBd, a value of TA may be assigned that will make kf exactly equal to a space and a half tooth, and in that case the tooth will be pointed.

If a greater value $TA_{\prime}$ be taken, the point f will fall nearer to a, and af will become less than half a tooth; so that the tooth may be blunted: but if a less value $TA_{\prime\prime}$ be taken, then the point f will fall nearer to T, and kf will become too small to contain the space and remaining half tooth. If the teeth of the wheel radius $TA_{\prime\prime}$ were set out, it would be found that the epicycloidal arcs on the two sides of df would intersect between d and f, and thus make the tooth too short to continue its action through the required arc Ta.

Let N and n be the numbers of teeth in a pair of wheels whose teeth are of the kind described, and whose action after passing the line of centers is given; it appears then that for every value of N a value of n may be assigned, a less number than which will make the action of the teeth impossible; and it is of some practical importance to determine these limiting values of n in every case, that we may avoid setting out impossible pairs of numbers in wheel-work.

145. A formula may be investigated thus: produce dT towards G, and from A draw AG perpendicular to and meeting it in G;

$$\text{then } \frac{\tan GAd}{\tan GAT} = \frac{Gd}{GT} = \frac{AB}{AT};$$

$$\text{or } \frac{\tan(TBd + TAd)}{\tan TBd} = \frac{AT + BT}{AT}.$$

Now the angle TBd and the radius BT are given by the conditions, and also the arc Ta, which is the supposed arc of action; whence Tf is known;

$$\text{also } TAd = \frac{Tf}{AT}.$$

But if we attempt to extract the value of AT from the above expression, it will be found to be so involved as to make a direct solution of the equation impossible, although approximations may be obtained.

However, on account of the practical importance of the question, I have arranged in the following Tables the exact required results, which I derived organically from the diagram of fig. 99, by constructing it on a large scale with movable rulers.

N.B. The case of annular wheels differs from that of spur-wheels in this respect, that, with a given pinion a small-numbered wheel works with a greater angle of action than a large-numbered one, and therefore we have to assign the *greatest* number that will work with each given pinion. This will easily appear if a similar diagram to fig. 99 be constructed for the case of annular wheels.

146. In these Tables I have supposed the tooth of the wheel to equal the space throughout, and have given the whole of the limiting cases, and under three suppositions: first, that the arc of action Ta shall be equal to the pitch, in which case, if required, the teeth of the follower may be cut down to the pitch circle, and the contact of the teeth thus confined to their recess from the line of centers; for since the action of each pair of teeth continues through a space equal to the pitch, it is clear that at the moment

TABLE I.

For Spur-wheels.

Table *of the* least *numbers of Teeth that will work with given Pinions.* (*Tooth* = *Space.*)

	Number of Teeth in given Pinion	Least Number of Teeth in Wheel, if Wheel drives	Least Number of Teeth in Wheel, if Pinion drives
Arc of action, Ta = pitch.	5	impossible	impossible
	6	....	176
	7	....	52
	8	....	35
	9	....	27
	10	rack	23
	11	54	21
	12	30	19
	13	24	18
	14	20	17
	15	17	16
	16	15	...
Arc of action, $Ta = \frac{3}{4}$ pitch.	3	impossible	impossible
	4	....	35
	5	....	19
	6	....	14
	7	31	12
	8	16	10
	9	12	10
	10	10	10
Arc of action, $Ta = \frac{2}{3}$ pitch.	2	impossible	impossible
	3	....	36
	4	....	15
	5	....	13
	6	20	10
	7	11	9
	8	8	8

TABLE II.

FOR ANNULAR WHEELS.

TABLE *of the* greatest *numbers of Teeth that will work with given Pinions.* (*Tooth = Space.*)

	Number of Teeth in given Pinion	Greatest Number of Teeth in Annular Wheel, if Wheel drives	Greatest Number of Teeth in Annular Wheel, if Pinion drives
Arc of action, Ta = pitch.	2	impossible	5
	3	....	12
	4	....	26
	5	....	85
	7	14	any number
	8	25	....
	9	60	....
Arc of action, $Ta = \frac{3}{4}$ pitch.	2	impossible	10
	3	....	77
	4	5	any number
	5	12	....
	6	77	....
Arc of action, $Ta = \frac{2}{3}$ pitch.	2	impossible	14
	4	8	any number
	5	64	....

one pair quits contact the next will begin. However, as some allowance must be made for errors of workmanship, it is better to allow the teeth to act a little before they come to the line of centers; or else, by selecting numbers removed from the limiting cases in the Table, to enable the teeth to continue in action through a greater space than one pitch. This principle will be examined more at length presently.

The limiting numbers under two other suppositions are inserted in the Tables, namely, that the arc of action Ta, shall equal $\frac{3}{4}$ and $\frac{2}{3}$ of the pitch, and when these are employed it is of course necessary that an arc of action, at least equal to $\frac{1}{4}$ and $\frac{1}{3}$

of the pitch respectively, shall take place between the teeth before they reach the line of centers.

It appears that a smaller pinion may be employed to drive than to follow. Thus, when the action begins at the line of centers the least wheel that can drive a pinion of eleven is 54, but the same pinion can drive a wheel of 21 and upwards; again, nothing less than a rack can drive a pinion of ten, but this pinion can drive a wheel of 23, and upwards. No pinion of less than ten leaves can be driven, but pinions as low as six may be employed to drive any number above those in the Table. And, lastly, the least pair of equal pinions that will work together is sixteen. These limits being geometrically exact, it is better in practice to allow more teeth than the Table assigns.

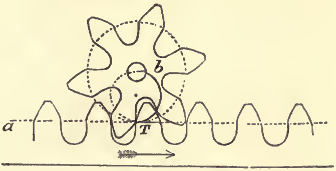
147. Other problems of the same nature as those already given might be suggested; as, for example, to find the least numbers that can be employed when, without considering the relative action before and after the line of centers, the teeth are supposed to be drawn, as in fig. 96, with entire points both in the driver and follower, and the tooth equal the space; on which suppositions it would be found that the least possible number of teeth in a pair of equal wheels is *five*, that *four* will just work with *six*, and *three* with about *twelve*, and that *two* will not even work with a rack.

148. *To adapt the second solution to racks.*—If we suppose the lower pitch circle of fig. 96 to become a right line, we shall obtain a rack, and the epicycloidal faces *ab* of the rack teeth will become *cycloids*, because their describing circle *BkT* now rolls upon a right line, but the radial flanks *hT* of the pinion will remain unaltered. On the other hand, when the radius *TA* is thus increased to an infinite magnitude the describing circle *Tfa* coincides with the pitch circle whose center is *A*, and they unite in one straight line, tangent to the upper pitch circle at *T*; which line is, as already stated, the pitch line of the rack. But the curved faces *Tg*... of the upper pitch circle being thus described by the rolling of a tangent upon its circumference, are *involutes* of the circle, and the straight flanks *Tc* of the rack-teeth become parallel to each other and perpendicular to its pitch line.

Also, because *Tf* the locus of contact now coincides with the pitch line of the rack, therefore the action of the faces of the wheel-teeth is confined to that single point of each rack-tooth which lies upon the pitch line.

Fig. 100 represents a pinion and rack constructed upon the above principles, from which it appears, that, supposing the rack to be the driver, and to move in the direction of the arrow, the locus of contact will be the right line aT during the approach to the line of centers, and the semicircle Tb during the recess from that line. If the pinion drive, then the contact will take place in the semicircle on approaching the line of centers, and in the pitch line on receding from it. But as there is a great disadvantage in confining the action and consequent abrasion to a single point of the teeth, I am inclined to think that this method of forming rack-teeth, although most universally adopted, is bad, and that the forms derived from the succeeding solutions will be found to wear better. Nevertheless, this injurious action may be abridged or destroyed by cutting the teeth of the pinion shorter, or reducing it to the diameter of the pitch circle; but then if the pinion drive, as it generally does, we fall into the other difficulty of confining its action entirely to the approach to the line of centers.

Fig. 100.



To find the length of the teeth of wheels formed according to the second solution.

149. The length of the tooth will in all cases appear from the setting out, according to the rules already laid down; but it is more convenient to have some general principles for this purpose. It has been already stated, that the *true diameter* or radius of a wheel is that which is measured from the extremities of the teeth, in opposition to the *geometrical diameter*, or diameter of *the pitch circle*. Let R be the radius of the pitch circle, and E the projection of the tooth beyond it, and U the true radius; therefore $U=R+E$. Now this addition E to the radius of the pitch circle is called by clockmakers the *addendum*, which term I shall, for convenience, employ. Let r, u, e be the geometrical radius, true radius, and addendum of a wheel, working with one of which the same quantities are respectively indicated by R, U, E;

$$\therefore \frac{U}{u}=\frac{R+E}{r+e}.$$

As it is convenient to express the addendum in terms of the pitch $\left(=\frac{2\pi R}{N}\right)$,

$$\text{let } E = K.\frac{2\pi R}{N}, \text{ and } e = k.\ \frac{2\pi r}{n},$$

$$\text{and as } \frac{R}{r} = \frac{N}{n}, \text{ we obtain}$$

$$\frac{U}{u} = \frac{N + 2\pi K}{n + 2\pi k}.$$

The practice of millwrights is to employ a constant addendum of $\frac{3}{10} \times$ pitch, whether the wheel be a driver or follower; putting, therefore, $K = k = .3$, we have

$$\frac{U}{u} = \frac{N + 1{\cdot}885}{n + 1{\cdot}885} = \frac{N+2}{n+2}, \text{ nearly};$$

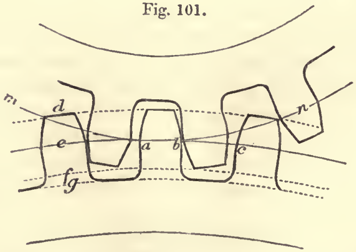
that is to say, to find the ratio of the true diameters of a pair of wheels of a given number of teeth, add two to each term of the ratio of the numbers. When the pitch is expressed according to the method described in Art 74, where the pitch diameter of the wheel is laid down from a scale whose unit is a tooth, the true diameter is at once given by adding two teeth to the number.

Watchmakers assign a different value to the addendum, according as the wheel in question is a driver or follower. Various proportions are assigned by different writers. Our latest and best English work* on the subject gives the rule

$$\frac{U}{u} = \frac{N + 2{\cdot}25}{n + 1{\cdot}5};$$

where U is the true radius of the driver, and u of the follower, and K, k are equal to ·36 and ·24, or $\frac{3}{8}$ and $\frac{1}{4}$ nearly of

Fig. 101.



the pitch. I shall proceed to investigate a principle for these rules, but will first state the entire general proportions which are

* Reid's *Horology*, p. 114.

at present usually given to the teeth of mill-work, and which may be considered to have arisen almost entirely from practice.

150. In fig. 101 is represented a portion of the circumference of a pair of mill-wheels in geer, whose pitch lines are *man*, and *eac*; the forms of the teeth are those generally adopted in practice, and the rules for proportioning them are stated in fractions of the pitch, thus:

$$de = \text{Depth to pitch line} = \frac{3}{10} \text{ pitch.}$$

$$df = \text{Working Depth} = \frac{6}{10} \ldots\ldots$$

$$dg = \text{Whole Depth} = \frac{7}{10} \ldots\ldots$$

$$ab = \text{Thickness of Tooth} = \frac{5}{11} \ldots\ldots$$

$$bc = \text{Breadth of Space} = \frac{6}{11} \ldots\ldots$$

It thus appears that an allowance of $\frac{1}{11}$ pitch is made to prevent the sides of the teeth from getting jammed into the spaces, and an allowance of $\frac{1}{10}$ pitch to prevent the tops of the teeth from striking the bottoms of the spaces. These proportions differ slightly with different workmen and different localities.

151. The necessary length of the teeth may be assigned with sufficient precision as follows. Vide fig. 99, p. 106.

$$Ad^2 = TA^2 + Td^2 - 2\,TA\,.\,Td\,.\cos ATd.$$

Let $AT = R$, $BT = r$, and the addendum $fd = E$;

$$\therefore\ Ad = R + E;$$

and let the angle $TBd = \theta$. This is the angle through which the contact will be continued after passing the line of centers, and may be termed the angle of *receding action*. Substituting these values in the above expressions, and arranging the terms, we obtain

$$\frac{R+E}{R} = \left\{1 + \frac{2Rr + r^2}{R^2} \times \sin^2\theta\right\}^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Expanding this expression by the binomial theorem, and putting for $\sin\theta$ the series $\theta - \frac{\theta^3}{6} + \&c. \ldots$ we may reject terms including the fourth power of θ, and higher powers, for θ is a small angle in all practical cases; we thus obtain

$$\frac{E}{R}=\frac{2Rr+r^2}{2R^2}\times\ \theta^2.$$

It is convenient to express both the addendum and the arc of action in relation to the pitch.

$$\text{Let } C \text{ be the pitch}=\frac{2\pi R}{N}=\frac{2\pi r}{n};$$

$$\therefore\ \frac{E}{C}=\frac{E}{R}\times\frac{N}{2\pi}.$$

Let F be the ratio of the arc of action Tm $(=r\theta)$ to the pitch;

$$\therefore\ \theta=\frac{F}{r}\times\frac{2\pi r}{n}=\frac{\pi F}{n}.$$

Substituting these values, we have

$$\frac{E}{C}(=K)=\pi F^2\left(\frac{2}{n}+\frac{1}{N}\right)\ . \quad (1).$$

This is the addendum to the driver.

The addendum of the follower is obtained in the same manner, by reversing the diagram, and considering the driver and follower to change places; in which case, the arc of action Tm will be that which takes place before reaching the line of centers. Let e be the addendum to the follower, f the ratio of the arc of action before reaching the line of centers to the pitch, which arc may be termed that of *approaching action*; substitute these letters for the corresponding ones in (1), and counterchange N for n, and we have

$$\frac{e}{C}(=k)=\pi f^2\left(\frac{2}{N}+\frac{1}{n}\right);$$

$$\therefore\ \frac{E}{e}=\frac{F^2}{f^2}\times\frac{2N+n}{2n+N}. \quad (2).$$

152. From these expressions rules may be obtained, by which the addendum can be assigned in every case, by help of a few preliminary principles.

In the first place (fig. 101), the addendum *de* is the projection of the tooth beyond the pitch circle, and there must be an extent of tooth or flank *ef* within the pitch circle sufficient to receive the corresponding projection of the tooth with which the wheel is acting, as well as a small additional space *fg* to prevent the teeth of one wheel from striking the bottom of the spaces of the other; the entire depth or rather length of a tooth is made up, therefore, of the sum of the addenda of the driver and follower, added to this allowance for clearing, which in practice is made $\frac{1}{10}$ of the pitch and termed *freedom*;

$$\therefore \text{ whole length of tooth} = E + e + \frac{C}{10}.$$

It is essentially necessary that each pair of teeth should continue in action until the next pair have come into contact, therefore the sum of the arcs of approaching and receding action, must be at least equal to the pitch, that is, $F+f=1$. But it is better that they should continue in action longer than this, in order to divide the working pressure between more teeth, as well as to prevent the chance of one tooth escaping before the next begins. It is therefore unnecessary to proportion the addendum so accurately as to give the entire arc of action a constant length. It is merely required to find a value that will be sufficient in all cases to prevent the teeth from escaping too soon. Now the expression (1) shows at once that the greatest addendum is required for the smallest numbers of teeth when the arc of action is given; and hence a rule assigned for the small numbers will serve for all cases.

If equal wheels of 15 work together with an arc of receding action of $\frac{2}{3} \times$ pitch, the expression (1) will give $K = \cdot 28$ for the necessary addendum; therefore the millwrights' value ($K = \cdot 3$) is sufficient for all cases of higher numbers than 15. But for smaller numbers the addendum will be greater and must be calculated. For example, the limiting cases in the Table, (page 108) will all be found to require a much greater addendum, varying from about ·63 to ·5, in the different examples.

153. The arc through which the action of the teeth is continued is governed by the magnitude of the addendum; and as the arc of approach depends on the addendum of the follower, and the arc of recess on the addendum of the driver, we are at liberty to give these arcs any required proportion by properly adjusting these addenda.

Now, considering merely that the friction which takes place before the line of centers is of a different and more injurious character than that which happens after passing that line,* it would seem that the best method would be to exclude altogether any action between the teeth until the line of centers is passed, by giving no addendum to the follower whatever; thereby

* *Vide* Chapter on Friction below.

making its true diameter equal to its geometrical diameter. On the other hand, it has been shown (Art. 32), that the quantity of friction in both cases increases rapidly with the distance of the point of contact from the line of centers. If the action be entirely confined to one side of the line of centers, it must be continued to a proportionably greater distance from that line, and so the teeth at the extremity of their action may incur greater abrasion and friction than they have lost by avoiding contact before the line of centers.

The best method, then, is to adjust the addenda so that there shall be less action before coming to the line of centers than after it; but the exact proportion between these arcs of action cannot be assigned for want of proper data; for although the fact is certain, no experiments have been hitherto made to compare these two kinds of friction.

154. To examine the effect of a constant addendum upon the ratio of the arcs of approach and recess, put $E=e$ in (2);

$$\therefore \frac{F^2}{f^2}=\frac{2n+N}{2N+n}=\frac{2+\frac{N}{n}}{1+\frac{2N}{n}}.$$

When equal wheels work together, or $N=n$, then $f=F$, or the arcs of action before and after the line of centers are equal. When a wheel drives a pinion, N is greater than n, and f greater than F; but if a pinion drive a wheel, then n is greater than N, and F than f. In the first case, there is more action before the line of centers than after it, and in the second, the reverse. It appears, then, that the constant addendum of the millwrights produces an effect exactly contrary to the principles just laid down, in every case except that of a pinion driving a wheel; and this is one reason why the action in this case is so much smoother than when a wheel drives a pinion. In fact, any rule that fixes the proportion of the addenda will make the ratio of the two arcs of action vary exceedingly. However, it appears from the expression

$$\frac{E}{e}=\frac{F^2}{f^2}\times\frac{2N+n}{2n+N},$$

that the ratio of the addenda is constant when the ratio of the arcs of action and also of the number of teeth is constant; if, therefore, the ratio of the arcs of action is determined, a small table will give the ratio of the addenda corresponding to the principal ratios of numbers of teeth.

The following table of values of $\frac{E}{e}$ is calculated for three different ratios of the two arcs of action; namely, supposing them to be equal, double, or in the proportion of about 2 to 3.

	Value of $\frac{N}{n}$	Values of $\frac{E}{e}$		
		$F=2f$	$F=\sqrt{2}f$	$F=f$
Rack follows.	Zero	2	1	.5
Pinion drives	$\frac{1}{10}$	2·3	1·1	·5
	$\frac{1}{7}$	2·4	1·2	·6
	$\frac{1}{5}$	2·5	1·3	—
	$\frac{1}{3}$	2·8	1·4	·7
	$\frac{1}{2}$	3·2	1·6	·8
Wheel drives	1	4	2	1
	2	5	2·5	1·2
	4	6	3	1·5
	6	6·5	3·2	1·6
	10	7	3·3	—
Rack drives	Infinite	8	4	2

Example.—In clocks and watches the wheels always drive the pinions, and the ratio of their numbers varies from 8 to 10. In Mr. Reid's rule (Art. 149) the ratio of the addenda is $\frac{225}{150} = 1{\cdot}5$; but from the third column of the Table it appears that this is scarcely enough even to give an equal action before and after the line of centers, and that it would be better to take a ratio of three, which would give the simpler rule,

$$\frac{U}{u} = \frac{N+3}{n+1}.$$

This rule gives an addendum of about $\frac{1}{2}$ the pitch to the driver, and $\frac{1}{6}$ to the follower; and may safely be adopted when the wheels drive, or if the wheels be equal; but when the pinion drives, then

$$\frac{U}{u}=\frac{N+2.5}{n+1.5}, \text{ or } \frac{U}{u}=\frac{N+2}{n+2}, \text{ will be better.}$$

To apply the third solution (Art. 119) *to the formation of the teeth of wheels.*

155. Teeth whose forms are derived from the previous solutions, and especially the latter, are the most commonly adopted in practice; but they are subject to this inconvenience: a wheel of a given pitch and number of teeth, for example 40, if it be made to work correctly with a wheel of 50 teeth, will not suit a wheel of any other number, as 100. This is obvious, for the diameter of the describing circle by which the epicycloid is traced must be made equal to the radius of the pitch circle of the wheel with which the teeth are to work, and will therefore be, in this example, twice as large in the second case as in the first, producing different epicycloids.

In the modern practice of making cast-iron wheels this objection is a very serious one, as it compels the founder to make a new pattern of a wheel of a given pitch with 40 teeth, for every combination that it may be required to make of such a wheel with others; and so on for wheels of every other number.

Besides, it often happens in machinery that one wheel is required to drive at the same time two or more wheels whose numbers of teeth are different, and in this case the teeth cannot be correctly formed at all on the principles hitherto explained.

In cast wheels, then, it is especially essential that the teeth should be shaped so as to allow a given wheel to work correctly with any other wheel of the same pitch; and this may be done by employing the following corollary from the third solution.*

156. If for a set of wheels of the same pitch a *constant describing circle* be taken and employed to trace those portions of the teeth which project beyond each pitch line by rolling on the exterior circumference, and those which lie within it by rolling on its interior circumference, then any two wheels of this set will work correctly together.

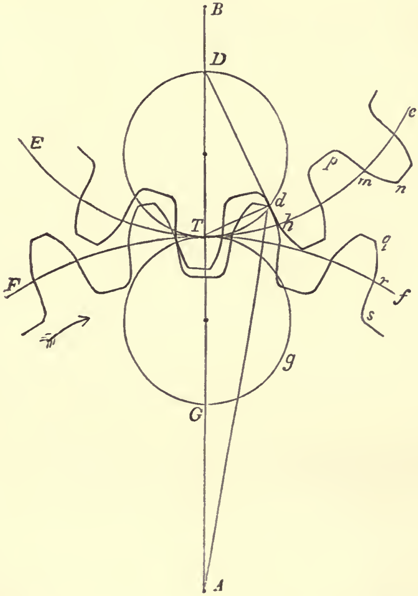
157. Fig. 102 represents a pair of wheels of such a set.

Here A, B are the centers of motion as usual. TdD or TgG the constant describing circle. This is employed to trace the

* *Transactions of Civil Engineers*, vol. ii. p. 91, in which I stated this principle for the first time.

faces or portions of the teeth that lie beyond the pitch circle *FTf* of the driver, as *qr*, by rolling upon it, and the flanks or portions that lie within the pitch circle *ETe* of the follower, as *pm*, by rolling within it; consequently, by the third solution, these curves will work together with a constant velocity ratio, and the describing circle *TdD* will be the locus of contact; which beginning upon the line of centers between the point *r* of the driving tooth, and the point *m* of the following tooth, will gradually

Fig. 102.



recede from the driver's center *A*, and approach the follower's centre *B*; the teeth finally quitting contact at the point *q* of the driver, and the root *p* of the follower, their action being confined to their recess from the line of centers.

In the same manner, the same constant describing circle at *TgG* is employed to trace the flanks *rs* which lie within the pitch circle *FTf* of the driver, and the faces *mn* which lie without the pitch circle *ETe* of the follower; *TGg* will be the locus of contact which begins between the root *s* of the driver and the point n of the follower, and is confined to the approach of the teeth to the line of centers.

But as a constant describing circle is used for the whole set, it is clear that this demonstration will apply to any pair of the wheels that may be placed in action together; for whether the point of contact lie on one side or other of the line of centers, we have an epicycloid working with an hypocycloid, and both have been drawn by the same describing circle; that is, by the constant circle of the set. Also any wheel may be taken either for a driver, or a follower.

158. Nevertheless, the diameter of the describing circle must not be made *greater* than the radius of the pitch circle of any of the wheels, as the effect of this would be to produce a tooth much smaller at the root than at the pitch circle; a fault which is partly incurred in the common form where the describing circle is equal in diameter to the radius of the pitch circle, as in fig. 96; for as the flanks of the teeth are radial, they are nearer together at the root of the tooth than on the pitch circle.

On the contrary, when the describing circle is *less* in diameter than the radius of the pitch circle, the root of the tooth spreads, as in fig. 102, and it acquires a very strong form. Nevertheless, if this be carried to excess by making the describing circle too small, the curvature of the epicycloidal faces will be injuriously increased, and the teeth become too short. The best rule appears to be, that the diameter of the constant describing circle in a given set of wheels shall be made equal to the least radius of the set.

159. With respect to the length of the teeth, that may in every case be determined by construction, thus:

Since TdD is the locus of contact, take Th equal to the arc of the pitch circle, through which it is required that the teeth shall remain in contact after passing the line of centers, that is, to the arc of receding action. Describe the hypocycloidal arc hd, then will d be the last point of contact; consequently, Ad the true radius of the driver, and dh the necessary length of the flank of the follower. A similar construction on the other side of the line of centers will give the length of the follower's teeth and the flanks of the driver.

160. Otherwise the necessary length may be computed in a similar manner to that of Art. 151; for comparing fig. 102 with fig. 99, it will appear that the diameter TD of the describing circle in fig. 102 is equivalent to the diameter TB of the follower in fig. 99; and since Th, the arc of action in fig. 102, is equal

to the arc Td, that is, to $TD \times$ angle TDd, we shall obtain for the driver, exactly as in Art. 151, the formula

$$\frac{E}{C} = \pi F^2 \left(\frac{2}{N_1} + \frac{1}{N}\right);$$

where N_1 is the number of teeth which belongs to a wheel whose radius is the diameter of the constant describing circle; and for the follower

$$\frac{e}{C} = \pi f^2 \left(\frac{2}{N_1} + \frac{1}{n}\right).$$

161. But as the wheels in question constitute a set, any pair of which are expected to work together, there can be no different proportions for driver and follower, since any wheel may be called upon to perform either function. Recollecting, therefore, that if the addendum of a wheel be too small, the teeth will quit hold of each other too soon, but that too large an addendum introduces no other inconvenience than an unnecessary length of tooth, we may find the necessary addendum for the set thus.

$$\frac{E}{C} = \pi F^2 \left(\frac{2}{N_1} + \frac{1}{N}\right),$$

is the general formula for the addendum to every wheel in the set, in which as N decreases, E increases; but the smallest value of N, by Art. 151, is N_1;

$$\therefore E = \frac{3\pi C f^2}{N_1},$$

is the greatest necessary value of E. Let the smallest wheel of the set have 16 teeth, and let the arc of action equal $\frac{3}{4}$ pitch. Then it will be found that the usual constant addendum of $\frac{3}{10}$ of the pitch may be safely used for wheels of 19 and upwards, but that a greater addendum must be given to the wheels 16, 17, and 18; the first requiring about $\frac{3}{8}$ of the pitch.

162. But it was also shown in Art. 154, that the practice of employing a constant addendum under the second solution had the mischievous effect of making the arc of action before the line of centers greater than the receding arc. To examine the effect of the constant addendum in the present system:—

Let F, f be the arcs of action of two wheels, N, n their numbers of teeth:

$$\therefore \frac{E}{C} = \pi F^2 \left(\frac{2N + N_1}{NN_1}\right) = \pi f^2 \left(\frac{2n + N_1}{nN_1}\right),$$

$$\therefore \frac{F^2}{f^2} = \frac{\frac{2nN}{N_1} + N}{\frac{2nN}{N_1} + n}:$$

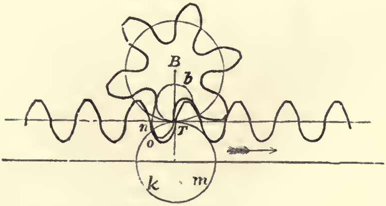
which shows that the arc of action that belongs to the greater number of teeth is the greater of the two; so that when a constant addendum is employed, if the wheel drives the pinion, the arc of action after the line of centers is greater than that before that line, and *vice versâ*; which is the reverse of what happens in the second solution, and removes the objection to the constant addendum in the first case, but introduces it in the second.

Of course, the most complete system would be to make two sets of wheels, one for each case, with the addenda separately calculated for each; but the increase of expense occasioned by the making of two patterns for each wheel is sufficient to prevent the practical use of such a system, unless in very particular instances.

163. The smallest numbers of teeth that this system admits of may be derived from the same Table that has been given for the radial teeth. For fig. 99 applies also to this case, in the manner explained in Art. 160, if BT be the diameter of the describing circle. To apply the Table, page 108, the numbers that indicate Followers must be interpreted as denoting the number of teeth that would correspond to a wheel whose radius equals the diameter of the describing circle.

Example.—The arc of receding action is equal to the pitch, and the describing circle corresponds to a wheel of twelve teeth.

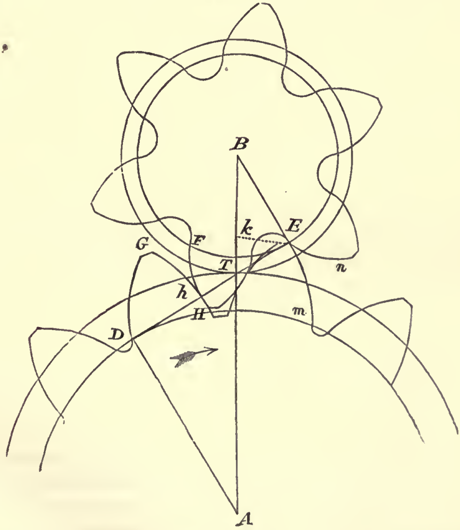
Fig. 103.



Thirty teeth is the least wheel that will drive, and of course a wheel of any number greater than this may be employed. But if the arc of action equal $\frac{2}{3}$ of the pitch, then the same describing circle being employed, any number of teeth greater than twelve may be used, and so on.

164. *To apply the third solution to racks* (*fig.* 103). When rack-teeth are formed, as in the usual manner, according to the second solution, by making their flanks straight and the teeth of the pinions involutes, we have seen that the action on one side of the line of centers is confined to a constant point in each rack-tooth, because the pitch line of the rack is the locus of contact. This may be avoided by taking any describing circle *Tkm*, and employing it to describe cycloidal flanks, as *no* for the rack-teeth, by rolling on its pitch line *nT*, and then by describing the faces of the teeth of the wheel with the same describing circle, in which case the contact will no longer be confined to the pitch line of the rack, but will be found in *To*; and will consequently be distributed over the distance *on*, which may be made as small as we please by increasing the diameter of the describing circle. If the circle *Tmk* be the constant describing circle of a set of wheels, then any one of them will work with the rack.

Fig. 104.



To apply the fourth solution (Art. 120) *to the formation of the teeth of wheels.**

* The involute was first suggested for this purpose by Euler, in his second paper on the 'Teeth of Wheels.' *N. C. Petr.* xi. 209.

165. Involute teeth differ from the epicycloidal teeth derived from the second and third solutions, in having the entire side of the tooth, both face and flank, formed of a continuous curve; whereas, as we have seen, the side of an epicycloidal tooth is made up of two different curves joined at the pitch circle.

Fig. 104 represents a pair of wheels with involute teeth. *A, B* the centers of motion, *T* the point of contingence of the pitch circles; *BE, AD* the radii of the bases of the involutes, *ED* their common tangent, and therefore the locus of contact of the teeth. As in the teeth already described, the contact lies within the pitch circle of the driver during the approach to the line of centers, and within that of the follower during the recess from that line.

Referring to fig. 84, page 88, it appears, that as the action of the curves begins at *D*, and *T* is the point of contact at the line of centers of the teeth *TH* and *TG*; therefore *TH* must have moved through an arc *DH* in its approach to that line. But $DT=$arc DH, since *TH* is an involute of *DH*; ∴ angle of action before the line of centers, or

$$\frac{DH}{DA}=\frac{DT}{DA},$$

and the arc of action upon the pitch circle

$$=\frac{AT\times DT}{DA}.$$

In like manner, as the tooth *TK* recedes from the line of centers until it finally quits contact at *E*, it can be shown that this receding arc of action upon the pitch circle

$$=\frac{BT\times ET}{BE};$$

$$\therefore \frac{\text{approaching arc}}{\text{receding arc}}=\frac{AT\times DT\times BE}{BT\times ET\times DA}=\frac{AT}{BT}=\frac{DA}{BE}.$$

The arcs of action in a pair of involute teeth before and after the line of centers are therefore in the direct proportion of the radii of the bases of the driver and follower respectively. This of course supposes that the teeth are each made sufficiently long to extend to the base of the opposite tooth, as at *mE*, fig. 104.

166. However, by reducing the length of the teeth the quantity of action may be altered at pleasure. For example, in the tooth *FH*, fig. 104. With radius *BH* and center *B*, describe an arc of a circle cutting *DE* in *h*; then, supposing as before, that the

lower wheel is the driver, h will be the first contact, and it can be shown, as in the last Article, that the actions before and after the line of centers are as hT to TE.

167. Although the contact action of the teeth is confined to the outside of the bases, yet it is necessary, as in epicycloidal teeth, to form clearing curves (Art. 98) within the bases; for example, the nearest point of *contact* of the tooth mE to the center B, is E; but if we describe with radius AE and center A an arc Ek meeting the line of centers in k, then k will be the nearest *approach* of the point of the tooth E to the center B, and a clearing hollow must be formed within the base circle, whose depth is at least equal to k, as shown in the figures.

168. The two pitch circles being given (fig. 104), and the required angle of action TBE, the radii of the bases are easily found; for $BE = BT \times \cos TBE$.

Comparing the diagram $ATBE$ of fig. 104 with $ATBd$ in fig. 99, it will appear that they are identical in their relations to the teeth, and that the same formulæ (Art. 151)

$$\frac{E}{C} = \pi F^2\left(\frac{2}{n} + \frac{1}{N}\right), \text{ and } \frac{e}{C} = \pi f^2\left(\frac{2}{n} + \frac{1}{N}\right),$$

will apply to the involutes, but only at the points E or D, when the contact coincides with the bases. They will therefore give the addendum required to enable the teeth to continue their action to the base of the opposite wheel, but will not apply to all other positions of contact as they do for epicycloids.

169. The plan of this work excludes the examination of the relations of pressure; but in this case, it is necessary to remark, that a great objection to involute teeth is founded upon the obliquity of their action, by which a much more considerable divergent pressure is thrown upon the axes than in the other forms of teeth. The action of epicycloidal teeth is, in fact, perpendicular to the line of centers at the instant of crossing it; but that of involute teeth is constantly in the direction of the common tangent of their bases, and is therefore oblique to the line of centers.* This injurious property is balanced by the advantages that a variation of the distances of their centers does not destroy the action of the teeth, and that any two wheels of the same pitch will work together; but this last property, I have shown (Art. 156) to be possessed also by some arrangements of the epicycloidal teeth. In smaller machinery, constructed

* In fig. 104 the arc of action and obliquity are made, for the sake of distinctness, greater than would be necessary in practice.

rather for the modification of motion than for the transmission of force, this oblique action ceases to be objectionable, and the other advantages of involute teeth will then recommend them in preference to all others.

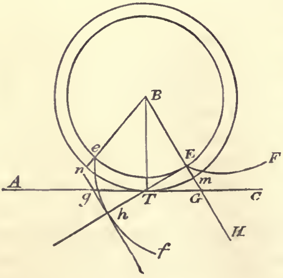
Such teeth manifestly possess greater strength of form than epicycloidal teeth, at least than those with radial flanks, and I shall proceed to show that they admit of a greater reduction of back-lash than any other kind.

170. For in fig. 104, suppose the teeth to be so described that no back-lash exists, that is to say, that both sides of the acting teeth are in contact at once, which is theoretically possible, in all forms of teeth, when they are symmetrical to a radius, but which, as already stated (Art. 131), is not possible in practice, because a slight error *in excess*, in the form of any tooth, would cause it to wedge itself fast into its corresponding space.

Now if the distance of the centers of these wheels be increased, this double contact will be destroyed, although the action of the teeth in effecting a constant velocity ratio will not be impaired. A back-lash will therefore be introduced, which will be the greater the more the wheels are withdrawn from each other. In any given pair of involute wheels, therefore, we can, by properly adjusting by trial the distance of their centers, reduce the back-lash to the least quantity that will allow the teeth to act without jamming. This advantage is possessed by no other form, and particularly recommends these teeth for dial-work, or any such kinds of mechanism in which the back-lash is mischievous.

171. *To apply involutes to rack-teeth.*

Fig. 105.



Describe a pitch circle (fig. 105), radius *BT*, and draw *AC* a tangent at *T* for a pitch line to the rack; let the circle whose radius is *BE* be the base of an involute *EF*, and let the tooth of the rack be bounded by a straight line *EGH*, making an angle *EGA* with the pitch line equal to *BTE*. If the involute be moved to *ef*, it will drive the sloped tooth to *gh*, always touching it in the line *ETh*; and the velocity of the circumference of the pitch circle will always equal that of the pitch line: for

$$Gg = \frac{Eh}{\sin EGT},$$

also Eh = arc Ee, by the property of the involute

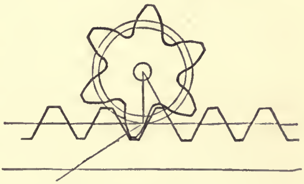
$$= \text{arc } mn \times \frac{BE}{BT}$$

$$= \text{arc } mn \times \sin BTE;$$

$$= \text{arc } mn \times \sin EGT; \quad \therefore \; Gg = \text{arc } mn.$$

This may be shown from fig. 104, page 123. For let the radius of the wheel AT become infinite, then will the pitch line be a straight line passing through T, and touching the pitch circle of the wheel whose center is B, and the involutes GH, Em will become right lines perpendicular to the line ETD. Thus is obtained a rack with straight-sided sloping teeth, as in fig. 106. Hence a wheel with involute teeth will work with a rack whose teeth are straight-sided and inclined to the pitch line at an angle θ, provided

Fig. 106.



$$\frac{\text{radius of base}}{\text{radius of pitch circle}} = \sin \theta.$$

In such a rack, the locus of contact being the tangent line ETh, the contact will not be confined to a single point of the tooth, as it is in the common involute rack teeth (Art. 148), which are derived from that particular case of this figure, in which the radius of the base coinciding with that of the pitch circle, the line ETh coincides with the pitch line of the rack. But a rack with sloping teeth will be pressed downwards by a resolved portion of the working pressure, and this appears to me to be in many cases advantageous, and destructive of vibration.

To approximate to the true form of a tooth by arcs of circles.

172. The portion of curve employed in a tooth is so short, that a circular arc may be substituted for it with sufficient accuracy for all practical purposes, if its center and radius be determined upon correct principles.

In fact, practically the edges of teeth are always made arcs of circles, but unfortunately, these arcs are often struck from the merest empirical rules, such as setting the point of the compasses in the pitch line on one side of the tooth, in order to strike the other, and vice versâ, or similar absurdities.* Teeth have even in the old time been set out by forming their edges into semicircles struck alternately without and within the pitch circle; these are technically known by the name of hollows and rounds.

Some millwrights with equal neglect of principle gave their teeth plane faces passing through the axis of the wheel, expecting them to wear themselves in a short time into proper forms. But the best workmen endeavoured to give to their wheels teeth of the epicycloidal form, according to the rules laid down in Camus,† or in Buchanan's Treatise on Millwork,‡ which are immediately derived from Camus. In truth, the question is one of great practical importance; I do not mean to say, that it is necessary, or even practicable, to shape the teeth of small wheels into exact epicycloids or involutes, such as those which have been described in the preceding pages; but I do assert, that unless the rules for shaping them be derived from such considerations, so as to approximate their form to the true ones, as nearly as possible, that the action of the machines will be irregular and noisy, producing those vibrations which must be familiar to all who have been in the habit of examining machinery, and which are above all things conducive to the wearing out and disintegration of every part of the mechanism. The investigation of the proper curves for the teeth of wheels is, therefore, by no means one of mere curiosity, although this has been sometimes hastily asserted. One proof of the necessity of attending to the exact theoretical forms, is the acknowledged impossibility of making one wheel to work with two others whose numbers of teeth are different, by means of the usual rules.

173. The method employed by the best workmen for shaping the teeth of a proposed wheel, or of a pattern from which to cast one, is as follows:

The shape of a single tooth adapted for this wheel is traced in the true epicycloidal form, by means of *templets*, that is, of a pair of boards whose edges are cut to the curvature of the pitch circle, and describing circle respectively, and which may be termed the pitch templet and the describing templet. The latter carries a describing point in its circumference, and by rolling its edge upon that of the pitch templet, the arc required for the face of the tooth is traced upon the drawing board.§

* Vide Imison's *School of Arts*, or Gray's *Experienced Millwright*.

† Camus on the *Teeth of Wheels*, 1806 and 1837.

‡ 1808, 1823, and 1841.

§ If the method I have recommended under the third solution (Art. 114) be adopted, This done, the workman finds with his compasses, by trial, a center and small radius, by which an arc of a circle can be described, that will coincide, as nearly as he can manage to make it, with the templet-traced epicycloid.

Then, having struck upon the fronts of the rough cogs a circle which is concentric with the pitch circle, and whose distance from it is equal to that of the center of his small arc, he adjusts his compasses to the small radius, and always keeping one point in the circle just described, he steps with the other to each cog in succession, they having been previously divided into equal parts corresponding to the given pitch and breadth of the teeth; upon each cog he describes two arcs, one to the right and one to the left, which serve him as guides in shaping and finishing the acting faces.

174. The practical convenience of this method was very great, and required only a more commodious and certain method of determining the center and radius of the approximate arc.

The first method that suggests itself, is to find the center and radius of the circle of curvature at some intermediate point between the extremities of the curve selected for the teeth, and to substitute an arc of this circle in lieu of the actual curve. But the determination of the required circles may be effected upon general principles, without taking individual curves into the considerations. In fact, Euler, in his elaborate paper on the Teeth of Wheels,* undertook to investigate a general expression for curves that possess the property of revolving in contact with a constant velocity ratio, which he effected by determining the relation between their radii of curvature; and suggested that in practice small arcs of the circles of curvature thus obtained would probably suffice for the sides of teeth. He accordingly gave some geometrical constructions for this purpose, but the hint thus supplied was neglected by every subsequent writer, probably because the numbers of teeth given to wheels in the eighteenth century were proportionally much smaller than in our own time, and consequently the teeth larger, and the length of curve required for each too great to admit of a sufficient coincidence with a circular arc, for practice.

The general introduction of cast-iron wheels at the beginning of the present century enabled a much greater number of teeth

then one describing templet will serve for the entire set; but since this templet is required to trace hypocycloids for the flanks, as well as epicycloids for the faces, every pitch templet must have a convex and a concave edge, both shaped into an arc of the pitch circle of the wheel in question. The concave edge is not required upon the common system (Art. 140), because the flanks are radial lines.

* *Nov. comm. Petr.* ix. 209. A.D. 1767.

to be assigned to a toothed wheel of a given magnitude, and proportionably reduced the length of their acting sides, so that the circular approximation was rendered practically possible.

Perceiving this fact, I endeavoured in 1838 to follow out the views suggested by Euler's paper, and finally succeeded in discovering a practical method of finding a pair of centers with appropriate radii, for any given pair of wheels, by means of an instrument which I denominated an *Odontograph*. This instrument dispenses with all geometrical calculations and has been extensively employed in practice from the time of its publication in my paper 'On the Teeth of Wheels' in the *Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers*, vol. ii. 1838. The substance of that communication occupies the following pages.

Fig. 107.

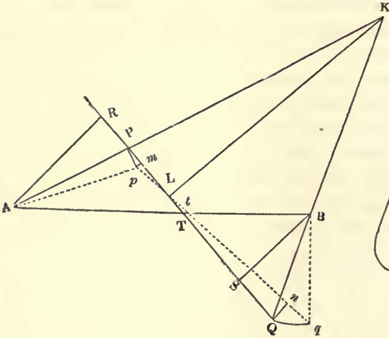
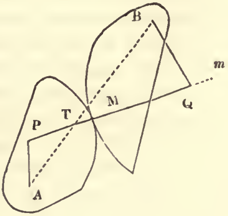


Fig. 108.



175. A simple construction is sufficient to give the centers and radii of the arcs in any required case. For it has been shown (Art. 30, Cor. 5) that the action of a pair of curves by contact is equivalent at every moment to that of a pair of radii AP, BQ (fig. 108) connected by a link PQ, P and Q being the respective centers of curvature of the curves at the point of contact. Now (fig. 107) the angular velocity ratio between the radii AP, BQ is that of the segments $BT : AT$, into which the link divides the line of centers (Art. 32); and if the rods be moved into a new position, this ratio becomes $Bt : At$, which is greater or less than the former, according as the point t moves to one side or other of the point T.

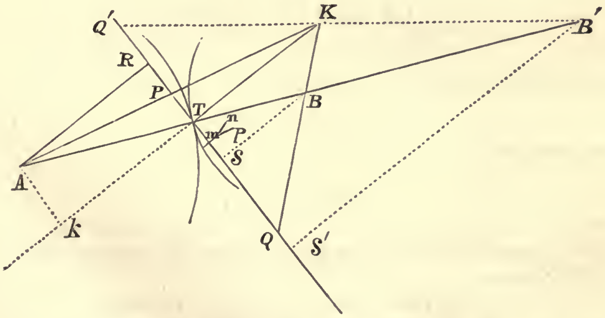
But if the point L, which is the intersection of two successive positions of the link, happen to coincide with T, the ratio of the segments will be the same in both positions, and the angular velocity ratio constant at that instant.*

If then the rods and links of fig. 107 be placed in such a relative position that L and T may unite, and the curves in contact be replaced by arcs of circles described from centers P and Q through *any point* M of the line PQ, the angular velocity ratio of these curved pieces will be perfectly constant at the moment of their reaching the position that makes M the point of contact, and the ratio will not vary essentially during a small angular motion on each side of this position.

176. As this constancy of the velocity ratio depends only upon the centers of the arcs, they may be struck through any common point of the line of action PQ, as at m, beyond both the centers. Only that if this point lie between the centers P, Q, as at M, the arcs and edges will be convex, but if the point lie beyond the centers, as at m, the edge corresponding to the most distant center P, will be concave.

177. It follows, that to find a pair of centers that possess the property of communicating motion in a constant velocity ratio, it is only necessary to construct the diagram (fig. 107) in such a manner, that the point L shall fall on the line of centers. But (by Art. 30, Cor. 5), L is that point of PQ which is met by a perpendicular from K, the intersection of the directions of the radius rods AP, BQ. Whence the following construction.

Fig. 109.



Let A, B be the centers of motion of the wheels, T the point of contingence of the pitch circles; through T draw PTQ

* *Vide* note, p. 18, above.

making any angle with the line of centers, and upon it assume P as a center, from which the circular side is to be described for a tooth of a wheel whose center of motion is A. To find the corresponding center for the wheel which turns upon B, draw TK perpendicular to PTQ, produce AP to meet it in K, join KB and produce it to meet PTQ in Q; then will Q be the required center.

And a small arc mn, struck from P as a tooth for the wheel whose center of motion is A, will work correctly with an arc mp, struck from Q through m, and employed as a tooth to the wheel whose center of motion is B.

If B be so placed that the angle KBT is acute, as for example at B', then will Q fall at Q' on the same side of T as P, but beyond it; the effect of this is to make the tooth mp concave instead of convex.

But if the angle $KBT=PTA$, KB will become parallel to PT, and the point Q being thus removed to an infinite distance, the arc mp or tooth of the wheel whose center of motion is B, will be a right line perpendicular to PT.

178. The distance of the centers from T may be calculated as follows.

Draw AR perpendicular to PT.

Let $KT=C$, $AT=R$, $PT=D$, $ATP=\theta$, then by similar triangles, ARP, PTK,

$$KT=\frac{PT\times AR}{PR}=\frac{PT\times AR}{TR-PT},$$

$$\text{or } C=\frac{DR\,.\sin\theta}{R\,.\cos\theta-D};\ \therefore D=\frac{RC\cos\theta}{C+R\sin\theta},$$

and similarly, drawing BS perpendicular to TQ, and putting

$$BT=r,\ QT=d,$$

we have for the corresponding arc mp,

$$d=\frac{rC\cos\theta}{C+r\sin\theta}.$$

But if a concave tooth be employed, draw $B'S'$ perpendicular to PTQ, then

$$KT=\frac{Q'T\times B'S'}{Q'T+TS'},\ \text{whence } d=\frac{Cr\cos\theta}{r\sin\theta-C}.$$

179. If the side of the tooth be made to consist of *a single arc*, a very simple rule may be obtained; for suppose KT to be

infinite, then will AP and BQ become perpendicular to the line PTQ, and the points P, Q will come to R, S respectively. Let the arcs of the teeth be struck through T, let θ be the angle ATP, which the line PTQ makes with the line of centers, and let R be the radius AT of the wheel, and $D = TR$ be the required distance of the center of the tooth from the point T;

$$\therefore D = R \cos \theta$$

is independent of the wheel with which it is to work, as well as of the pitch and number of teeth of its own wheel.

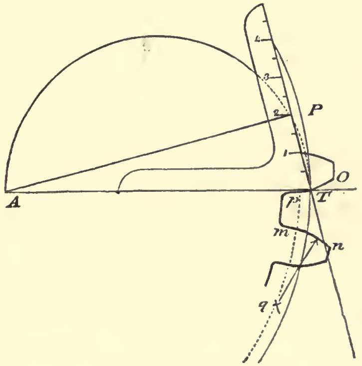
If therefore θ be made constant in a set of wheels, any two of them will work together, and their teeth are easily described as follows. Assume $\theta = 75° \ 30'$, which is a very convenient value;

$$\therefore D = \frac{R}{4};$$

for $\cos 75° \ 30' = \cdot 25038 = \frac{1}{4}$ very nearly.

180. Let A be the center, AT the radius of the pitch circle of a proposed wheel. Draw TP making an angle ATP of $75° \ 30'$

Fig. 110.



with the radius, and drop a perpendicular AP upon TP (or describe a semicircle upon AT and set off $TP = \frac{AT}{4}$), then will P be the center from which an arc op, described through T, will be the side of the tooth required.

On more conveniently, let a bevil of $75° \ 30'$ be made of brass or card-paper, as in the figure, of which the side TP is graduated into a scale of quarter-inches and tenths. If this bevil be laid upon the radius AT, so that its point T coincides with the pitch circle, the center point P will be found at once, by reading off the radius of the wheel in inches upon the reduced scale. Thus the radius AT in the figure, is two inches long, and the point P is found at 2 upon the scale.

To describe the other teeth, draw with center A and radius AP, a circle within the pitch circle, dotted in the figure, this will be the locus of the centers of the teeth; then having previously divided the pitch circle, take the constant radius PT in the compasses, and keeping one point in the dotted circle, step from tooth to tooth and describe the arcs, first to the right and then to the left, as for example, mn is described from q and pO from P.

If Op were an arc of an involute having the circle Ppq for its base, PT would be its radius of curvature at T. These teeth, therefore, approximate to involute teeth, and they possess in common with them the oblique action, the power of acting with wheels of any number of teeth, and the adjustment of back-lash; but, as the sides of the teeth consist each of a single arc, there is but one position of action in which the angular velocity ratio is strictly constant, namely, when the point of contact is on the line of centers.

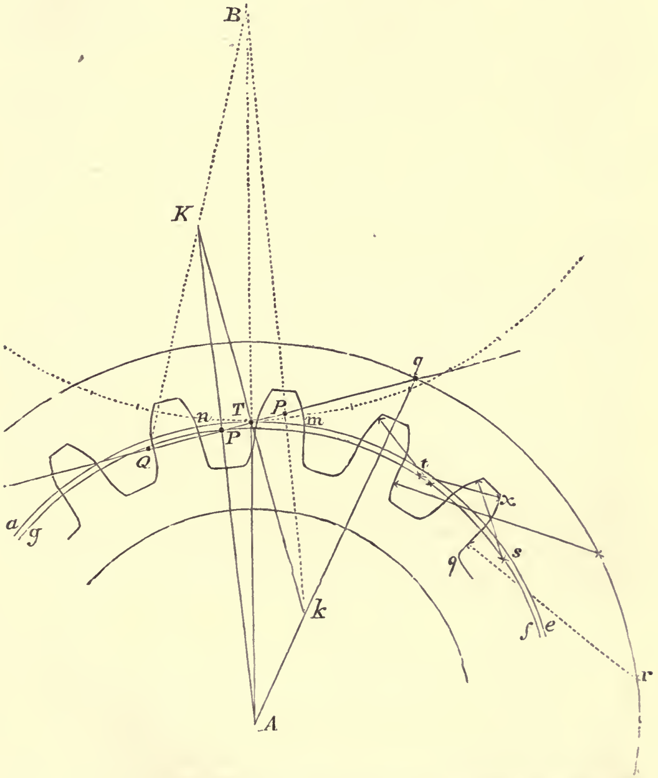
181. By making the side of each tooth consist of *two arcs* joined at the pitch circle, and struck in such wise that the exact point of action of the one shall lie a little before the line of centers, say at the distance of half the pitch, and the exact point of the other at the same distance beyond that line, an abundant degree of exactitude will be obtained for all practical purposes.

To describe the teeth of such a pair of wheels, let A (fig. 111) be the center of motion of a proposed wheel, B the center of motion of the wheel with which it is to work, T the point of contingence of the pitch circles. Draw QTq making an angle of 75° with the line of centers. (This angle is in fact arbitrary, but by various trials I find 75° to give the best form to the teeth.)

Draw kTK perpendicular to QTq, and set off TK and Tk equal to each other, and less than either AT or TB. Join AK and BK, producing the latter to Q, then P and Q are a pair of tooth-centers. Take a point m on the pitch circle aTe, at the distance of half the pitch from T, and on the opposite side to the tooth-centers. A convex arc struck from P through m on the outside of this pitch circle will work correctly with a concave arc struck from Q through the same point, and within the other pitch circle.

To describe the faces of the teeth of the lower wheel we may proceed as in the last example, thus: draw with center A a circle through P, which will be the locus of the centers of the small arcs; and having previously divided the pitch circle for the reception of the teeth, take the constant radius Pm in the compasses, and keeping one point in the circle Pf, describe the faces

Fig. 111.



of the teeth to the right and left outside the pitch circle, as shown in the figure at t and s.

A similar proceeding will give the flanks of the teeth of the upper wheel.

To obtain the flanks of the lower wheel and faces of the upper wheel, join Bk and Ak, producing the latter to q, then will p and q be another pair of centers, from which let arcs be struck through a point n, at the distance of half the pitch beyond T, but within the pitch circle of A and without that of B. The action of these arcs will be exact at the distance of half the pitch from T.

To complete the teeth of the lower wheel already begun, describe from A with radius Aq, a circle for the locus of the centres of the flanks of these teeth, and with the constant radius equal to qn step from tooth to tooth, describing the flanks in the manner shown in the figure, as at r and q.

182. From the construction it appears that these teeth of the lower wheel would work correctly with a wheel of any radius, provided the points K and k remain constant; for a change in the position of B, on the line of centers, only affects the points Q, p, which belong to its own teeth, but does not disturb the points P, q, from which the teeth of the lower wheel have been described.

In short, if any number of wheels be in the above manner described, in which the lines Qq, Kk, preserve the same angular position with respect to the line of centers and the same distances KT, kT, then any two of these wheels will work together. The distance KT may be determined for a set of wheels by considering that if A approach T, Aq becomes parallel to Tq, and q is at that moment at an infinite distance; the flank of the tooth becoming a right line perpendicular to Tq. If A approach still nearer, q appears on the opposite side of T, and the flank becomes convex, giving a very awkward form to the tooth.

The greatest value therefore that can be given to KT, must be one which when employed with the smallest radius of the set, will make Aq parallel to Tq; therefore if $R_{,}$ be this smallest radius, we have

$$KT = R_{,} \times \sin QTA, \text{ or } C = R_{,} \times \sin\theta;$$

which substituted in the formula (Art. 178), gives

$$PT = D = \frac{RR_{,} \cos\theta}{R_{,} + R}, \text{ and } qT = d = \frac{RR_{,} \cos\theta}{R - R_{,}}.$$

183. By assuming constant values for $R_{,}$ and θ in a set of wheels, the values of D and d which correspond to different numbers and pitches, may be calculated and arranged in tables for use, so as to supersede the necessity of making the construction in every case. Thus the tables which follow in fig. 112 were obtained by assuming twelve teeth as the least number to be given to a wheel, and $\theta = 75°$.

THE ODONTOGRAPH.

TABLES SHOWING THE PLACE OF THE CENTERS UPON THE SCALES.

CENTERS FOR THE FLANKS OF TEETH.

Number of Teeth	Pitch in Inches							
	1	1¼	1½	1¾	2	2¼	2½	3
13	129	160	193	225	257	289	321	386
14	69	87	104	121	139	156	173	208
15	49	62	74	86	99	111	123	148
16	40	50	59	69	79	89	99	191
17	34	42	50	59	67	75	84	101
18	30	37	45	52	59	67	74	89
20	25	31	37	43	49	56	62	74
22	22	27	33	39	43	49	54	65
24	20	25	30	35	40	45	49	59
26	18	23	27	32	37	41	46	55
30	17	21	25	29	33	37	41	49
40	15	18	21	25	28	32	35	42
60	13	15	19	22	25	28	31	37
80	12	...	17	20	23	26	29	35
100	11	14	...	...	22	25	28	34
150	...	13	16	19	21	24	27	32
Rack	10	12	15	17	20	22	25	30

CENTERS FOR THE FACES OF TEETH.

Number of Teeth	1	1¼	1½	1¾	2	2¼	2½	3
12	5	6	7	9	10	11	12	15
15	...	7	8	10	11	12	14	17
20	6	8	9	11	12	14	15	18
30	7	9	10	12	14	16	18	21
40	8	...	11	13	15	17	19	23
60	...	10	12	14	16	18	20	25
80	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	26
100	...	...	...	...	18	20	22	...
150	...	...	14	16	19	21	23	27
Rack	10	12	15	17	20	22	25	30

N.B. This figure is half the size of the original.

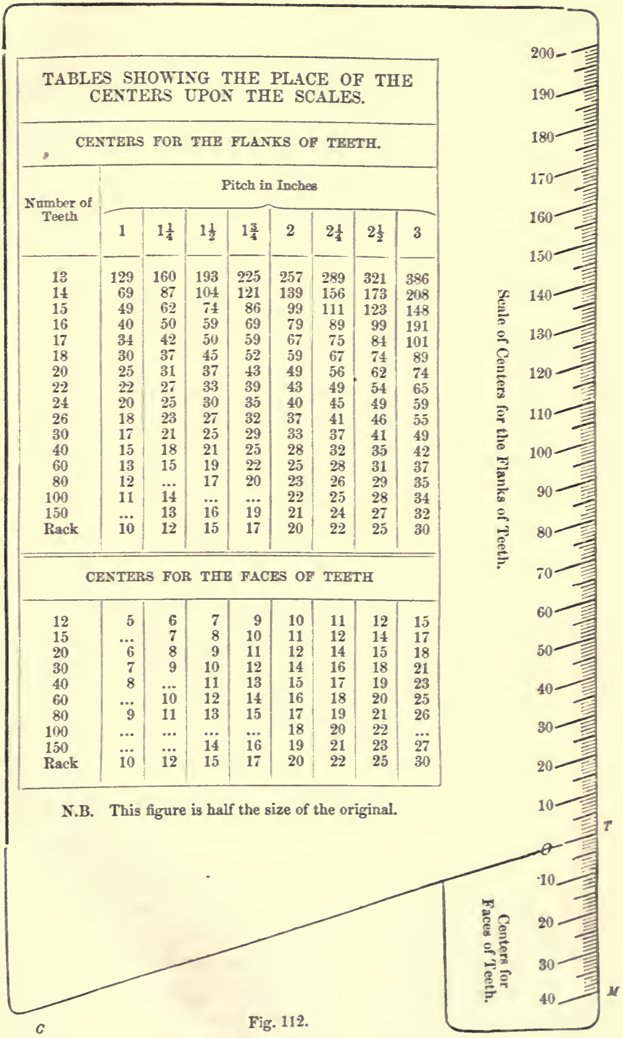


Fig. 112.

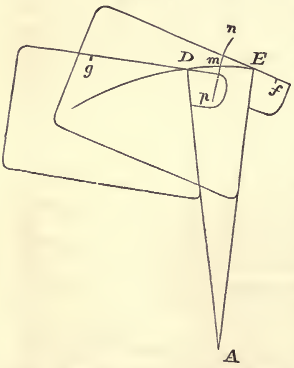
The unit of length in which the values of D and d are expressed is one-twentieth of an inch, that being sufficiently small to avoid errors of a practical magnitude.

The reduction of this system to a divided scale is necessarily more complex than when a single arc only is employed. But, as above stated (p. 130), I contrived in 1838 for that purpose, the *Odontograph*, which I will now describe. This instrument is at present very generally employed as well in England as on the Continent,* as the works quoted in the note will show, and, as I am informed, with complete success.

Fig. 112 represents the Odontograph exactly half the size of the original; but as it is merely formed out of a sheet of card-paper, this figure will enable any one to make it for use. The side NTM which corresponds to the line QTq in fig. 111, is straight, and the line TC makes an angle of exactly 75° with it, and corresponds to the radius AT of the wheel. This side NTM is graduated into a scale of half inches, each half inch being divided into ten parts, and the half inch divisions are numbered both ways from T.

184. One example will show the mode of using this instrument. Let it be required to describe the form of a tooth for a wheel of 29 teeth, of 3 inches pitch. Describe from a centre A, fig. 113, an arc of the given pitch circle, and upon it set off DE, equal to the pitch, and bisected in m. Draw radial lines DA, EA. For the arc within the pitch circle apply the slant edge of the instrument to the radial line AD, placing its extremity D on the pitch circle, as in the figure. In the Table headed, *Centers for the Flanks of Teeth*, look down the column of 3 inch pitch, and opposite to 30 teeth, which is the nearest number to that required, will be found the number 49. The point g indicated on the drawing-board by the position of this number on the scale of equal parts, marked *Scale of Centers for the Flanks of Teeth*, is

Fig. 113.



* Vide Laboulaye, *Cinematique*, 1861, p. 221. Bour, *Cours de Mécanique*, p. 206. De la Goupillière, *Traité des Mécanismes*, 1864, p. 111. Weisbach, *Die Mechanik*, 3ter Theil, 1860, p. 125, &c.

the center required, from which the arc *mp* must be drawn with the radius *gm*.

The center for the arc *mn*, or face, which lies outside the pitch circle, is formed in a manner precisely similar, by applying the slant edge of the instrument to the radial line *EA*. The number 21 obtained from the lower table, will indicate the position *f* of the required center upon the lower scale. In using the instrument, it is only necessary to recollect, that the scale employed and the point *m* always lie on the two opposite sides of the radial line to which the instrument is applied.

The curve *nmp* is also true for an annular wheel of the same radius and number of teeth, *n* becoming the root and *p* the point of the teeth. For a rack, the pitch line *DE* becomes a right line, and *DA*, *EA*, perpendiculars to it, at a distance equal to the pitch.

185. Numbers for pitches not inserted in the tables may be obtained by direct proportion from the column of some other pitch: thus for 4-inch pitch, by doubling those of 2-inch, and for half-inch pitch by halving those of inch pitch. Also, no tabular numbers are given for twelve teeth in the upper table, because within the pitch circle their teeth are radial lines.*

* In fact, in the actual instrument I have inserted columns for $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{3}{8}$, $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{5}{8}$, $\frac{3}{4}$, and $3\frac{1}{2}$ pitch, which are omitted in fig. 112 for want of room, and are indeed scarcely necessary, as the numbers are so easily obtained from the columns given.

It is unnecessary to have numbers corresponding to every wheel, for the error produced by taking those which belong to the nearest as directed, is so small as to be unappreciable in practice. I have calculated the amount and nature of these errors by way of obtaining a principle for the number and arrangement of the wheels selected. It is unnecessary to go at length into these calculations, which result from very simple considerations, but I will briefly state the results.

The difference of form between the tooth of one wheel and of another is due to two causes, (1) the difference of curvature, which is provided for in the Odontograph by placing the compasses at the different points of the scale of equal parts, (2) the variation of the angle *DAE* (fig. 113), which is met by placing the instrument upon the two radii in succession.

The first cause is the only one with which these calculations are concerned. Now in three-inch pitch the greatest difference of form produced by mere curvature in the portion of tooth which lies beyond the pitch circle, is only ·04 inch between the extreme cases of a pinion of twelve and a rack, and in the acting part of the arc within the pitch circle is ·1 inch, so that as all the other forms lie between these, it is clear that if we select only four or five examples for the outer side of the tooth and ten or twelve for the inner side, that we can never incur an error of more than the $\frac{1}{200}$th of an inch in three-inch pitch by always taking the nearest number in the manner directed, and a proportionably smaller error in smaller pitches. But to ensure this, the selected numbers should be so taken, that their respective forms shall lie between the extremes at equal distances. Now it appears that the variation of form is much greater among the teeth of small numbers than among the larger ones, and that in

186. But if it be not required that wheels shall work in a set, the construction of fig. 109 may be readily adapted to particular cases: thus, if a pin-wheel be required, the pin is evidently already a tooth, whose acting edge is an arc of a circle. And supposing K to remove to an infinite distance, AP and BQ will become perpendicular to PTQ, and the points P and Q coincide respectively with R and S. If S therefore be the center of the pin, R will be that of the tooth which is to drive it, and the point m should be assumed somewhere between T and S, and Tm may be about half the pitch, Sm being manifestly the radius of the pin.

Again, if the side of the tooth (of the left-hand wheel, for example) is required to be a radial line, in imitation of the second solution (Art. 140), this, as already explained (Art. 177), will remove its tooth-center to an infinite distance, and the point k will be found by drawing Ak perpendicular to kTK. Join Bk, and the intersection of this line with PTQ will give the center of the tooth which is to work with the radial tooth; also AR, the perpendicular from A upon PTQ, is the radial tooth, and R is the point through which the arc must be struck, and the angle RTA must be of such a magnitude as will make TR equal to about half the pitch, since R is the point at which the exact action takes place.

187. The Odontograph is also applicable to the obtaining a correct form for the *cutters* used in forming metal wheels out of plain discs; for since the form of the cutter is that of the space between two contiguous teeth, we have only to describe a pair of teeth in any given case, in order to obtain the form of the cutter. In making, however, a set of cutters, especially for small pitches, it is by no means necessary to make one for every wheel, as the forms for numbers of teeth that lie together are so nearly alike, that the errors of workmanship would entirely destroy the difference.

The variation of form, however, is much less among high numbers than in low ones. For example, the difference of form

fact the numbers in the two following series are so arranged that the curves corresponding to them possess this required property.

For the outer side of the tooth, 12, 14, 17, 21, 26, 34, 47, 73, 148, Rack.

For the inner side, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 19, 22, 26, 33, 46, 87, Rack.

Now these numbers, although strictly correct, would be very inconvenient and uncouth in practice if employed for a table like that in question, where convenience manifestly requires that the numbers, if not consecutive, should always proceed either by twos or fives, or by whole tens, and so on. They are only given as guides in the selection, and by comparing them with the actual table, their use in the formation of the first column will be evident.

between a cutter for 150 teeth, and one for 300, is not greater than that between cutters for 16 and 17 teeth.

This being the case, it appeared worth while to investigate some rule by which the necessary cutters could be determined for a set of wheels, so as to incur the least possible chance of error. To this effect I calculated, by a method sufficiently accurate for the purpose, the following series of what may be termed equidistant values of cutters; that is, a table of cutters so arranged, that the same difference of form exists between any two consecutive numbers.

TABLE OF EQUIDISTANT VALUES FOR CUTTERS.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
No. of Teeth	Rack	300	150	100	76	60	50	43	38	34	30	27	25	23	21	20	19	17	16	×	15	14	13	×	12

This will be a guide in the selection of the wheel to which each cutter shall be accurately adapted after it has been determined how many are necessary in a set. For example, if a single cutter were thought sufficient for very small wheels, it had better be accurately adapted to teeth of 25, for that value is intermediate between the two extremes. If three cutters are to suffice for the whole set, then 76, 25, and 15 must be selected, of which the cutter 76 may be used for all teeth from a rack to 38, the cutter 25 from 38 to 19, and the cutter 15 from 19 to 12, and so on. I find that in the shapes of cutters, the greatest difference of form is at the apex of the tooth (that is, at the base of the cutter), and amounts to ·25 inch in 2-inch pitch, when the teeth have the usual addendum; from this the difference may be ascertained for any smaller pitch, and as many cutters interposed as the workman's notion of his own powers of accuracy may induce him to think necessary.

Thus if the hundredth of an inch be his limit of accuracy in forming cutters, and he is making a set for half-inch pitch, where the difference of form is $\frac{1}{4} \times {\cdot}25$ or ·06 nearly, then half a dozen cutters will be sufficient, and these must be made as nearly as possible to suit the wheels of 150, 50, 30, 21, 16, 13.

188. In the epicycloid abc (fig. 83, p. 86) join Tb, and let $TOb = \phi$, $AT = R$, and $Tk = 2r$, then radius of curvature at $b = \dfrac{4r\,(R+r)}{R+2r} . \sin\dfrac{\phi}{2}$ (*Peacock's Examples*, p. 195), and this radius passes through T, for Tb is a normal to abc at b. Now $Tb = 2r$

$. \sin \frac{\phi}{2}$, and it makes an angle with the line of centers $= \frac{\pi - \phi}{2} = \theta$, suppose; therefore $\sin \frac{\phi}{2} = \cos \theta$. Hence the distance of the center of curvature at b from T

$$= \left\{ \frac{4r \cdot (R+r)}{R+2r} - 2r \right\} \cdot \sin \frac{\phi}{2} = \frac{2Rr}{R+2r} \cdot \cos \theta,$$

which expression becomes identical with the value of D in Art. 178, if we put $2r = \frac{C}{\sin \theta}$.

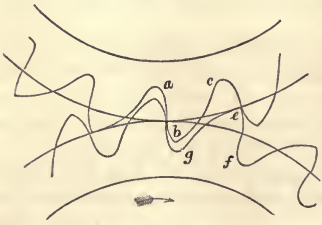
It appears therefore that if, in fig. 109, mn were an arc of an epicycloid whose base were the pitch circle, and diameter of the describing circle $= \frac{KT}{\sin \theta}$, then would Pm be its radius of curvature at m; and in like manner $Q'm$ can be shown to be the radius of curvature of the corresponding hypocycloid mp.

Consequently teeth described by this method approximate to epicycloïdal teeth, and when described in sets by the Odontograph, approximate to those of the third solution (Art. 119). Hence the rules that have been given for the least numbers, and the length or addenda of all such teeth, may also be applied to these.

189. In all the figures of teeth hitherto given the teeth are symmetrical, so that they will act whether the wheels be turned one way or the other. If a machine be of such a nature that the wheels are only required to turn in one direction, the strength of the teeth may be doubled by an alteration of form, exhibited in fig. 114, and suggested by me in 1838.*

This represents a portion of the circumference of a pair of wheels, of which the lowest is the driver, and always moves in the direction of the arrow, consequently the right side of its teeth and the left side of the follower's teeth are the only portions that are ever called into action; and these sides are formed exactly as usual. But the back of each tooth, both in the driver and follower, is proposed to be bounded by an arc of an involute, as *eg* or *cb*.

Fig. 114.



The bases of these involutes being proportional to the pitch

* *Trans. of Institute of Civil Engineers*, vol. ii.

circles, they will during the motion be sure to clear each other, because, geometrically speaking, they would, if the wheels moved the reverse way, work together correctly; but the inclination of their common normal to the line of centers is too great for the transmission of pressure. The effect of this shape is to produce a very strong root, by taking away matter from the extremity of the tooth, where the ordinary form has more than is required for strength, and adding it to the root.

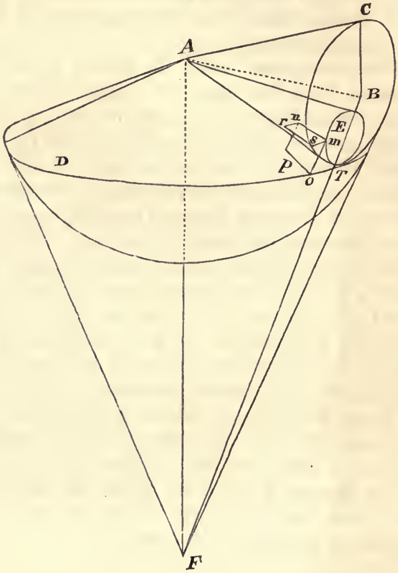
190. In Hooke's system, under its second form (Art. 71), it has been shown that the point of contact travels during the motion of the wheels from one side to the other; a fresh contact always beginning on the first side just before the last contact has quitted the other side. To ensure this, the teeth of the wheels in each section *B* (fig. 52) must be so formed that when the angular velocity ratio is constant the teeth may begin and end contact on the line of centers; otherwise, if the teeth were formed upon the principles of the previous articles of this chapter, it is evident that the sliding contact of the teeth before and after the line of centers would still remain. The simplest mode of effecting this object is to make the flanks of the teeth radial, as in the second solution, and their faces any arc of a circle that will lie *within* the epicycloidal face required by that solution. If, for example, the portion of tooth that lies beyond the pitch line be a complete semicircle whose center is upon that line, this condition will be complied with. I have described the teeth of *B*, fig. 52, in this manner. The figures *A* and *C* are nearly the same as Hooke's, but he has given no front view of his wheels, and has said nothing respecting the forms of the teeth.

To describe the teeth of wheels when their axes are not parallel.

191. *To describe the teeth of bevil-wheels,* let *ACT*, *ATD*, fig. 115, be the *pitch cones* of a pair of bevil-wheels described as in Arts. 40, 41; *AT* their line of contact. Let *AET* be any other cone also lying in contact with *ATD* along *AT*, and having its apex at *A*; therefore the axes of the three cones will be in the same plane *ABF*. Also the circumferences of their bases being at the same distance *AT* from *A*, will lie on the surface of a sphere whose center and radius are *A* and *AT*.

Let the three cones revolve round their axes with the same relative velocity as would be produced by the rolling contact of their surfaces, then the line of contact will always be *AT*, and (calling the intermediate cone *AET* the *describing cone*) a line *nm* upon the surface of the describing cone directed to the common apex will generate one surface *ompn* on the *outside* of the cone *ATD*, and another surface *smrn* on the inside of the cone *ACT*.

Fig. 115.



Also, these surfaces will touch along the describing line *nm*, for since *ponm* is generated by the rolling of the describing cone upon the surface of the cone *ADT*, the motion of *nm* is at every instant perpendicular to the line of contact *AT*; and therefore, the normal plane at *nm* to the surface generated by *nm* will pass through *AT*. And in like manner, the normal plane to the surface *rsnm* will pass through *AT*; therefore the surfaces touch along *nm*.

If these surfaces be employed as teeth, and the rotation of the cone *ATD* be communicated to the cone *ACT* by their contact action, the angular velocity ratio will, from the mode of their generation, be precisely the same as that produced by the rolling contact of the conical surfaces; for at the beginning of the motion *op* and *rs* coincide with *AT*, and in the position of the figure the arcs *To*, *Ts* respectively described by the bases of the two cones are each equal to *Tm*, and therefore themselves equal.

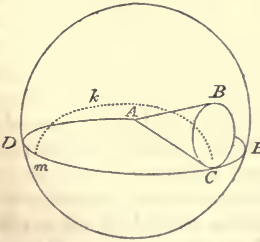
192. The arc *om* is an arc of a spherical epicycloid* whose base is the cone *ADT*, and describing cone the cone *AET*; and in like manner *sm* is an arc of a spherical hypocycloid whose base is the cone *ATC*, and describing cone *AET*. But in practice, the portion of spherical surface occupied by these arcs, when employed for teeth, is a narrow belt extending to a small distance only from *ToD* and *TsC*. The surface, therefore, of cones tangent to the sphere along *TD* and *TC* may be substituted for that of the sphere itself, as follows: draw *BTF* perpendicular to *AT*, and intersecting the axes of the two cones in *F* and *B*; then *BF* revolving round *AF* will generate a conical surface tangent to the sphere along the base *TD* of the cone *ADT*, and the same line *BF* revolving round *AB* will generate a conical surface tangent to the sphere along the base *TsC* of the cone *ACT*.

And since the arc *mo*, which really lies in the spherical surface, is very short in practice, it may be supposed, without sensible error, to lie in the surface of the tangent cone *FTD*, and to be described with a circle whose diameter is equal to that of the base of the describing cone. And in like manner, the arc *sm* may be supposed to be described with a similar circle upon the surface of the tangent cone *BTC*.

193. Now by developing these conical tangent surfaces into planes we obtain a ready practical mode of describing the teeth, which was first suggested by Tredgold.†

* Definition. If a cone *ABC* be made to roll upon another fixed cone *ADCE* in such a manner that their summits *A* always coincide; then a tracing point *C* in the circumference of the base of the rolling cone will trace a kind of epicycloid *Ckm*,

Fig. 116.

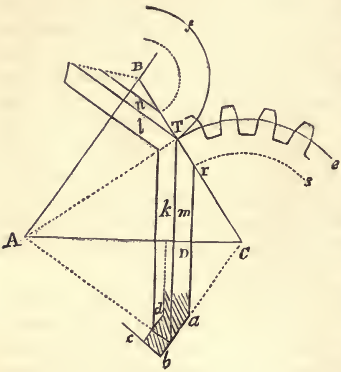


which will plainly lie on the surface of a sphere whose center is *A* and radius *AC*, whence this curve is termed a *spherical epicycloid*. If the cone roll on the concave surface of the base, the curve becomes a *spherical hypocycloid*.

† Buchanan's *Essays on Mill-work*, by Tredgold, 1823, p. 103; or new ed. 1841, p. 59.

Let AB, AC, fig. 117 be the axes meeting in A, AT the line of contact, l, k the rolling frusta described by Art. 41. Draw BTC perpendicular to AT, and meeting the axes in B and C; with center B and radius BT describe a circle Tf, and with centre C and radius CT describe a circle Te. Also describe the frusta n and m which will be frusta of the tangent cones to the spherical surface at the bases of the rolling frusta l and k, as above explained. The circle Tf will be the development of the face of n, and Te that of the face of m; and it follows from the demonstration in Art. 192, that if the circumferences of these circles be treated as the pitch lines of a pair of ordinary spur-wheels, and teeth described upon them according to any of the rules laid down for such wheels, that these teeth when transferred to the conical surfaces will communicate the desired constant velocity ratio. The following practical mode of completing the bevil-wheel is easily deduced from the above.

Fig. 117.



194. Prepare a solid of revolution whose axis is AC, and the section of whose edge is represented at $abcd$, as bounded by two parallel conical surfaces ab, cd, and by a third cb, whose generating line is directed to A.

This surface is to be cut into teeth, and therefore the portion cb projects beyond the surface of the pitch cone, by a sufficient quantity to contain the projections of the teeth beyond that surface, as shown at Te. For the surface ab is plainly the same as that which has been developed at $Ters$. The teeth there figured must be cut out of thin metal and wrapped round this conical surface, so as to allow their outlines to be traced upon it. They may then be cut out, observing that a line passing through A must lie in complete contact with every point of the side of the tooth contained between ba and cd, or in other words, that the acting surfaces of the teeth are generated by the motion of a line one of whose extremities always passes through A, and the other is made to follow the outline traced out upon the surface ab.

The usual method for large wheels is to develope also the interior surface *cd*, making a new construction for it precisely similiar to that employed for the exterior surface *ab*.

If separate wooden cogs are employed, they are first fitted and fixed into their mortises, then the conical surfaces *ab, bc, cd* formed upon them in the lathe, and the outlines of the two ends *ab, cd* traced by patterns derived from the two constructions. They are then taken out separately, and easily shaped by careful planing in straight lines from one outline to the other. The same method is employed for the large wooden patterns that are used in casting wheels, and in which the teeth are made in separate pieces, to allow of this method of shaping.

195. Let the radius TD of the base of the frustum $k=R$, and the radius TC of the developed pitch circle $=r$. Also the semi-angle TAD of the rolling cone $=K$; therefore $r=\frac{R}{\cos K}$. Whence the action of the teeth in any bevil-wheel is equivalent to that of a spur-wheel of the same pitch whose radius is $\frac{R}{\cos K}$; also if N be the number of teeth in the bevil-wheel, $\frac{N}{\cos K}$ will be those of the spur-wheel.

This is a reason for the superior action of bevil-wheels over spur-wheels of the same number of teeth, for spur-wheels always act the better the more teeth they have, and it appears that a bevil-wheel is always equivalent in its action to a spur-wheel of a greater number of teeth.

When a pair of bevils have equal numbers of teeth, and their axes are at right angles, they are termed *mitre-wheels;* in this case

$$\theta=45°, \text{ and } \frac{1}{\cos\theta}=1{\cdot}4;$$

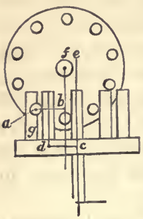
therefore the action of a mitre wheel is nearly equivalent to that of a spur-wheel with half as many more teeth.

196. *Face-wheel geering* (Art. 65) is almost driven out of practice by the employment of bevil-wheels; but it may be sometimes used with advantage, and its principles are worth investigating.

Let two face-wheels with cylindrical pins exactly alike in every respect be placed in geer, as in fig. 118, with their axes at right angles; not meeting in a point, but having their common perpendicular *fe* equal to the diameter of the pins. Then will these wheels revolve together with a constant angular velocity ratio.

For let the pin whose center is *a* in the upper wheel, be in contact with the pin whose axis is at *d* in the lower wheel. Draw *fb* parallel to the axis of the lower wheel, and *ab* perpendicular upon *fb*. Also through *c* the center of the lower wheel draw a line parallel to the axis of the upper wheel, and therefore perpendicular to the plane of the paper, and let *dc* be a perpendicular upon this line from the axis of the pin *d*, therefore *ab* is the sine of the angular distance of *a* from *fb*, which is parallel to the axis of the lower wheel, and *dc* is the sine of the angular distance of *d* from a line drawn through *c* parallel to the axis of the upper wheel. But *a* is removed to the left of *d* by a horizontal distance equal to the diameter of the pins, and *b* is removed to the left of *c* by a horizontal distance equal to *fe*, which is also by hypothesis equal to the diameter of the pins; therefore $ab = dc$, and the angular motion is equal.

Fig. 118.



The pin *a* appears in the figure to cut the pin *g*, but a little consideration will show that the circular motion of the lower wheel removes this pin to a sufficient distance from the plane of the upper wheel to clear the ends of the pins of the latter.

197. If, however, which is generally the case, the diameter of the wheels be different and their axes meet, then supposing one

Fig. 119.

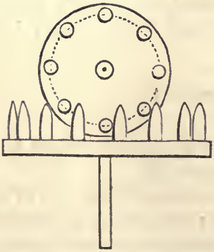
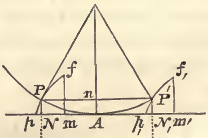


Fig. 120.



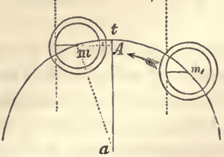


Fig. 121.

of them, as in this figure, to have cylindrical pins or staves, the other must have cogs whose acting surfaces are those of solids of revolution. The axes of these solids may, or may not, coincide with the centers of the cogs. If they do, the cogs are easily formed in the lathe. The generating curve of these solids may be found as follows.

In fig. 120, C is the center of the pin-wheel, the pins of which are supposed to have no sensible diameter, the axis of the pin-wheel is perpendicular to the plane of the paper, and that of the cog-wheel is parallel to it, and meets the first axis in a point whose projection is C. PAP' is the pitch line of the pin-wheel, and $pAm_{,}$ the projection of the pitch line of the cog-wheel. A their point of contact.

Let P be one of the pins, fm the axis of the solid of revolution, or cog, which is to work with it, pPf the generating curve of the solid. Fig. 121 is a plan of the cog-wheel, t the point of contact, m the seat of mf, and the concentric circles the plans of the cog; the large one at the level of mp, and the small one at the level of Pn.

Let the radius $AC=r$, $at=R$, and the angular distance of mf from the plane of centers, or $maA=\phi$;

$$\therefore Am=R \,.\, \sin\phi.$$

$$\text{Let } mN=x,\ NP\,(=An)=y,\ ACP=\theta,\ mp=\rho;$$

then we have (1) $y=r\,.\,\text{versin}\,\theta$.

$$x=r\,.\,\sin\theta-R\sin\phi, \text{ for } Nm=Pn-Am.$$

Also, since the velocities of the pitch circles are equal by supposition, and p and P coincide at A, therefore the arc AP in fig. 120, must be equal to the arc tm in fig. 121, + the radius mp of the base of the solid very nearly.

$$\therefore \phi=\frac{r\theta-\rho}{R}, \text{ and } x=r\sin\theta-R\sin\left\{\frac{r\theta-\rho}{R}\right\} \ (2).$$

From (1) and (2) the curve pPf may be constructed by points, and a curve for a pin of any required diameter derived from it, by tracing it at a normal distance from pPf equal to the radius of the pin, as in the case of common trundles (Art. 129).

198. The cog pPf, supposing it to drive, is necessarily moving in the direction of the arrow, and receding from the plane of centers; but if we consider the relative positions of the approaching pin $P_{,}$ and cog $p_{,}P_{,}f_{,}$ on the other side of the plane of centers, at an equal angular distance θ, and therefore with the same value of y, we get the corresponding value of x, or $x_{,}=R\sin\phi_{,}-r\,.\,\sin\theta$ $(\phi_{,}=m_{,}at)$,

$$\text{and } \phi_{,}=\frac{r\theta+\rho}{R};$$

$$\therefore R\phi_{,}-r\theta=\rho=r\theta-R\phi;$$

whence it follows that

$$R \, . \sin \phi_{,} - r \, . \sin \theta < r \, . \sin \theta - R \, . \sin \phi \, ;$$

that is, $x_{,} < x$.

This curve $p_{,}P_{,}f_{,}$, therefore, is not the same as pPf, but will lie within it. But if the cogs are turned in the lathe, the axis of the solid of revolution will coincide with the center, and the smallest curve of the two must necessarily be used; and therefore the action will only be maintained while the cylindrical pin lies between the cog and the plane of centers; and as receding action is preferable to approaching action, it follows that the cylindrical pin must be given to the driver and the cogs to the follower, if the cogs be turned in a lathe. But fig. 121 shows that the point of contact of the cogs on one side of the line of centers, as $m_{,}$, is very nearly confined to the half of each cog which lies within the pitch circle, and that on the other side as m to the portion which lies without. By making the outer portion of each cog of the form $p_{,}P_{,}f_{,}$, and the inner portion of the form pPf, we may have action on both sides the plane of centers at pleasure.

199. This shows the *possibility* of forming the cogs of face-wheels so as to communicate motion with a constant velocity ratio. In practice, the form of the cogs may be obtained by finding two or three points for the curve pPf, which may be done on the drawing board by constructing a diagram similar to figs. 120 and 121, but in which the cogs and pins shall be placed in two or three different successive distances from the plane of centers. In small wooden mill-work, the cogs used to be turned in the lathe and with round shanks, and consequently made complete solids of revolution, as in fig. 119; but in the larger wheels each cog had its acting face shaped into segments of solids of revolution of considerably greater diameter than the cog itself.

In this kind of geering, however, the surfaces of the teeth touch only in a single point;* while in bevil-geer, as we have seen (Art. 68), the contact is along a line directed to the point of intersection of the axes. The abrasion is therefore less in the latter, but the convenience of forming the cogs in the lathe sometimes occasions the face-geer to be used even now in light machinery or models.

* To use the words of a practical American millwright, in speaking of wooden face geers, 'the disadvantage of face geers is the smallness of the bearing, so that they wear out very fast, for if the bearing of cogs be small, and the stress so great that they cut one another, they will wear exceedingly fast; but if it be so large and the stress so light that they only polish one another, they will wear very long.'—Oliver Evans, *Young Millwright's Guide*, Art. 80.

In face-geering, a derangement in the relative position of the wheel and trundle, if it take place in a line parallel to the axis of the latter, will not interfere with the action of the geering.

200. The surfaces adapted for teeth in the case of rolling hyperboloids, Art. 42, might be obtained in a similar manner to those of rolling cones, by taking an intermediate describing hyperboloid; but it does not appear possible to derive from this any rules sufficiently simple for application. This kind of wheel is only employed to enable the two axes to pass each other, which is impossible in conical wheels; and, on account of the imperfection of their rolling action, explained in Art. 42, the axes should be brought as close together as possible, by which the solids will approximate nearly to a pair of rolling cones. The teeth should be small and numerous, and therefore the frusta should be placed as far as convenient from the common perpendicular of the axes. When the frusta have been described by Art. 49, the forms of the teeth may be obtained with sufficient approximation by treating these frusta similarly to those in fig. 117, that is, draw a line perpendicular to tr at r (fig. 30, Art. 50), this will intersect the axis at some point beyond K; take this point for the apex of a cone whose base shall coincide with that of the rolling frustum KP, develope its surface and describe the teeth as in Art. 193.

An interior surface, corresponding to cd in fig. 117, must also be developed and the teeth traced upon it; the relative position of these interior forms to those already traced upon the exterior surface, will be determined by drawing an inclined line at the pitch surface, according to the method of Art. 70.

The principal machine in which these skew bevils are employed is that which is known by the name of the bobbin and fly frame, in the cotton manufacture.

201. *To communicate motion by means of involutes between two axes inclined without meeting.**

Fig. 104 represents, as already explained, a pair of wheels whose teeth are formed of arcs of involutes, the point of contact of which is always situated in the common tangent DE of the bases.

In this figure the wheels are in the same plane, and their axes consequently parallel. Suppose now that the plane of one wheel be inclined to the other by turning on the line DE, in the manner of a hinge, so that this line shall be the intersection of the two planes, but that the position of each wheel in its own plane with respect to this line shall not be altered. The inclination of the

* This property of involutes is due to M. Ollivier. Vide *Bulletin de la Soc. d'Encouragement*, tom. xxviii. p. 430.

axes will be however changed, but they will not meet, and their common perpendicular will be equal to DE. Since DE is the locus of contact, it is clear that this motion will not disturb the angular position of either wheel in its own plane; and hence the angular velocity ratio of the wheels will remain constant and unaltered by the change of position. Involute wheels, therefore, may be employed to communicate a constant velocity ratio between axes that are inclined at any angle to each other, but which do not meet.

But the demonstration supposes the wheels to be very thin, since they coincide with the planes that meet in the line DE, and the invariable points of contact are situated in this line. The edge of one of the wheels must be in practice rounded so that it may touch the other teeth in a point only.

ON CAMS AND SCREWS.

202. Having disposed of the teeth of wheels, we may now return to the remaining combinations in which sliding contact is employed to communicate a constant velocity ratio between two pieces.

If the motion of these pieces be limited to a not very considerable angle, or if one of them moves in a short rectilinear path in the manner of a rack, any of the pairs of curves in the first part of this chapter (in Arts. 116 to 127) may be employed in the single forms there shown, instead of being reduced to short arcs, and placed in successive order as teeth. To avoid unnecessary details, I shall confine myself to the examination of the cases in which one of these curves is reduced to a pin, as in the First Solution; for this method is generally preferred, and it has this advantage, that whereas greater friction is introduced when a long curved plate is substituted for a series of teeth,* the pin can be made into a roller, and thus the abrasion which would tend to destroy the form of the curved edge is transferred to the axis of the roller, which can be easily repaired when worn out.

203. In fig. 122, A is the center of motion of a revolving plate in which a slit $a\,b$ is pierced, having parallel sides so as to embrace and nearly fit a pin m, which is carried by a bar CD fitted between guides so as to be capable of sliding in the direction of its length.

* By carrying the point of contact farther from the line of centers (Art. 32).

If the plate revolve in the direction of the arrow the inner side of the slit presses against the pin and moves it further from the center *A*, but when the plate revolves in the opposite direction the outer edge of the slit acts against the pin and moves it in the opposite direction.

If the curved edges of the slit be involutes of the circle whose radius is *Ac*, where *Ac* is a perpendicular upon the path *m c* of the

Fig. 122.

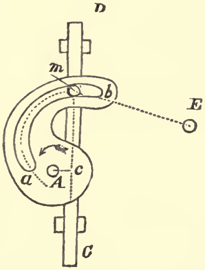
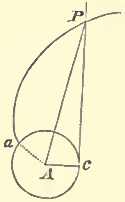


Fig. 123.



bar, it appears from Art. 133 that the velocity ratio of plate and bar will be constant, and the linear velocity of the bar equal to that of the point *c* of the plate. But if any other velocity ratio be required, let *Pc* (fig. 123) be the path of the sliding bar, *P* the pin, *A* the center of the curve, *aP* the curve.

Let $cAP=\phi$, $PAa=\theta$, $Ac=a$, $AP=r$, then while *a* has moved from *c* to *a*, let *P* have moved from *c* to *P*; so that $ca=m\times cP$; preserving a constant velocity ratio during the motion;

$$\therefore\ \theta+\phi=m\times\tan\phi.$$

$$\text{But } \tan\phi=\frac{\sqrt{r^2-a^2}}{a},\ \text{and } \phi=\cos^{-1}\frac{a}{r};$$

$$\therefore\theta+\cos^{-1}\frac{a}{r}=\frac{m}{a}\sqrt{r^2-a^2}\ \text{is equation to curve.}$$

If the velocity of the circumference of the circle (radius *Ac*) equals the linear velocity of the bar,

$$ca=cP,\ \text{and}\ \therefore\ m=1;$$

$$\therefore\ \theta+\cos^{-1}\frac{a}{r}=\frac{\sqrt{r-a^2}}{a};$$

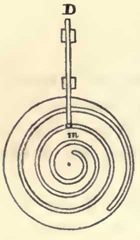
which is the equation to the involute of the circle as it ought to be.*

If, however, the line *Pc* of the follower's path pass through the center *A*, then since equal angles described to the curve are to produce equal differences of radial distance in the pin, the curve becomes evidently the spiral of Archimedes; a curve which, although, as we see, capable of communicating velocity in a constant ratio between a circular and rectilinear path, cannot be employed for the teeth of racks, because the pitch line passes through the center of the wheel.

204. Sometimes the pin, instead of being mounted on a slide, is carried by an arm revolving round a center *E*, as *mE*, and therefore describes an arc of a circle. The curve is then derived from the first solution (Art. 129), the line of centers *AE* having been previously divided, in the ratio of the required angular velocities.

The angular motion of the curved plate which is the driver is of course limited to the length of the slit *a b*, but this may be carried through several convolutions, as in fig. 124, where it is shown in the form of a spiral groove, excavated in the face of a revolving plate, and communicating rectilinear motion to the bar *Dm* by means of the pin at its extremity *m*, which lies always in the groove.

Fig. 124.



This may be termed a *flat screw* or *plane screw*.

205. Combinations of this kind assume a great many different forms, the complete exhibition of which belongs rather to descriptive mechanism than to the plan of the present work. Thus, instead of employing the slit or groove, shown in these figures, the object of which is to produce action in both directions, a single curved edge may be employed, and the returning action produced by a weight or spring, which may be applied to the bar so as to keep the pin constantly in contact with it.

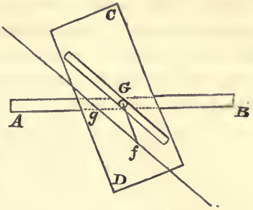
Curved plates of this kind are termed cams, or, when small, tappets, and they are more used to produce varying velocity ratios than constant ones. For which reason I shall refer to Chapters VI. and VII. for some other forms in which they appear.

206. If the path both of driver and follower be rectilinear, the slit will become straight.

* Peacock's *Examples*, p. 177.

Let a plane rectangle CD move in its own plane in a path parallel to its longest side, and have a straight slit cut in it making an angle θ with that side, and let a bar AB moving in the direction of its own length below this plane be provided with a projecting pin G which enters the slit, the slit making an angle ϕ with the path of this bar. Therefore the paths of the plane and bar make an angle $\theta+\phi$ with each other.

Fig. 125.



If the plane move through a space $= Gf$, draw gf parallel to the first position of the slit, then g will be the new position of the pin, and Gg the space described by the pin or bar;

$$\therefore \frac{\text{velocity of plane}}{\text{velocity of bar}} = \frac{Gf}{Gg} = \frac{\sin Ggf}{\sin Gfg} = \frac{\sin \phi}{\sin \theta},$$

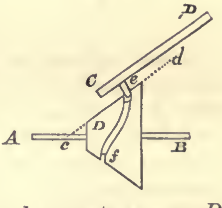
a constant ratio.

If the bar move perpendicularly to the plane, $\theta+\phi=\frac{\pi}{2}$,

$$\text{and } \frac{\text{velocity of plane}}{\text{velocity of bar}} = \tan \phi \text{ or } \frac{1}{\tan \theta}.$$

207. To return to the revolving plate and bar; if the path of the bar be not parallel to the plane of rotation of the plate, the latter must be formed into the cone or hyperboloid that would be generated by the rotation round its axis of the line which is the path of the pin, or other point of contact of the bar. Thus, in fig. 126, AB is the axis, CD the sliding bar, e its pin, the path cd of whose acting extremity is in this case supposed to meet the axis. If this line cd generate a cone D by revolving round AB, the pin will always lie at the same depth in any groove excavated in the conical surface. Also, if this surface be developed, the groove ef will be the spiral of Archimedes. It is unnecessary to follow into detail all the forms, curves, and combinations, that arise in this manner. One case only requires more particular attention.

Fig. 126.



208. If the path of the bar CD be parallel to the axis of rotation AB, the conical surface upon which the groove is traced will become a cylinder; and to produce a constant velocity ratio

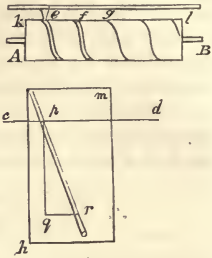
the spiral groove must be at every point equally inclined to a line drawn upon the surface parallel to the axis.

For it has been shown that a plane surface *mh*, fig. 127, moving perpendicularly to a sliding bar *cd*, will communicate motion to it in a constant ratio, by means of a straight slit *pr* in which lies a pin fixed to the bar, and that

$$\frac{\text{velocity of plane}}{\text{velocity of bar}}=\tan\phi;$$

where ϕ is the angle *rpd* made by the slit with the path of the bar.

Fig. 127.



If this plane be wrapped round the cylinder, keeping its axis parallel to the path of the bar, the groove will become a spiral, inclined at the angle ϕ to a line drawn parallel to this axis. But the motion given to the bar by this spiral when the cylinder revolves will be exactly the same as if the plane had passed under it through the line *kl* and perpendicularly to the plane of the paper.

The velocity of the plane is now the velocity of rotation of the cylindrical surface, and therefore we have, if r be the radius of the cylinder, A its angular velocity, V the velocity of the bar,

$$\frac{rA}{V}=\tan\phi.$$

If the length of the plane be greater than the circumference of the cylinder, the spiral groove will encompass its surface through more than one revolution, and may, in this way, proceed in many convolutions from one extremity of the cylinder to the other, its inclination to the axis of the cylinder remaining constant and equal to ϕ; such a recurring spiral is termed *a screw*.

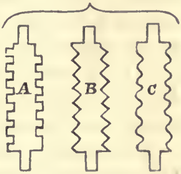
Draw *pq*, *qr* respectively perpendicular and parallel to the path of the bar; if *pq* is equal to the circumference of the cylinder, *qr* will be the distance between two successive convolutions of the screw, and $qr=\frac{2\pi r}{\tan\phi}$. This is termed the *pitch* of the screw, from its analogy to the pitch of a rack or toothed wheel. Every revolution of the screw carries the bar through a space equal to the pitch.

209. The screw is sometimes made in this elementary form,

consisting of a simple spiral groove, with distant convolutions, which gives motion to a slide, by means of a pin fixed to the latter, and lying in the groove; for example, the screw by which the wick of the common Argand lamp is adjusted in height is always made in this form. But, generally, screws receive a more complex arrangement, in the following manner.

Firstly, the inclination of the spiral to the axis is made small, and the convolutions of the groove brought close together. The ridge which separates two contiguous grooves is a spiral precisely resembling that of the groove in inclination, and in the number and pitch of its convolutions. This ridge is termed the thread of the screw, and according to the form of its section the screw is said to have a square thread as at *A*, an angular thread as at *B*, or a round thread as at *C*.

Fig. 128.



Secondly, instead of a single pin *e* let other pins *f* and *g* be also fixed to the bar opposite to the other convolutions; then, since each pin will receive an equal velocity from the revolving cylinder, the motion of the bar will be effected as before, with

Fig. 129.

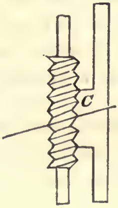


Fig. 130.

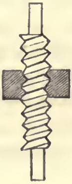
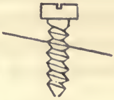


Fig. 131.



the advantage of an increased number of points of contact. But this series of pins is generally thrown into the shape of a short comb, the outline of which exactly fits that of the threads of the screw, as at *C*, fig. 129.* This is the most ancient form in which the screw was employed. It appears to be that which is described by Pappus.†

210. Most commonly, however, the piece which receives the action of the screw is provided with a cavity embracing the

* The same expedient may be resorted to in the flat spiral of fig. 124, which is, in fact, a flat screw; and on the same principle a screw may be formed on a conical or hyperboloidal surface.

† *Pappi Math. Col. Commandini*, lib. viii. p. 332.

screw, and fitting its thread completely, as shown in section in fig. 130, being in fact a hollow screw, corresponding in every respect to the solid screw. Such a piece is termed *a nut*, and the hollow screw, a *female screw*.

These modifications are only introduced to distribute the pressure of the screw upon a greater surface; for as the action of the thread upon every section of the nut through its axis is exactly the same as that of fig. 129, the result of all these conspiring actions is the same: namely, that the piece to which the comb or nut is attached advances in a direction parallel to the axis of the screw, and describes a space equal to as many pitches as the screw has performed revolutions.

211. A screw may be *right handed* or *left handed*, that is, looking at the screw in a vertical position, the thread may incline upwards to the *right*, as in fig. 129, or to the *left*, as in fig. 131.

The majority of screws are right handed, the left handed are only employed when the conditions of the mechanism require them. The respective motions of these two classes may be distinguished by the following rule. Supposing the screw to be movable and its nut fixed, it will, if right handed, enter its nut when turned in the direction of the hands of a watch, and vice versâ.

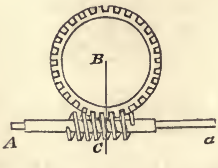
Also, if the nut be movable and the screw fixed, the nut will descend the right-handed screw when turned in that direction.

Consequently if the screw be left handed, it must be turned counter clockwise to enter a fixed nut, or put a movable nut in action upon the extremity of its screw.

212. When the comb or rack form (fig. 129) is used instead of a nut, this farther modification is sometimes employed, that the screw is made short and the rack lengthened, as in fig. 132. In

Fig. 132.

Fig. 133.



both these cases, the length of the path that may be described by the bar, without allowing any portion of the screw or rack to quit contact at the extremities of the motion, will be the difference between the lengths of the screw and rack.

From this latter modification, we easily pass to the so-called *endless screw*.* In this contrivance, the screw C is employed to communicate rotation to a revolving follower or wheel B. An axis Aa is mounted in a frame, so as to prevent its endlong motion, and provided with a short screw C. The wheel B has its edge notched into equidistant teeth of the same pitch as the thread of the screw with which they are in contact. If the screw axis be turned round, every revolution will cause one tooth of the wheel to pass the line of centers BC; and as this action puts no limit, from the nature of the contrivance, to the number of revolutions in the same direction, a screw fitted up in this mode is termed an endless screw, in opposition to the ordinary screw, which when turned round a certain number of times either way, terminates its own action by bringing the nut to the end of its thread; the term endless applying in this case not to the form but to the action of the screw.

213. To determine the form which should be given to the thread and teeth in this contrivance, it may be remarked, that from the nature of a screw the section of its thread made by a plane passing through its axis is everywhere the same: and that if a series of such sections of the entire screw be made by planes at equal angular distances round the circle, a set of similar figures resembling a double rack (as in fig. 128), will be obtained alike in the number and form of their teeth, but in which the teeth will gradually approach nearer and nearer to the extremity of the screw. The action of the screw upon the wheel-teeth, in revolving without end play, brings these successive sections into action upon the teeth, and produces exactly the same effect as if the screw were pushed endlong without rotation, in the manner of a rack.† But this latter supposition enables us to obtain the figure of the thread and teeth, upon the principles already given for the teeth of racks.

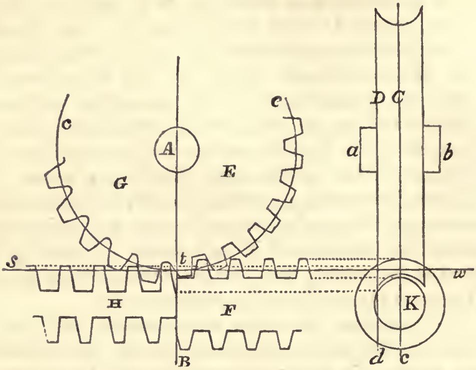
Fig. 134 is a transverse section of a wheel and endless screw, made through the line of centers; ab the axis of the wheel, K that of the screw; fig. 135 represents the corresponding sections, in which AB being the line of centers, the section to the right of this line is made by a plane passing through the axis of the

* Also described by Pappus in the article already referred to; also lib. viii. prop. 24.

† Thus if a screw be held to the light and turned round, the outline of its threads will appear to travel from one end of the screw to the other continually, in the manner of the teeth of a sliding rack.

screw, and through the line *Cc*, fig. 134; and the section to the left of the line of centers in fig. 135 is made by a plane passing through the line *Dd*, fig. 134, on one side of the axis of the screw, and parallel to the first. The effect of this is, that *F* is a direct

Fig. 135. Fig. 134.



section of the screw, while *H* is an oblique section: also, *cte* is the pitch circle of the wheel, and *stw* the pitch line of the screw, supposing it to act as a rack.

Nevertheless, according to the supposition already made, it appears that in these two sections, and in any other parallel to them within the wheel, the screw is required to act as a rack upon the teeth of the wheel. But whatever figure be given to the screw-thread, it is seen that the forms of these racks will necessarily be different in each section; for although the form of the thread is the same in all, it is cut at a different angle in each section, by which the teeth of *H* remote from the axis will be more prolonged and twisted in their form than those of *F* in the central section; and besides this, the successive racks will retire further from the center *A* of the wheel, as their section recedes from the axis of the screw; as shown in the figure, in which the rack-teeth *H* are lower than in *F*.

Now it has been already shown (Art. 127) that any form of tooth being assumed, the corresponding tooth *may be* assigned.

The forms of the teeth in the central plane *E* may therefore be made to suit those of *F*, and the forms of the teeth in *G* may also suit those of *H*; and so on for every intermediate section. It is therefore *possible* to make an endless screw whose thread shall be in contact with the entire side of the tooth, provided the figure of the wheel-teeth be different in every section. Also, since in every section two or three pairs of teeth may be in simultaneous contact, the screw may be in contact along the entire side of all these teeth.

214. The practical difficulty of making the teeth of a wheel of which the form in every parallel section shall be different, is very simply overcome by making the screw cut the teeth, thus:

An endless screw is formed of steel, exactly the same as the proposed one, and this is notched regularly across its threads so as to convert it into a cutting instrument or tap, and then properly hardened. The wheel having had its teeth roughly cut in the proposed number, is mounted in its frame, together with the cutting screw, and the latter is turned in contact with it, and pressed gradually nearer and nearer, cutting out the teeth as it proceeds, till it has formed them to correspond exactly with its thread; it is then taken out and replaced by the smooth-threaded screw.

215. The endless screw falls under the case of two revolving pieces whose axes are not parallel and never meet. It communicates motion very smoothly, and is equivalent to a wheel of a single tooth, because one revolution passes one tooth of the wheel across the plane of centers; but, generally speaking, can only be employed as a driver, on account of the great obliquity of its action.

216. In a cutting engine by Hindley of York, an endless screw of a different form was introduced, which is thus described by Smeaton:—'The endless screw was applied to a wheel of about thirteen inches diameter, very stout and strong, and cut into 360 teeth. The threads of this screw were not formed upon a cylindrical surface, but upon a solid whose sides were terminated by arches of circles. The whole length contained fifteen threads, and as every thread (on the side next the wheel) pointed towards the center thereof, the whole fifteen were in contact together, and had been so ground with the wheel, that, to my great astonishment, I found the screw would turn round with the utmost freedom, interlocked with the teeth of the wheel, and would draw the wheel round without any shake or sticking, or the least sensation of inequality.'*

'The screw was cut by the rotation of the point of a tool,

* Smeaton, p. 183, *Miscellaneous Papers.*

carried by the wheel itself, the wheel being driven by an ordinary cylindrical endless screw.'

Fig. 136 shows this form of endless screw, and fig. 137 is an arrangement to show the manner of cutting the spiral thread upon the solid, in which *A* is a wheel driven by an endless screw *B*, of the common form; *C* a toothed wheel fixed to the axis of

Fig. 136.

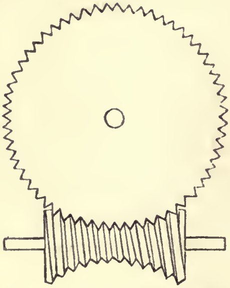
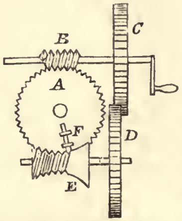


Fig. 137.



the endless screw and geering with another equal toothed wheel *D*, upon whose axis is mounted the smooth surfaced solid *E*, which it is desired to cut into Hindley's endless screw. For this purpose a cutting tooth *F* is clamped to the face of the wheel *A*. When the handle attached to the axis *BC* is turned round, the wheel *A* and solid *E* will revolve with the same relative velocity as *A* and *B*, and the tooth *F* will trace upon the surface of the solid a thread which will correspond to the conditions. For from the very mode of its formation the section of every thread through the axis will point to the center of the wheel. The axis of *E* lies considerably higher than that of *B*, to enable the solid *E* to clear the wheel *A*.

The edges of the section of the solid through its center, exactly fit the segment of the toothed wheel, but if a section be made by a plane parallel to this, the teeth will no longer be equally divided, as they are in the common screw; and therefore this kind of screw can only be in contact with each tooth along a line corresponding to its middle section. So that the advantage of this form over the common one is not so great as appears at first sight.

217. If the inclination of the thread of a screw to the axis be very great, one or more intermediate threads may be added, as in fig. 138. In which case the screw is said to be double, or triple,

according to the number of separate spiral threads that are so placed on its surface. As every one of these threads will pass its own wheel-tooth across the line of centers, in each revolution of the screw, it follows, that as many teeth of the wheel will pass that line during one revolution of the screw as there are threads to the screw.

If we suppose the number of these threads to be considerable,

Fig. 138.

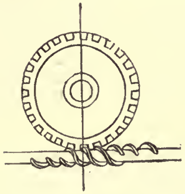
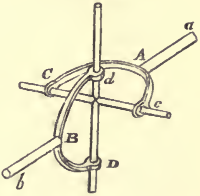


Fig. 139.

Fig. 140.



for example, equal to those of the wheel-teeth, then the screw and wheel may be made exactly alike, as in fig. 139; which may serve as an example of the disguised forms which some common arrangements may assume.

The old Piemont silk-mill is an example of disguised endless screws.*

218. In fig. 140 is represented a method of communicating equal rotation by sliding contact between two axes whose directions if produced are parallel. *Aa Bb* are the axes, parallel in direction.

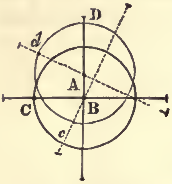
The axis *Aa* is furnished with a semicircular piece *CAc*, forming two equal branches, and terminated by sockets bored in a direction to intersect the axis at right angles. The axis *bB* is provided with a similar pair of branches *dbD*, and the whole is so adjusted that their four sockets lie in one plane perpendicular to the axes. A cross with straight cylindrical polished arms is fitted into the sockets in the manner shown in the figure; and its arms are of a diameter that allows them to slide freely each in its own socket. If one of the axes be made to revolve, it will communicate to the other by means of this cross a rotation precisely the same as its own.

For let fig. 141 be a section through the cross transverse to the axis, and let *AB* be the axes, and the circles be those described by their sockets respectively.

* Described in *Encyc. Méthodique*, 'Manufactures and Arts,' tom. ii. p. 31; and in Borgnis, *Machines pour confectionner les étoffes*, p. 160.

Then if D be a socket of A, the arm of the cross which passes through it must meet the center A; and in like manner if C be a socket of B, the arm CB must pass through B. Also, if D move to d, the new (or dotted) position of the cross will be formed by drawing dA through A, and Bc perpendicular to it through B the other axis; therefore C will be carried to c; and it is easy to see that the angle $DAd = CBc$. Therefore the angular motion of the axes is the same. Also, every arm of the cross will slide through its socket and back again during each revolution, through a space equal to twice the perpendicular distance of the axes (AB).*

Fig 141.



* This arrangement is essentially the same as that of a coupling invented by the late Mr. Oldham, and introduced by him into the machinery of the Banks of England and Ireland. His form of it is more solid, but not so well adapted for geometrical illustration as that which I have given. His axes are each terminated by a disk in which a transverse groove is planed, and the cross consisting of two square bars in different planes has each bar completely buried in the groove of its neighbouring disk.

CHAPTER VI.

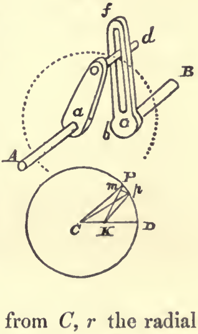
ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

DIVISION B. COMMUNICATION OF MOTION BY SLIDING CONTACT.

CLASS B. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT. VELOCITY RATIO VARYING.

219. THE simplest mode of obtaining a varying angular velocity ratio, when the rotations are to be continued indefinitely in the same direction, is by the pin and slit, fig. 142, where *Aa*, *Bb* are axes parallel in direction, but placed with their ends opposite to each other. *Aa* is provided with an arm carrying a pin *d*, which enters and slides freely in a long straight slit formed in a similar arm, which is fixed to the extremity of *Bb*. If one of these axes revolve, it will communicate a rotation to the other with a varying velocity ratio; for the pin in revolving is continually changing its distance from the axis of *Bb*.

Fig. 142.



Let C be the center of motion of the pin-arm, K the center of motion of the slit-arm, P the pin, R the constant radius of the pin from C, r the radial distance from K, and let P move to p through a small angle; draw pm perpendicular to CP, then angular velocity of pin : angular velocity of slit

$$:: \frac{Pp}{PC} : \frac{pm}{PK} :: \frac{1}{R} : \frac{\cos CPK}{r}.$$

If CP revolve uniformly, the angular velocity of KP will vary as $\frac{\cos CPK}{r}$, or if CK be small, as $\frac{1}{r}$; therefore when the centers of motion are near, this contrivance produces the same law of motion as that of Art. 97.

If $PCD=\theta$, $PKD=\beta$, $CK=E$, we have

$$R \sin \theta=(R \cos \theta-E) \tan \beta;$$

$$\therefore \tan \beta=\frac{R \cdot \sin \theta}{R \cos \theta-E},$$

will give the position of KP corresponding to any given position of CP.

By altering the direction of the slit, or by making it curvilinear, other laws of motion may be obtained.

220. In the endless screw and wheel (Art. 212), the thread of the screw is inclined to the axis of the cylinder at a constant angle ϕ, and the angular velocity ratio of screw and wheel is constant. If, however, the inclination ϕ of the thread be made to vary at different points of the circumference, as shown in fig. 143, the angular velocity ratio will vary accordingly. For example, if the threads through half the circumference lie in planes perpendicular to the axis of the screw, the wheel will revolve with an intermittent motion, remaining at rest during the alternate half rotations of the screw. If A, a be the respective angular velocities of the screw and wheel, R, r their pitch-radii, it appears, from Art. 208, that $\frac{A}{a}=\frac{r}{R} \tan \phi$.

But as the inclination ϕ changes, the teeth of the wheel must be made in the form of solids of revolution, having their axes radiating from the center of the wheel.

Fig. 143.

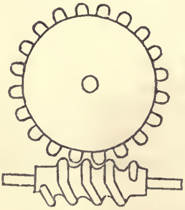
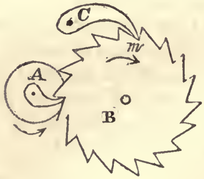


Fig. 144.

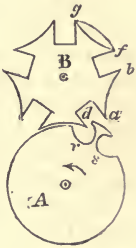


221. A simple intermittent motion is effected by a pinion of one tooth A, fig. 144. This tooth will in each revolution pass a single tooth of the wheel B across the line of centers; but during the greatest portion of its rotation will leave the wheel undisturbed. To prevent the wheel B from continuing this motion by inertia through a greater space than this one tooth, a *detent* C

may be employed. This turns freely upon its center, and may be pressed by a weight or spring against the teeth. It will be raised as the inclined side of the tooth passes under it by the action of *A*, and will fall over into the next space, but when *A* quits the wheel, the detent pressing upon the inclined side of the tooth will move it through a short space backwards, until the point *m* rests at the bottom of the nook, as shown. The detent thus retains the wheel in its position during the absence of the tooth *A*. These detents receive other forms, for which I shall refer to the section on Ratchet-work, below.

222. A better intermittent motion is produced by a contrivance (fig. 145) which may be termed the *Geneva stop*, as it is introduced into the mechanism of the Geneva watches.

Fig. 145.



A is the driver, which revolves continually in the same direction, *B* the follower, which is to receive from it an intermittent motion, with long intervals of rest. For this purpose its circumference is notched alternately into arcs of circles as *ab*, concentric to the center of *A* when placed opposite to it, and into square recesses, as shown in the figure.

The circumference of *A* is a plain circular disc, very nearly of the same radius as the concave tooth which is opposed to it; this disk is provided with a projecting hatchet-shaped tooth, flanked by two hollows *r* and *s*. When it revolves (suppose in the direction of the arrow), no motion will be given to *B* so long as the plain edge is passing the line of centers, but at the same time the concave form of the tooth of *B* will prevent it from being moved (as in fig. 70).

But when the hatchet-shaped tooth has reached the square recess of *B*, its point will strike against the side of the recess at *d*, and carry *B* through the space of one tooth, so as to bring the next concave arc *a b* opposite to the plain edge of the disk, which will retain it until another revolution has brought the hatchet into contact with the side of the next recess *bf*.

The hollow recess at *r* is necessary to make room for the point *d*, which during the motion is necessarily thrown nearer to the center of *A* than the circumference of the plain edge of the latter. The hatchet-tooth being symmetrical will act in either direction.

223. The office of this contrivance in a Geneva watch is to prevent it from being over-wound, whence it is termed *a stop*; and for this purpose one of the teeth is made convex, as shown in

dotted lines at *fg*. If *A* be turned round, the hatchet-tooth will pass four notches in order, but after passing the fourth across the line of centers, the convex edge *gf* will prevent further rotation, so that in this state the combination becomes a contrivance to prevent an axis from being turned more than a certain number of times in the same direction.

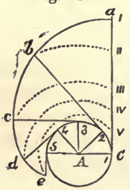
For the wheel *A* is attached to the axis which is turned by the key in winding, and the wheel *B* thus prevents this axis from being turned too far, so as to overstrain the spring. As the watch goes during the day the axis of *A* revolves slowly in the opposite direction, carrying the stop-wheel with it by a similar intermitting motion.

The late Mr. Oldham applied this kind of mechanism to intermittent motions,* and his arrangement is in some respects superior to that of fig. 145. Instead of the hatchet-tooth he employed a pin carried by a plate fixed to the back of the driver, by which means he was enabled to reduce the size of the square notches of the follower.

224. Any required variation in the ratio of angular velocities may be produced by a cam-plate; but if the directional relation is constant the motion will necessarily be limited, as in fig. 122, (page 153). In this contrivance, by altering the form of the curve we may obtain different velocity ratios at every point of its action; as, for example, if a portion of the edge of the cam-plate be concentric to its axis, the pin or bar which it drives will receive no motion while that part of the edge is sliding past it.

225. The curve for a cam of this kind is generally described by points. The methods of doing this will readily occur in each particular case, but one example may serve to show the nature of the process. In the combination of fig. 122, let the angular velocity ratio vary so that when a series of points 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, fig. 146, in the circumference of the circle *C* 3, 5 shall have reached in order the point *C*, the pin in the sliding bar shall be moved into the corresponding positions I, II, III, IV, V. To each of the position points in the circumference of the circle draw tangents, and with center *A* draw circular arcs in order, each intersecting one of the position points, I, II, III, &c., and the corresponding tangent, as at *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*; thus is obtained a series of points through which, if

Fig. 146.



* In the machinery of the Banks of England and Ireland.

a curve be drawn, it will be the cam required; for it is manifest, that if any point (as 3) of the circle be brought to *C*, the corresponding point *c* of the curve will be moved to III, and thus the pin will be placed in its required position; and so for every other pair of positions.

The curve for a pin of sensible diameter must be obtained from this by the usual method (Art. 130).

CHAPTER VII.

ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

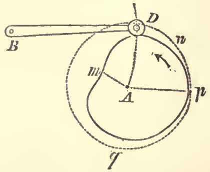
Division B. COMMUNICATION OF MOTION BY SLIDING CONTACT.

CLASS C. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CHANGING. VELOCITY RATIO VARYING.

226. By means of a properly formed revolving cam-plate a reciprocating motion may be given to a follower which will vary periodically according to any required law.

Thus let *A*, fig. 147, be the center of motion of a cam-plate *n m q p*, *BD* the follower, which in this case is an arm turning on a center *B*, and furnished with a friction-roller *D* which rests upon the edge of the cam. But the follower may also be a sliding bar as in fig. 122 (p. 153). Let *A m* be the least radius of the cam, and *A p* the greatest, and let the radii gradually increase along the edge *m n p*, and decrease along the edge *p q m*. Then if the cam revolve continually in the direction of the arrow, the roller *D* will be by the action of the edge pushed away from the center *A*, during the passage of *m n p* under it, and will return to the center during the passage of *p q m*; it being supposed to be kept in contact with the edge by weight or by a spring.

Fig. 147.

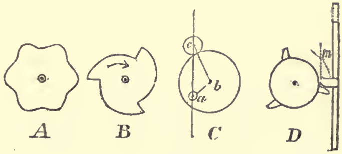


In this manner a series of periodic oscillations are communicated to the bar *BD*, and the velocity ratio of this bar to that of the cam can be adjusted at pleasure to any required law, by shaping the edge of the plate accordingly (Art. 31).

This may be set out by points in the method of which an example has already been given in Art. 225. If the bar be required to remain at rest during a given angular portion of the revolution of the cam, the edge will be an arc of a circle through that angle. If the follower be a straight bar, as in fig. 122, and this bar be required to perform its motion in both directions with a constant angular velocity ratio to that of the cam, then must a cam-plate be formed of two of the curves given in Art. 203, each occupying half the circumference, and set back to back, so as to produce a heart-shaped figure.

227. If the cam-plate be required to communicate more than one double oscillation in each revolution, its edge must be formed into a corresponding number of waves, as *A*, fig. 148; and if the follower is to be raised gently and let fall by its own weight, the waves must terminate abruptly, as in *B*. If the follower is to

Fig. 148.



receive a series of lifts with intervals of rest, the cam becomes a set of teeth projecting from the circumference of a wheel, as in *D*. When the cam is employed to lift a vertical bar or stamper, these separate teeth are often termed wipers or tappets.

228. The axis of the follower, if it be a revolving bar, as in fig. 147, is not necessarily parallel to that of the cam; but may be set at any angle to it, if the bar revolve only through a small angle, whose tangent in the mean position is in the plane of rotation of the cam.

229. The simplest form of a cam is that of an excentric circle, as at *C*, fig. 148. Let *a* be the excentric center of motion, *b* the center of the cam, *ac* the direction of motion of the follower, which is a roller whose center is *c*. Then *bc* is plainly constant, and the motion given to the follower the same as if a link *bc* and crank *ab* were employed.

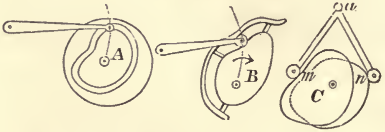
230. If the weight or spring be inconvenient, the cam may be made to press the follower in both directions by means of a double curve. This cannot be made in the form of a slit, as in fig. 122, because the motion is now to take place indefinitely in the same direction; but a groove in the face of a plate may be employed, as at *A*, fig. 149.

231. If the cam revolve always in the same direction, the outside curve is only required during that portion of the motion in which the follower approaches the cam, and it may be supplied

by a bar attached to the cam by a few bridge pieces at the back, as at B, fig. 149.

232. Or motion may be communicated in the two directions by a double cam, as at C, fig. 149, in which the piece that receives the reciprocating motion has two arms, the roller of one of which rests on one cam, and that of the other upon another cam which

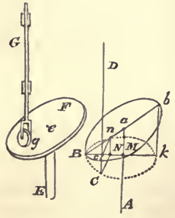
Fig. 149.



lies behind the first on the same axis, and the figure of which corresponds to that of the first in such a way that the arc mn between the points of contact is constant and equal to the distance between the rollers. Thus when the edge of one cam is retiring from its roller, that of the other is always advancing, and *vice versâ*.

233. In fig. 150, Ee is a revolving axis, Gg a bar capable of sliding in the direction of its own length, and having a friction roller at g; a flat circular plate F is fixed to the extremity of the axis, but not perpendicular to it; the bar Gg may be pressed into contact with the plate by a spring or weight. Now if the plate F were perpendicular to the axis, the rotation of the latter would communicate no motion to the bar, but the effect of the inclination is to communicate a reciprocating motion to the bar in the direction of its length, the quantity of which varies with the inclination of the plate to the axis; and if the plate be so attached to the axis as to admit of an adjustment of this inclination, a ready mode is obtained of adjusting the length of the excursion of the bar. This plate is termed a *swash-plate*; the law of its motion may be thus found.

Fig. 150.



Let Aa be the vertical axis of the swash-plate Bb, B its lowest point, and therefore BaA the angle of its inclination to the axis.

Let cD be the sliding bar, BCk the plane of rotation of the point B.

The motion therefore of BM from MC through the angle

BMC has moved the extremity c of the bar through the space cC. Draw CN and Nn perpendicular to BM, then will Nn be equal and parallel to Cc;

$$\therefore Cc = \frac{BN}{\tan BaA},$$

$$\text{also } BN = BM \,.\, \text{versin } BMC;$$

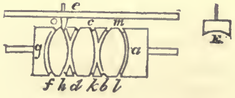
$$\therefore Cc = \frac{BM \,.\, \text{versin } BMC}{\tan BaA} = aM \text{ versin } BMC;$$

so that the motion of the bar is the same as that produced by a crank with an infinite link and a radius $= aM$.

234. If the path of the follower bar of a cam-plate be not parallel to the plane of rotation of the plate, then, as in Arts. 207, 208, a cone, a hyperboloid, or a cylinder, may be employed exactly in the manner there described; but as the velocity ratio of cam and bar is no longer constant, we are no longer confined to the curves there given. Instead of a groove a projecting rib acting between two rollers may be employed, either in these combinations, or in those of the Articles already referred to.

235. If the motion of the bar from one end to the other of its path be required to occupy more than a single revolution of the cam-axis, the double screw of fig. 151 may be employed.* This arrangement has a cylinder and sliding bar exactly corresponding to fig. 127, p. 156, but that on the circumference of the cylinder is traced two complete screws, one a right-hand screw beginning at a, and extending from a by $mbcdf$ to g; the other a left-hand screw which begins as a continuation of the right-hand screw at g, and extends from g by $ohkl$ to a, where it also joins the other screw; so that the two screws form one continuous path, winding round the cylinder from one end to the other and back again continuously. When the cylinder revolves, the piece e, which lies in this groove and is attached to the sliding bar, will be carried back and forwards, and each oscillation will correspond to as many revolutions of the cylinder as there are convolutions in the screw.

Fig. 151.



As the screw-grooves necessarily cross each other twice in each revolution, the piece e must be made long, so as to occupy a

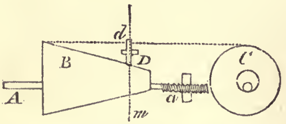
* Lanz and Betancourt, *Analytical Essay on Machines*, by whom it is attributed to M. Zureda.

considerable length of the groove, as shown sideways at *E*; thus it will be impossible for it to quit one screw for the other at the crossing places. Also, as the inclination of the screws to the bar are in opposite directions, it is necessary to attach the piece *e* to the bar by a pivot, as shown in the figure, so as to allow it to turn through a small arc as the inclination changes. If the bar be required to move more rapidly in one direction than the other, the one screw may be of greater pitch than the other, and similarly, by varying the inclination of the screw at different points, a varying velocity ratio may be obtained.

236. In the endless screw, fig. 143, p. 166, if the inclination of the threads be made to vary from right to left in each revolution, the wheel, when the screw revolves uniformly, will revolve with continual change of direction, advancing by long steps, and retreating by short steps alternately.

237. If a single series of changes in velocity and direction be required, and which are too numerous to be included within a single rotation of a cam-plate; then the *spiral-cam* or *solid-cam* fig. 152, may be employed. *Aa* is the axis of the cam, on one extremity *a* of which a common screw is cut, which works in a nut in the frame of the machine, so that as the axis revolves it also travels endlong. *B* is the solid cam. *D d* the roller of the follower whose path is *m d*, and which is kept in contact with the cam by a weight or spring as usual. As the axis revolves the follower *D* will receive from it a motion in its path, the velocity and direction of which will be governed by the figure of the cam, as in Art. 226. But by means of the screw at *a* the cam will be gradually carried endlong, so that at the completion of each revolution the same point of the cam will be no longer presented to the follower, as in fig. 147, in which the same cycle of changes is repeated in each revolution. On the contrary, the path traced by *D* upon the surface of *B* will be a spiral or screw of the same pitch as that at *a*, and by properly shaping the cam, we can thus provide a series of changes that will extend through as many revolutions of the cam as the length of the cam contains the pitch of the screw *a*.

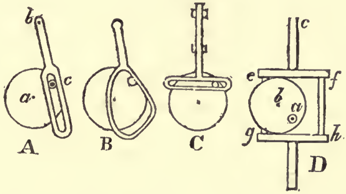
Fig. 152.



C is an end view of the cam. In the figure the transverse sections of the cam are represented as being everywhere circles of the same excentricity, but of continually increasing diameter. The effect of this would be to communicate to *D d* a reciprocating motion in its path, of which the trip in one direction would be shorter than that in the opposite direction.

238. In the previous examples the pin or roller has been given to the follower, and the curve to the driver, but either the contrary arrangement may be made, or curves may be given to both pieces, and the pin dispensed with. In fig. 153, *A* is an

Fig. 153.



arrangement by which an excentric revolving pin *c*, working in the slit of an arm whose center of motion is *b*, gives it a reciprocating motion. This is the same combination as that of Art. 219, but that in this case the pin *c*, by revolving always on the same side of the center *b*, produces reciprocation, while in fig. 142 the pin having the center *b* within its path produces a rotation in the follower.

The same formula will therefore apply in the two cases, making *R* less than *E* for reciprocation, and greater than *E* for rotation.

In *B*, fig. 153, it is shown how by giving a curved outline to the sides of the slit a different velocity ratio may be obtained. In *C* the slit is attached transversely to a bar which slides in the direction of its length; and in this case it is easy to see that the law of motion is the same as in a crank with an infinite link.

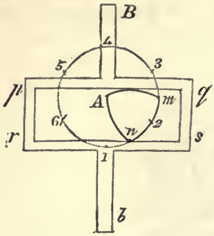
Again, by increasing the diameter of the pin of *C*, we obtain an excentric, as at *D*, where *a* is the center of motion, *b* the center of the excentric. The slit now appears in the form of two parallel bars *ef*, *gh*, attached at right angles to the sliding bar; but the combination is exactly equivalent to that of *C*, *ab* being the radial distance of the pin from the centre of motion.

239. Any curve, however, may be substituted for this excentric circle if it possess this property, that every pair of parallel and opposite tangents are at a constant distance equal to the distance of the bars *ef*, *gh*. For thus the bars will touch the cam in all positions.

For example, fig. 154 has such a curve, and is adapted for the production of intermitting motion.

A is the center of motion of the cam, the form of which is a kind of equilateral triangle *Anm*, whose sides are arcs of circles each described from the opposite angle, the center of motion being one angle. The follower is a bar *Bb*, and the cam acts upon two straight edges *pq*, *rs* fixed at right angles to the bar, and at a distance from each other equal to the radius of the arcs of which the cam consists; consequently the bars will be in contact with an angle and a side of the cam in every position, and the effect of its figure upon the motion is as follows.

Fig. 154.

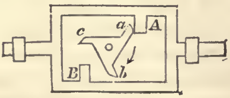


Let the circle described by its circumference be divided into six equal parts, as in the figure. Then following the point *m* round the circle in the direction of the numbers, it appears that from 1 to 2 no motion is given to the bar; from 2 to 3 the point *n* is in contact with *rs*, and the motion of the bar through that angle will therefore be the same as that by the pin and slit *C*, fig. 153, (*n* replacing the pin,) so that the bar begins to move gently and accelerates; when however *m* reaches 3 this action of *n* terminates abruptly, and *m* begins a similar action upon *pq*, by which the motion of the bar is now retarded, and gradually brought to rest when *m* reaches 4; from 4 to 5 the bar is entirely at rest, from 5 to 6 gradually accelerated, and from 6 to 1 gradually retarded. The motion of the bar is therefore nearly the same as that of the pin and slit of *C*, fig. 153, but with intervals of complete rest.*

ON ESCAPEMENTS.

240. We have now arrived at a class of combinations in which a revolving piece produces the reciprocation of its follower by acting alternately on *two different* pieces attached to it, instead of upon a *single* pin, roller, or other piece, as in the combinations we have just been considering. In fig. 155, *abc* is a revolving piece or driver which has three equal wipers or tappets, and the follower is a sliding bar or

Fig. 155.



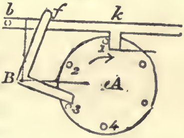
* This cam was employed by Fenton and Murray to give motion to the valves of their steam-engine.

frame provided with two teeth or *pallets A* and *B* on opposite sides of the center of motion of the driver.* The latter revolves in the direction of the arrow, and its wiper *a* is shown in the act of urging the follower to the right by pressing against the side of the tooth *A*. Revolving a little farther in the same direction, *a* will, by its circular motion, *escape* from *A*, and at the same instant *b* will encounter *B*, and will urge it in the opposite direction, until *b* in like manner escapes from it, when *c* will act upon *A*. In this way the rotation of *abc* will produce the reciprocation of the frame.

241. But the frame may also be made the driver; for if it be moved to the left, *A* will push *a* and make the wheel revolve in the contrary direction to the arrow, and *c* will pass *B*. When this has happened, let the frame be moved back again; then, after moving a short space, *B* will meet *c*, and move the wheel still farther round, until *b* has passed *A*, when the return of the frame will enable *A* to push *b*. Thus the reciprocation of the frame will cause the wheel to revolve in the opposite direction to that in which itself would produce the reciprocation of the frame. But when the frame is the driver, there will always be a short motion at the beginning of each oscillation, during which no motion will be given to the wheel.

242. Fig. 156 is another method by which a revolving wheel *A* gives a reciprocating motion to a sliding bar *bk*.†

Fig. 156.



The wheel has six pins projecting from its face. The pin 1 is shown in the act of driving the bar to the right by acting upon the tooth at *k*. The pin 3 also moves a bell-crank lever, the upper arm *f* of which travels in the contrary direction to the bar. At the moment the first pin 1 escapes from the side of *k* by its circular motion, the pin *b* will have reached the arm *f*, and this will, by acting upon *b*, push the bar in the reverse direction. Again, when the pin 3 escapes from the arm of the bell-crank, the pin 2 will begin to act upon *k*, exactly as the pin 1 had previously done, while the pin 4 will in like manner replace the pin 3, and raise the bell-crank. This action will go on continually, producing a short, alternate, but very abrupt and jerking, motion in the bar.

243. In these two contrivances the teeth of the wheel are made to act upon two distinct pieces attached to the reciprocating

* This contrivance is taken from De la Hire, *Traité de Mécanique*, prop. 114.

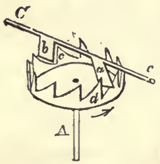
† From Thiout, *Traité d'Horlogerie*, t. i. p. 85.

piece, and so arranged that as one tooth *escapes* from the reciprocating piece, the other shall begin its action, whence this group of combinations receives the term of *escapements.* Escapements are most largely employed in clock and watch-work * to communicate the action of the moving power to the pendulum or balance; but when so employed they receive many delicate arrangements, which have for their object the distribution of the power in such a manner as will the least interfere with the due action of the pendulum. Such arrangements being governed by dynamical principles, are excluded from our present plan. Escapements are, however, employed in Pure Mechanism to convert rotation into reciprocation, as for example, in the bell of an alarum-clock. In the two forms already given the reciprocation is communicated to a sliding bar; in those which follow it is given to an axis, which may be either perpendicular or parallel to the revolving wheel.

244. When the axes are at right angles the *crown-wheel escapement*, fig. 157, is commonly employed.

A is the revolving axis, to the extremity of which is fixed a crown-wheel with large saw-shaped teeth; *Cc* the vibrating axis or *verge.* This carries the two pieces or *pallets* *b* and *a*, which are set in planes making an angle with each other to allow of the escaping action. When the wheel revolves in the direction of the arrow, one of its teeth pressing against the pallet *a* will turn the verge in the same direction, until, by the circular motion of *a*, its extremity is lifted so high that the crown-wheel tooth passes under it, or, in other words, this tooth escapes from the pallet. By the same motion of the verge the pallet *b* is brought into a vertical plane, and the tooth *c* now presses it in the contrary direction, and turns the verge back again until *c* escapes from under *b*, when a new tooth begins to act upon *a*, and so on. Thus the rotation of the crown-wheel produces the vibration of the verge, the crown-wheel being the driver.

Fig. 157.



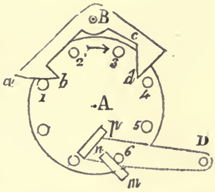
245. The *anchor-escapement*, fig. 158, is adapted to parallel axes.

The revolving wheel has pins 1, 2, 3, ... and turns in the direction of the arrow. The vibrating axis *B* has a two-armed piece carrying the pallets at its extremities, and resembling somewhat the form of an anchor; whence the name of the combination.

* *Vide* Chapter on *Trains* below.

The pin 1 is shown in the act of pressing against the pallet surface *ab*. Now as the normal of the point of contact passes on the same side of the two axes *A* and *B*, the pin, which acts upon the pallet by sliding contact, will tend to turn the pallet in the same direction as the wheel (Art. 31). *aB* will therefore revolve upwards, and the pin will slide towards *b* and there escape from the pallet. At this instant the pin 3 will reach the second pallet-surface *cd*, of which the normal passes between the two axes; the action of this pin will therefore turn the axis *B* in the reverse direction; the second pallet-arm *Bd* will rise, and the pin 3 escape from the pallet at *d*, when a new pin will act upon *ab* as before; and thus the vibration be maintained.

Fig. 158.



246. This escapement has received a great variety of forms. The teeth of the wheel are more commonly long and slender-pointed spur-teeth, of which many examples may be found in the treatises of Horology.

A very simple arrangement is shown at the lower part of fig. 158, in which *D* is the verge, *pn*, *nm*, the pallets; these are fixed against the face of an arm which lies parallel to the plane of the wheel, and so far from it as to clear the tops of the pins. The pin 6 is shown in the act of pressing the pallet *mn*, and therefore of depressing the arm; when this pin reaches *n* it escapes from *mn*, and begins to act upon *pn*, by which it raises the arm and escapes at the lower end of the second pallet, when 5 begins to touch and depress the first pallet *mn*, and so on.

247. In all these escapements the verge may be made the driver, and thus a reciprocating motion be made to produce a rotation. The wheel will always revolve the contrary way to that in which it turns when itself drives (Art. 241).

Thus in fig. 158, let the arm *Ba* be depressed, the pallet *ab* will then drive the pin 1 backwards (that is, contrary to the arrow), until pin 4 has passed under the point of *d*. If the arm *Bd* be now depressed *dc* will act upon pin 4, and continue the backward rotation until 2 has passed under the point *b*. *Ba* being again depressed will repeat the former action upon 2, and so on. But the rotation of the wheel will be necessarily intermittent, for at each change of direction in the pallet-arm the pallet must pass through a short space before it begins to touch the pin, above which it must have been previously raised to allow the same pin to pass under it. This will also be true of the crown-wheel escapement.

248. In fig. 159 the axes are parallel, but the action is more direct than in the common anchor-escapement.

Fig. 159.

As in the former contrivance, either the wheel or the pallets may drive. I will describe it under the latter action.*

C is the axis of the pallets *G* and *F*. If the pallet-arm be moved to the left, *F* will encounter *a*, and at the same moment *G* will have passed beyond *b*, therefore *F* continuing its motion will turn the wheel, in the direction of the arrow, so that when *G* returns it will enter the next space *cb*, and striking the tooth *b* will thus continue the rotation of the wheel, and so on.

* This contrivance, by Meynier, is to be found in the *Machines Approuvées*, 1724.

CHAPTER VIII.

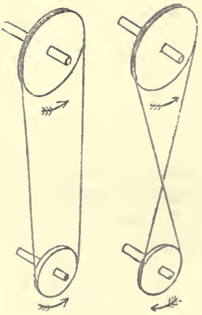
ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

Division C. COMMUNICATION OF MOTION BY WRAPPING CONNECTORS.

CLASS A { DIRECTIONAL RELATION AND VELOCITY RATIO CONSTANT.

249. Any two curves revolving in the same plane whose wrapping connector (*vide* p. 24) cuts the line of centers in a constant point, will preserve a constant angular velocity ratio. In practice, however, circles or rather cylinders only are employed, which are fixed to revolving axes, and manifestly possess the required property. To enable the rotation to proceed in the same direction indefinitely, the band which serves as a wrapping connector has its two ends joined so as to form an *endless band,* which embraces a portion of the circumference of each circle or *pully,* and is stretched sufficiently tight to enable it to adhere to and communicate its motion to the edge.

Fig. 160. Fig. 161.



The band may be *direct,* that is, with parallel sides, as in fig. 160, or it may be *crossed,* as in fig. 161. In the first case the axes or pullies will both revolve in the same direction, in the latter case in opposite directions.

250. Motion communicated in this manner is remarkably smooth, and free from noise and vibration, and on this account, as well as from the extreme simplicity of the method, it is always preferred to every other, unless the motions require to be conveyed in an exact ratio.

For, as the communication of motion between the wheels and band is entirely maintained by the frictional adhesion between them, it may happen that this may occasionally fail, and the band will partially slip along the surface of the pully. This, if not excessive, is an advantageous property of the contrivance, because it enables the machinery to give way when unusual obstructions or resistances are opposed to it, and so prevents breakage and accident. For example, if the pully to which the motion is communicated were to be suddenly stopped, the driving pully, instead of receiving the shock and transmitting it to the whole of the machinery in connection with it, would slip round until the friction of the band upon the two pullies had gradually destroyed its motion.

But if motion is to be transmitted in an exact ratio, such, for example, as is required in clock-work, where the hour-hand must perform one exact revolution while the minute-hand revolves exactly twelve times, bands are inapplicable; for, supposing it practicable to make the pullies in so precise a manner that their diameters should bear the exact proportion required, which it is not, this liability to slip would be fatal.

But in all that large class of machinery in which an exact ratio is not required to be maintained in the communication of rotation, endless bands are always employed, and are capable of transmitting very great forces.

251. Bands may be either *round* or *flat*, and the *materials* of which they are formed are various. The best but most expensive is *catgut*; but its durability and elasticity ought to recommend it in every case where it can be obtained of sufficient strength. It acquires by use a hard polished surface, and it may be procured of any size, from half an inch diameter to the thickness of a sewing needle.

The ends of a catgut band may either be united by splicing *

* The splice employed for catgut bands differs from that which is used to join the ends of ropes, and is formed as follows:—

Make a hole near one end of the gut with a sharp-pointed pricker, and pass the

Fig. 162.

Fig. 163.

other end through the hole. Make another hole through this other end, and similarly pass the first through it, as in fig. 162.

To secure the ends, make other holes in succession in one part of the gut, and then or by a peculiar kind of hook and eye which is made for that purpose. Both hook and eye have a screwed socket into which the ends of the gut are forced by twisting, having been previously dipped into a little rosin. The hook and eye may be warmed to keep the rosin fluid while the band is being forced in, and the ends of the band that come out through the socket may, for further security, be seared with a hot wire.

Hempen ropes are only used in coarse machinery, but in the cotton factories a kind of cord is prepared, of the cotton-waste, for endless bands, which is tolerably elastic and soft, and is peculiarly adapted for driving a great quantity of spindles. Also the soft plaited rope, termed patent sash-line, answers very well for these purposes. All these bands must have their ends neatly spliced together, so as to avoid as much as possible the increased diameter at the place of junction, because the periodic passage over the pullies of the lump or knot so formed gives rise to a series of jerks, that interfere with the smooth action of the mechanism.*

Common *iron chains* are also used, but only in very rough and slow-moving mechanism.

Flat leather belts appear to unite cheapness with utility in the highest degree, and are at any rate by far the most universally employed of all the kinds. This they owe partly to the superior convenience of the form of pully which they require, over that which is employed for round bands and chains. Belts vary in width from less than one inch up to fifteen inches, and their extremities may be united by buckles, but are best joined by simply overlapping the ends and stitching them together with strips of leather passed through a range of holes prepared for the purpose, or they may be glued or cemented at the ends; in which case, by carefully paring and adjusting the parts that overlap, they will be perfectly uniform in thickness throughout; but they thus lose the power of being adjusted in length, and must therefore be provided with stretching pullies.

pass the end of the other part backward and forward through them, gradually diminishing the thickness of the end by scraping and splitting after passing through each successive hole, fig. 163.

Perform the same operation for the other end, drawing it all tight as you proceed, then cut off the loose ends close and roll the splice between two boards to polish it and lay the fibres close.

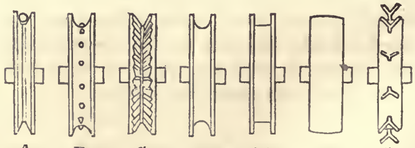
* Vide *Transactions of Society of Arts*, vol. xlix. part i. p. 99, for some practical directions by Mr. Varley, who says, 'I have used twine as much as gut for the small lathe bands. I splice the ends together and smooth it with a cement of wax, resin, and whiting in equal parts, and then wax the string and it runs as smooth as gut.'

Belts, on account of their silent and quiet action, are very much employed for machinery in towns, to avoid nuisance to neighbours. It appears also that the use of belts is greatly extended in the American factories.* In Great Britain the motion is conveyed from the first moving power, to the different buildings and apartments of a factory, by means of long shafts and toothed wheels; but in America, by large belts moving rapidly, of the breadth of 9, 12, or 15 inches, according to the force they have to exert.

Both flat belts and round bands have been manufactured of *caoutchouc* interwoven with fibrous substances, in various ways; and under peculiar management may be made to answer very well. But changes of temperature occasion great variations of length and elasticity in this material; nevertheless in this latter quality it is greatly superior to catgut, and, like that substance, it requires no stretching pullies, which must always be employed for rope-bands. Gutta percha makes excellent bands, both flat and round, and its ends are united by heat, so as to avoid knots at the junction. Belts are also made of *woollen felt*, and round bands are cut out of thick *leather*. In small machinery an endless band may even be cut out, in one piece, of a skin of leather, in the manner of the well known parcel bands of vulcanised caoutchouc, by cutting them in the form of flat narrow concentric rings, so as to avoid the necessity of joining the ends, and thus the jerks occasioned by the passage of the knot over the pully are entirely avoided.

252. *The form of the pully* upon which an endless band is to act is of importance, as the adhesion of the band is greatly

Fig. 164.



influenced thereby. Fig 164 exhibits the principal forms. Round bands of catgut, rope, or other material, or even chains, require an angular groove (as *A*), into which their own tension wedges them, and thereby enables them to grasp more firmly the edge of the pully.

* *Cotton Manufacture of America*, by J. Montgomery, 1840, p. 19.

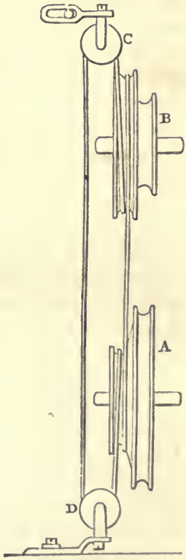
But when ropes or soft bands are used, the bottom of the groove is sometimes furnished with short sharp spikes (as *B*), or else its sides are cut into angular teeth (as *C*), which help to prevent the band from slipping, but at the same time are apt gradually to wear it out.

A pully for chains is sometimes formed by fixing Y-formed irons at equal distances in the circumference of a cylindrical disk, as at *G*, or straight irons driven into the circumference, with a diagonal inclination to the right and left alternately.

When the pully over which the band passes is used merely as a guide-pully (Art. 262), there is no need to provide against slipping, and the groove or *gorge* is made simply of a semicircular section as *D*, to keep the band in its place.

253. When great smoothness and lightness of motion is required in foot-lathes it is better to arrange the band so as to embrace the whole circumference of the wheels. This arrangement, employed by Mr. Varley, is shown in the figure, in which the supporting framework is omitted. *A* is the great foot-wheel, duly mounted in a frame as usual. *B* the pully of the mandril. The grooves of these wheels are not angular, but of a semicircular section, and the round band is arranged so as to embrace the entire circumference of each, and carried round the guide pullies *C* and *D* as shown in the figure. These pullies are mounted in carriages that admit of being clamped to the frame of the machine opposite to any of the pully grooves that are convenient, and the upper one can be raised or depressed so as to give proper tension to the band. By embracing the whole circumference less tension is required to enable the band to grasp the wheels without slipping, and the friction of the axles is diminished, not only for this reason, but because the tension of the band acts vertically in opposite directions upon its tangent points to the circumference instead of pressing the mandril downwards, as in the ordinary arrangement.*

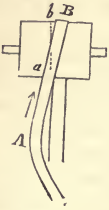
Fig. 165.



* A lever acting upon the upper guide pully may be employed to increase and diminish the tension of the band so as to admit of stopping and starting the mandril

254. An endless band of any kind is easily shifted during the motion to a new position on a cylindrical drum or pully, if the band be pressed in the required direction on its *advancing side*, that is, on the side which is travelling towards the pully; but the same pressure on the retiring side of the belt will produce no effect on its position.

Fig. 166.



For example, if the belt AB has been running over the drum in the position B, and this belt be drawn a little aside, as at A, those portions of the belt which now come successively into contact with the drum, as at a, will begin to touch it at a point to the left of the original position, and in one semi-revolution the whole of the belt in contact with the drum will thus have been laid on to it, point by point, in a new position ab, to the left of the original one B; but if the direction of the motion were from B to A, the portions of belt drawn aside are those which are quitting the drum, and consequently produce no effect on its position thereon.

Therefore, to maintain a belt in any required position on a cylindrical drum, it is only *necessary* that the advancing half of the belt should lie in the plane of rotation of that section of the drum upon which it is required to remain, but the retiring side of the belt may be diverted from the plane, if convenient, without affecting its position.

If the machinery be at rest it is very difficult to shift the position of a belt of this kind, on account of the adhesion of its surface; but by attending to the simple principle just explained it becomes very easy to shift the belt by merely turning the drum round, and pressing the advancing side of the belt at the same time. The same principle applies to round bands running on grooved pullies; if it be required to slip them out of the groove, the advancing side of the band must be pressed to one side, so as to make it lay itself over the ridge of the pully, when half a revolution will throw it completely off.

255. If an elastic flat belt run on a revolving sphere or cone, as in figs. 167 and 168, it will advance gradually towards the largest diameter of the sphere or to the base of the cone, instead of sliding towards the smaller diameter as might be expected at first sight.

This property was first indicated by Dr. Young ('Nat. Phil.' vol. ii. p. 183).

without stopping the motion of the foot-wheel. For the details of this device *vide* Mr. Varley's paper in the *Transactions of the Society of Arts*, vol. xlix. p. 96.

256. Let a flat elastic endless belt CcD be made to embrace a spherical pully S as in the figure, touching its surface at a point

Fig. 167.

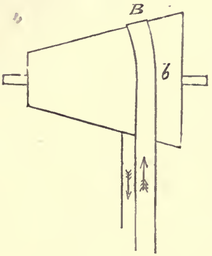
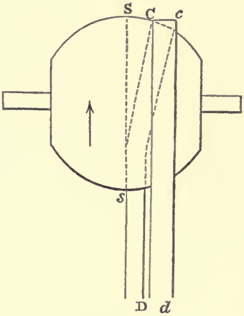


Fig. 168.



C, and passing from D downwards to embrace a cylindrical pully on an axis parallel to that of the sphere.

If the tension of the belt be small its bearing edge Cc will be parallel to the axis of the sphere, and consequently cannot coincide with its surface along its breadth Cc, but the belt will simply touch the upper half of the sphere along that edge CD which is nearest to the center. But if the tension of the belt be increased, the edge CD will be stretched in a greater degree than cd, so as to bring the whole under surface of the belt into coincidence with the spherical surface. But the consequence of this will be that the belt will be bent into the form shown by the dotted lines, by which the lower portions are thrown into a plane nearer to the larger diameter of the pully.

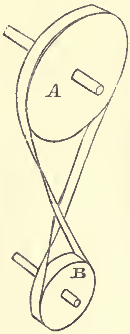
Now we have seen that if the advancing side of a belt be pressed in any direction it will shift its position on the pully accordingly. Hence (supposing DC in the figure to be the advancing side) the effect of this twisted form will be to cause the whole belt to take up a position nearer to the central diameter Ss of the pully. It will thus gradually travel until it places itself directly over the central diameter, where it will remain. For if it were moved either to the right or left of that position, it would immediately be brought back to it by the above described process.

Belt pullies are therefore always made in this spherical form, but containing only a narrow segment of the sphere as in F fig. 164 which may be described as a cylindrical pully a little swelled in the middle. This slight convexity is more effective in retaining the belt than if the pully had been furnished with edges as at E; and the form, besides its greater simplicity, enables the belt to be shifted easily off the pully. In fact, when a pully of the latter form E is employed, the belt will generally make its way to the top of one of the lateral disks, and remain there, or else be huddled up against one or other of them, but will never remain flat in the center of the rim, if there be the slightest difference of diameter between the two extremities of the cylinder.

It is only necessary to swell the edge of one of the pullies of a pair connected by a belt. The other may be a plain cylinder. This facilitates the removal or shifting of the belt.

257. In order to bring the belt into contact with as much as possible of the circumference of the pully, it is better to cross it (Art. 249) whenever the nature of the machinery will admit of so doing. Because when a flat belt is crossed, it necessarily follows that at the place where the two sides cross, the belts lie flat against each other; for since the belt at each extremity where it joins the pully is perpendicular to the plane of rotation, and it is twisted half round in its passage, it must be parallel to the plane of rotation half way between the pullies, where the two sides of the belt cross. Hence they pass with very little friction.

Fig. 169.



258. The band moves with the same velocity as the circumference of the pully with which it is in contact, and consequently the circumferences of the two pullies which it connects move with equal velocities;

$$\therefore \frac{A}{a} = \frac{r}{R},$$

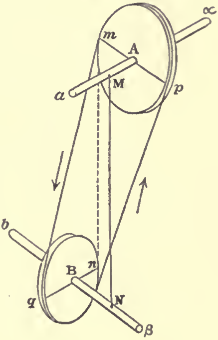
where A, a are the angular velocities, R, r the radii.

But practically when a thick belt is wrapped over a pully its inside surface is compressed and its outside surface extended, and the center, or nearly so, of the belt alone remains in the same state of tension as its straight sides, and therefore moves with the velocity of the sides. Hence the radius of the circle to whose circumference the velocity of the belt is imparted, virtually extends to the center of the belt, and half the thickness of the belt must be added to the radius of the pully, in computing the angular velocities.

Similarly, to find the acting radius of a pully with an angular groove, as at A, fig. 164, the distance of the center of the section of the band from the axis of the pully must be taken, and this in a given pully will be greater the thicker the band employed.

259. Let $a\alpha$, βb, be two shafts, neither parallel nor meeting in a point, and let it be required to connect them by a pair of pullies and an endless band. Recollecting that the advancing side of the band must remain in the plane of rotation of each pully, find the line MN, which is the common perpendicular to the shafts. Fix the pullies upon the respective shafts, so that a line mn parallel to MN shall be a common tangent to them, which is done by making the distance AM of the upper pully from the point M equal to the radius Bn of the lower pully, and *vice versâ*, $BN = Am$.

Fig. 170.



Arrange the belt in the manner shown in the figure, the arrows indicating the direction of motion; then the portion np which is advancing to the upper pully is plainly in the plane of rotation of that pully, and will therefore retain its position thereon, and similarly, the portion mq which is advancing to the lower pully, is also in the plane of rotation of the latter.

If, however, the motion be reversed the belt will immediately fall off the pullies, for in that case the portion pn will advance towards the lower pully in a plane pn, making an angle with that of the pully. The belt will therefore begin to shift itself towards N, and, by so doing, will be thrown off the pully, and a similar action will take place between the belt qm and the upper pully.

This property manifestly excludes this arrangement from all machinery that is required to revolve in either direction, or even to be occasionally turned backward in adjustments.

The appearance of this arrangement in practice is very curious; for the retiring belts being twisted at a very considerable angle from the planes of the pullies, at the moment of quitting them appear as if they were slipping off at every instant, which however they never do. The only fault is, that this violent twist at m and n is apt to wear out the leather, especially if the shafts are pretty close together. For which reason it may be better to employ guide pullies to conduct the belt from one wheel to the other, as in Art. 263.

If it be required to cross the belts, the arrangement for so doing will be found by drawing a figure similar to 170, but in which qm shall be the intersection of the planes of rotation, mn the descending belt, and a common tangent from p towards q the ascending belt.

260. When round bands are employed for shafts which are neither parallel nor meeting, the following arrangement may be used. In fig. 171 Aa, βb, are the two shafts drawn in perspective.

Fig. 171.

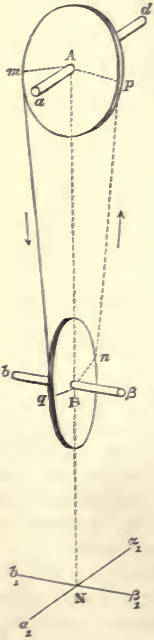
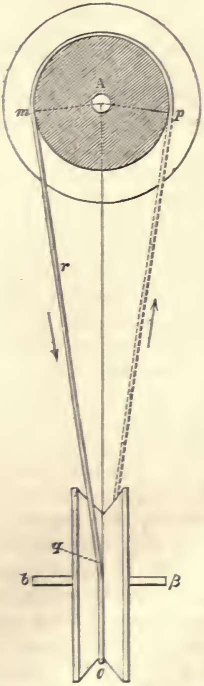


Fig. 172.



Let AB be their common perpendicular. The upper pully Amp must be fixed so that its central plane contains the common normal AB, and is necessarily perpendicular to its shaft Aa; similarly, the central plane Bnq of the lower pully must be perpendicular to its shaft $b\beta$ and contain the common normal. But the projections of the shafts on a plane perpendicular to this normal as at a_1a_1, $b_1\beta_1$ may make any angle, but must necessarily intersect at the seat of the normal.

The band passed over the upper half of the upper pully, must have its two sides conducted downwards and passed under the lower pully in the direction of the letters *mqnp*. The two straight portions are manifestly not in the same plane, and the portions of the circumference embraced by the band, are greater than semicircles, being included by two normals *Am, Ap* on the directions of the band. This is more distinctly shown in fig. 172, which is an elevation of the combination drawn on a plane parallel to that of the upper pully and to the common perpendicular *AB* of the axes.

Fig. 173.

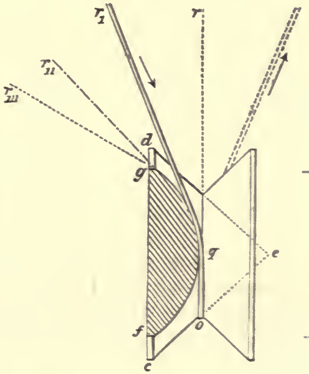
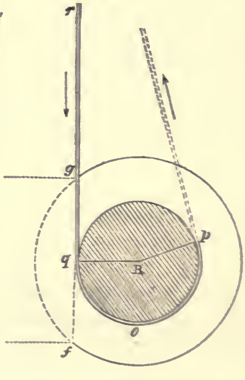


Fig. 174.



261. The exact mode in which the band embraces the pullies is shown in figs. 172, 173, and 174. The first is an elevation on a plane parallel to the common normal of the shafts and to the lower axis $b\beta$, but perpendicular to the upper axis *A*. Fig. 173 is an elevation of the pully on a plane, parallel to the direction of the advancing band *rq*; fig. 174 a section through the common normal, and therefore through the bottom of the gorge.

The pully is composed of two similar frusta of equal cones, as *edc*, set in opposite contact so as to form the groove of the pully.

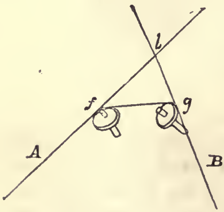
Now *rq*, the advancing band, is by its tension retained in a plane *rqf* which cuts the cone parallel to its axis in the curve *gqf*, which is an arc of an hyperbola whose vertex is *q*.

Assuming the combination to be at rest, and the end of a flexible cord kept in contact at n, and then passed under the pully from n to o and upwards by q and g to r, it will plainly embrace the groove until it arrives at the normal q, figs. 173 and 174. From q the band, which is confined by its tension to the plane rqf of which Bq is the normal, may be moved to any position in that plane which is tangent to the hyperbola gq.

Now it has been shown above that if a cord running towards a pully is drawn aside from the normal plane of the axis so far as to come into contact with the outer edge of the groove as at gr_{111} it will be dragged onwards and thrown off the pully. But so long as it is within the edge so as to be in contingence with the hyperbolic section as at gr_1 it will remain in the groove. Draw therefore gr_{11} in the plane of the section and tangent to it at the point g of the base. Evidently any direction within the angle formed by the lines $r_{11}q$ and rq will be retained in the groove. But if within the lines $r_{11}g$ and $r_{111}g$ will be thrown off.

By the above arrangement the axes may revolve in either direction without throwing off the band. Also, the relative rotative directions of the axes may be changed, for supposing the upper wheel Ap to revolve as shown by the arrows, the side pn of the band may be shifted so as to pass from p to q and similarly the side mq transferred to the position mn. This will evidently transfer the upward motion of the circumference of the lower wheel from n to q and the downward from q to n.

Fig. 175.



262. Pullies are sometimes employed for the purpose of altering the course or path of a band, in which case they are termed *guide pullies*. Their position and number may be determined in the following manner:

A band moving in the line Ab is required to have its path diverted into the direction bB by guide pullies.

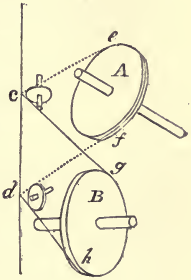
If these lines meet in the point b, one pully is sufficient; the axis of which must be placed perpendicularly to the plane which contains the two lines Ab, bB, and its mean diameter adjusted so that it may touch these lines. If this diameter be too great for convenience, or the point of intersection b too remote, or if the lines do not meet in a point, then two pullies are required, whose positions are thus determined.

Draw a third line fg, meeting the two former lines in any convenient points f and g respectively, and let this line be the path of the band in its passage from one line of direction to the other. Place, as before, one guide pully at the intersection *f*, and the other at the intersection *g*, the axes of these pullies being respectively perpendicular to the plane that contains the two directions of the band.*

263. Let *A*, *B* be two pullies whose axes are neither parallel nor meeting in direction, as in Art. 259, and let the line *cd* be the intersection of the two planes of these pullies.

In this line assume any two convenient points *c* and *d*; and in the plane of *A* draw *ce*, *df*, tangents to the opposite sides of this pully; also in the plane of *B* draw *cg*, *dh*, similarly tangents to the pully *B*.

Fig. 176.



This process gives the path of an endless band *e c g h d f*, in which it may be retained by a guide pully at *c* in the plane *e c g*, and another at *d* in the plane *f d h*. In this band both the retiring and advancing sides lie in the planes of each pully. The pullies will therefore turn in either direction at pleasure, and the band is not liable to the twisting wear already deprecated in the arrangement of fig. 170.

In other cases that may present themselves, the position and least number of the requisite guide pullies may be determined by similar methods.†

264. If the bands are not made of elastic substances they require *stretching pullies*; that is, pullies resembling guide pullies, whose axes can be shifted in position, so as to increase the tension of the band as required; or else their axes are mounted in frames so that a weight or spring may act upon them, to retain the band in the proper state of tension; but as the operation of these contrivances involve considerations of force, they do not fall under the plan of this portion of the present work. Neither do certain arrangements by which the quantity of circumference embraced

* Poncelet, *Mec. Ind.* part iii. art. 24.

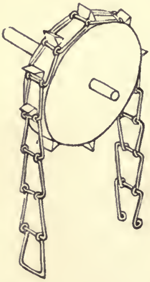
† The rigging of ships and machinery for hoisting loads present examples of guide pullies in combinations termed blocks, because they are commonly contained in the parallel mortises of a block of wood. But such pulley blocks when employed in machinery are composed of parallel iron or brass plates. The pully or pullies of this class are always less in diameter than that of the mortise, the projecting edges of which are required to prevent the rope from being dragged off the pully. More particulars of this class of mechanism will be found under the head of Reduplication.

by the bands are increased or multiplied, for the purpose of improving the adhesion.*

265. We have seen that a common iron-chain with oval links may be employed as an endless band; using the form of groove *A*, fig. 164. If the chain be formed with care, and the wheels between which it works be provided with teeth, the spaces between which are accurately adapted to receive the successive links, then the chain will take a secure hold of the circumference of each wheel; and its action upon these teeth will resemble that of one toothed wheel upon another, or rather of a rack upon a toothed wheel, the successive links falling upon and quitting the teeth without shocks or vibration, so that the motion of one toothed circumference will be conveyed to the other without loss from slipping. A chain of this kind is termed a *geering chain*, and various forms have been given to its links to ensure smoothness of action. But these chains are expensive and troublesome, and are not much in use, as, generally speaking, the communication of motion to a distance can be as completely effected by a long shaft with bevil-wheels at each end; and the geering chain, in all its forms, is liable to stretch, by which the spacing or pitch of its links is increased, so that they no longer fit the teeth of the wheels.

Fig. 177 shows the geering chain which was proposed by the celebrated Vaucanson, about 1750. The links of the chain are made of iron-wire and adapted to lay hold of the teeth of a wheel in the manner shown by the figure.†

Fig. 177.



Geering chains had been, however, employed long before this period, as for example, by Ramelli in 1588; ‡ and the very chain of Vaucanson is represented by Agricola, in 1546, as an endless chain, to carry buckets in a machine for raising water from a mine.

Fig. 178 is another form, from Hachette, in which the links are made of plates rivetted together, somewhat after the manner of a watch-chain; and 179 is a third modification,§ in which a plate-chain is also employed; but the teeth of the wheel are much better disposed for grasping the successive links. Nevertheless, in all these cases, when the rivets

* *Vide* Chapter on Friction below.

† *Vide Encyc. Méthod.* 'Manufactures,' tom. ii. p. 132.

‡ *Vide* his Figs. xxxix. and xciii.

§ Used in Morton's patent slip.

enlarge the holes by wearing, the pitch of the chain is increased, and each link enters its receptacle on the wheel with a jerk, producing vibration and accelerated deterioration.

Fig. 178.

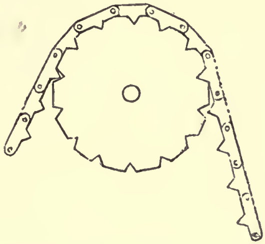
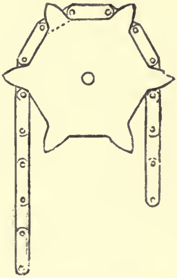


Fig. 179.



266. If the axes be required to make only a limited number of rotations in each direction, the slipping of the band may be entirely prevented by fixing each end of it to one of the pullies or rollers, and allowing it to coil over them as many times as may be required; as in fig. 180, where rotation is conveyed from one roller *A* to the other *B* by the cord *a*, one end of which is fastened to the surface of *A*, and the other end to that of *B*. To enable the motion to be conveyed in both directions a similar cord *b* may be coiled in the opposite direction round each roller, so that while *b* coils itself round *A*, *a* will uncoil itself, and *vice versâ*.

Fig. 180.

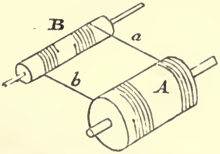
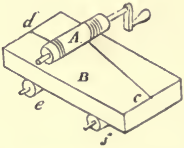


Fig. 181.



The carriage *B*, fig. 181, runs back and forwards upon the rollers *f*, *e*, and derives its motion from the roller or barrel *A*, which is mounted on an axis above it. A cord *c* is tied to one end of *B*, and another cord *d* to the other end; these cords are passed as many times round the roller as is necessary, in opposite directions, and their ends fastened to its surface. When the roller revolves the carriage will travel along its path, preserving a constant velocity ratio, provided the circumference of the roller nearly touch the line *dc*. Otherwise the variation of the angle *Acd*, during the motion of the carriage, will cause the velocity ratio to change.* If, however, pullies be fixed to the frame of the machine beyond *d* and *c*, and the cords be carried from the barrel over these pullies and then brought back again to *d* and *c*, the axis *A* may be fixed at any required height above *B*. Either piece may be the driver.

Sometimes a single line is employed, which being fastened at *d* is coiled three or four times round the roller, and then carried on to *c*; the coiling is sufficient to enable the cord to lay hold of the roller in most cases, as for example, in the common drill and bow.

267. But the constancy of the ratio is interfered with in both these contrivances, by the varying obliquity of the straight parts of the cords which connect the pieces, as well as by the tendency to heap up the successive coils in layers upon each other, thereby increasing the effective diameter of the rollers. The latter defect is remedied by cutting a screw upon the surface of each roller, which guides the cord in equidistant coils as it rolls itself upon the cylinder.

Thus, fig. 182, let *A* give motion to *B* by a cord *cd*, in the manner already shown in fig. 180, but let screws be cut upon the surface of the rollers; then during the motion of *A* the extremity *c* of the straight portion of the cord will be gradually carried to the right as it is wound up, and *vice versâ*; and this motion will be constantly proportional to the rotation, and at the rate of one pitch of the screw to each complete turn of the cylinder.

Fig. 182.

To cause the straight portion *cd* to move parallel to itself, the screw cut upon *B* must be of such a pitch that the endlong motion of *d* may be the same as that of *c*. Now since the velocity of the surfaces of the two cylinders are equal, and every revolution of either screw carries the cord endlong through the space of one pitch, let $m \times$ circumferences of $A = n \times$ circumferences of B, and let C, c be the respective pitches of their screws; R, r their radii, then we must have $mC = nc$,

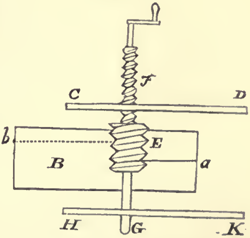
$$\text{or } \frac{C}{c} = \frac{R}{r}.$$

* For the line *Ac* acts as a link jointed at *c*, and therefore;
vel. of *Ac* : vel. of *B* :: cos *A c d* : 1. (Art. 30. Cor. 6.)

268. In the combination of fig. 181, the screw roller will prevent the irregular heaping up of the cord on the barrel, but will not correct the varying obliquity of the cord. This may be got rid of thus.

Let *B*, fig. 183, be the sliding carriage, *CD*, *HK* the sides of the frame which supports the roller, *E* the roller formed into a screw. This roller has a screw *F* cut on its axis, of the same pitch as that of *E*, and passing through a nut in the frame *CD*; the other extremity of the roller is supported by a long plain axis *G*, passing through a hole in the frame *HK*; the cord being tied at *b* to the carriage, and at the other end to the screw-barrel *E*; it follows, that when the latter is turned round, it will travel at the same time endlong by means of the screw and nut *F*, exactly at the same rate, but in the opposite direction, as the end of the cord is carried along the barrel by its coiling; consequently the one motion exactly corrects the other, and the cord *b* will always remain parallel to the path of the slide B.*

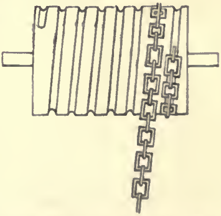
Fig. 183.



A similar and contrary cord being employed to connect the other end of the slide with the barrel, will enable the roller to move the slide in either direction.

269. A well made chain of the common form, with oval or square links, will coil itself with great regularity upon a revolving barrel, if a spiral groove be formed upon the surface, of a width just sufficient to receive the thickness of the links. As shown in fig. 184, the links will alternately place themselves edgewise in the groove and flat upon the surface of the barrel.

Fig. 184.



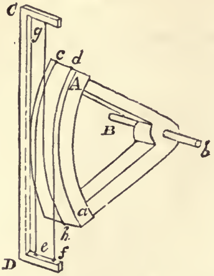
270. When the rotating piece is required to move only through a fraction of a revolution, the combination is made more simple.

Thus let *A*, Fig. 185 represent a piece or quadrant, whose axis is *B*, *b*, and whose edge is made concentric to it, and let *CD* be the sliding piece, represented as an open frame for clearness only, but supposed to be guided so as to move in either direction along the line *CD* produced. If

* From a machine by Mr. Holtzapfel.

cords or chains be attached at *c*, *d*, to the quadrant and at *e*,

Fig. 185.



f, to the sliding frame; and a third intermediate cord be attached contrariwise to the quadrant at *h* and the frame at *g*, then either the motion of the quadrant or the frame will communicate motion to the other in a constant ratio, and in either direction at pleasure. Bands of flexible metal, e.g. of watch-spring, may be employed in cases where the flexure is small and of limited extent, as in this figure.

CHAPTER IX.

ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

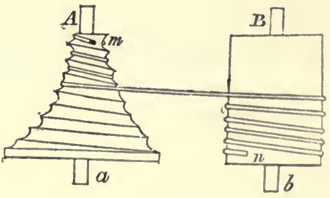
DIVISION C. COMMUNICATION OF MOTION BY WRAPPING CONNECTORS.

CLASS B. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT. VELOCITY RATIO VARYING.

271. IF the varied motion is required to be limited to a small arc, the combination assumes the form of fig. 5 (page 16), but if the limits of the varied motion extend to more than a complete revolution a spiral groove is employed, as in the *fusee* of a watch, represented in fig. 186.

Aa, *Bb* are parallel axes, one of which carries a solid pully, or fusee, as it is termed, upon whose surface is formed a spiral groove, extending in many convolutions from one end to the other. The axis *Bb* carries a plain cylinder; a band, a cord, or chain, is fastened as at *m* to one end of the fusee, and coiled round it, following the course of the spiral; the other end of the cord is fixed to the barrel at *n*. If the cord be kept tight by the action of a weight or spring upon one of the axes, the rotation of the other axis will communicate by means of the cord a rotation to the first axis, the velocity ratio of which will vary inversely as the perpendiculars from the axes upon the direction of the cord. And the motion may be continued through as many revolutions as there are convolutions in the spiral.

Fig. 186.



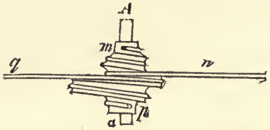
In like manner a pair of fusees may be employed instead of a fusee and cylinder.

272. If the fusee be required to communicate motion in both directions without the use of the re-acting weight or spring, a double cord will answer the purpose. Thus let it be required to employ the fusee in the manner of the barrel *A*, fig. 181 (p. 195), to give motion to a carriage *B*. The fusee will enable us to obtain a varying velocity ratio between *A* and *B*. In fig. 187 *Aa* is the axis of the fusee, which in this example is made to diminish at both ends. One cord is fastened at *m*, and being coiled round the fusee is carried away at *n*, and attached to the carriage, as at *c*, fig 181. The other cord is fixed at *p* to the fusee, and being coiled in the opposite direction, leaves the fusee at the same point at which the first cord is carried off. But this cord is taken in the opposite direction, as at *q*, and fixed to the end *d* (fig. 181) of the carriage (or, which is better, both cords are carried over pullies and brought back to the carriage).

When the axis *Aa* revolves, one cord will unwrap itself from the fusee, while the other wraps upon it, and *vice versâ*. But they will always leave its surface in opposite directions at the same point.

Since the fusee (fig. 187) is small at each end and large in the middle, it will, if turned with a uniform angular velocity, have

Fig. 187.



the effect of gradually accelerating the motion of the carriage, till it has reached the middle of its path, and then of gradually retarding it to the end. It is employed in this manner in the self-acting mule of Mr. Roberts, of Manchester.

CHAPTER X.

ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

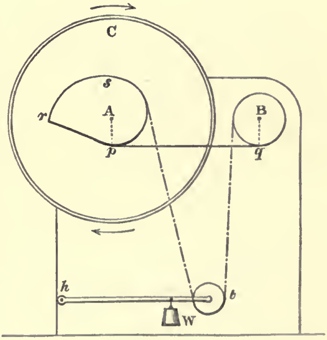
DIVISION C. COMMUNICATION OF MOTION BY WRAPPING CONNECTORS.

CLASS C. VARYING VELOCITY RATIO AND CONSTANT OR VARYING DIRECTIONAL RELATION.

273. THIS is obtained by employing circular or curvilinear pullies revolving about excentric centers. The diagrams which follow represent my apparatus by which these transformations of motion can be effected, and exhibited in the lecture room.

C is a plain circular *disk* fixed to the end of an axis *A*, which is mounted in a socket carried by a vertical board or frame, so as to leave the face of the disk perfectly free. A handle at the hinder end of the axis enables it to be rotated at pleasure.

Fig. 188.

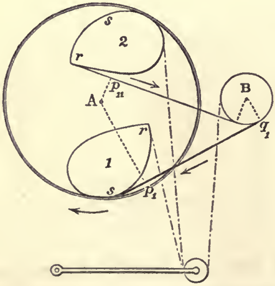


prs is a smaller disk of curvilinear outline, having an angular groove sunk round its circumference in the manner of a pully. This, from its form, may be termed a *cam pully*. A simple thumb-screw at the back is arranged so as to enable this cam pully to be secured against the face of the disk in any required position as shown in the figures. In fig. 188 the center of rotation of the disk is contained within the circumference of the cam pully. In figure 189 the cam pully is fixed to the disc in a position beyond the center. In fig. 190 the center of rotation of the disc touches the circumference of the cam pully. *B* is a plain circular pully which receives the varied motion from the uniformly rotating cam pully, which is the *driver* of the combination, as B is the *follower.*

This pully receives the varying motion from the constant uniform rotation of the cam pully by means of an endless band, $pqtsr$, and is therefore the follower pully. The disk C being supposed to revolve clockwise, the portion of band pq will pull the lower circumference of B, and the velocity ratio will be equal to $\frac{Ap}{Bq}$, where Ap and Bq are the respective perpendiculars upon the direction of the band, which is always a common tangent to the cam pully and the follower pully B. But as the former turns, the length of Ap varies, while that of Bq is constant. It is therefore impossible to employ an ordinary endless band. The band is therefore carried over the upper parts of the two pullies, and brought down as shown by the dotted lines, and carried under a pully attached to the end of an arm, ht, which swings on a pin at h, and carries a weight W to stretch the band.

It is apparent, therefore, that the position of the dotted part of the band has no influence on the velocity ratio, and also that the perpendiculars Ap, Bq, being always in the same direction, although varying in length, the *directional relation is constant.* In this figure the direction of the perpendiculars are both downwards on the band. But by carrying the band tangentially over A and B instead of under, the perpendiculars would be both upwards, and the part pq would become the loop over t.

Fig. 189.



Otherwise the band pq might pass under A and over B, or *vice versâ.* But whichever course has been given to the band, *the directional relation remains constant.*

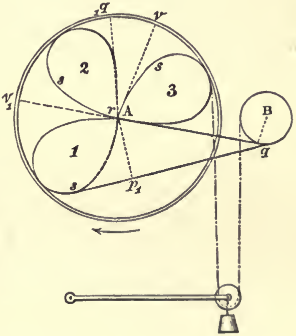
274. In fig. 189 the cam pully is fixed to the disk in a position entirely beyond the center of rotation A. Hence in each revolution the entire cam pully is carried over and under the center, as shown in the positions 1 and 2. In the first the whole cam pully is travelling to the left, and the band p_1q_1 pulling the follower pully B clockwise with velocity ratio $=\frac{Ap_1}{Bq_1}$. But as the cam pully

is carried upwards, the perpendicular Ap_1 diminishes, and when it has risen so far that the common tangent of the circle B and the pully passes through A, Ap_1 vanishes for an instant, and the velocity ratio$=0$. But the motion of the cam pully to 2 now obtains a perpendicular Ap_{11} in the opposite direction, which gives out cord to the follower Bq. The cord, however, is kept tight by the stretching pully below, and thus the motion produced is, that each revolution of the great disk communicates one back and forward motion to the follower Bq.. In this case, therefore, the velocity ratio and directional relation both vary.

275. In fig. 190, three positions of the cam are shown, numbered 1, 2, 3. The angle of the salient point is measured by that of its tangents qr, rv, and the cam is so fixed to the disk that the point r coincides with the center of rotation of the disk.

Beginning with position 1, the velocity ratio is $\frac{Ap_1}{Bq}$. As the motion of the disk goes on, the cam turns upon its salient point r, and the perpendicular rp_1 diminishes, and finally vanishes, when the common tangent qs of the cam and follower is brought into coincidence with qr, and the cam into the position 2, in which the salient tangents are rv_1, rq_1. The cam now turns on the center of the disk r, and therefore gives out no cord to B, until it reaches the position 3, where the tangent rq of the salient angle qrv coincides with the direction of the cord. The cam proceeding from the position 3 towards 1 will now press with its lower edge upon rq, and communicate motion to the follower, gradually increasing as the common tangent of the cam and follower is removed from the diametral direction Aq, and the angle Aqp_1 increased.

Fig. 190.

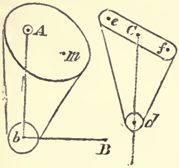


The motion in one revolution of the disk of this arrangement has an interval of perfect rest of the follower, succeeded by an oscillation, which begins gradually, reaches its maximum, and ends gradually. The angle of rest is measured by the passage of the tangent Aq_1 to the position Aq. Let $\theta=$the angle of salience and $\phi=$angle of rest $\therefore$ $\phi=\pi-\theta$.

By this adjustment, therefore, we have directional relation constant, with intermission of motion.

276. In the above figures it is evident that by the rotation of the curvilinear pully *A* the stretching pully *D* receives a varied motion upwards and downwards. If, therefore, this pully be attached to a sliding piece or to an oscillating arm, a varied or intermittent motion will be communicated to this piece or arm by the rotation of the curvilinear pully.

Fig. 191.



For example, if the pully be an excentric circle whose center is *m*, *mb* will be constant, and the motion the same as that produced by a crank with radius *Am* and link *bm*.

If the pully have straight parallel sides and be terminated by semicircles whose centers are *e* and *f*, and radii the same as that of the small pully *d*; and if *C* the center of motion of the large pully be midway between *e* and *f*, then *Cd* will be the radius of the ellipse whose foci are *e* and *f*, and center the center of motion of the pully; so that the vertical sliding motion of *d* will be determined by the equation of this ellipse round its center.

CHAPTER XI.

ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

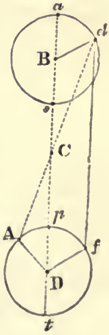
Division D. COMMUNICATION OF MOTION BY LINK-WORK.

CLASS A. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION CONSTANT. VELOCITY RATIO CONSTANT.

277. We have seen that when two arms revolving in the same plane about fixed centers are connected by a link (Art. 30), their angular velocities are inversely as the segments into which the link divides the line of centers. This relation is constantly changing, as the arms revolve, unless the point of intersection T (fig. 6), can be thrown to an infinite distance, by making PQ parallel to AB, in all positions, which can only be effected by making the arms equal, and the link equal in length to the distance between the centers. In this case the angular velocities will become equal, and their ratio consequently constant.

278. This produces the arrangement of fig. 192. D, B are centers of motion, $Bd=Df$ the arms, df ($=BD$) the link. If Bd be carried round the circle, $BdfD$ will always be a parallelogram, and consequently the angular distances of Bd and Df from the line of centers the same, and their angular velocity the same.

Fig. 192.



But as in any given position of one of the arms Bd, there are two possible corresponding positions of the arm Df, found by describing with center d, and radius df, an arc which will necessarily cut the circular path of f round D in two points f and A (Fig. 8, p. 19); therefore AD is also a position of the arm corresponding to Bd, in which the link dA intersects the line of centers in a point C; and if Bd be moved, the point C will shift its place, and consequently the angular velocity of AD will not preserve a constant ratio to that of Bd.

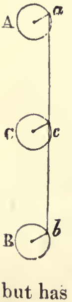
It appears, then, that this system is capable of two arrangements, one in which the angular velocity ratio is constant, and the other in which it is variable, according as the link is placed parallel to the line of centers, or across it.

But if the motion of this system in either state be followed round the circle, it will be found that when the extremity *d* of the arm *Bd* comes to the line of centers, either above or below, at *a* or *s*, the extremity of the other arm will also coincide with that line, since the link is equal to *BD*, and therefore to *ap* or *st*, and we have two simultaneous dead points. In these two phases of its motion the two positions *fd*, *Ad* of the link coincide, and at starting from either of these phases, the link has the choice of the two positions. If, for example, the arms be at *Ba* and *Dp*, then as *a* moves towards *d*, *p* may either move towards *f*, in which case the link will remain parallel to *BD*, until the semicircle is completed, or else *p* may move towards *A*, and then the link will lie across *BD*, until the semicircle is completed by *d* coming to *s*, when a new choice is possible. But in any given position of *Bd* intermediate between *Ba* and *Bs*, it is impossible to shift the link from one position to the other without bending it.

279. When this contrivance is employed to communicate a constant velocity ratio, some provision must be made to prevent the link from shifting out of the parallel position into the cross position, when the arms reach the dead points.

There are three ways of passing the link parallel to itself across the line of centers. First, by introducing a third arm, as at *c*, of the same length as the others, with its center placed on the line of centers, and its extremity jointed to the link, so as to divide the latter in the same proportion as the line of centers is divided by the center of the new arm. This new arm may be placed either between or beyond the others, and plainly renders any position of the link, except that of parallelism to the line of centers, impossible. It is not even necessary that the centers of the three equal arms shall lie in one line, for if the three joint-holes, *a*, *b*, *c*, of the link, be the points of an equal and similarly placed triangle to that formed by the three centers of motion, the arms will all revolve alike.

Fig. 193.



280. The second way requires only two axes of motion, but has two sets of arms.

Aa, *Bb*, fig. 194, are the two parallel axes. At one end of each are fixed the equal arms *AP*, *BQ*, connected as before by a link $PQ = AB$; at the other end of each are fixed arms ap, bq, also connected by a link, $pq = ab$.

Now since the separate effect of each of these systems is to produce equal rotation in the axes, it is plain that the action of the second will conspire with that of the first to produce this effect, whatever be the angle which AP makes with ap. Let ap then be set at right angles, or nearly so, to AP; therefore when either system arrives at the dead points, the other will be half way between them, and by communicating at that moment the equal rotation to the axes, will thus carry the link of the former system over the dead points, without allowing it the choice of the second set of positions; which second set of positions is besides rendered geometrically impossible by this combination of the two sets of arms.*

Fig. 194.

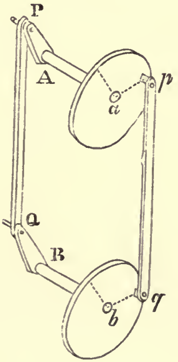
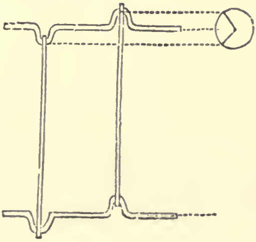


Fig. 195.



281. The form of the piece to which the joint-pin is fixed is indifferent; thus (fig. 194) the pin P is carried by an arm AP, and the pin p by a disk; but the motion produced by each is precisely the same; the effective length of the arm being in every case measured in the plane of rotation in a right line from the center of the pin to the center of motion of the piece which carries it, whatever be the form given to the latter.

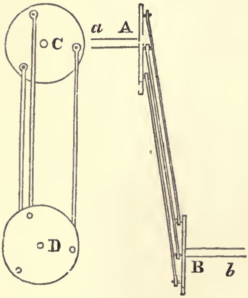
* This contrivance is universally employed to connect the axes of locomotive engines so as to enable the cranked axle that is driven by the engine to communicate its rotation to the other axes.

The links are placed outside the wheels, one on each side, as may be seen by referring to any treatise on the steam-engine, or examining the locomotives themselves on the railroads.

However, if either axis be carried across the plane of motion of the link, the latter will strike against it, and thus prevent the completion of a single revolution. If the axes be required to revolve continually in the same direction, either the piece which carries the pin must be fixed to the extremity of the axis, as in fig. 194, or else the axis must be bent into a loop or *crank* as it is termed, as in fig. 195, by which the axis is also removed from the plane of rotation of the link; but the axis may thus be extended indefinitely on either side.

282. The third method of passing the links over the dead points consists, like the latter, in employing two or more sets of arms and links, so disposed as that only one set shall be passing the dead point at the same moment. But in this method, fig. 196, the axes *Aa*, *Bb* are parallel but not opposite, and a disk of any convenient form, as *C*, *D*, being attached to the free end of each, pins are fixed in the faces of the disks at equal distances from the centers of motion, and at equal angular distances from each other respectively, and links each equal to the distance of the centers are jointed to them in order, as shown in the figure.

Fig. 196.



The planes of rotation of these disks are removed from each other by a distance sufficient to throw the connecting links into a slightly oblique position, which enables them each to clear the others, during the rotation, by passing alternately above and below them.

The number of the links is indifferent. Two are sufficient, as in the former case, and the radii of their pins must be nearly at right angles; but if three or more be employed, the pins may be at equal angular distances round the circle; and it is hardly necessary to add, that in determining the length of the links allowance must be made for the oblique position into which they are thrown by the nature of the contrivance.*

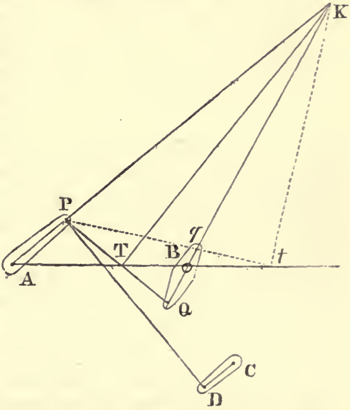
283. It appears (Art. 277), that by link-work, rotation in a constant velocity ratio can only be communicated between two axes when they are parallel, move in the same direction, and

* By T. Bœhm, of Bavaria, communicated to Soc. Arts, vol. l. p. 83.

revolve in equal times. If, however, only a motion through a small angle is required, it may be communicated with an approximately constant velocity ratio, whatever be the magnitude of that ratio, the relative position of the axes, or the directional relation.

For if the axes be parallel, it is shown in Art. 277, that if a pair of arms *AP, BQ*, fig. 197, be connected by a link *PQ*, and placed in such a position that the intersection *T* of the link and line of centers shall coincide with the perpendicular *KT* upon the link from the intersection of the arms produced, then will the angular velocity be momentarily constant, and will be sufficiently near to constancy, if the motion of the links be confined to a small angle on each side of the mean position.

Fig. 197.



Now the arms *AP, BQ* will revolve in opposite directions; but if they be required to revolve in the same direction, the centers of motion must lie on the same side of the link. *AP, Bq,* are a pair of arms connected by a link *Pq,* which will fulfil this latter condition, and *Kt* the corresponding perpendicular upon the link produced, and intersecting it in *t* in the line of centers produced.

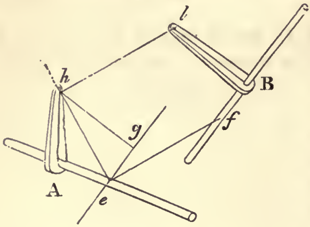
The angular velocities of the arms have been shown to be inversely as the segments *AT, BT,* or *At, Bt.*

The simplest mode of arranging the proportions is to make the link perpendicular to the arms in the mean position, as shown in *AP, CD*; *PD* being the link; and in this case, the angular velocities are inversely as the length of the arms themselves, (Art. 175).

284. If the axes be not parallel, let *Ae, Bf* (fig. 198), be the axes whose directions do not meet, find their common perpendicular *ef*, and draw *eg* parallel to *fB*. In the plane *Aeg* draw *eh* dividing the angle *Aeg* into two, *Aeh, heg*; whose sines are inversely as the angular velocities of the axes *Ae, Bf* respectively (Art. 41). From any point *h* drop perpendiculars *hA, hg,*

upon *Ae* and *eg*; make *fB* equal to *eg*, draw *Bl* equal and parallel to *gh*, and join *hl*; which being parallel to *ef*, is plainly perpendicular both to *Ah* and to *Bl*.

Fig. 198.



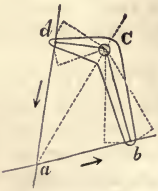
If *Ah*, *Bl* be arms, and *hl* the link, then by the construction the link is perpendicular to the arms; and if the angular motion be small and the figure represent the mean position, the angular velocity ratio of the axes will not differ sensibly from that which would be communicated if the axes were parallel, and the arms and link in one plane, and will therefore be nearly constant, and equal to the inverse ratio of the length of the arms.

If the axes be required to revolve with the opposite directional relation to that shown in the figure, one of the arms must be placed on the opposite side of the axis. In fact, as each arm admits of two positions (thus *h* may be above the axis or below it), so there are four ways in which these arms may be combined, two of which will make the axes revolve one way with respect to each other, and the other two the opposite way.

285. The mechanism of organs, pedal-harps, bell-hanging, and various other portions of machinery, generally called *bell-crank work*, fall under this class of small sensibly equable angular motions. The same kind of mechanism requires the change of the line of direction of these small motions. This may generally be effected by a single axis with two arms; and by the same combination the velocities may be changed in any required ratio, whether the motions be in the same or in different planes, as follows.

286. If the motions be in one plane, let *ab*, *da* (fig. 199) be the lines of direction of the motions meeting in *a*. Draw *Ca* dividing the angle *bad* into two, whose sines are in the ratio of the given velocities in *ab*, *da* (*vide* the construction in Art. 41). In *aC* take any convenient point *C* for a center of motion, from which drop perpendiculars *Cb*, *Cd* upon the respective directions. If these be taken for arms moving round *C*, and links be jointed to them in the lines of direction *ab*, *da*, then a small motion given to *ab* will turn the two-armed piece *bCd*

Fig. 199.



round its axis C, but will not remove its extremities sensibly from the directions ab, da, which are the tangents to the circles described by those extremities in the mean position of the axes. But these extremities will move with velocities which are directly as the length of the arms. (Art. 11.)

In practice it is better to make the lines ab and ad bisect the versines of the arcs of excursion, in which case each link will be carried to the right and left of its mean position, as in the figure, instead of deviating wholly towards the center of motion.

287. Since the arcs of excursion of the extremities d, b are given, we can, by removing the center C to a sufficient distance from a, reduce the angular motion of the piece as much as we please, and thereby diminish the deviations of a, b from the mean positions.*

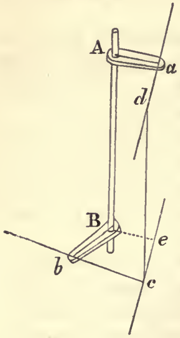
A two-armed piece or bent lever of this kind is termed a *crank*, or more properly a *bell-crank*, to distinguish it from the looped axis to which the term crank is also applied (Fig. 195), but which differs from it considerably; the object of the former being to change the direction of motion of a link when that motion is limited in extent; whereas the latter is expressly formed to allow of unlimited rotation in the same direction. The bell-crank is analogous to the guide pullies of wrapping bands (Art. 262), and accordingly these are sometimes employed in lieu of bell-cranks, to change the direction of motion of a link, by inserting at the place where the motion is diverted a piece of chain which passes over a guide pully.

288. If the given directions of motion intersect, as in fig. 199, we obtain four angles round the point of intersection, in two of which the directions of motion both approach the point, in another they both recede from it; and in the two remaining angles one motion approaches and the other recedes. The axis C may be placed in either of the two latter angles. If the directions of motion are parallel and opposite, the axis will lie between them, and if parallel and similar, the axis will lie beyond them, on one side or the other, but if also equal, then the axis is removed to an infinite distance, and the crank becomes practically impossible; but the change of motion may be effected by the next Article.

* If the links be not perpendicular to the arms in the mean position, but if the angle adC made by one link with its arm be equal to the supplement of the angle abC made by the other link with its arm, then it can be shown that during a small angular motion of the system the ratio of the velocities of the links will still remain constant, and be equal to the ratio of the respective perpendiculars from C upon the links. This, however, supposes that the links in their deviations are not sensibly removed from parallelism to the mean positions, and it would rarely be of any practical service.

289. If the two directions of motion be not in one plane, let *ad*, *cb*, fig. 200, be these lines; find their common perpendicular *dc*; draw *ce* parallel to *ad*, and in the plane *bce* construct the required crank, as in Art. 286, of which let *B* be the center, *Bb*, *Be* the arms respectively perpendicular to *bc* and *ce*.

Fig. 200.



Draw *BA* a common perpendicular to *Bb* and *Be*, and equal to *dc*. Draw *Aa* parallel and necessarily equal to *Be*, then will *AB* be the axis, *Aa* and *Bb* the arms required to change the small motion in *ad* into the requisite motion in *cb*.

By a similar construction we can effect the change of a small motion in a given direction, into another *equal* motion in the same direction parallel to the first; which has been shown to be impossible by the bell-crank in one plane, although the motions themselves are in one plane.

In the mechanism of organs, in which the transmission of such small motions is of frequent occurrence, the crank is termed a *backfall* when its arms are in one horizontal straight line, and a *square* when they are at right angles.

An armed axis like fig. 200 is a *roller*, and the links are *stickers* when they act by compression or pushing, and *trackers* when by tension or pulling.

CHAPTER XII.

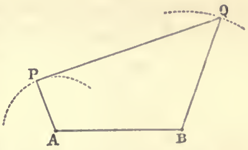
ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

DIVISION D. COMMUNICATION OF MOTION BY LINK-WORK.

CLASS C. { DIRECTIONAL RELATION AND VELOCITY RATIO CONSTANT OR VARYING.

290. THE general definition of link-work, given above in the first chapter, Art. 29, has shown that it derives its name from the employment of an intermediate piece termed a 'link,'* which is a rigid bar connected to each of the pieces, between which it acts as a transmitter and modifier of motion at a constant point of itself and of the piece. In the majority of cases these pieces rotate on parallel axes, and thus the varieties of motion may be investigated by assuming that the pieces and the connecting link are simple radii turning on fixed points at one end and jointed to the respective extremities of the link at the other; the entire combination being thus reduced to four lines in a plane, forming a trapezium $ABPQ$ with variable angles but constant sides, of which AB fixed in the plane is termed the 'line of centers,' AP, BQ the 'radii' capable of rotating in the plane about the fixed points A and B, and PQ the 'link,' which is compelled to move in the plane so that its extremities P and Q can only travel in the circles described about A B by the extremities P and Q of the radial arms to which they are jointed. In the formulæ by which the laws of motion of these movable parts are expressed, the length AB of the line of centers is designated by d, the link by l, the greater and smaller radii by R and r respectively.

Fig. 201.



It has been already shown that the angular velocities of the

* *Bielle*, Fr.

radii are inversely as the perpendiculars from the fixed centers upon the link.

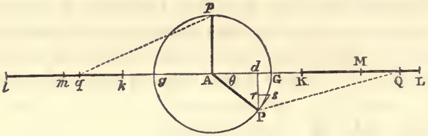
The most general motion for which link-work is used is to enable the rotation of one axis to communicate a reciprocating motion to the other. The path of the reciprocating piece is very commonly rectilinear, and this case is brought under the general principle by supposing the rectilinear path to be an arc of a circle of infinite radius. The motion of piston-rods for pumps, steam-engines, &c., or the travelling platforms of printing presses, planing machines, the tool bars of slotting machines, and so on, may be quoted as examples of rectilinear reciprocation.

The axes may be required to revolve continuously with constant or varying velocity ratios, or finally, they may be connected so as to admit only of alternate reciprocations.

We may now proceed to examine these four cases in detail, taking them in the order of (1) *Rectilinear reciprocation.* (2) *Rotative reciprocation.* (3) *Alternate reciprocation.* (4) *Continuous rotation.*

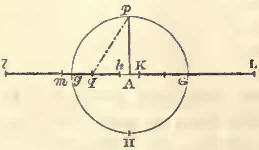
(1) *Rectilinear reciprocation.*—In the four following diagrams, the bar, table, or other sliding piece is omitted, as its motion is a

Fig. 202.



simple translation in which every point moves in a path parallel to that of the extremity of the link, and with a velocity equal to that

Fig. 203.



extremity, the direction of whose path usually passes through the axis or center of rotation of the driving radius, as in figs. 202, 203, 204.

In these figures, that radius is shown in two positions, *AP*, *Ap*, and the portion of the path *KL* to which the course of the extremity *Q* is limited, is determined by setting off from *A*, in opposite directions distances *AK*, $Ak = l - r$ and *AL*, $Al = l + r$.

In fig. 202 the distance of *Q* from $A = Qd \pm Ad = \sqrt{l^2 - r^2 \sin^2\theta} \pm r \cos\theta$. (1); where the positive sign is used when *d* is between *Q* and *A*, and the negative when *d* is beyond *QA*.

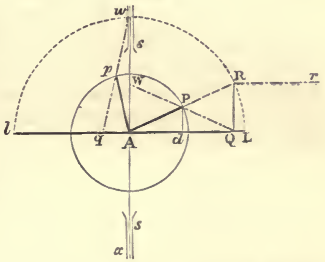
In the small triangle *Prs, Ps, rs* are respectively perpendicular to *AP, Pd,* therefore we have $\frac{\text{velocity of } P}{\text{velocity of } d} = \frac{Ps}{rs} = \frac{AP}{Pd}$.

Consequently, if *P* travel uniformly, the velocity of *p* vanishes at the extremities of its course *gG*; is at a maximum at the point where $Pd = AP$; and is the same at any two points taken at equal distances from *A* on opposite sides.

If the link be very long with respect to *AP,* its inclination may be practically neglected, and the distance *Qd* be supposed equal to *PQ.* Therefore the motion of *Q* will be the same as the motion of *d,* arriving at the middle point *M* of its course *KL* when *P* is at the middle of its semi-rotation from *g* to *G,* and having its velocities symmetrically equal on opposite sides of the center point of *KL.*

But the effect of the inclination of the link is to draw the point *Q* nearer to *A* than it would be if *l* were infinitely long, by a space $= PQ - Qd = l - \sqrt{l^2 - r^2\sin^2\theta}$. (2) which when *P* is at the middle of its semi-rotation as at *Ap* (figs. 202, 203) becomes $mq = l - \sqrt{l^2 - r^2}$. (3) The segments of the course *lq, qk,* described by the motion of the radius through the respective quadrants *gp, pG,* near and remote, are $lm \pm qm = r \pm (l\sqrt{l^2 - r^2})$ (4). In fig. 204 the link *PQ* is equal to the radial arm *AP,* and consequently *AP* and *PQ* constitute in all positions an isosceles triangle, of which the base *AQ* is the line of motion or groove of the pin which connects the radial arm with the sliding bar or piece.

Fig. 204.



Produce *AP* to *R,* making $PR = AP$, and with that radius describe a circle, *LRwl,* which is plainly twice the diameter of the inner circle. If the rotating radius *AP* be pinned at *P* to the link *PQ* it will move the pin *Q* in the line or groove *AQ* until it arrives at *A,* the isosceles triangle *APQ* gradually becoming more and more acute at the apex *P* until *Q* is brought into coincidence with *A,* after which *AP, PQ,* being folded into a single radius will rotate about A. But if the link *PQ* be produced to *W,* we have $PW = PQ$ and $QW = AR$. Also the figure *AQRW* is a rectangle, of which *AR* and *QW* are equal diagonals and *P* the center.

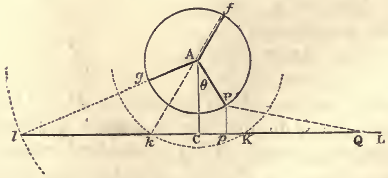
Thus the link PQ is extended from P to W, and when P its center, is rotating, the respective extremities travel in the crossed diameters lL, wx, like the pencil bar of a trammel.

Each revolution will cause the point or joint pin Q to travel from L to l, and the point W from x to w. And thus the radial arm AP will move the bar through a course of twice the length due to its radius.

Now as $AQ=2Ad$ in all positions, it follows that the law of the motion of Q in the line AL is the same as the motion of d, with twice its velocity, and thus the point Q and the bar to which it is attached move with velocities symmetrically equal on opposite sides of the center point A. The left side of the figure shows that the radius Ap makes an acute angle Apq with the vertical diameter which compels the link pq to push the slide point q at an obtuse angle pqA, which would generate jamming friction of a magnitude that would prevent the motion of the bar from taking place (*vide* Chapter on Friction). To overcome this difficulty short grooves wS, xs, are fixed to the frame of the machine to receive a pin fixed to the extremity W, of the prolonged link. Thus, as W is carried upwards by the rotation of P and its lower end Q guided horizontally by the sliding piece, so, when the angle PQA has nearly reached a degree of obliquity that generates injurious friction, the upper end W of the link enters the guide groove. Its pin acts as a fulcrum against the side of the groove as at w, and the joint pin p of the radius acts transversely on the link so as to press the sliding piece in the direction of the longitudinal motion required.

PROB.—*To determine the motion of a slide when the path of the end of the link travels in a line that does not meet the axis.*

Fig. 205.



Let A be the center of motion of a revolving driving arm AP (r), PQ a link (l) jointed to AP at P. Its extremity Q is compelled to move in a right line LK, which for comparison with the previous formulæ may be considered as a circle of infinite radius,

AC, perpendicular from A upon lL, will therefore be a portion of the line of centers. The link may either be directed to the right as at PQ, or to the left as gl. Let an arc with center A and radius $AK = l - r$ intersect the rectilinear path at k and K. This is the shortest possible distance of the extremity of the link from A, and gives inward dead points. Similarly an arc struck from A with radius $AL = r + l$ gives two outward dead points L and l. The motion of the outer end of the link is limited to either of the right lines KL or kl, in which it travels back and forward when r revolves.

The position of Q corresponding to any given angular position of AP can be found as follows: let $CAP = \theta$, and $AC = e$, Pp being drawn parallel to AC, we have the distance of Q from $c = cp + pQ$.

$$= r . \sin \theta + \sqrt{l^2 - Pp^2}.$$

$$= r . \sin \theta + \sqrt{l^2 - (e \pm r \cos \theta)^2}, \text{ for } Pp = AC \pm r \cos \theta.$$

Let θ_1 θ_2 be the values of θ that belong to the dead points.

$$\text{At these points } \cos \theta_1 = \frac{AC}{r + l}, \text{ and } \cos \theta_2 = \frac{AC}{r - l}.$$

$$\text{Also } Cl = \sqrt{Al^2 - AC^2}, \text{ and } CK = \sqrt{AK^2 - AC^2}.$$

If $AK = AC$, the radius Af and link fk will coincide with the line of centers, and the extremity k with the point C. As the link is now perpendicular to the path of the sliding point, and the infinite radius lies beyond the link, we have an outward dead point at C simultaneous with an inward dead point at f, which is a point of helplessness. But if this be overcome by any extranéous contrivance, the sliding point will move to and fro between L and l.

The preceding pages have shown that when an excentric pin, crank, or other equivalent contrivance is employed to produce back and forward motion in a sliding bar or plane surface, the length of the link, or connecting rod as it is usually termed, compared with the radius is a very important element, and therefore its influence on the motion of the reciprocating piece must be developed by formulæ and construction.

Generally speaking, the radius being supposed to revolve uniformly, the sliding piece, beginning from one of the extremities of its course, will move slowly, but its velocity will increase as it approaches the middle part of the course, and then decrease to the end, where with a slight pause it will begin to return, and so on continually. The position of the maximum velocity is not necessarily in the middle of the course, and there are other

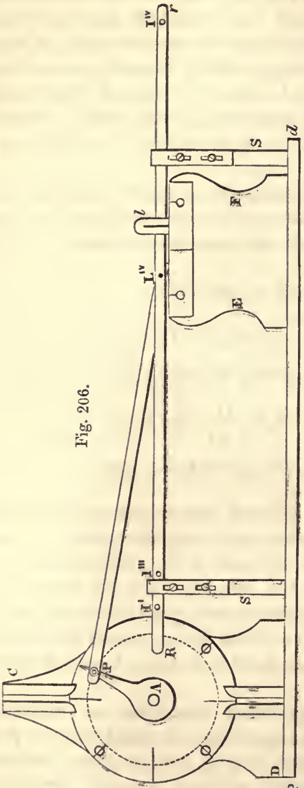


Fig. 206.

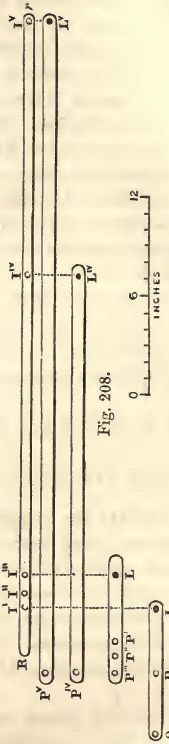


Fig. 208.

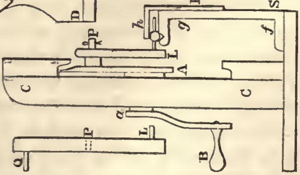


Fig. 207.

irregularities which have been developed above by diagrams and formulæ.

To illustrate these varieties of motion practically, I will explain the construction of a piece of lecture apparatus devised by me in 1857, and employed ever since.

These figures represent the side and end aspects of the apparatus in question. Fig. 206 is the front and fig. 207 the end view of the machine. On a base board *Dd* a standard piece *Cc* is fixed, in the middle of which, at *A*, a socket is implanted, which receives an axis rotateable by a handle *aB* (fig. 207) at the back and carries in front the radial arm *AP*, whose revolutions communicate the reciprocations, which the machine is intended to exhibit, to a sliding rod *Rr*. This rod is best supplied by a straight piece of brass tube three-fourths of an inch in diameter, which is sustained by two iron standards *S*, *S* (fig. 206), that allow it to slide endlong. The form of these appears in fig. 207 at *SH*. An iron bar of sufficient length is bent at right angles at *f* and *g*, the lower end is thus provided with a foot *f*, by which it can be screwed to the base board, the upper end *g* is furnished with an angular notch, in which the tube lies and slides, and is kept in its place by a rectangular strip or cap of metal *Hh*, attached to the front vertical face of the standard by screws in slits, which allow the pressure on the tube to be regulated so that it may slide freely without looseness.

The radial arm *AP* carries a joint pin *P* at its extremity, which is inserted into a hole at the end of the link, and secured by a spring cotter of wire placed in the eye of the joint pin, as shown in fig. 207.

Link rods *PL* of wood are provided of several lengths, distinguished in the figures by accents, $P^{v}.L^{v}.$, $P^{iv}.L^{iv}$, $P^{iii}.P^{ii}.P^{i}.L.$, selected to show the variations of motion. Each link has at one end one or more holes *P* to receive the joint pin of the radial arm as explained above. At the other end a piece of brass wire is fixed normally into the vertical face of each link at *L*, and connected with the sliding brass rod by simply inserting it into one of the holes drilled through the rod, which bears the same accent as the link.

In fig. 207 the link *PL* is seen with the joint pin *P* and spring cotter at its upper end, which connects it with the radial arm, and at the lower end of the link *L* the wire projects from its face and is passed through the brass tube.

To withdraw the link the arm *AP* must be set pointing upwards, as in fig. 206, the spring cotter must then be removed, and the upper end of the link drawn outwards to release it from the pin. The cylindrical form of the tube allows of this motion by rotating upon its own axis.

On the face of the standard *CD*, a circle or dial is described with center *A*, and is divided into four quarters, indicated by the cross diameters, and each of the quadrants bisected by a short line distinguished by a circular spot, which for distinctness is in the actual machine coloured red. The end of the radial arm being pointed serves as an index by which the radius can be placed at eight equidistant points of the circle, which are sufficient to show the general nature of the inequalities of motion produced in the sliding points by varying the lengths of the link.

The motion of the sliding rod is exhibited by means of a graduated scale on the face of a vertical board *EF*, fixed to the base immediately below the sliding rod. An index *l* fixed to the rod slides along its edge and shows the distances through which the rod travels.

The scale is simply divided into two equal parts by a line, and each of these parts is again divided unequally by a line marked with a red spot. These spots being placed so that when the longest link $P^{V}L^{V}$ is employed, the index of the radial arm and that of the sliding rod will coincide simultaneously on the respective scales with the rectilinear graduating line and with the red spot lines. When shorter links are substituted this coincidence fails, for in describing fig. 202 it has been shown that when the link is very long the selected point or index *l* of the sliding rod (fig. 206) will arrive at the middle of its course when the radial end of the link is on the vertical diameter of the dial, and that the positions of the sliding index corresponding to the octant points of the dial are much nearer to the extremities of the slide scale than to the center of the scale, to which, however, they are placed symmetrically.

If short links are used, this symmetry is destroyed. The whole length of the course remains unaltered, but the intermediate graduations of the slide scale corresponding to the eight points of the radial dial are all drawn towards that dial.

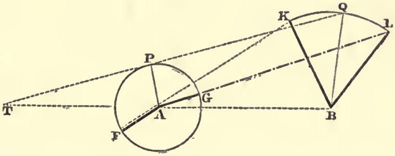
By putting in turn into their respective places the three links fig. 208 (beginning with the longest) $P^{V}.L^{V}$, $P^{IV}.L^{IV}$, $P^{III}.L$, and exhibiting for each the positions of the sliding index when the radial index is placed opposite the eight points of the dial in succession, the increasing deviations from symmetry will be made apparent very strikingly.

Three links are provided, but the shortest has three holes, P^{I}, P^{II}, P^{III}, by which it is enabled to perform the functions of three links. The shortest LP' when the hole P' is placed on the radial pin is equal to the radius AP of the excentric driving arm.

A double link QPL, fig. 208, and sideways in fig. 207, has a hole P in the middle fitting the excentric pin P, and two pins Q and I turned in opposite directions, of which one is placed in the hole I' of the sliding rod and the other received in the short vertical grooves formed above and below the dial, and corresponding to *ws*, *xs* (fig. 204). By this combination the rod is carried by the rotation through a trip equal to the diameter of the dial instead of the radius.

(2) *Rotative Reciprocation.*—In fig. 209 let r revolve clockwise from a position AP towards AG. The link PQ will push R from BQ and cause it to rotate in the same direction toward L

Fig. 209.



until r and l coincide in one right line AGL, forming a *dead point*, when the farther progress of r towards AF will cause R to retrograde from L towards Q, the link now *pulling* R. When r has reached AF, r and l again form a dead point by coinciding in one right line FAK. When r has passed this position, R will retrograde from BK towards BQ and BL.

Thus the continuous rotation of r produces an oscillation of R between the positions BK and BL, the link alternately pushing and pulling.

But at the instant of passing a dead point, as AGL, a small motion of AG on either side of the right line AGL produces little or no motion in the arm BL, for it has been shown (Art. 30) that the angular velocities of the arms are inversely as the perpendiculars from the center upon the link, and the perpendicular from the center A upon the link being *nil*, it follows that the arm BL receives no motion at the instant of passing, and very small motion when nearing or quitting the dead point, whence the name *dead* is given to the positions in question.

At the dead point G the link extends *outward* from the driving arm r, and at the dead point F the link is folded inwards upon the driving arm. To distinguish these positions, I term the first an *outward* dead point, and the second an *inward* dead point.

Fig. 210.

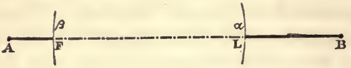
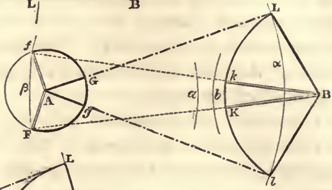


Fig. 211.



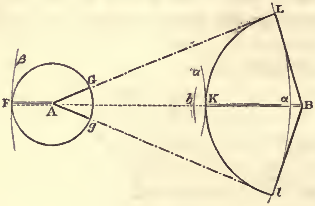
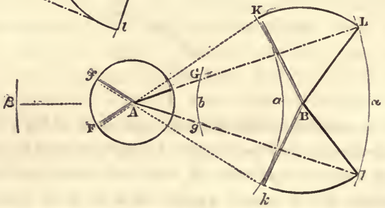


Fig. 212.

Fig. 213.



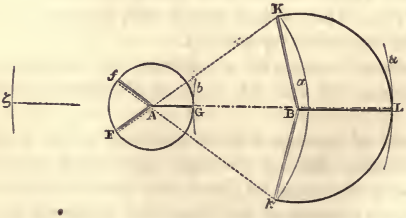
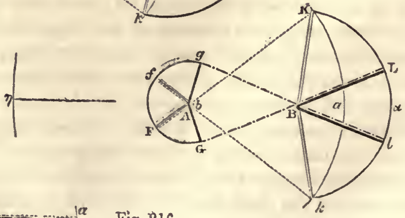


Fig. 214.

Fig. 215.



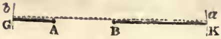


Fig. 216.

As two sides of the varying quadrilateral are thus composed into one, it is converted into a triangle at the moment of forming a dead point. At the outward dead point the compound side $=l+r$ or $l+R$. At the inward dead point the side$=l-r$, or $l-R$. The base of the triangle is always the line of center, and the remaining side that radius which is not employed in the compound side.

In the series of diagrams which occupy the opposite page, and are numbered from 210 to 216, the magnitudes of the radii R, r are the same throughout the series, also the length of the link l is the same.

The purpose of the series is to show the nature of the motions produced by altering the length of the line of centers.

It is evident that the greatest length of this line (AB) is attained in fig. 210, where the radii and link are extended into one straight line and the system is immovable, and has two *outward* dead points.

The shortest length of the line of centers is when the two radii are folded upon the link (as in fig. 216), and this system is similarly immovable, having two inward dead points. There are also two intermediate lengths of the line of centers, which allow the radii and link to form one straight line, namely, fig. 212, which has an inward dead point for r, simultaneous with an outward for R. Lastly, fig. 214 has an outward dead point for r, and an inward for R. These two systems are not immovable.

The *dead point triangles* ALB, AKB (*vide* fig. 213) are therefore easily constructed when R r and l are given, for an arc (a) described with center A and radius $AL=r+l$ will intersect the larger circle at L and another arc (a) with radius $AK=l-r$ will intersect it at K, and thus the respective angles L, K of the dead point triangles ALB, AKB, are obtained. But those arcs will also meet the circumference in two points l, k respectively equidistant from the line of centers and opposite. The system therefore admits of two inward dead points and two outward dead points, and the continued rotation of the lesser arm will either produce an oscillation of R from K to L or from k to l, according as the system is previously arranged, which can only be done by detaching the link at one end.

$$\text{As } Aa=l+r \text{ and } Aa=l-r, \therefore\ aa=Aa-Aa=2r.$$

Consequently as the continuous rotation of r can only produce oscillations of R when the arcs aa both intersect the circumference of the large circle, it follows that, for this oscillatory motion the lengths of the arms must be unequal or $r < R$, for if equal, the distance of a from a being equal to the diameter of the circle they could not both intersect the circumference.

(3) *Alternate Reciprocation*—In fig. 211 let the small arm which is at an outward dead point at AG be moved by hand towards F, thus drawing the longer arm from BL to BK, where the link and arm R come into one straight line. This limits the motion of r and forms an outward dead point for R at K.

The downward motion of R must now be continued by shifting the hand from r to R, and moving the latter to Bl.

This movement will cause r to return on its path from AF to Ag. But the motion of R is now arrested by the straight line Agl, formed by a second outward dead point of r. The hand now shifted to r will continue its motion upwards from Ag to Af, drawing after it R from Bl to Bh where the motion is arrested by an outward dead point formed by R at Bh. The motion of R must now be continued by hand upwards, drawing r with it upwards until itself is stopped at BL by the outward dead point of r at AG. Thus the motion of each arm of the system consists in an oscillation through an angle limited by two outward dead points formed by the other radius. The extremities of each oscillation correspond to medium points of the opposite one reciprocally.

In fig. 215 the length of the link is also such as to compel the system to perform alternate oscillations, r moving from AG by F, f, to Ag and back, while R oscillates between BK and Bk.

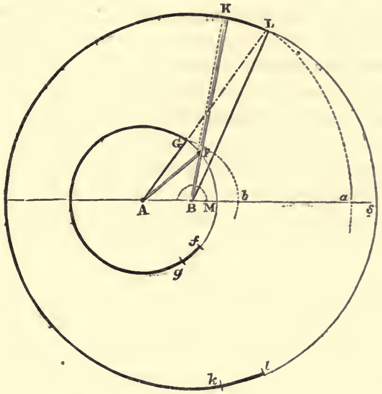
But this motion differs from the former, in that the arcs of oscillation in fig. 211 are turned inwards towards each other and the four dead points are outward dead points, while in fig. 215 the arcs of oscillation are turned outwards from each other, and there are four inward dead points. It is unnecessary to trace this motion in detail as it may be derived from the description of that of fig. 211 by counterchanging the terms inward for outward, drawing for pushing, upwards for downwards and *vice versa*.

If the link be shorter than the least distance as sb, fig. 217, an arc about B with radius $Bb = R - l$ will intersect the small circle in two points F, f, and give an inward dead point to R at BK and another opposite to it at Bk. Also, an arc about A with radius $Aa = r + l$, will intersect the great circle at L and l, and give an outward dead point for r at AGL, and another at AL. This system moves with alternate oscillations of the arms through the angles indicated by the black portions of the circumferences.

If the link be longer than the least distance we obtain alternate reciprocations, but with inward dead points for both arms.

These three systems are only employed in tracing the curves

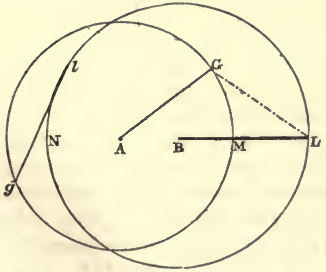
Fig. 217.



known as Watt's curves for parallel motions, in which the tracing point is attached to the link or link plane. For they can only perform their motions by having each arm in turn guided by hand or complex mechanism and are therefore unfitted for the modification of motion in trains.

(4) *Continuous rotation of both arms with varying velocity ratio.*

Fig. 218.



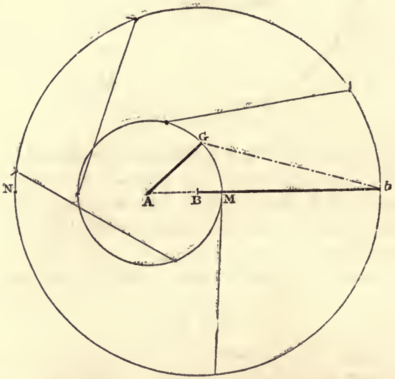
—Let there be two circles (figs. 218, 219) with radii R, r, equal or of any relative magnitude, and let their centers A, B be within the area common to the two circles, and consequently AM and

BN both greater than *AB*, *i.e.* 7 *d* and *r* 7 *d*. Continuous rotation implies the absence of dead points, for at every dead point the rotating radius is brought into coincidence of direction with the link and the other radius has its motion reversed.

For continuous rotation of both radii, it follows that the extremities *P*, *Q* of the link must travel in their respective circumferences of the circles in such a manner that no straight line can be formed by either radius with the link. Therefore its length *l* must be such that an arc with radius *l* and center taken at *any point* of either circumference must intersect the other in *two* points. For if this arc touched the other circumference in one point only, that would be a dead point.

Now *NL* being the line of centers, *ML* is the greatest outside radial distance from the circumference of the lesser circle to the

Fig. 219.



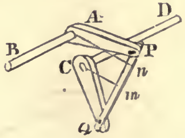
other and *MN* the longest. If, therefore, the link *GL* be greater than *ML* the radius *AG* and *GL* can never come into one straight line as an outward dead point. Also if *GL* be less than *MN* the link folded back upon *AG* will fall short of *N*, and therefore can never form an inward dead point. The condition of continuous rotation is consequently that the link *l* must be less that *MN* and greater than *ML*. But $ML = BL - MB$ and $MN = BL + MB$, which gives $l \begin{matrix} > R-(r-d) \\ < R+(r-d) \end{matrix}$.

If the link $= ML$, *AM* and *ML* will coincide on the line of centers with *BL* and give simultaneous dead points, inward for *BL*, and outward for *AM*.

If the link $= MN$ we have simultaneous dead points inward for both radii.

In practice the arms must be fixed, as in the figure, at the free ends of the two axes, and the link in a plane intermediate with the arms.

Fig. 220.



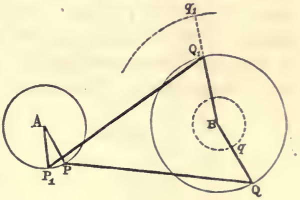
If An, Cm be perpendiculars from the centers of motion upon the link, we have

$$\frac{\text{ang. vel. of } AP}{\text{ang. vel. of } CQ} = \frac{Cm}{An},$$

by Art. 30, Cor. 1; which perpendiculars continually changed uring the motion of the system.

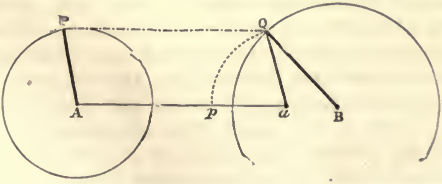
PROB.—Given d, l, R, r of a piece of link-work, to find the positions in which the arms are parallel.

Fig. 221.



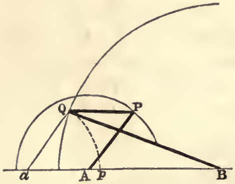
With center B and radius $Bq = R - r$ describe an arc and another with radius $Bq = R + r$. With center A and radius $= l$ intersect the first arc in q, and the second in q_1. Draw BqQ meeting the larger circle in Q. Make AP parallel to BQ and join PQ. Manifestly by construction $AqPQ$ is a parallelogram and $PQ = Aq = l$ is in the position which corresponds to the parallel arms on the same side of the line of centers. Similarly, join Bq_1 and draw AP_1 parallel to it, and join P_1Q_1, which gives the position of the link when the parallel arms are on opposite sides of the line of centers. If the length of Aq be greater than $AB + Bq$ or less than $AB - Bq$, the intersection at q and the consequent parallelism of the arms is impossible, *i.e.* we must have $l \begin{matrix} < d + R - r \\ > d - R + r \end{matrix}$. Also for the contrary position of the arms we must have $l \begin{matrix} < d + R + r \\ > d - R - r \end{matrix}$.

Fig. 222.



Prob.—To find the two positions of the system in which the link is parallel to the line of centers.

Fig. 223.



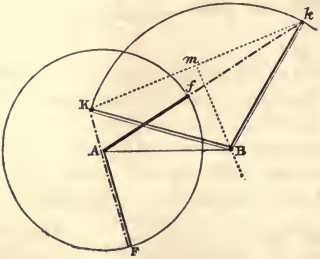
In Figs. 222 (p. 227), and 223 given $AB=d$, and the radii R, r. Set off on the line of centers $Aa=l$, and with center a and radius $ap=AP$, describe an arc meeting the circumference in Q, make $QP=Aa$ and draw AP, join BQ.

Since $Aa=PQ$ and $aQ=AP$, $APQa$ is a parallelogram, and PQ parallel to Aa and $\therefore$ BQ, AP, are the required positions when the link is parallel to line of centers.

Prob.—*To produce a slow advance and quick return.*—AB, fig. 224, is a line of centers of which A is the axis of the driving arm AF, which revolves continually and communicates an oscillation to the follower arm Bk by means of a link FK.

Supposing the rotating arm AF to revolve clockwise beginning with the position AF, which corresponds to BK of the follower arm, it is evident that the advance of the follower from BK to Bk is performed during the rotation of the driver from the inward dead point FAK to the outward dead point Afk, which dead point positions of the rotating arm are distant from each other by nearly three-quarters of a revolution, and the return of the follower from Bk to BK occupies the remaining quarter.

Fig. 224.



To set out this diagram, the circle Ff from center A and radius the given arm AF must be drawn, and radii AF, Af, making an angle FAf which divides the entire circumference into the two angles which correspond to the required proportion between the advance and return. On the radii AF, Af, produced, set off from F and f any convenient equal distances FK, fk, and join Kk by a right line, which is the chord of the angle through which the oscillating arm travels. The center of rotation of the arm will necessarily be on the perpendicular which bisects the chord.

Figs. 225, 226, show a piece of apparatus which I devised for the purpose of exhibiting the various motions of link-work with two parallel axes, which are demonstrated in the preceding pages and diagrams.

Fig. 225.

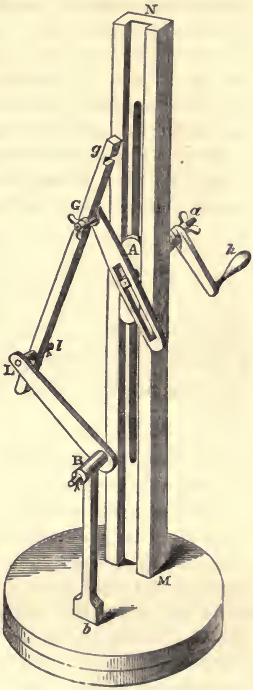
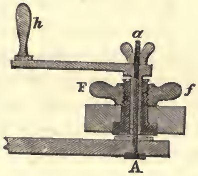


Fig. 225 is a perspective view of the complete machine, which consists of a base board which carries two standards for the support of the two parallel axes. The short standard *Bb* is of iron and terminates upwards with a fixed cylindrical tube socket *B*, in which the horizontal follower axis designated by *B* in the previous diagrams of this division is inserted. To the wooden arm *BL*, which requires no alteration in length, the axis *B* is fixed, projecting outwards. From the other extremity of *BL*, a pin *Ll* projects inwards, to be received in a hole *l* at the end of the link.

The high standard *MN* is of wood, and carries the axis *Aa*. As the normal distance of the two parallel axes

Fig. 226.



varies, the tube socket *Aa* is formed and supported so as to allow of being fixed at any required height above the plane of the axis *B*.

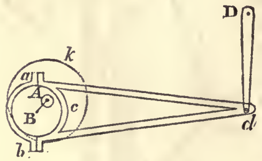
Fig. 226 is a horizontal section of this socket through the axis, showing the rebated groove on the face of the standard, and the narrower slit which is cut through to the back of it, so as to allow the tube to receive the handle *ah*, by which the combinations are put in motion. This handle is riveted to a hollow axis, through the center of which a slender bolt is passed, with a square head at *A*, and a fly nut at the back *a*.

As the length of the arm *AG* requires to be adjusted to suit the various motions, it is furnished with a slit of sufficient length, as shown in the figure. The bolt is passed through this slit and through the hollow axis. The fly-nut of this bolt binds the arm against the end of the hollow axis in front. The hollow axis is carried by a larger tube which slides in the vertical rebated groove and projects backwards so as to receive a fly-nut *Ff*, shown in fig. 226.

This larger tube has in front a flange with its vertical sides parallel, so as to fit easily in the rebated groove of the standard, and allow the axis *Aa* to be adjusted at its required height. Link rods with a hole at one end *L* and notches at the required distance as shown at *gG* are provided.

291. To the different forms under which the rotating arm and link appears in Art. 279, may be added *the excentric*, fig. 227.

Fig. 227.



Let *A* be the axis or center of motion, to which is fixed an excentric circular pully of which *B* is the center; a hoop *abc* is made to embrace this pully so as just to allow the pully to turn freely within its circle, for which purpose, as well as to allow the machine to be put together, the hoop is generally made n two halves capable of being separated at *a* and *b*; a frame *adb* connects this hoop with the extremity *d* of the arm *dD*, to which it is jointed in the manner of a link. When *A* revolves the distance *Bd* from the center of the excentric to the extremity of the arm remains constant, and therefore the motion communicated is precisely the same as that which would be given by an arm *AB*, and a link *Bd*. But this contrivance allows the axis to be continued straight through the excentric, whereas when an arm is employed the axis must be cut short, or else bent into a crank, as explained in Art. 280. On the other hand, the magnitude of the hoop and excentric is so great with respect to the radius of motion *AB*, that this contrivance is necessarily limited to the production of vibrations of small extent. The dotted circle radius *Ak* includes the space required for the rotation of the excentric, the radius of which is equal to the sum of the radius of the excentric and of *AB*, and the former must be greater than the latter. A common crank or pin would occupy a circle of about half this radius.

292. The excentric, arm, or crank, under the different forms thus described, is by far the most simple mode of converting rotation into reciprocation, and it has the valuable property of beginning the motion in each direction gently, and again gradually retarding it, so as to avoid jerks. Nevertheless the law of

variation in the velocities is not always the best adapted to the requirements of the mechanism; but the reciprocation is produced so simply that it is often worth while to retain the crank, and correct the law of velocity by combining other pieces with it in a train. By trains of link-work very complex laws of motion may be derived from a uniformly revolving driver. This will be best illustrated by the examples which follow.

293. Ex. 1. If the crank, instead of being fixed to the uniformly revolving axis, be carried by a second axis, and these two axes connected by one of the previous combinations for the production of varying velocity ratio with constant directional relation, the inequality of velocity in the reciprocating piece may be almost entirely got rid of. Thus, let these two axes be connected by a pair of rolling curve wheels (Art. 89), let A_1 be the constant angular velocity of the first axis, A_2 the angular velocity of the second axis, upon which is also fixed the crank, let r be the radius of the crank, and θ the angle it makes with the path of the reciprocating piece; then if V be the linear velocity of this piece, we have $\frac{V}{A_1}=\frac{rs}{Ps}=\frac{Dd}{AP}=r.\sin\theta$ (fig. 202), $\therefore V=r.\sin\theta.A_1$, which is to be constant by hypothesis. Let r_1 and r_2 be the radii of contact of the rolling curves which connect the first and second axis respectively;

$$\therefore \frac{A_2}{A_1}=\frac{r_1}{r_2}=\frac{c-r_2}{r_2},$$

if c be the distance of the axes.

$$\therefore \frac{V}{A_1}=\frac{-r_2}{r_2}\,r\sin\theta=k;$$

a constant by hypothesis; therefore V and A are in the proportion of the spaces described by the reciprocating piece and the point whose radius is unity upon the first axis; and as one revolution of the latter corresponds to a complete double oscillation of the former, we have $\frac{V}{A_1}=\frac{2r}{\pi}=k$, whence $r_2=\frac{cr.\sin\theta}{r\sin\theta+k}=c\,\frac{\pi\sin\theta}{\pi.\sin\theta+2}$ whence the follower curve may be laid down. Again, by Art. 81, if θ_1 be the corresponding value of θ in the driving curve, we have

$$\theta_1=\frac{\int r_2 d\theta}{c-r_2}=\frac{\pi}{2}\int\sin\theta d\theta=C-\frac{\pi}{2}\cos\theta,$$

and when $\theta=0$, and $\frac{\pi}{2}$, $\theta_1=0$, and $\frac{\pi}{2}$, respectively, whence $C=\frac{\pi}{2}$,

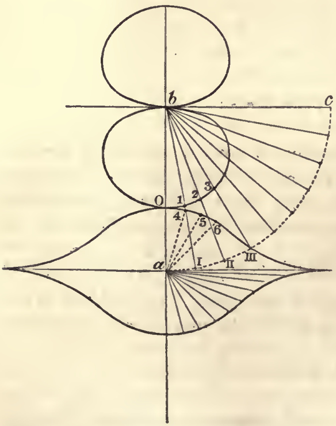
$$\text{also } \theta_1=\frac{\pi}{2}.\text{versin}\,\theta, \text{ and } r_1=c-r_2,$$

will give the driving curve. In the following Table a sufficient number of values are computed to enable these two curves to be laid down by points.

Follower		Driver	
θ	$\frac{r_2}{c}$	θ_1	$\frac{r_1}{c}$
0°	0	0°	1·0000
5°	·1204	0° 20′	·8796
10°	·2143	1° 22′	·7857
15°	·2890	3° 4′	·7110
20°	·3495	5° 25′	·6505
30°	·4399	12° 4′	·5601
40°	·5025	21° 3′	·4975
50°	·5461	32° 9′	·4539
60°	·5763	45°	·4237
70°	·5963	59° 13′	·4037
80°	·6075	74° 23′	·3925
90°	·6109	90°	·3891

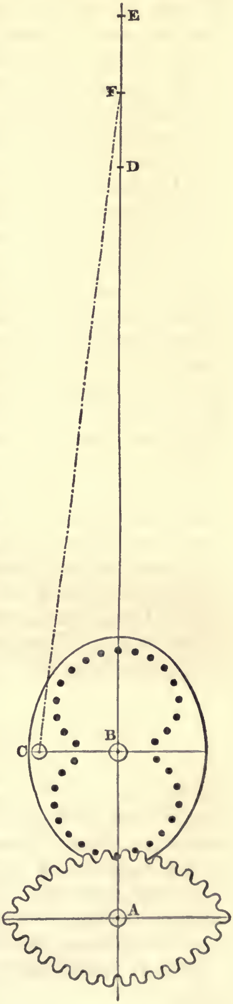
As each curve is known to have four similar and equal quadrantal parts about the center in alternate reversion it is only necessary to lay down one quadrant for each, as in fig. 228 at *bac*, as follows. With radius *ba* equal to the line of centers describe a quadrantal arc *ac* divided into equal angles, by radii *b*I, *b*II, *b*III, and so on. The number of these radii must coincide with those of the Table, but in this diagram only a few are laid down to avoid confusion. From the center *b* of the follower set off on the successive radii *ba*, *b*I, *b*II, &c., the proportional lengths *b*0, *b*1, *b*2, *b*3 . . . indicated by the second column of the Table. Through these points draw the curve, 0 1 2 3 . . . *b*, which completes the form of one quadrant of the follower.

Fig. 228.



To set out the second rolling curve, which is the driver, it must be remarked that each of its radii is the remainder 0*a*, 1I, 2II, 3III . . . . . which has been cut from the lines already drawn in equal division from the center of the quadrant *bac*. Also that the distances of the respective contact points measured on the circumference of the upper curve 0, 1, 2, 3 . . . are equal to those of the lower curve 0, 4, 5, 6. . . . .

Fig. 229.



This curve is easily laid down as follows. On the first radius 0*a* as a base, construct the triangle 04*a* of which the side 04=01 and the side *a*4=I1. Similarly, on *a*4 construct the triangle *a*54 whose side *a*5=II2 and 4, 5=1, 2, and so on.

Thus a series of points is obtained through which the curves can be drawn as in Fig. 228 and theoretically they satisfy the condition of equalising the velocity of the reciprocating piece. If the lower curve, which is the driver, be rotated counter-clockwise its increasing radii will enable it to press against the decreasing radii of the follower until the concave salient point which terminates the long diameter of the driver is brought into contact with *b*. But as this point coincides with the axis of rotation of the follower, it is plain that no pressure can be excited by the projecting cusp upon the hollow cusp at *b*, because their points of cuspidation coincide with each other and with the center of rotation of the crank wheel. These points of the action correspond to the passage of the crank over the dead points, where, as it communicates for the moment no velocity to the reciprocating piece, the velocity of the crank must become infinite to maintain the conditions of the problem, which requires a constant velocity in the reciprocating piece, and therefore no loss of time in the change of direction. All which being practically impossible, it is necessary to alter the figure of the curve at these points, and reduce it to the form ∞, shortening the points of the driver accordingly; teeth may then be added to these curves in the usual manner.

Fig. 229 represents the model which I derived from my investigation given above. *A* is the driving wheel, the form of which is obtained by shortening the points of the driving curve in Fig. 228, and providing the circumference with teeth projecting inwards and outwards upon the pitch curve so altered. *B* is an elliptic board, into the face of which pins are driven in the line which is produced from the form of the follower in fig. 228 by adapting it to the change of the driving curve.

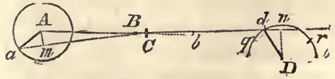
A projecting stud *C* is jointed to the lower end of the link *CF*. Its upper end *F* communicates the reciprocating motion to the sliding piece in the direction of the line of centers *AB* produced.

Any contrivance, however, that produces two equal periods of variation in the angular velocity in each revolution will serve to correct the velocity of the crank-follower sufficiently for practice. The rolling curves, as just described, are used in some silk-machinery; but their figure is not so completely formed upon principle.

If the axis of the crank be connected to the uniformly revolving axis of the driver by means of a Hooke's joint, and these axes meet at a sufficient angle, the rotation of the crank will have two maximum and two minimum velocities in each revolution, which, if carefully opposed to those produced by the crank, will nearly correct the unequal motion of the reciprocating piece.

294. Ex. 2. *To equalise the velocity by link-work.* The velocity of the reciprocating piece may be also nearly equalised by a

Fig. 230.



train of link-work only. Thus let *A*, fig. 230 be the axis of the crank *Aa*, which by means of a link *aC* communicates in the usual way a reciprocating motion to a point *C*, which travels in the line *Ab* between *B* and *b*. A second link *Cd* connects *C* with an arm *Dd*, moving on a center *D*, and the motion of *C* between *B* and *b* thus moves *d* between *q* and *r*; so that the rotation of the crank *Aa* causes the arm *Dd* to reciprocate between the positions *Dq* and *Dr*.

In any given position of this system draw perpendiculars *Am*, *Dn* from the centers of motion upon the links; then if A_1 A_2 be the angular velocities of *Aa*, *Dd* respectively, and *V* the velocity of *C*, we have very nearly

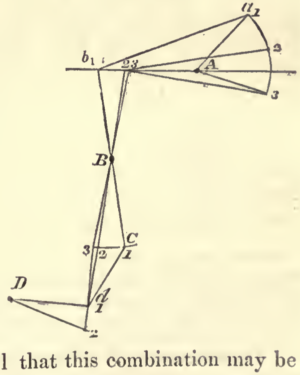
$$A_1 . Am = V = A_2 . Dn \text{ (Art. 30)}; \therefore \frac{A_2}{A_1} = \frac{Am}{Dn}.$$

If *Aa* and *Dd* both reach the position perpendicular to the link at the same time, then *Am* and *Dn* will reach their maximum values together, and will decrease and increase together, so that the ratio $\frac{Am}{Dn}$ may be made nearly constant; and thus, if *Aa* revolve uniformly, the reciprocating piece *Dd* will move in each direction with a velocity much more nearly uniform than that of the piece *C*.

This latter piece may either slide or may be fixed to a long arm so as to make *Bb* an arc of large radius; or the intermediate piece *C* may be even omitted, and *ad* connected by a single link;* but this is not so good.

295. Ex. 3. *To produce a rapidly retarded velocity.* *A*, *B*, *D*, fig. 231 are centers of motion, *Aa* an arm revolving round *A*, *bBC* an arm revolving round *B*, and *Dd* an arm revolving round *D*; these arms are connected by links *ab* and *Cd*, by which the motion of *Aa* is communicated to *Dd*. Let *Aa* move only through an arc of a circle *a*1, 2, 3, and let the three points 1, 2, 3 be at equal angular distances from each other, and so placed that the line *bA*, which is a tangent to the small arc described by *b*, shall bisect the angle 2*A*3, described by *a* in its passage from 2 to 3. Now since the motion given to the arm *Bb* will vary as the versed sine of the angular distance of *Aa* from the line *bA*, the motion which *b* receives while *a* moves from 1 to 2 will be very much greater than that which it receives while *a* moves from 2 to 3. The corresponding positions of *a* and *b* are numbered with the same figures. In fact, practically, the second motion is so small that this combination may be

Fig. 231.



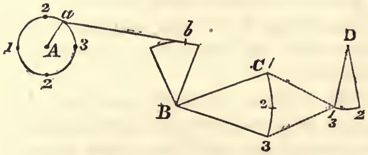
* Hornblower in 1795 applied this latter method to the steam-engine. (Rees' *Cyc. Steam-Engine*, Pl. v., fig. 7.)

employed when the arm *Bb* is required to remain at rest during the second motion of *Aa* from 2 to 3, as well as when the arm *Bb* is required to receive a rapidly retarded velocity from the uniform velocity of *Aa*.*

But the third arm *Dd* is so placed with respect to *BC* that the tangent to the arc described by its extremity *d* shall bisect the small angle 2B3 described by *C* in its passage between the second and third positions; the motion therefore which *Dd* receives during the second motion of *Aa* from 2 to 3 is very much less than the small motion given to *Bb*. This third arm is therefore added when a more perfect repose is required.

296. Ex. 4. *To multiply oscillations by link-work.* If a common crank, *Aa*, fig. 232, be jointed by a link *ab* to an arm

Fig. 232.



moving round a center *B*, we have seen that every revolution of the crank will produce one complete double oscillation † of the arm *Bb*, and therefore of an arm *BC* upon the same axis.

Let an arm *D*2 moving round a center *D* be joined by a link to the arm *BC* in such a relative position to it that the tangent to the arc described by the extremity of *D*2 may bisect the angle described by the arm *BC*. The figures 1 2 3 upon the circular path of the crank, upon the arc of motion of the arm *BC*, and upon that of the arm *D*2, show the corresponding positions of these pieces. The motion of *BC* from *B*1 to *B*3 in either direction will produce one complete double oscillation of *D*2 from the position D^1_3 to *D*2 and back again, as shown in the figure; and therefore one double oscillation of *BC*, or one revolution of the crank will produce two complete double oscillations of the arm

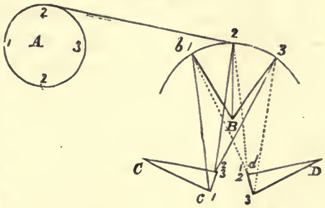
* This principle was first employed by Watt in the mechanism for opening the valves of the steam-engine (*vide* his patent, 1784, in Muirhead's *Mechanical Inventions of James Watt*, v. iii. p. 109), and subsequently applied to the printing press by Lord Stanhope in 1800. These mechanists only employed the two arms, *Aa*, *Bb*. The third arm *Dd* was introduced by Erard into his patent harp action, 1809.

† In pendulums and other vibrating bodies *one oscillation* includes the motion from one end of the path to the other, in either direction. A *double oscillation*, therefore, is the motion from one end to the other and back again, and thus contains all the phases of the periodic motion.

*D*2. If another arm be connected with *D*2 in the same manner as the latter is connected with *BC*, then one revolution of the crank will produce four double oscillations of the last arm, and thus with the train of *n* axes, one revolution of a crank may produce 2^{n-2} complete double oscillations of an arm.

297. Ex. *To produce an alternate intermitting motion by link-work.* *A*, fig. 233, is the center of motion of a common crank which by means of the link 2, 2, causes an arm *Bb* to oscillate between the positions *B*1 and *B*3. The extremity *b* of this arm is also jointed to two other links *bc* and *bd*. The link *bc* connects it with an arm *Cc* whose center of motion is *C*, and the tangent to the path of its extremity passes through *B*, and bisects the angle 2*B*3; therefore by Ex. 3, when *b* moves from 1 to 2, *Cc* will move from *Cc*1 to C^2_3, but when *b* moves from 2 to 3, *Cc* will remain nearly at rest in the position C^2_3. On the other hand, the link *bd*, which is shown by a dotted line, is jointed to an arm *Dd*, the tangent of whose path passes through *B*, and bisects the angle *b*1*B*2; so that while *b* passes from 1 to 2, *Dd* remains nearly at rest in the position Dd^1_2; but when *b* passes from 2 to 3, *Dd* receives a motion from Dd^1_2 to *D*3. The effect of this arrangement is, that when the crank *A* revolves, the arms *Cc* and *Dd* oscillate with intervals of rest, the one moving when the other rests, and *vice versâ*: which may be traced by the corresponding figures, if we follow the motion of the crank at *A* round its circle, as thus:

Fig. 233.

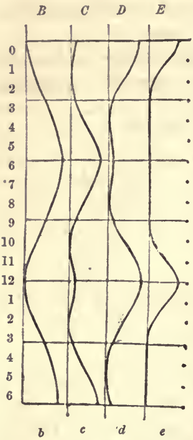


crank moves from	1 to 2	*Cc* rises	and	*Dd*	rests
	2 to 3	,, rests	,,		falls
	3 to 2	,, rests	,,		rises
	2 to 1	,, falls	,,		rests.

298. But for showing the exact nature of the motion produced in this manner, graphic representations are the best (Art. 14). Thus in fig. 234, *Bb* is the vertical axis of a curve which represents the motion of the arm *Bb*; *Cc* and *Dd* the axes of curves which represent the cotemporaneous motions of the arms *Cc*, and *Dd* respectively. The circle described by the

crank is divided into twelve equal angles, and the axes of abscissæ are divided into equal parts corresponding to these twelve positions and numbered accordingly from 0 to 12. The figure represents one revolution and a half, for the better exhibition of the motion; and supposing the crank to revolve uniformly, the vertical abscissæ of the curves will be proportional to the time. The ordinates of these curves are proportional to the spaces or arcs described by the extremities of the arms respectively. Thus the ordinates of the curve *Bb* are proportional to the distance of the extremity *b* of *Bb* from the extreme position *Bb*1. These curves are easily obtained by drawing the figure 233 upon a large scale, and setting out upon it the twelve relative positions of all the arms of the system, in the same way as the three principal positions are there shown. To return to fig. 234. It appears that the double oscillation of *Bb* from 0 to 12 is converted in *Cc* into two double oscillations, one of which extends from 2 to 10, and is large, while the other from 10 to 2 is so small that it may be considered as a state of rest. The oscillation of *Dd* is similar, but the large wave of the latter is opposed to the small wave of the former, and *vice versâ*. Now if these small waves be required to be reduced, a second arm (as *Dd* fig. 231) must be attached to each of the arms *Cc*, *Dd* of the present system. The curve *Ee* represents the motion of this second arm, supposing it to be attached to *Dd*, and from this it appears that while the oscillation of the large wave is rendered more nearly constant in its velocity, the small wave is obliterated and reduced to a line coinciding with the axis of the abscissæ.

Fig. 234.

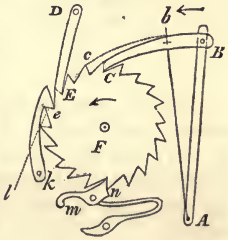


299. These examples may serve to show that very complex motions may be produced by combining link-work in trains, and the mechanism thus obtained is so simple and certain in its action, that it is always desirable, if possible, to employ it. Curves should always be used as a test for the motions, because in these intricate combinations formulæ would not, even to the best mathematicians, give the same clear notion of the cotemporary action of the various pieces of the train that is conveyed in this manner.

300. When a reciprocating and revolving piece are connected by a single crank and link, the revolving piece must be the driver, unless it be heavy; for if the reciprocating piece be made the driver, it is evident that at the dead points (Chap. XII.) of the system it could communicate no motion to its follower. But if the revolving piece be heavy, it will by its inertia be carried across the dead points, and thus allow the reciprocating piece to continue its action in the reverse direction. This mode of operation belongs to Dynamics, and therefore will not be examined in the present Work. In fact, in Pure Mechanism, the only methods by which a reciprocating driver can be made to give continuous rotation to a follower, are by *Escapements*, for which see Sliding Contact in the present Chapter; and by *clicks and ratchet-wheels*, which, as they properly belong to Link-work, I shall proceed to explain.

301. The driver is an arm whose center of motion is A fig. 235. The follower F is a wheel termed a *ratchet-wheel*, having teeth formed like those of a saw.

Fig. 235.



The piece BC is freely jointed to the driving arm at B, so that it rests by its weight upon the teeth of the wheel. If the arm be moved in the direction of the arrow into the position Abc, the extremity C will abut against the radial sides of the teeth, and push the wheel as if BC were a *link* jointed to its circumference at C. But when the arm is moved backwards towards AB, the point C will rise over the sloping sides of the teeth, and communicate no motion to the wheel.

If a continuous reciprocation be given to the driver, the follower will advance a few teeth during every motion of the driver in the direction of the arrow, and will remain at rest during its return in the opposite direction.

To ensure the wheel against an accidental motion in the reverse direction, an arm DE similar to BC is jointed to a fixed center of motion D, and by abutting against the teeth in a similar way to BC, only allows the wheel to be moved in the one direction required. A detaining arm of this kind is termed a *detent* or latch, and the arm BC which communicates motion a *click*, or *ratchet*, or *paul*; but these latter names are frequently used in common for both the moving and detaining pieces BC and DE.

302. This is a very useful and practical combination,* and admits of great variety of arrangement. Thus the arm *AB* may be made to move concentrically to the ratchet-wheel. This method, when practicable, is to be preferred, for the arm, ratchet, and wheel then move together as one piece during the advance of the latter.

Or the crown-wheel form may be given to the ratchet-wheel, as in fig. 236, in which case, the click *B* may be either jointed to an arm *Aa*, which moves concentrically to the wheel, or to an arm *cd*, which is attached to an axis *Cc* at right angles to that of the wheel.

Fig. 236.

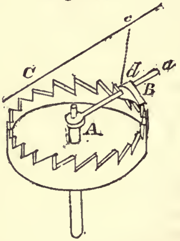
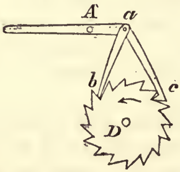


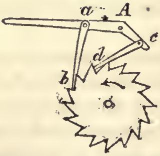
Fig. 237.



303. The reciprocating arm may also be made to drive the wheel both during its approach and recess. Thus, let *A*, fig. 237, be the center of motion of the arm, *D* that of the ratchet-wheel, and let the arm have two clicks *ab*, *ac*, jointed to its extremity *a*, and engaged with the opposite sides of the wheel.

When *a* is depressed the click *b* will push the teeth, but the click *c* will slide over them. On the other hand, when *a* is raised, the click *c* will act upon the teeth, but *b* will now slip over them, so that whether *a* rise or fall the wheel is made to move in the direction of the arrow.

Fig. 238.



304. A similar contrivance is shown in fig. 238, where *A* is the center of motion of the arm, and clicks *ab*, *dc* are jointed at equal distances on each side of *A*. When *a* rises, the click *ab* slips over the teeth, and *dc* pushes them; but when *a* falls, the click *ab* pushes the teeth and *dc* slips over them. These two

* It first appears in Ramelli, fig. 136.

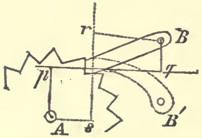
latter arrangements are called the levers of Lagarousse, from the name of their inventor.*

305. Levers either of this latter kind with two clicks, or with a single click accompanied by a detent, are also employed to move racks.

306. Instead of jointing the clicks and detents to their levers or centers of motion, they are sometimes made in the form of a slender spring. Thus if *ab* instead of hanging loose from *a*, or being pressed by a spring into contact with the teeth, be itself a slender spring fixed to the lever at *a*, it will act precisely in the same manner as it does in the figure, merely giving way from its elasticity when it is required to slip over the teeth, instead of turning upon the joint for that purpose.

307. The shape of the extremity either of the detent or click, as well as of the teeth against which they act, may be determined as follows:

Fig. 239.



If we examine the action of the detent and wheel, it appears that the two conditions which determine the form are these. If the wheel be urged in one direction, the action of its teeth shall have no effect in raising the detent, but shall rather tend to keep it in its place. If the wheel be urged in the opposite direction, the contrary shall happen.

Now the tooth and detent act upon each other by sliding contact. Let *A*, fig. 239, be the center of motion of the wheel, *B* of its detent, and let *pq* be the normal of contact between the tooth and the end of the detent, and let *Ap*, *Bq* be perpendiculars upon this normal from the centers of motion. Then if the wheel be urged in the direction from *p* to *q*, this normal is the line of action upon the detent (Art. 31), which therefore tends to turn the detent round *B* in the direction *pq*, that is, to press it more closely into contact with the teeth.

If, on the contrary, the center of the detent were at *B′*, on the other side of the normal, the action of the teeth would be to turn it in the direction *pq* round *B′*, that is, to raise it out of the teeth. To make the detent hold, therefore, its acting extremity and the teeth must be of such figures that the normal of contact shall pass between its center and that of the wheel. If the wheel be urged in the opposite direction, then it can be shown in like

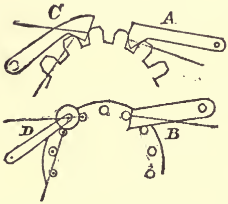
* *Machines App.* 1702.

manner, that to enable the wheel to lift the detent, the normal of contact in this new direction *rs* must also pass between the two centers of motion.

If, however, the hook form be given to the detent, as at *ke*, fig. 235, then the normals of contact in both directions must pass on the same side of the two centers of motion as *el*.

308. By attending to this principle, which applies equally to the detents and the clicks, we may make them and the teeth of different forms, as in fig. 240, where *B* is a detent adapted to act with a pin-wheel, and *A* with a common spur-wheel: the dotted lines show the normals of contact.

Fig. 240.



A pin projecting from the face of a bar which lies behind the wheel makes an excellent detent.

When the detent requires to be released by hand from the teeth, it may be provided with a tail, as at *m*, fig. 235; the usual form of a detent when it is urged by a spring against the wheel, as in clock and watch-work.

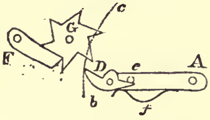
309. But a detent is sometimes required to act in a different manner, that is, to hold the teeth of a wheel in a sort of stable equilibrium, so that they admit of being disturbed either to the right or left of the position of rest, but will still return to it if left to the action of the detent. This is effected by forming the detent as at *C* fig. 240, so that its normals of contact shall pass on the opposite sides of its center of motion, and at the same time providing the detent with a spring or a weight by which it is pressed against the teeth. This pressure will always hold the teeth in such a position that both sides of the detent shall be in contact, but at the same time the teeth of the wheel, whether urged to the right or left, will raise the detent, and pass under it, which is shown by the direction of the normals.

If the end of the detent carry a roller, and act upon a pin-wheel as at *D*, the same effect will be produced. It is evident that the detention of the wheel in these latter arrangements is entirely effected by the pressure of the spring or weight by which the detent is kept in contact with the teeth, and not by the form of the detent, as in the first examples at *A* and *B* fig. 240, or in fig. 235.

310. In fig. 235 the oscillating arm moves the wheel through an arc equal to its own motion. If the arm be required to move

through an indefinite arc, and yet to move the wheel a constant quantity in each of its oscillations, the click must be arranged as in fig. 241. *AD* is the arm, the extremity of which moves in the arc *bc*; the click is mounted on a center *D* at the end of the arm, and urged by a spring *f* against a pin or stop *e*. The ratchet-wheel *G* has a detent *F*, which must also have a spring or weight to keep it in contact. When the arm moves from *b* towards *c*, the click encounters a tooth of the wheel, and having thus carried the wheel through the space of one or more teeth, leaves it and passes onwards towards *c*. The pressure against the end of the click tends to turn it round its center *D*, but the stop *e* prevents this action; on the contrary, when the arm returns from *c* towards *b*, the click *D* again strikes against a tooth of the wheel, but the pressure now being in the opposite direction, the click gives way by turning round its center *D*, and the wheel is held fast by its detent *F*; when the click has passed the wheel the spring *f* restores it to its first position.

Fig. 241.

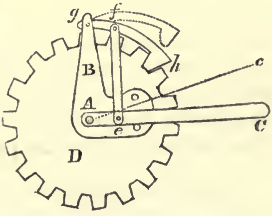


Thus whatever be the extent of the motion of the arm from *b* to *c* and back, the wheel will receive only a constant motion.

311. In all click-work the slipping of the clicks and detents over the teeth occasions a disagreeable noise or *clicking*, whence the former probably derive their name. This moreover tends to wear out the teeth.

To avoid this inconvenience *silent clicks or ratchets* are employed, which are arranged in various ways, one of the simplest of which is shown in fig. 242. *D* is the ratchet-wheel whose teeth in this method may be made with sides nearly radial, *B* is the ratchet-arm concentric with the wheel, and carrying the ratchet *gh* jointed to it at *g*, *AC* an arm also concentric with the wheel, and moving very freely upon the center *A*. This arm is joined by a link *ef* to the ratchet, and lies between two pins which project from the face of the ratchet-arm.

Fig. 242.



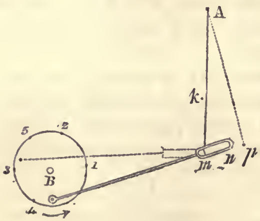
The action of the contrivance is as follows. If the arm *AC* be moved upwards towards *Ac*, it will at the beginning of its motion raise the ratchet *gh* out of the teeth of the wheel by means of the link; proceeding still farther it will then encounter the upper pin of the ratchet-arm, and will therefore carry this latter arm with it, the two arms and ratchet now moving as one piece in the direction from *f* towards *g*, but without disturbing the wheel, because the ratchet is disengaged from its teeth, as shown by the dotted lines.

On the other hand, when the arm *AC* is moved in the opposite direction, that is from *c* towards *C*, it first passes through the small space *cC* without moving the ratchet-arm *B*, and thus by the link *ef* depresses the ratchet and engages it with the teeth, the arm *AC* then strikes the lower pin of the ratchet-arm, and the two arms, ratchet, and wheel now move as if in one piece, so long as the motion of *AC* continues in this direction.*

The action of this combination is perfectly silent; the arm *AC* is moved back and forwards just as the ratchet-arm of fig. 235, but at every change of direction it begins by either engaging or disengaging the ratchet from the teeth, and thus prevents the disagreeable and mischievous noise of the common arrangement.

312. An intermittent motion may be produced from link-work, by making a slit in either end of the link. Let *B*, fig. 243, be the center of motion of a crank, which by means of a link gives oscillation to a swinging arm *Am*; at the end of the link is a slit *mn*, which nearly fits a pin *m* projecting from the end of the arm *Am*. This arm may either move with friction upon the center *A* so that it will remain where it is left, or it may be urged by a spring or weight in a constant direction, as for example, towards the crank-axis, so as to press it against a stop *k* if left to itself. In the first case, if it remains where it is left, then when the link moves from left to right, the left end *m* of the slit will push the pin and arm from *m* towards *p*; but when the link changes its direction, the arm will receive no motion until the other end *n* of the slit has reached the pin; the arm will then be

Fig. 243.



* Clicks of this kind are employed under different forms by Mr. Roberts in his self-acting mule, and by Mr. Donkin. *Vide* also White's *Century of Invention* pl. 6, fig. 18. Other forms of detent work will be found below under the head of Differential and Aggregate Motions.

carried from right to left together with the link, and at the next change of direction will again rest until the end *m* of the slit has reached the pin.

The motion of the arm will thus be intermitted at each end of its course for a time which will be greater or less according to the length of the slit. Thus as 1 and 3 are the points where the changes of direction of the link occur, let 2 and 4 be the points at which the ends of the slit come into action, then the arm *Am* will remain at rest while the crank moves from 1 to 2, and from 3 to 4, and will move during the intermediate motion, thus:

crank moves from
- 1 to 2...arm rests at *p*
- 2 to 3... „ moves from *p* to *m*
- 3 to 4... „ rests at *m*
- 4 to 1... „ moves from *m* to *p*.

But in the second case, if the arm be pressed by a force towards the center of the crank, the slit will not come into operation unless a stop *k* be provided, then the pin *m* will be always in contact with the extremity *m* of the slit in both directions of its motion; but when the arm *Am* reaches the stop the link will proceed without it by means of the slit to the end of its course, and will take it up on its return. Take 3 5 equal to 3 4 upon the circular path of the crank, then the motion will be as follows,

crank moves from
- 1 to 5...arm moves from *p* to *m*
- 5 to 4... „ rests
- 4 to 1... „ moves from *m* to *p*.

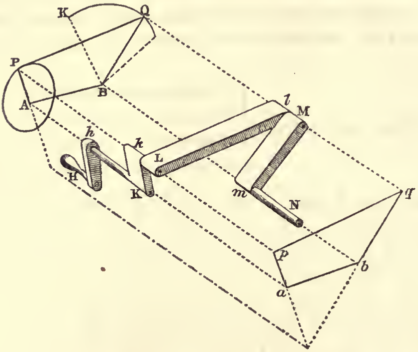
PRISMATIC LINK-WORK.

313. In investigating the phases of motion in link-work, we have considered it as a plane trapezium of which the angles are jointed, so that one side being fixed in the plane, as a base or *line of centers*, the two which meet its extremities are capable of revolving radially about those extremities, and their opposite ends are similarly pointed to the side which is opposite to the base, and is termed the *link*.

But in the actual construction of link-work the points of the component parts move in parallel planes, about parallel axes perpendicular to those planes, so as to enable the link and arms to pass clear of each other during the motions of the system. In the following pages I have cndeavoured to exhibit link-work under this aspect, whether employed to connect parallel axes, convergent axes, or axes neither parallel nor meeting.

The parallel lines *Aa, Bb, Pp, Qq* are the edges of a right prism whose ends *ABQP, abqp,* are the quadrilaterals already

Fig. 244.



examined. The system of four lines in a plane is in this view represented as a system of four rectangular planes, united at their neighbouring edges, which may be termed the *axial, radial,* and *link* planes. The axial plane *ABab,* fixed in position is bounded by the axes *Aa, Bb.* The radial planes *AaPp, BbQq,* rotate about the axes *Aa, Bb,* respectively. The link plane, *Pp, Qq,* is hinged by its sides *Pq, Qq* to the corresponding sides of the radial planes. These hinge-like lines may be termed 'lines of flexure.' This prism, considered geometrically, is capable of taking up all the phases of the plane quadrilaterals by which it is terminated. But in the motions of the system it has been shown that the sides of the quadrilateral in certain positions overlap or intersect each other, and similar interpenetrations will necessarily take place between the planes that form the sides of the prismatic figure we are now considering.

At a dead point of either radial plane the link plane is necessarily brought into coincidence of direction with that plane by overlapping it if the dead point be *inward* or by extension if *outward.*

At a double dead point the link plane must coincide with both radial planes simultaneously, which can only happen when these planes also coincide with the axial plane. The angle aQb will consequently be equal to the sums or differences of the angles of the link plane and radial plane, according as the dead points are respectively outward or inward.

To make this possible, when the parts of the machine have material thickness, the positions assigned to the arms and link in their respective planes are selected so as to place these elements side by side (fig. 244). In this figure the actual construction of the link-work is delineated between the two ends of the prism. hK is a shaft whose axis coincides with the geometrical axis Aa. This is mounted in bearings attached to the fixed frame of the machine, which are omitted in the figure.

mN is a second shaft coinciding similarly with the geometrical axis Bb, and also supposed to be mounted in bearings. Thus the linear axes of these shafts are fixed in position. Hh is a handle fixed to the end of the first shaft which also carries an arm Kk, the outer end of which is bored to receive a fixed stud whose axis coincides with the line of flexure Pp and enters a hole bored truly in the same line at one end of the link Ll.

The other end l of this link is jointed by a similar hole to a pin fixed to the arm Mm, which is attached to the shaft mN.

In this construction the arms Kk, Mm coincide with and are portions of the radial planes to which they belong, but they have necessarily a material thickness instead of the infinitesimal thickness of a geometrical plane.

Similarly the link Ll is a strip of the link plane provided with material thickness.

Thus the right side of the arm Kk coincides with the left side of the link Ll, and the right side of the link with the left side of the arm Mm. It thus becomes possible to bring the link into the same plane with either or both the arms, without which the inward dead points of the system would be practically impossible.

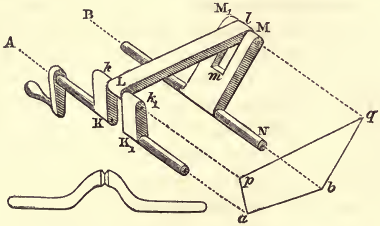
The end of the link is for greater steadiness sometimes embraced between two arms Kk, K_1k_1, fig. 245, whose shafts both coincide with the axis line Aa.

These arms are united by the joint pin at k_1k, which is made in one piece with them.

It is manifest that the discontinuity of the shaft between the arms allows them to revolve, as it permits the link to pass freely over the geometrical *flexure line* Aa between K and K_1, at the inward dead point.

This combination of two arms with a joint pin and two segments of shaft is termed a *crank,* and being supported by a bearing on each side of the link admits of great steadiness in the transmission of motion and pressure.

Fig. 245.



The form of the discontinuing shaft and arms shown in the diagram is that which is adopted in machinery when such a steady motion is required.

The cylindrical hole at each end of the link fits the solid joint pin and must be constructed of two pieces each containing half of this hole, one piece being a part of the link, the other capable of being detached and refixed at pleasure so as to enable the link to be attached to the joint pin. By this construction the link is capable of pushing or pulling alternately.

But when the link acts by pulling only vertically at the crank, which is the case when the cranked shaft has a fly wheel and the link connects the crank with a treadle, the crank is simply formed by bending the shaft into the form of fig. 246. The link is jointed below by a simple pin, passing through a hole at its lower extremity, and also through holes in the sides of a mortise formed through the treadle for the reception of that extremity.

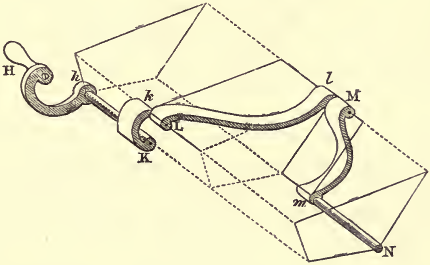
The upper end of the link is shaped into a long hook, which is kept by the weight of the treadle in contact with the crank.

When the link only communicates an oscillation to an arm without an inward dead point, there is no need for the discontinuity of the shaft *N.* The outer end of the arm has a slit cut into it as at MmM_1, fig. 245, for the reception of the end *l* of the link. The joint pin is simply supported at each end in holes, and kept in its place by a head at one end and a cotter or spring pin at the other. The shaft *BN* of the arm admits of a bearing at each end.

It is not necessary that the arms and link should be straight and flat. The essential condition for these elements is that the directions of the two axes or flexure lines which they each carry shall be parallel and rigidly connected. The pins or holes which represent these axes must therefore be parallel. But the intermediate solid portion which furnishes their rigid connection may be of any shape that may suit the framing of the machine or the fancy of the maker.

Fig. 247 represents forms that are frequently given to the arms,

Fig. 247.



handles, and links of this class of machinery, especially in the last century, and even still in clockwork or ornamental mechanism.

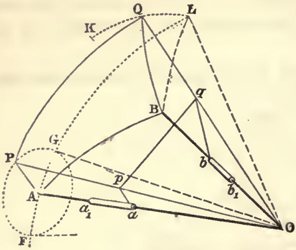
This machine is identical in its motions with that of fig. 244, as the lines which indicate the form of its prismatic diagram show.

SOLID-ANGULAR LINK-WORK.

314. *Link-work for two axes meeting in a point.*—Let aa_1, bb_1 fig. 248, be two axes whose directions meet in a point O; ap, bq two arms respectively perpendicular to the axes; pq a link jointed to the extremities of the arms. The arms rotating about the axes will describe circular planes respectively perpendicular to them and therefore not parallel to each other. But, as in the previous diagram of link-work with parallel axes (fig. 244), the short arm ap (if it be a crank) revolving will cause the longer arm to oscillate, and will have outward and inward dead points, or (if the magnitude of the given distance ab be suitable) either continuous rotation of both axes or alternate oscillations will be obtained.

From O draw right lines to a, p, q and b. As these lines are constant in all positions of the system, and also the lines ab, ap, bq, pq which subtend the angles made by the former lines at O, we have a solid angle at O formed of four constant plane angles. But as the angle made by each triangular plane with its adjacent one at the edges of the solid angle varies by the motion of the system, so the form of the solid angle varies.

Fig. 248.



We have thus obtained a system of four triangular planes analogous to the prismatic system of fig. 244. Employing the same nomenclature, we have a fixed *axial plane* aOb, *radial planes* aOp, bOq rotating about axes aO, bO, and connected by means of *flexure* lines Op, Oq, with a *link plane* pOq.

Every prism is, in fact, the limiting form of a solid angle, whose apex is removed to an infinite distance from its base.

It is manifest that the dead points of the radial plane Oap happens when the radial plane Oap and the link plane Opq coincide in one plane. These dead points are therefore unaffected by the distances of the points p, q, a, b from O, and depend solely upon the relative magnitudes of the four plane angles at O.

For convenience, therefore, let the lines of flexure, Op, Oq, that radiate from O be each produced to any convenient equal distance from that point, as at A, B, Q, P. Join their extremities, in each plane of the plane angles, by arcs of circles described from O with that constant distance. These arcs will be segments of the great circles of a sphere whose radius is the constant distance OQ.

Let this radius be *unity*, then the bounding arcs of the plane angles will represent those angles respectively and may be designated by the same letters as those employed for the sides of the trapezia which bound the prism employed in prismatic link-work and which here represent the spherical quadrilateral $ABQP$.

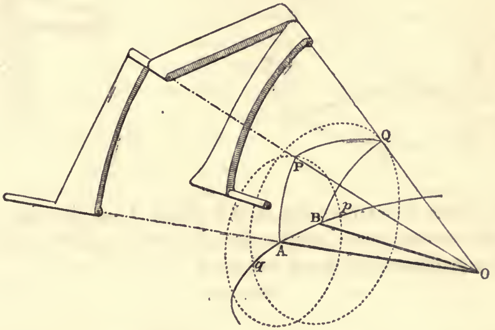
We thus have, $AB=d$, $PQ=l$, $AP=r$, $BQ=R$.

When a dead point happens by the coalescence into a common plane of a radial plane with the link plane, as of AOP with POL, by the motion of AP to AG, where AGL is one continuous segment of a great circle, we obtain a spherical triangle ALB.

This is an *outward dead point*, and the side $AL=r+l$. If this radial plane revolve so as to come into the position AOF, the link plane will be superposed upon the radial plane. We have now an *inward dead point*, and the side $FL=l-r$.

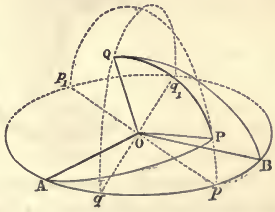
Continuous motion in solid-angular link-work. — To produce continuous motion in both radial planes, the conditions

Fig. 249.



are obtained by analogous reasoning to that given for plane or prismatic link-work, namely: The axes (fig. 249) AO, BO, of the respective radial planes must be contained within the space which is common to the two cones that are respectively described by the revolutions of the two lines of flexure OP, OQ. Consequently we must have AB ($=d$) less than either AP ($=Ap$) or BQ ($=Bq$). Also PQ ($=l$) $>R-(r-d)$ and $<R+(r-d)$.

Fig. 250.



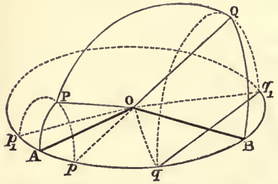
If both R and $r=\frac{\pi}{2}$, fig. 250, both cones become disks, and if the link-plane angle l also $=\frac{\pi}{2}$ the combination coincides with that of the simple Hooke's joint.

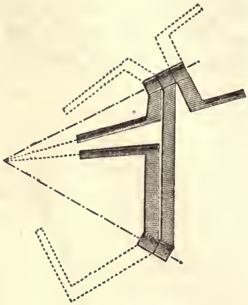
When a revolving arm produces reciprocation in another, as in fig. 251, the former must be less than the latter, therefore the revolving radial-plane angle r (AOP) must be less than the reciprocating angle R (BOQ). Also r must be less than d.

Fig. 252 shows the forms of the cranks and arms in solid-angular link-work.

Fig. 252.

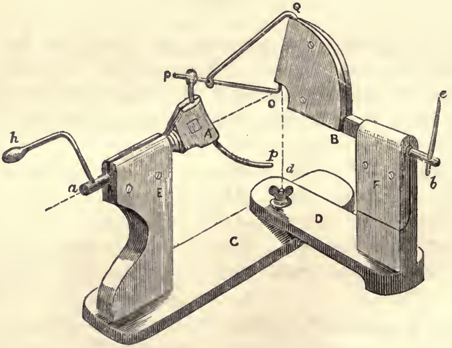
Fig. 521.





This figure represents the model which I employ for showing some of the varieties of motion in solid-angular link-work. It is simply constructed of wood and wire.

Fig. 253.



The lettering corresponds to that of the diagram fig. 250, and the machine is adjusted to produce reciprocation from rotation accordingly.

A horizontal base *C* has a vertical standard *E*, which is provided with a horizontal socket, in which the driving axis *aA* is grasped. A similar frame carries the follower axis *Bb*, by means of a standard *F*. The two frames are connected by a bolt *d*, fixed to the lower or base board *C* and passed through a hole in the upper frame board D. The axes must be so adjusted that they are in one and the same horizontal plane aOb, and that their meeting point O is contained in the vertical axis of adjustment represented by the dotted line dO. The fly nut d serves to fasten them to any angle required by the axes. The driving axis aA is terminated inwards by a clamp A which grasps an arc of stiff wire Pp, which has an eye formed at its extremity P.

The follower axis Bb terminates inwards with a quadrantal wooden piece BOQ right angled at O. This piece is split so as to embrace the side OQ of a right-angled triangle of wire POQ, so as to allow of a hinge-like rotation between that side of the triangle and the radial side OQ of the wooden quadrant.

The side OP of the wire triangle is produced beyond the acute angle next to P and is received in the eye of the wire arc at P.

Comparing this machine with fig. 251 it will be seen that AOB is the axial plane, AOP, BOQ the two radial planes, POQ the link plane, OQ, OP the lines of flexure.

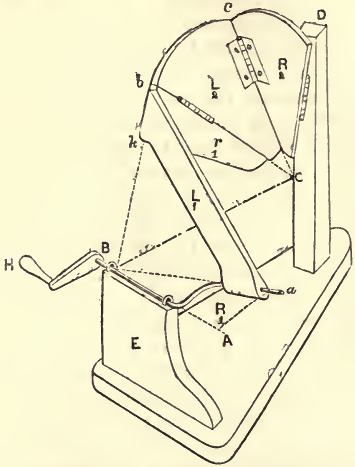
The driving axis aO is provided with a handle ah, and the follower axis with an index be, which in the adjustment given to the apparatus in the figure will oscillate when the driving axis is rotated by the handle, provided that the wire arc Pp is set so as to subtend an angle less than BOQ. But if it be adjusted to a right angle and the horizontal axes of rotation set at an angle greater than $\frac{\pi}{2}$, the rotation of the driving axis will communicate a continuous rotation to the follower axis with varying velocity ratio as in Hooke's joint.

315. *To connect two axes which are neither parallel nor meeting by solid-angular link-work so that the rotation or oscillation of one will communicate an oscillation to the other* (fig. 254).

Let AB, CD, be the given axial lines. In these assume two convenient points B, C, and join them. Assuming this line BC to be the direction of an intermediate axis, we have only to connect each extremity with the axial line that it meets, assuming each meeting point to be the apex of the pyramid of a system of solid-angular link-work.

Thus at B, two axial lines BA, BC meet. From B draw two flexure lines Ba, Bb which completes the construction of the solid quadrangular apex of the first pyramid to connect the extremity C of the intermediate axis with the given axis CD. Draw two flexure lines Cc and Cb radiating from C, and for convenience let the latter intersect the flexure line Bb of the first pyramid. The system is now completed, the chain of triangles of which it is composed is set in motion by the first radial plane *ABa* whose angle at *B* is acute because the axis *AB*

Fig. 254.

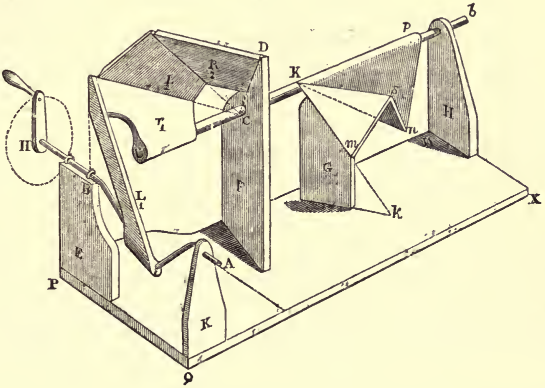


is compelled to rotate, and is therefore provided with a handle at *H*, and its opposite end bent into a crank, the excentric extremity of which is inserted freely into a hole bored through the lower end of the link L_1 in the direction coincident with the flexure line *Ba* of the planes R_1, L_1. The upper end *b* of the link plane *bBa* is connected to the second radial plane *BbC* (r_1) by the flexure line *Bb*, and thus the rotation of *ABa* is converted into an oscillation of the flexure line and of the entire triangle *BbC* about the intermediate axis *BC*. The triangle *bCc* (L_2) is a link plane and is joined to the triangle *cCD* (R_2) by the flexure line *Cc* which conveys the oscillation of *BbC* to that triangle. In this combination the drawing represents the complete triangles in dotted lines. In each triangle the side which subtends the apex is indefinite in form. Also the entire triangle is not necessarily retained. The figure shows for example the primary link plane L_1, reduced to a strip. Also the connection of the plane R_2 with the post *CD* enables it to support the link L_2 and the plane *CbB* which rotates upon the geometrical line *BC*, but is sufficiently braced by the two hinges which represent the flexure lines *bC*, *bB*, to allow it to be cut into the form r_1 shown in the figure.

In the same manner the oscillations of the intermediate axis may be transmitted to any number of axial lines, in any direction in space, provided that direction meets the intermediate axis.

Fig. 255 shows that axis in connection with two others, and is sufficient to explain the principle.

Fig. 255.



On a base board *PQWX* five vertical standards *K, E, F, G, H,* are fixed for the support of the moving parts.

Bb is the direction line of the intermediate axis, which is supported in bearing holes *C* and *b* in the standards *F, H.* *AH* is the primary transverse axis sustained by the standards *K, E*; *DC, Kk* the direction of two others which meet the primary axis in points *C* and *K*; they are purposely placed so as to meet that axis in oblique directions and not in planes perpendicular to it. We have, therefore, three points *B, C, K,* in the intermediate axis, each of which is the apex of a solid angle. In this model the constituent triangular planes are supposed to be simply united at the flexure lines by leather. The first and second solid-angular systems are precisely similar to fig. 254 and their triangular planes denoted by the same letters. The handle *H* communicating by the triangular crank and oblique link L_1 an oscillation to the radial plane r_1 and the long primary axis *BCb* to which it is fixed. The plane r_1 also transmits its oscillation through L_2 to R_2, which is hinged upon the line *DC.* *K* is the apex of another solid-angular system, in which *Kb, Kk* are the axial lines, and *Ks, Kn* the flexure lines. The triangle *Knp* is rigidly fixed to the primary axis and thus transmits its oscillations to the radial plane *mKs* by means of the link plane *sKn.*

CHAPTER XIII.

TRAINS OF ELEMENTARY COMBINATIONS.

316. THE elementary combinations which have been the subject of the preceding chapters consist, for the most part, of two principal pieces only, a driver and a follower; and we have shown how to connect these so as to produce any required constant or varying velocity ratio, or constant directional relation, whatever may be the relative position of the axes of rotation. There are many cases, however, in which, although *theoretically* possible, it may be *practically* inconvenient, or even impossible, to effect the required communication of motion by a single combination; in which case a series or train of such combinations must be employed, in which the follower of the first combination of the train is carried by the same axis or sliding piece to which the driver of the second is attached; the follower of the second is similarly connected to the driver of the third, and so on.

317. In all the combinations hitherto considered the principal pieces either revolve or travel in right lines. In a train of revolving pieces, the first follower and second driver being fixed to the same axis, revolve with the same angular velocity; and this is true for the second follower and third driver, and generally for the m^{th} follower and $\overline{m+1}|^{\text{th}}$ driver, which will also, if the piece which carries them travel in a right line, move with the same linear velocity. But, for simplicity, let us consider all the pieces in the train to revolve (Art. 36), and let the synchronal rotations of the axes of the train in order be

$$L_1, L_2, L_3, L_4, \text{\&c.} \ldots\ldots L_m,$$

m being the number of axes;

$$\therefore \frac{L_1}{L_2} \times \frac{L}{L_3} \times \frac{L_3}{L_4} \ldots\ldots\ldots \frac{L_{m-1}}{L_m} = \frac{L_1}{L_m};$$

that is; *the ratio of the synchronal rotations of the extreme axes of* *the train is found by multiplying together the separate synchronal ratios of the successive pairs of axes.* Also if $A_1 A_2 \ldots A_m$ be the angular velocities of the axes, we have

$$\frac{A_1}{A_2} \times \frac{A_2}{A_3} \ldots\ldots \frac{A_{m-1}}{A_m} = \frac{A_1}{A_m} = \frac{L_1}{L_m} \text{ (Art. 20).}$$

318. And since the values of any one of these separate ratios will be unaffected by the substitution of any pair of numbers that are in the same proportion, we may substitute indifferently in any one the numbers of teeth (N), the diameters (D), or radii (R), of rolling wheels, pitch-circles, or pullies, the periods (P) in uniform motion; or express the value of the ratio in any other equivalents that may be most easily obtained from the given machine or train whose motions we wish to calculate, recollecting that

$$\frac{L}{l} = \frac{A}{a} = \frac{n}{N} = \frac{r}{R} = \frac{p}{P}, \text{ (Art. 72).}$$

319. Ex. 1. In a train of wheel-work let the first axis carry a wheel of N_1 teeth driving a wheel of n_2 teeth on the second axis; let the second axis carry also a wheel of N_2 teeth driving a wheel of n_3 teeth on the third axis, and so on.

$$\frac{A_m}{A_1} \text{ or } \frac{L_m}{L_1} = \frac{N_1}{n_2} \times \frac{N_2}{n_3} \times \ldots\ldots\ldots \frac{N_{m-1}}{n_m},$$

that is, *to find the ratio of the synchronal rotations, or angular velocity of the last axis in a given train of wheel-work to those of the first, multiply the numbers of all the drivers for a numerator, and of all the followers for a denominator.*

It is scarcely necessary to remark that the number of drivers and of followers in a train of this kind is less by one than the number of axes.

320. Ex. 2. The ratios may each be expressed in a different manner: thus in a train of five axes, let the first revolve once while the second revolves three times;

$$\therefore \frac{L_1}{L_2} = \frac{1}{3}.$$

Let the second carry a wheel of 60 teeth driving a pinion of 20 on the third;

$$\therefore \frac{N_2}{n_3} = \frac{6}{20}.$$

Let the third axis drive the fourth by a belt and pair of pullies of 18 and 6 inches diameter respectively;

$$\therefore \frac{D_3}{d_4} = \frac{18}{6}.$$

And let the fourth perform a revolution in ten seconds, and the last in two, when the machinery revolves uniformly;

$$\therefore \frac{P_4}{p_5} = \frac{10}{2};$$

therefore we have,

$$\frac{L_1}{L_5} = \frac{1}{3} \times \frac{20}{60} \times \frac{6}{18} \times \frac{2}{10} = \frac{1}{135};$$

that is to say, that the first axis will perform one revolution while the last revolves 135 times.

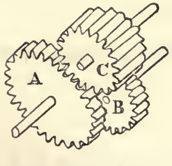
321. In this manner the synchronal rotations of the extreme axes in any given machine may be calculated; their directional relation may also be found, by examining in order the connection of the axes, and by help of the few remarks which follow.

In a train of wheel-work consisting solely of spur-wheels or pinions with parallel axes, the direction of rotation will be alternately to right and left. If, therefore, the train consist of an even number of axes, the extreme axes will revolve in opposite directions, but if of an odd number of axes, then in the same direction. If an annular wheel be employed, its axis revolves the same way as that of the pinion (Art. 61).

322. If a wheel A (fig. 34, page 45) be placed between two other wheels C and B, it will not affect the velocity ratio of these wheels, which is the same as if the teeth of B were immediately engaged with those of C, but it does affect the directional relation; for if B and C were in contact, they would revolve in opposite directions, but in consequence of the introduction of the intermediate axis of A, B and C will revolve in the same direction. Such an intermediate wheel is termed an *idle wheel.*

323. When the shafts of two wheels A and B, fig. 256 lie so close together that the wheels cannot be placed in the same plane without making them inconveniently small, they may be fixed as here shown, so as to lie one behind the other, and be connected by an idle wheel C, of rather more than double the thickness of the wheels it connects. Such a thick idle wheel is termed a *Marlborough wheel,* in some districts. It is employed in the roller frames of spinning machinery.

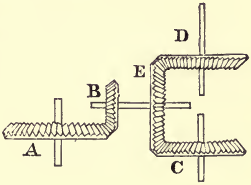
Fig. 256.



324. When the axes in a train are not parallel, the directional relation of the extreme axes can only be ascertained by tracing the separate directional relations of each contiguous pair of axes in order.

By intermediate bevil-wheels parallel axes may be made to revolve either in the same or opposite directions, according to the relative positions of the wheels; for example, in fig. 257 the wheel *A* drives *B*, upon whose shaft is fixed the wheel *E*. Now if the wheel *C* be fixed on the same side of the intermediate axis as *A*, the parallel axes of *A* and *C* will revolve in opposite directions; but if the wheel be fixed as at *D*, on the opposite side of the intermediate axis, then the axes of *A* and *D* will revolve in the same direction, the same number of wheels being employed in both cases.

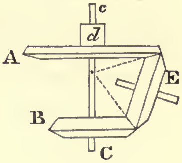
Fig. 257.



Endless screws may be represented in calculation by a pinion of one or more leaves, according to the number of their threads (Art. 217), but their effect upon the directional relation of rotation will be different, according as they are right-handed or left-handed screws. (Art. 211.)

325. Two separate wheels or pieces in a train may revolve concentrically about the same axes, as for example, the hands of a clock. Also, in fig. 258, the wheel *B* is fixed to an axis *Cc*, and the wheel *A* to a tube *d* or *cannon*, which turns freely upon *Cc*. If these wheels may revolve in opposite directions, a single bevil-wheel *E* will serve to connect them, if the three cones have a common apex as in the figure; and since *E* is an idle wheel (Art. 322), the velocity ratio of *B* to *A* will depend solely upon the radii of their own frusta.

Fig. 258.



But if the wheels *B*, *A* are to revolve in the same direction, they must be made in the form of spur-wheels, and connected by means of two other spur-wheels fixed to an axis parallel to *Cc*.

326. Millwrights imagine that in a given pair of toothed wheels it is desirable that the individual teeth of one wheel should come into contact with the same teeth of the other wheel as seldom as possible, on the ground that the irregularities of

their figure are more likely to be ground down and removed by continually bringing different pairs of teeth into action.

This is a very old idea, and is stated nearly in the above words by De la Hire. It has also been acted upon up to the present time. Thus Oliver Evans tells us, that 'great care should be taken in matching or coupling the wheels of a mill, that their number of cogs be not such that the same cogs will often meet; because if two soft ones meet often, they will both wear away faster than the rest, and destroy the regularity of the pitch; whereas if they are continually changing they will wear regular, even if they be at first a little irregular.'*

The clockmakers, on the other hand, think that the wearing down of irregularities will be the best effected by bringing the same pair of teeth into contact as often as possible.†

Let a wheel of M teeth drive a wheel of N teeth, and let $\frac{M}{N}=\frac{m}{n}$ when m and n are the least numbers in that ratio;

$$\therefore nM=mN,$$

and n is the least whole number of circumferences of the wheel M that are equal to a whole number of circumferences of the wheel N.

If, therefore, we begin to reckon the circumferences of each wheel that pass the line of centers, after a given pair of teeth are in contact, it is clear that after n revolutions of M, and m of N, the same two teeth will be again in contact. Neither can they have met before; for as the entire circumference of one wheel applies itself to the entire circumference of the other tooth by tooth, and as the numbers m and n are the least multiples of the respective circumferences that are equal, it follows that it is only after these respective lengths of circumferences have rolled past each other that the beginnings of each can again meet.

If we act on the watchmaker's principle, by which the contacts of the same pair are to take place very often, the numbers of the wheels M and N must be so adjusted that m and n may be the smallest possible, without materially altering the ratio $\frac{M}{N}$; and this will be effected by making the least of the two numbers m, n equal to unity, and therefore M a multiple of N.

But if the millwright's principle be adopted, m and n must be

* O. Evans, *Young Millwright's Guide*, Philadelphia, 1834, p. 193. *Vide* also Buchanan's *Essays*, by Rennie, p. 117.

† Francœur, *Mécaniqne Élémentaire*, p. 143.

as large as possible, that is, equal to M and N, or in other words, M and N must be prime to each other. The millwrights employ a *hunting cog* for this purpose. Suppose, for example, that a shaft is required to revolve about three times as fast as its driving shaft, 72 and 24 are a pair of numbers for teeth that would produce this effect and would suit a watchmaker, one being a multiple of the other; but the millwright would add one tooth to the wheel (the hunting cog), and thus obtain 73 and 24, which are prime to each other, and very nearly in the desired ratio.*

327. Sometimes also the nature of the mechanism requires that the wheels shall come as seldom as possible into the same relative positions, and in that case the principle may be applied to a train of several axes. For example, in a train of three axes, in which the drivers have each 22 teeth, and the followers 25 and 35 teeth, we have

$$\frac{L_1}{L_3}=\frac{25\times 35}{22\times 22}=\frac{484}{875};$$

which numbers are prime to each other, and therefore the extreme wheels of the train will not return to the same relative position, until one has made 484, and the other 875 revolutions. These are the numbers of the old Piemont silk-reel (1724), which is an excellent example of this principle.†

328. We are now able to calculate the relative motions of the parts in a given machine in which the velocity ratios are constant. The inverse problem is one of considerable importance in the contrivance of mechanism; namely, *Given the velocity ratio of the extreme axes or pieces of a train, to determine the number of intermediate axes, and the proportions of the wheels, or numbers of their teeth.* For simplicity we may suppose the train to consist of toothed wheels only; for a mixed train, consisting of wheels, pullies, link-work, and sliding pieces, can be calculated upon the same principles. Let the synchronal rotations of the first and last axes of the train be L_1 and L_m respectively, and let $N_1\ N_2 \ldots$ &c. be the numbers of teeth in the drivers, and $n_1\ n_2 \ldots$ in the followers: then by Art. 319,

$$\frac{L_m}{L_1}=\frac{N_1.\ N_2.\ N_3 \ldots}{n_1.\ n_2.\ n_3 \ldots}$$

* In a pair of wheels whose numbers are so obtained, any two teeth which meet in the first revolution are distant by one in the second, by two in the third, and so on; so that one tooth may be said to *hunt* the other, whence the phrase, a hunting cog.

† *Encycl. Méthodique*, 'Manufactures et Arts,' tome ii. p. 20.

and by hypothesis the value of $\frac{L_m}{L_1}$ is given, and we have to find an equal fraction whose numerator and denominator shall admit of being divided into the same number of factors of a convenient magnitude for the number of teeth of a wheel. Also to find the value of m.

Synchronal rotations are preferred to angular velocities in stating the question, because it is generally in this form that the data are supplied.

329. In any given train of wheel-work the drivers may be placed in any order upon the axes as well as the followers; for the value of the fraction $\frac{N_1 . N_2 . N_3 \ldots}{n_1 . n_2 . n_3 \ldots}$ will be unaffected by any change of order in the factors, and therefore N_1 may be placed either upon the first, second, or third axes; and similarly for the others.

330. Let w be the greatest number of teeth that can be conveniently assigned to a wheel, and p the least that can be given to a pinion. The train may be either required for the purpose of reducing or increasing velocity. In the first case, L_m will be less than L_1, and the pinions the drivers; but in the second case, L_m will be greater than L_1, and the wheels the drivers.

Let $\therefore \frac{L_1}{L_m}$ or $\frac{L_m}{L_1} = \left(\frac{w}{p}\right)$ where k may be a whole number, or a fraction. Take m equal to $k+1$ (Art. 319) if a whole number, or to the next greatest whole number to $k+1$ if a fraction. This will plainly be the least value that can be given to m.

For m must be a whole number, and if it be taken less than $k+1$ then the values of $\frac{w}{p}$ will be greater; that is, either w will become a greater number than can be assigned to a wheel, or p a less than can be given to a pinion, which is absurd.

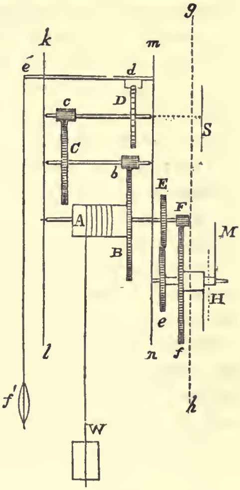
No general rule can be given for determining the values of w and p, which are governed by considerations that vary according to the nature of the proposed machine; also, it will rarely happen that the fraction will admit of being divided into factors so nearly equal as to limit the number of axes to the smallest value so assigned.

The discussion of a few examples will best explain the mode of proceeding in particular cases.

331. Fig. 259 is a diagram to represent the arrangement of the wheel-work of a clock of the simplest kind, for the pur-

pose of illustrating what follows upon trains of wheel-work in general.

Fig. 259.



The weight W is attached to the end of a cord, which is coiled round the barrel A. Upon the same axis or *arbor* * as the barrel is fixed a toothed wheel B, and this wheel drives a pinion b, which is fixed to the second arbor Cb of the train, which also carries a wheel C. This wheel drives a pinion c upon the third arbor, and upon this arbor is also fixed a toothed wheel D of a peculiar construction, termed an escapement wheel or swing-wheel. Above this wheel is an arbor ed termed the verge, which is connected with the pendulum ef of the clock, and vibrates together with it through a small arc. The verge also carries a pair of teeth which are termed pallets, and are engaged with the teeth of the swing-wheel D in such a manner, that every vibration of the pendulum and verge allows one tooth of the wheel to *escape* and pass through a space equal to half the pitch. With the nature of this connection we have at present nothing to do; for, as the motion of the clockwork is our only object, it is sufficient to know that one tooth of the swing-wheel passes the line of centers for every two vibrations of the pendulum.

Let the time of a vibration of the pendulum be t seconds, where t is a whole number or a fraction, and let the swing-wheel have e teeth, then the period or time of a complete rotation of this wheel is $2te''$. To take a simple case, let the pendulum be a seconds' pendulum; $\therefore t=1$, and if $e=30$, the swing-wheel will revolve in a minute; and if B have 48 teeth, and C 45, and the pinions 6 leaves each, we have for the train

$$\frac{L_3}{L_1}=\frac{48\times 45}{6\times 6}=60;$$

therefore A will revolve in an hour; and supposing the cord to be coiled about sixteen times round the barrel, the weight in its descent will uncoil it and turn the barrel round, communicating

* *Arbor* is the watchmaker's term for an axis; vide *note* p. 47.

motion to the entire train until the cord is completely uncoiled, which it will be after sixteen hours.

This train of wheel-work is solely destined to the purposes of communicating the action of the weight to the pendulum in such a manner as to supply the loss of motion from friction and the resistance of the air. But besides this, the clock is required to indicate the hours and minutes by the rotation of two separate hands, and accordingly two other trains of wheel-work are employed for this purpose.

The train just described is generally contained in a frame consisting of two plates, show edgewise at *kl*, *mn*, which are kept parallel and at the proper distance by means of three or four pillars, not shown in the diagram. Opposite holes are drilled in these plates, which receive the pivots of the axes or arbors already described. But the axis which carries A and B projects through the plate, and other wheels E and F are fixed to it.

Below this axis and parallel to it a stout pin or *stud* is fixed to the plate, and a tube revolves upon this stud, to one end of which is fixed the minute-hand M, and to the other a wheel e engaged with E. In our present clock E revolves in an hour, consequently the wheels E and e must be equal.

A second and shorter tube is fitted upon the tube of the minute-hand so as to revolve freely, and this carries at one end the hour-hand H, and at the other a wheel f, which is driven by the pinion F; and because f must revolve in twelve hours, it must have twelve times as many teeth as F.

332. To exhibit the ramifications of motion in a machine, and the order and nature of the several parts of which the trains are composed, it is convenient to employ a *notation*. This notation should be of such a form as not only to exhibit these particulars, but also to admit of the addition, if necessary, of dimensions and nomenclature, as well as to allow of the necessary calculations by which the velocity ratios may be deduced. To exhibit in this way the actual arrangement of the parts is out of the question; this can only be done by drawings, and the very object of a notation is to unravel the apparent confusion into which the trains of motion are thrown by the *packing* of the parts into the frame of the machine, and to place them in the order of their successive action.

Clock and watchmakers have long employed a system which consists simply in representing the wheels by the numbers of their teeth, and writing these numbers in successive lines, placing the wheels which are fixed on the same arbor on the same horizontal line, with the sign — interposed, and writing the numbers of the wheels that are in geer vertically over each other. The first driver in the train is always placed at the top of the series.

Thus in the principal train of the clock, fig. 259, if the letters represent the wheels we should write down the train thus:

B
b——*C*
c——*D*;

or, employing the numbers already selected,

48
6——45
6——30,

and adding the names, which is sometimes done,

Great wheel 48,
Pinion 6———45 second-wheel;
Pinion 6———30 swing-wheel.*

333. This method requires very little addition to make it a very convenient system for mechanism in general. Thus the entire movement of the clock, fig. 259,

```
Barrel—48—————————————25——————————4
       6—45            :          :
           6—30 swing-wheel       :
                       25—minute-hand
                                  48—hour-hand
```

may be thus represented, and by which is shown very clearly the

* Farey in Rees' *Cyclopædia*, art. 'Clockwork,' calls this the ordinary mechanical method of writing down the numbers. Oughtred in his *Opuscula*, 1677, proposes another method in which the wheels which are on the same axis are written vertically over one another, and those which are in geer are placed in the same line with the character) between; thus, (the first driver being at the bottom, and all the drivers to the right of the followers):

30
6)45
6)48

He employs, however, letters in lieu of figures, and introduces other artifices which are scarcely worth dwelling upon. Derham (*Artificial Clockmaker*, 1696) follows this method, and also uses another which consists in writing all the numbers in one line, thus, 48)6—45)6—30, where the character) implies that the wheels between which it lies geer together, and — that they are fixed on the same axis. Allexandre, *Traité général des Horloges*, 1735, writes the numbers thus, 48.6—45.6—30; and Derham also gives the 'usual way of watchmakers in writing down their numbers,' thus,

48
45—6
30—6

which, to use his own words, 'though very inconvenient in calculation, representeth a piece of work handsomely enough, and somewhat naturally.'

three trains of mechanism from the barrel to the swing-wheel, the minute-hand, and the hour-hand; as well as the distinction of the pieces into drivers and followers, and the nature of their connection; namely, whether they be permanently united by being fixed upon the same axis, or connected by geering. If, however, other connections are introduced, as by wrapping-bands, or links, this must be written in the diagram, or expressed by a proper sign. I shall have occasion to return to this subject in a future page.*

334. In the explanation of the clock, fig. 259, I have assumed the numbers of the wheel-work and of the axes; let us now examine whether these are the best for the purpose, or generally how such numbers would be determined.

If the arbor of the swing-wheel revolve in a minute, and that of the barrel in an hour, we have $\frac{L_m}{L_1}=60$; or if D be the product of all the drivers, and F of the followers, $D=60 \cdot F$, an indeterminate equation, for the solution of which any numbers may be employed that are proper for the teeth of wheels. Now in common clocks six is the least number of leaves that is ever employed in a pinion, and 60 teeth the greatest number that can be given to a wheel;

$$\therefore \frac{w}{p}=\frac{60}{6}=10.$$

Now $\frac{L_m}{L_1}=10^{1\cdot 8}$, therefore by Art. 330, 3 is the least number of axes; and there will be two pinions of six each, $\therefore D=60\times 6^2=2160$, which is the product of two wheels.

We are at liberty to divide this into any two suitable factors. The best mode of doing it is to begin by dividing the number into its prime factors, writing it in this form:

$$2160=2^4\times 3^3\times 5.$$

For this enables us to see clearly the composition of the number; and it is easy to distribute these factors into two groups; as for example,

$$2^4 \,.\, 3\times 3^2 \,.\, 5=48\times 45, \text{ or } 2^3 \,.\, 5\times 2 \,.\, 3^3=40\times 54,$$
$$\text{or } 2^2 \,.\, 3^2\times 2^2 \,.\, 3 \,.\, 5=36\times 60,$$

* Mr. Babbage is the only one who has endeavoured to extend Notation to Mechanism in general. His elaborate and complete system is fully explained in his paper on 'A method of expressing by signs the action of Machinery,' in the *Philosophical Transactions*, 1826; *vide* below, Chap. XIV., on Mechanical Notation.

The nearest to equality is the first, 48 and 45; and these will probably be selected for the train, which will stand thus:

$$\frac{D}{F}=\frac{48\times 45}{6\times 6}.$$

This is the best form in which to exhibit the numbers for a train when they have been merely divided into proper factors for teeth. If the distribution of the wheels and pinions upon the several axes is also settled, the train may then be written in the form

```
    48
6——45
    6.
```

335. Six is, however, too small a number of leaves to ensure perfect action in a pinion, for it appears in the Table (p. 108) that a pinion of 6 will only work with a wheel of 20 when the receding arc of action is equal to $\frac{2}{3}$ × pitch, and that if this arc be greater the pinion becomes impossible. A pinion of 8 will be better, but 10 or 12 should be employed if a very perfect action is required. If 8 be selected, we have $F=8^2=64$, and $D=64 \times 60$, which will form a good train.

But in well-made clocks we may allow more than 60 teeth to the wheel: 100 or even 120 is very admissible. If we begin, then, with the wheels, and assume that three arbors are to be employed,

$$\text{let } \frac{D}{F}=\frac{(100)^2}{p^2}=60\,; \quad \therefore\ p=13, \text{ nearly.}$$

$$\text{Assume, therefore, } F=12\times 14\,; \quad \therefore\ D=60\times 12\times 14 = 96\times 105\,;$$

which gives the train

```
     105
14——96
     12.
```

336. In a train of $\overline{k+1}$ axes of which every wheel has w teeth, and every pinion p leaves, we have

$$\frac{L_m}{L_1}=\left(\frac{w}{p}\right)^k = x^k \text{ if } \frac{w}{p}=x.$$

Now $xp\ (=w)$ is the number of teeth in each wheel, and $k(p+xp)$ is the entire number of teeth in the train.

$$\text{Let } \left(\frac{w}{p}\right)^k \text{ or } x^k = \text{constant} = C;$$

$$\therefore k = \frac{\text{l}C}{\text{l}x},$$

$$\text{and number of teeth } = \frac{\text{l}C}{\text{l}x} \cdot p \cdot (1+x)$$

$$= \text{a minimum.}$$

Differentiating we obtain in the usual manner,

$$\text{l}x = \frac{1+x}{x}; \text{ whence } x = 3 . 59.$$

If therefore a given angular velocity ratio is to be obtained with the least number of teeth, we must make $\frac{w}{p} = 3 . 59$. This theorem is due to Dr. Young.*

As a practical rule this is not of much value, for it proceeds on the assumption that simplicity is best consulted by reducing the number of teeth *only* as much as possible; but, in fact, it is necessary in doing this to avoid also increasing the number of axes in a train. For example, in our clock $\frac{L_m}{L_1} = 60$, which being greater than the cube of 3 . 59 would require for the least number of teeth at least three wheels; and, in fact, if we compute the number of teeth required in the case of one, two, three, and four wheels, assuming the number of leaves in the pinions to be six, we find, putting D for the denominator, and dividing it into convenient factors:

	Wheels	Total Number of Teeth
one wheel	$D = 6 \times 60 = 360$	$360 + 6 = 366$
two wheels	$D = 6^2 \times 60 = 45 \times 48$	$45 + 48 + 2 \times 6 = 105$
three wheels	$D = 6^3 \times 60 = 20 \times 27 \times 24$	$20 + 27 + 24 + 3 \times 6 = 89$
four wheels	$D = 6^4 \times 60 = 15 \times 16 \times 18 \times 18$	$15 + 16 + 18 + 18 + 4 \times 6 = 91$
five wheels	$D = 6^5 \times 60 = 12^3 \times 15 \times 18$	$3 \times 12 + 15 + 18 + 5 \times 6 = 99$

So that, as the theorem has already taught us, the least number of teeth, 89, is required when three wheels are employed. But the universal practice is to employ two wheels and pinions only in the train between the hour-arbor and swing-wheel arbor, for, in fact, the increase in the number of teeth does not occasion so great a loss of simplicity as the additional arbor with its wheel and pinion would do. Some mechanicians have fallen into the opposite error of supposing that the simplicity of the clock would

* Young's *Nat. Philosophy*, vol. ii. p. 56.

be still more improved by reducing the train to a single wheel and pinion, and hence increasing inordinately the number of teeth in the wheel. Of this nature are Ferguson's and Franklin's clocks.*

337. If a clock has no seconds' hand there is no necessity for the arbor of the swing-wheel to perform its revolution in a minute, which when the pendulum is short, would become impracticable, from the great number of teeth required. Now from Art. 331, if t be the time of vibration of the pendulum in seconds, and e the number of teeth of the swing-wheel, $2te$ is the time of rotation of the swing-wheel.

But the vibrations of small pendulums are commonly expressed by stating the number of them in a minute. Let p be this number, $\therefore \frac{2e}{p}$ is the time of one rotation of the swing-wheel in minutes, and the hour-arbor revolves in 60 minutes; the train between them is represented by $\frac{D}{F} = \frac{30p}{e}$.

Ex. The pendulum of a clock makes 170 vibrations in a minute, and there are 25 teeth in the swing-wheel, and eight leaves are to be given to the pinions; to find the wheels:

$$\frac{D}{64} = \frac{30 \times 170}{25};$$

$$\text{whence } D = 13056 = 128 \times 102.$$

338. In a watch the vibrations of the balance are much more rapid than in any pendulum-clock, varying in different constructions from 270 to 360 in a minute. Also, from the small size of the machinery it becomes impossible to put so many teeth into the wheels. The escapement-wheel, termed in a watch the balance-wheel, has from 13 to 16 teeth, instead of having, as in a clock, from 20 to 40, and the numbers of teeth in the wheels vary from 40 to 80, or in chronometers and larger work are sometimes carried as high as 96, whereas in large clocks, 130 may even be employed. Now as the number of leaves in the pinions do not admit of reduction, the consequence is, that an additional arbor must be employed in watches, and the train of wheel-work between the hour-arbor and the arbor of the balance-wheel consists of 3 wheels and 3 pinions, instead of the two pair employed in a clock.

Ex. The balance of a watch makes 360 vibrations in a minute,

* *Vide* Ferguson's *Mechanical Exercises*, or any *Encyclopædia.*

and there are 15 teeth in the balance-wheel, and eight leaves in the pinions; to find the wheels:

Here $F=8\times8\times8$,

$$\text{and } D=8^3\frac{30\times360}{15}=368640=80\times72\times64.$$

339. The examples of clock-trains already given, refer merely to the connection between the hour-arbor and the swing-wheel, and it has been assumed throughout that the barrel for the weight is carried by the hour-arbor; but in this case the clock will not go for more than sixteen hours, and must therefore be wound up every night and morning. If it be required to go longer the barrel must be fixed to a separate axis, and this connected by wheel-work with the hour-arbor, so that the barrel may revolve much more slowly, and consequently allow the weight to occupy a longer time in its descent.

Now the cord, as we have seen, is wound spirally round the barrel, and by making the barrel of the requisite length, we could of course make it hold as many coils as we please.

But in practice it is found that if more than about sixteen coils are placed on it, it becomes inconveniently long. So that if the clock be required to go for eight days without fresh winding up, each turn of the barrel will occupy twelve hours. As the arbor of the hour-hand revolves in one hour, any pair of wheels whose ratio is 12 will answer the purpose of connecting them; 96 and 8 are the numbers usually employed, which will produce this train:—

Train for Eight-day Clock	Periods
96..........................	12^h
8—105.....................	1^h
8 — 96.............	
8 — 30......	$1'$

340. If the clock be required to go a month, or 32 days, without winding, then supposing the barrel, as before, to have sixteen turns, each turn of the barrel will occupy 48 hours, and the train from the barrel to the hour-arbor $=\frac{D}{F}=48$, which is too great a number for a single pair, but will do very well for two. If pinions of nine are employed,

$$D=9\times9\times48=72\times54;$$

which numbers being small we are at liberty to employ larger pinions; for example, if we take twelve and sixteen,

$$D = 12 \times 16 \times 48 = 96 \times 96;$$

whence the following train:—

Train for Month-Clock	Periods
96................................	48^h
16 — 96......................	...
12 — 105..............	1^h
8 — 96.......	...
8 — 30	$1'$

341. Now in the clock (fig. 259), the arbor of A is made to revolve in an hour, because the wheels E and e are equal. By making these wheels of different numbers, we get rid of the necessity of providing an arbor in the principal train that shall revolve in an hour, and may by that means, in an eight-day clock, or month-clock, distribute the wheels more equally. For example, in an eight-day clock let the swing-wheel revolve in a minute, and let the train from the barrel-arbor to this minute-arbor be $\frac{108 \times 108 \times 100}{12 \times 12 \times 10} = 810$, in which the barrel will revolve in 810 minutes or thirteen hours and a half, and consequently fourteen or fifteen coils of the cord will be sufficient.

The second wheel in this train, which in fig. 259 corresponds to B, will revolve in $\frac{12}{108} \times 810$ minutes, or an hour and a half, and on its arbor must be fixed, as in the figure, the two wheels E and F for the minute and hour-hands; consequently the ratio of

$$\frac{F}{f} = \frac{1}{8}, \text{ and } \frac{E}{e} = \frac{3}{2}.$$

It is convenient that the size or pitch of the teeth in these two pairs should be about the same. To effect this, let x be the multiplier of the first ratio, and y of the second; so that x and $8x$ are the numbers of teeth in the first pair, and $3y$, $2y$ in the second. Then, if the teeth of the two pairs be of the same pitch, we have

$$x + 8x = 3y + 2y, \text{ or } 9x = 5y; \therefore x = \frac{5y}{9}.$$

Let $y=9z$; $\therefore\ x=5z$;

and if $z=1$, $y=9$, $x=5$, numbers are $\frac{5}{40}$ and $\frac{27}{18}$

$z=2$, $y=18$, $x=10$,.............. $\frac{10}{80}$ and $\frac{54}{36}$;

either of which may be adopted.

Train of Eight-day Clock	Periods
108..	810′
12 — 108 ———— 54 ———— 10	90′
12 — 110..	...
10 — 30..	1′
36 — minute-hand	60′
80 — hour-hand	720′

I have confined the above examples to clockwork, because its action is more generally intelligible than that of other machines; but the principles and methods are universally applicable, or at least require very slight modifications to adapt them to particular cases.

TO OBTAIN APPROXIMATE NUMBERS FOR TRAINS.

342. If $\frac{L_m}{L_1}=a$ when a is a prime number, or one whose prime factors are too large to be conveniently employed in wheel-work, an approximation may be resorted to. For example, assume $\frac{L_m}{L_1}=a\pm E$. This will introduce an error of $\pm E$ revolutions of the last axis, during one of the first, and the nature of the machinery in question can alone determine whether this is too great a liberty.

But we may obtain a better approximation than this, without unnecessarily increasing the number of axes in the train; for determine in the manner already explained the least number m of axes that would be necessary if a were decomposable, and the number of leaves that the nature of the machine makes it expedient to bestow on the pinions, and let F be the product of the pinions so determined;

$$\therefore\ \frac{L_m}{L_1} \text{ or } \frac{D}{F}=\frac{Fa}{F}, \text{ supposing the wheels to drive.}$$

$$\text{Assume } \frac{D}{F} = \frac{Fa \pm E}{F};$$

where E must be taken as small as possible, but so as to obtain for $Fa \pm E$ a numerical value decomposable into factors. There will be in this case an error of $\pm E$ revolutions in the last axis during F of the first, or of $\frac{\pm E}{F}$ revolutions during one of the first.

If the pinions be the drivers, then in the same manner assume $\frac{L_1}{L_m} = \frac{Da \pm E}{D}$; and there will be an error of $\frac{\pm E}{D}$ revolutions in the first axis during one of the last.

343 Ex. Let it be required to make $\frac{L}{L_1} = 269$ nearly. Now if the nearest whole number 270 be taken, a train may be formed, but with an error of one revolution in 270. But suppose that from the nature of the machine, a ratio of $\frac{1}{8}$ is the greatest that can be allowed between wheel and pinion, then since 269 lies between 8^2 and 8^3, it appears that three pairs of wheels and pinions are necessary.

If pinions of 10 are employed, $\frac{D}{F} = \frac{269000}{1000}$,

and $\frac{269001}{1000} = \frac{3^8 \times 41}{10^3}$, will make a very good train,

with an error of $\frac{1}{1000}$ of a revolution only in 269.

344. Ex. 2. Let it be required to find a train that shall connect the twelve-hour wheel of a clock with a wheel revolving in a lunation, $= 29^d.\ 12^h.\ 44'$ nearly, for the purpose of showing the moon's age upon a dial. Reducing the periods to minutes, we have

$$\frac{L_1}{L_m} = \frac{42524}{720},$$

of which the denominator ($= 2^2 \times 10631$) contains a large prime, but

$$\frac{42524 + 1}{720} = \frac{945}{16} = \frac{3^3.5.7}{2^4},$$

is well adapted to form a train of wheel-work, with an error of one minute in a lunation.

345. This method is sufficient for ordinary purposes, but if

greater accuracy be required, or if the terms of the fraction, although divisible into proper factors, should require so many wheels and pinions as to make it necessary to find a fraction which shall approximate to the value in smaller terms, then *continued fractions* must be resorted to.

$\frac{L_1}{L_m}$ being given in the form of a fraction with large terms, must be treated in the usual manner * to obtain the series of principal and intermediate fractions, which must be separately examined until one is found that will admit of a convenient division into factors, and at the same time approximate with sufficient accuracy.

346. Ex. *To find an annual train.*

Let it be required to find a train of wheel-work for a clock, by means of which a wheel may be made to revolve in an exact year, that is, in 365 days, 5 hours, 48 minutes, 48 seconds.†

If the hours, minutes, and seconds, be reduced to decimals of a day, the period becomes $365{\cdot}24\dot{2}$ days; and supposing the pinion from which the motion is to be derived to revolve in one day, the required ratio becomes $\frac{365{\cdot}24\dot{2}}{1{\cdot}000}$, which by the common rule for circulating decimals is equal to

$$\frac{365242-36524}{900}=\frac{328718}{900}=\frac{164359}{450},$$

when in its lowest terms.

Now as the nearest whole number to this is 365, it appears that three axes, at least, would be required to produce this variation of motion, and therefore the fraction itself would not be in terms too great, provided it were manageable. Now

$$\frac{164359}{450}=\frac{269\times 47\times 13}{10\times 9\times 5};$$

which has an inconveniently large number, 269, but has been actually employed to form a train, in Mr. Pearson's Orrery for Equated Motions ‡, in this form,

$$\frac{269\times 26\times 94}{10\times 10\times 18}.$$

* *Vide* Euler's *Algebra,* Barlow *on Numbers,* or Bonnycastle's *Algebra,* &c.

† The length of the year determined by different astronomers varies in the number of seconds from $47''{\cdot}95$ to $51''{\cdot}6$; the mean of five results is $49''{\cdot}77$.

‡ Rees' *Cyclopædia*, art. Orrery.

If the ratio be treated by the method of continued fractions, we obtain in the usual manner,

Quotients		365	4	7	1	3	1	2	
Principal Fractions	$\frac{0}{1}$	$\frac{1}{0}$	$\frac{365}{1}$	$\frac{1461}{4}$	$\frac{10592}{29}$	$\frac{12053}{33}$	$\frac{46751}{128}$	(B) $\frac{58804}{161}$	(A) $\frac{164359}{450}$
Intermediate Fractions							$\frac{34698}{95}$ $\frac{22645}{62}$		(C) $\frac{105555}{289}$

The whole of these fractions will be found unmanageable, from containing large primes, with the exception of those marked *A*, *B* and *C*, of which *A* is the original fraction.

$$(B)=\frac{241 \times 61 \times 4}{7 \times 23}=\frac{241 \times 61 \times 52}{23 \times 13 \times 7}$$

corresponds to a period of 365^{d}. 5^{h}. $48' \cdot 49'' \cdot 19218$; this has been employed by Janvier.*

$$(C)=\frac{105555}{289}=\frac{227 \times 31 \times 15}{17 \times 17}$$

is equivalent to a period of 365^{d}. 5^{h}. $48'$. $47'' \cdot 3$, and is rather more accurate than the last; but as they each include a large wheel, it appears that the original fraction is quite as convenient.

347. If, as in the example just cited, the series of fractions obtained will not give a sufficiently convenient result, the more general method which follows may be employed, which, however, requires the calculation of the continued fractions, at least of the principal fractions as they are called, and which, therefore, will not supersede the method just explained, but may be used after it, should it be found to fail.

To find a fraction $\frac{x}{y}$ very near to $\frac{a}{b}$, we have their difference $=\frac{a}{b}-\frac{x}{y}=\frac{ay-bx}{by}=\frac{k}{by}$, suppose:

k will be by the supposition a very small integer, compared with by, and either positive or negative; to find k, we have the indeterminate equation $ay-bx=k$. Let the fraction $\frac{a}{b}$ be converted

* Rees' *Cyclopædia*, art. Planetary Machines.

into a series of principal converging fractions, and let $\frac{p}{q}$ be the last but one, then it can be shown * that the following expressions will include all the solutions of this equation that are possible in integer numbers: $x=pk+ma$, $y=qk+mb$,

$$\text{and } \frac{x}{y}=\frac{pk+ma}{qk+mb}$$

will be the approximate fraction required, in which m may be any whole number, positive or negative, as well as k, but k must be small with respect to by or ax. Thus a multitude of values of $\frac{x}{y}$ may be obtained, from whence the one may be chosen that best admits of decomposition into factors. The only part of this process which is left to choice is the selection of values for k and m. The numbers obtained from them for x and y must necessarily be small, for we are seeking numbers less than a and b, and therefore k and m must have different signs, but even with this limit there is an infinite latitude given to the choice.

Assume $k=0,-1,+1,-2$, and so on; and in each case take such values of m as will make the values of x and y not too great for the purpose, trying always whether the pair of results are decomposable into factors, and if they be, then proceeding to calculate the consequent error. In this way a pair of numbers will at last be found, that will give sufficient exactness without employing too much wheel-work.† Tables of factors will greatly assist in these operations.‡

348. For example, to find a fraction $\frac{x}{y}$ very near to $\frac{45}{14}$, (Art. 350.) the last fraction but one of the series of principal converging fractions is $\frac{16}{5}$, and putting these numbers in the expression for $\frac{x}{y}$, we have

$$\frac{16k+m\,45}{5k+m\,14}.$$

* Euler's *Algebrà*, p. 530. Barlow *on Numbers*, p. 317. Francœur, *Cours de Mathématiques*, Art. 565. Par. 1819.

† Francœur, *Dict. Technologique*, tom. xiv. p. 423, and *Traité de Mécanique*, p. 146.

‡ Such as Barlow's *New Mathematical Tables*, 1814. Chernac. *Cribrum Arithmeticum*, Davent. 1811. Burckhardt, *Table des Diviseurs*. Par. 1817.

Barlow's Table extends only to 10,000, Chernac's to 1,019,999, and Burckhardt's to 3,035,999.

$$\text{Let } m=1 \quad k=-1, \therefore \frac{x}{y}=\frac{29}{9}.$$

$$m=1 \quad k=-2 \qquad \frac{x}{y}=\frac{13}{4}.$$

$$m=2 \quad k=-3 \qquad \frac{x}{y}=\frac{42}{13}.$$

Two of these have already been obtained from the series of converging fractions, but the third, $\frac{42}{13}$, is a new one. In fact, since the expression $\frac{ma+pk}{mb+qk}$ includes the whole of the principal and secondary converging fractions, as well as many other approximate values of the original fraction, it must be expected that some assumed values of m and k will reproduce these already calculated approximations.

But the coexisting values of m and p that belong to the converging fractions, may be obtained at once, to save this useless trouble. For this purpose, write the quotients obtained from the original fraction in a *reverse order*, and proceed to deduce converging fractions from them in the usual manner, both principal and intermediate. Then will the numerator and denominator of each fraction of this new set be the coexisting values of m and k, that belong to a corresponding fraction in the first set, supposing it to be represented by the formula $\frac{ma-pk}{mb-qk}$, the principal fractions in one set corresponding reversely to those of the other set, and likewise the intermediates to the intermediates. It is useless, therefore, to try a pair of values of m and k so obtained, but any other pair will give new fractions.

349. For in the series of converging fractions,

$$\frac{A}{A_1}, \frac{B}{B_1}, \frac{C}{C_1}, \frac{D}{D_1}, \frac{E}{E_1},$$

in which $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \varepsilon$ are the quotients, it is known that

$$\begin{aligned}
&A=\alpha,\\
&B=\beta A+1=\alpha\beta+1,\\
&C=\gamma B+A=(\alpha\beta+1)\,\gamma+\alpha,\\
&D=\delta C+B=\{\,(\alpha\beta+1)\,\gamma+\alpha\}\,\delta+\alpha\beta+1.\\
&E=\varepsilon D+C=\&c....
\end{aligned}$$

$$A_1=1,$$
$$B_1=\beta,$$
$$C_1=\beta\gamma+1,$$
$$D_1=(\beta\gamma+1)\,\delta+\beta, \text{ \&c.}$$

(Euler's Algebra, p. 476.)

Whence we obtain

$$C=E-\varepsilon D,$$
$$-B=\delta E-(\delta\varepsilon+1)\,.\,D,$$
$$A=(\gamma\delta+1)\,E-\{(\delta\varepsilon+1)\,\gamma+\varepsilon)\}D.$$

In which the coexisting values of the coefficients of E and D, the last and last but one of the series of numerators, are 1 and ε, δ and $\delta\varepsilon+1$, $\gamma\delta+1$ and $(\delta\varepsilon+1)\,\gamma+\varepsilon$, and so on, which manifestly follow the same law as the corresponding values of A_1 and A, B_1 and B, &c., if we substitute $\varepsilon\delta\gamma\beta a$ for $a\beta\gamma\delta\varepsilon$ respectively. Also the same may be similarly shown for the denominators A_1, B_1, C_1,... &c., as well as for the intermediate fractions. The coefficients of E and D will therefore be obtained from these quotients, if we treat them in this reverse order in the same manner as when we obtain from them the values of the successive converging fractions. And since E and D correspond to a and p, their coefficients are the values of m and k in the formula $\frac{ma-pk}{mb-qk}$, which belong to the continued fractions.

350. To show this more clearly take this example, $\frac{45}{14}$, which treated in the usual manner gives the following set of quotients and converging fractions.

Quotients		3	4	1	2	
Principal Fractions	(a) $\frac{0}{1}$	(b) $\frac{1}{0}$	(c) $\frac{3}{1}$	(d) $\frac{13}{4}$	(e) $\frac{16}{5}$	(f) $\frac{45}{14}$
Intermediate Fractions			(b′) $\frac{2}{1}$	(c′) $\frac{10}{3}$		(e′) $\frac{29}{9}$
			(b″) $\frac{1}{1}$	(c″) $\frac{7}{2}$		
				(c‴) $\frac{4}{1}$		

Writing the quotients in the reverse order and proceeding as before, we obtain the following set.

Quotients			2	1	4	3	
Principal Fractions	(f) $\frac{0}{1}$	(e) $\frac{1}{0}$	(d) $\frac{2}{1}$	(c) $\frac{3}{1}$	(b) $\frac{14}{5}$	(a) $\frac{45}{16}$	
Intermediate Fractions			(e′) $\frac{1}{1}$		(c‴) $\frac{11}{4}$ (c″) $\frac{8}{3}$ (c′) $\frac{5}{2}$	(b″) $\frac{31}{11}$ (b′) $\frac{17}{6}$	

Now every one of the fractions in the last set consist of the value of $\frac{m}{k}$ that belongs to one of the fractions of the first set, as shown by the corresponding letters of reference; the fractions of the first set being supposed to be represented by the formula

$$\frac{m \times 45 - k \times 16}{m \times 14 - k \times 5}.$$

This is shown in the following table:

	$\frac{m}{k}$	Principal Fractions	$\frac{m}{k}$	Intermediate Fractions	
f	$\frac{0}{1}$	$\frac{1 \times 45 - 0 \times 16}{1 \times 14 - 0 \times 5} = \frac{45}{14}$	$\frac{1}{1}$	$\frac{1 \times 45 - 1 \times 16}{1 \times 14 - 1 \times 5} = \frac{29}{9}$	e′
e	$\frac{1}{0}$	$\frac{0 \times 45 - 1 \times 16}{0 \times 14 - 1 \times 5} = \frac{16}{5}$	$\frac{11}{4}$	$\frac{4 \times 45 - 11 \times 16}{4 \times 14 - 11 \times 5} = \frac{4}{1}$	c‴
d	$\frac{2}{1}$	$\frac{1 \times 45 - 2 \times 16}{1 \times 14 - 2 \times 5} = \frac{13}{4}$	$\frac{8}{3}$	$\frac{3 \times 45 - 8 \times 16}{3 \times 14 - 8 \times 5} = \frac{7}{2}$	c″
c	$\frac{3}{1}$	$\frac{1 \times 45 - 3 \times 16}{1 \times 14 - 3 \times 5} = \frac{3}{1}$	$\frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{2 \times 45 - 5 \times 16}{2 \times 14 - 5 \times 5} = \frac{10}{3}$	c′
b	$\frac{14}{5}$	$\frac{5 \times 45 - 14 \times 16}{5 \times 14 - 14 \times 5} = \frac{1}{0}$	$\frac{31}{11}$	$\frac{11 \times 45 - 31 \times 16}{11 \times 14 - 31 \times 5} = \frac{1}{1}$	b′
a	$\frac{45}{16}$	$\frac{16 \times 45 - 45 \times 16}{16 \times 14 - 45 \times 5} = \frac{0}{1}$	$\frac{17}{6}$	$\frac{6 \times 45 - 17 \times 16}{6 \times 14 - 17 \times 5} = \frac{2}{1}$	b

Any other integrals substituted for m and k will give new approximate fractions; as for example,

$$\frac{2 \times 45 - 3 \times 16}{2 \times 14 - 3 \times 5} = \frac{42}{13} = 3{\cdot}230,$$

$$\frac{3 \times 45 - 7 \times 16}{3 \times 14 - 7 \times 5} = \frac{23}{7} = 3{\cdot}285,$$

the decimals serve to show the closeness of the approximation for the original fraction, $\frac{45}{14}=3{\cdot}214$.

351. If we apply this method to the example (Art. 346) of an annual movement, the approximate fraction becomes

$$\frac{164359\times k-m\times 58804}{450\times k-m\times 161},$$

in which k and m may have any values; for example,

$$\frac{7\times 164359-22\times 58804}{7\times 450-22\times 161}=\frac{143175}{392}=\frac{25\times 69\times 83}{8\times 7\times 7},$$

corresponding to a period of $365^{d}.\ 5^{h}.\ 48'.\ 58''{\cdot}6944$ (error $10''{\cdot}39$). This is the annual train which has been calculated by a different method by P. Allexandre, in 1734, and afterwards by Camus and Ferguson.

However, the expression,

$$\frac{3\times 164359-10\times 58804}{3\times 450-10\times 161}=\frac{94963}{260}=\frac{11\times 89\times 97}{2^2\times 5\times 13},$$

which corresponds to a period of $365\ .\ 5^{h}.\ 48'.\ 55''{\cdot}38$, is quite as convenient, and rather more accurate.

In a train of this kind one or more endless screws may be introduced, by way of saving teeth; for example, in the fraction last cited the numerator does not admit of being divided into less than three wheels; but the denominator may be distributed between two pinions and an endless screw (remembering that the latter is equivalent to a pinion of one leaf) thus, $1\times 20\times 13$, or $1\times 10\times 26$. If the endless screw be not convenient, then the terms of the fraction must be multiplied by 4, to make the numbers of the denominator large enough for three pinions, and the train will stand thus,

$$\frac{44\times 89\times 97}{8\times 10\times 13}.$$

352. Ex. *To find a lunar train that shall derive its motion from the twelve-hour arbor of a clock.*

The mean synodic period of the Moon is $29^{d}.\ 12^{h}.\ 44'.\ 2''{\cdot}8032$, which is exactly equal to $29^{h}{\cdot}530588$, or nearly $29^{d}{\cdot}5306$, and since twelve hours is equal to $0^{d}{\cdot}5$, the ratio will be $\frac{295306}{5000}$, or, dividing each term by 2, $\frac{147653}{2500}$; from which the following quotients and fractions may be obtained.

Quotients	59	16	2	1	16	3	
Principal Fractions		$\frac{59}{1}$	(A) $\frac{945}{16}$	$\frac{1949}{33}$	$\frac{2894}{49}$	$\frac{48253}{817}$	$\frac{147653}{2500}$
Secondary Fractions					(C) $\frac{4843}{82}$	(D) $\frac{99400}{1683}$	
					(B) $\frac{19313}{327}$		

Now as the whole number nearest to the original fraction is 59, which is less than 8^2, it is clear that two pair of wheels should suffice. The whole of the secondary fractions which would not admit of reduction, are omitted. The principal fractions are refractory, with the exception of (A), $\frac{945}{16}=\frac{3^2\ 5.\ 7}{4^2}$, which has been employed by Ferguson and by Mr. Pearson; it corresponds to a period of $29^d.\ 12^h.\ 45'$ exactly, and has an error in excess of $57''\cdot 2$; as it is a multiple of seven it may be introduced into a clock which has a weekly arbor.

This fraction has been already obtained by a coarser method in (Art. 344).

$(B)=\frac{19313}{327}=\frac{7\times 31\times 89}{3\times 109}$ has an error in defect of $0''\cdot 6$ in each lunation.

$(C)=\frac{4843}{82}=\frac{29\times 167}{2\times 41}$ has an error of $-\ 8''\cdot 6$.

$(D)=\frac{99400}{1683}=\frac{2^3\times 5^2\times 7\times 71}{3^2\times 11\times 17}$ has an error of $+\ 1''\cdot 03$.

Other results may be obtained from the expression,

$\frac{147653\times k-m\times 48253}{2500\times k-m\times 817}$, as in the following Table.

	Values of		$\frac{D}{F}$	$\frac{D}{F}$ in Factors	Error in a Lunation
	k	m			
a	12	59	$\frac{41520}{703}$	$\frac{5 \times 48 \times 173}{19 \times 37}$	$-0''\cdot 4$
	31	97	$\frac{103298}{1749}$	$\frac{2 \times 13 \times 29 \times 137}{3 \times 11 \times 53}$	$+0''\cdot 08$
b	29	89	$\frac{12580}{213}$	$\frac{2^2 \times 5 \times 17 \times 37}{3 \times 71}$	$-6''\cdot 18$
c	76	233	$\frac{21321}{361}$	$\frac{103 \times 23 \times 9}{19 \times 19}$	$-9''\cdot 84$
d	29	92	$\frac{157339}{2664}$	$\frac{7^2 \times 13^2 \times 19}{2^3 \times 3^2 \times 37}$	$+0''\cdot 44$
e	11	35	$\frac{64672}{1095}$	$\frac{2^5 \times 43 \times 47}{3 \times 5 \times 73}$	$+0''\cdot 48$
	1633	5000	$\frac{147651}{2500}$	$\frac{3 \times 7 \times 79 \times 89}{2^2 \times 5^4}$	$-33''\cdot 5$

Of these *a* is a train given by Francœur, *b* and *c* by Allexandre, *d* by Camus, *e* by Mr. Pearson; each of these writers having arrived at his result by a method of his own.*

353. The early mechanists were content with much more humble approximations, and employed a great number of unnecessary wheels. In the annual movement of the planetary clock, by Orontius Finæus (about 1700), the following annual train is employed, from a wheel which revolves in three days.†

```
12——48
      36——180
            48——48
                  24——146 = 365/1.
```

A train of half the number of wheels would do as well, thus

$$\frac{60 \times 73}{6 \times 6}, \text{ or } \frac{146 \times 180}{12 \times 18}.$$

Again Oughtred,‡ in 1677, is satisfied to represent the synodic period of the Moon by $29\frac{1}{2}$ days, and employs the train $\frac{40 \times 59}{10 \times 4}$.

* *Vide* Francœur, *Mécanique Élémentaire*, p. 146. Allexandre, *Traité Général des Horloges*, p. 188. Camus *On the Teeth of Wheels*. Rees' *Cyclopædia*, art. 'Planetary Numbers.'

† Allexandre, p. 167.

‡ Oughtred, *Opuscula*.

Huyghens employed for the first time continued fractions in the calculation of this kind of wheelwork.*

354. Let it be required to connect an arbor with the hour arbor of an ordinary clock, in such a manner that it may revolve in a sidereal day; so as to indicate sidereal time upon a dial, while the ordinary hands of the clock show mean time upon their own dial.

Twenty-four hours of sidereal time are equivalent to $23^h. 56'. 4''\cdot0906$ of mean solar. Neglecting the decimals and reducing to seconds, we obtain 86400″ of sidereal time, equivalent to 86164″ of mean time, and therefore one wheel must make 86400 turns while the other makes 86164, or dividing by the common factor 4, we get

$$\frac{S_1}{S^m}=\frac{21600}{21541}, \text{ an unmanageable fraction.}$$

Approximating as before, we obtain the expression

$$\frac{3651\ k+21541.\ m}{3661\ k+21600.\ m},$$

in which $k=-4$, $m=7$, gives

$$\frac{1096}{1099}=\frac{8\times137}{7\times157},$$

with a daily sidereal error of $0''\cdot0586$, or $21''\ \frac{1}{2}$ in the year.†

355. Another mode of indicating sidereal and solar time in the same clock, consists in placing behind the ordinary hour hand a movable dial concentric with and smaller than the fixed dial.‡ Both dials must in this case be divided into twenty-four hours. The hand of the clock performs a revolution in twenty-four solar hours, and therefore indicates mean solar time upon the fixed dial as usual, but a slow retrograde motion is given to the movable dial, so that the same hand shall point upon the latter to the sidereal time which corresponds to the solar time shown upon the fixed dial. For this purpose it is evident that during each revolution of the hour hand, the moving dial must retrograde through an angle corresponding to the quantity which sidereal time has gained upon solar time in twenty-four hours; which is $3'.56''\cdot555=236''\cdot555$, and as the entire circumference of the dial contains 86400″, we have

* Hugenii *Op. posth.* 1703. † This is Francœur's result.

‡ This method is due to Mr. Margett, the details of his mechanism may be found in Rees' *Cyclopædia*, art, ' Dialwork.

$$\frac{\text{Ang. vel. of hour hand}}{\text{Ang. vel. of dial}} = \frac{86400000}{236555} = 60 \times \frac{288000}{47311}.$$

From this fraction approximate numbers may be obtained, by which the proper wheel-work for the motion of the dial can be set out.

The fraction $\frac{288000}{47311}$ reduced to continued fractions gives

Quotients	6	11	2	3	1	152	
Fractions		$\frac{6}{1}$	$\frac{67}{11}$	$\frac{140}{33}$	$\frac{487}{80}$ (A)	$\frac{627}{103}$ (B)	&c.

(A) contains a large prime, 487, but is employed by Mr. Margett. $(B) = \frac{3 \times 11 \times 19}{103}$ contains a smaller number, and is a better approximation.

CHAPTER XIV.

ON MECHANICAL NOTATION.

356. In complex machines, of which the parts move according to different laws, and with continually varying relations of velocity and direction, it becomes exceedingly difficult to retain in the mind all the cotemporaneous movements; and a notation is in such cases of almost indispensable service. I have already shown how in this manner the trains of machines that move with a constant velocity ratio and directional relation may be conveniently represented; and shall now proceed to explain how the more complicated connections and motions of the last two chapters may be reduced to notation. The only writer who has endeavoured to form a system for this purpose is Mr. Babbage. His method is not a mere hypothetical device framed to meet an imaginary difficulty; but actually arose from the necessity of the case, during the construction and arrangement of one of the most involved and complicated engines that was ever devised; and having been thus applied to practice, has been found to answer its purpose perfectly. Some parts of this notation belong to mechanical combinations of which we have not yet spoken; I shall therefore, in this place, give an account of the system only so far as it applies to the contrivances hitherto explained.*

Dr. Hooke mentions in several places of his printed discourses, 'a Method I had made for myself for Mechanick Inventions,' or as in another place he calls it 'a Mechanick Algebra for solving any Probleme in Mechanicks, as easily and certainly as any geometrick by Algebra;' and says that by this, his method, he could readily determine whether any such problem was possible, and if so, which was the nearest and easiest way of solving it.†

357. Every one who has been engaged in the construction and invention of complex machinery, or who attempts to examine the

* *Vide* 'A Method of Expressing by Signs the Action of Machinery,' by C. Babbage, Esq., *Phil. Tr.* 1826, from which paper the following account of the method is derived.

† Waller's *Life*, p. iv.

various motions of an existing machine which is presented to him for the first time, must have experienced great inconvenience from the difficulty of ascertaining from drawings the state of motion or rest of any individual part at any given instant of time; and if it becomes necessary to enquire into the state of several parts at the same moment, the labour is much increased.

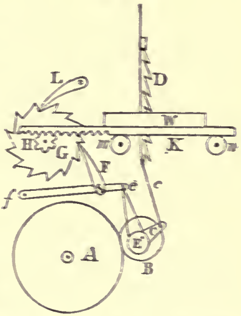
In the description of machinery by means of drawings, it is generally only possible to represent an engine in one particular state of its action. If, indeed, it is very simple in its operation, a succession of drawings may be made of it in each state of its progress, which will represent its whole course; but this rarely happens, and is attended with the inconvenience and expense of numerous drawings.

The difficulty of retaining in the mind all the cotemporaneous and successive movements of a complicated machine, and the still greater difficulty of properly timing movements which had already been provided for, led at length to the investigation of a method by which at a glance the eye might select any particular part, and find at any given time its state of motion or rest, its relation to the motion of any other part of the machine, and, if necessary, trace back the sources of its movement through all its successive stages, to the original moving power. The forms of ordinary language being far too diffuse to be employed in this case, and experience having shown the vast power which analysis derives from the great condensation of meaning in its notation, the language of signs was resorted to for the present purpose.

358. To make the system more easily intelligible, it will be better to apply it as we go on to some machine. The example taken for this purpose in the original paper is a complete eight-day clock with going and striking parts; but this machine is so complex as to require a large folio plate for its notation, as well as other plates to explain its construction. I shall therefore take a simpler machine, a common saw-mill. Although this machine is so easily understood as not to require the assistance of a notation, it will answer the purpose of exemplifying the method as well, and perhaps better, than a more complicated arrangement.

Fig. 260 is a diagram to explain the connection of parts in the saw-mill, but is not drawn with any attention to the exact proportion or arrangement, which may be found in any encyclopædia or elementary book of machinery. *A* is a toothed wheel which may be supposed to be driven either by a water-wheel, or steam-engine, and its teeth are engaged with those of a second and smaller wheel *B*, on whose axis is fixed a crank *C* and an excentric *E*. The crank is connected by a link *c* with the saw-frame *D*, this is fitted between vertical guides, and therefore when the crank revolves receives a vertical oscillating motion.

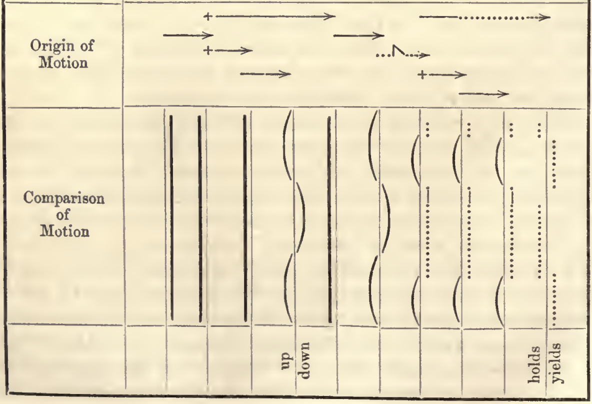
Fig. 260.



The timber *W* which is submitted to the action of the saw is clamped to a carriage which moves upon rollers *m*, *n*, in a horizontal direction. While the saw is in motion as above described, the carriage and timber are made to advance in the following manner. The eccentric *E* communicates an oscillating motion to a lever *ef*, whose center of motion is *f*; this lever carries a click *F*, which acts upon the teeth of a ratchet-wheel *G*, to which an intermittent rotation is thus given. Upon the axis of *G* is a pinion *H*, which geering with a rack fixed to the wood-carriage, causes the latter to advance towards the saw with the same intermittent motion. This intermission is adjusted to the motion of the saw-frame, so that when the saw rises the wood shall advance, and when the saw descends, and therefore cuts, the wood shall remain at rest. The cut is made by the inclined position of the saw, the toothed edge of which is not vertical but slightly inclined forwards, so as to bring the teeth into successive action during the descent of the frame. The detent *L* serves to hold the ratchet-wheel, and therefore the wood-carriage, firm in its position during the cut. Now all these conditions of motion are very easily represented by the notation which we shall proceed to explain, and which is exhibited on the next page.

359. The first thing to be done in reducing any machine to the notation, is to make an accurate enumeration of all the moving parts, and to appropriate, if possible, a name to each; for the multitude of different contrivances in various machinery precludes all idea of substituting signs for these parts. They must therefore be written down in succession, only observing to preserve such an order that those which jointly concur for accomplishing the effect of any separate part of the machine may be found situated near to each other, or in other words, that the succession of parts in each train may be observed as much as possible. Thus in the saw-mill, against the word 'Names' in the first column will be found written in order, first the parts constituting the

	SAW-MILL									
	Train to Saw				Train to Wood-carriage					
Names	Cog-wheel	Cog-wheel	Crank	Saw-frame	Excentric	Lever and Click	Ratchet-wheel	Pinion	Rack and Wood-carriage	Detent
Signs	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	K
Number of Teeth	96	22					60	20		
Linear Velocity per minute									6in	
Annular Velocity per minute	11	50	50		50					
Comparative Velocity										



train from the primary axis to the saw, next those which form the train to the wood-carriage.

Each of these names is attached to a faint line which runs longitudinally down the page, and which may for the sake of reference be called its *indicating line.*

To connect the notation with the drawings of the machine, the letters which in the several drawings refer to the same parts are placed upon the indicating lines immediately under the names of the things. If there be more drawings than one of the machine, the same letters should always refer to the same parts.

A line immediately succeeding that which contains the references to the drawings, is devoted to the number of teeth on each wheel or sector, or the number of pins or studs on each revolving barrel.

Three lines immediately succeeding this are appropriated to the indication of the velocities of the several parts of the machine. The first must have on the indicating line of all those parts which have a *rectilinear* motion, numbers expressing the velocity with which those parts move; and if this velocity is variable, two numbers may be written, one expressing the greatest, the other the least velocity of the part. The second line must have numbers expressing the angular velocity of all those parts which revolve; the time of revolution of some one of them may be taken as the unit of the measure of angular velocity; or the same may be expressed in the usual method by the number of turns per minute.

If a wheel communicate an intermitting motion to another, the ratios of their angular velocities and comparative velocities will differ; for example, if the two wheels have the same angular velocity when they both move, but one of them remain at rest during half a revolution of the other. In this case their angular velocities are equal, but their comparative velocities as 1 to 2, for the latter wheel makes two revolutions while the other makes only one. A line is devoted to the numbers which thus arise, and is entitled 'Comparative Angular Velocity.' No example, however, of this occurs in our Saw-mill.

360. The next compartment of the notation is appropriated to showing the origin of motion of each part, that is, the course through which the moving power is transmitted, and the particular modes by which each part derives its movement from that immediately preceding it in the order of action. The sign chosen to indicate this transmission of motion (an arrow) is one very generally employed to denote the direction of motion in mechani-

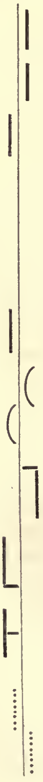
cal drawings; it will therefore readily suggest the *direction* in which the movement is transmitted. As there are various ways by which the motion is communicated, the arrow is modified so as to exhibit them as far as is necessary. Our author reduces them to the following:

One piece may receive its motion from another by being permanently attached to it, as a pin on a wheel, or a wheel and pinion on the same axis.	This may be indicated by an arrow with a bar at the end. +———>
One piece may be driven by another in such a manner that when the driver moves the other also always moves; as happens when a wheel is driven by a pinion.	An arrow without any bar. ———>
One thing may be attached to another by stiff friction.	An arrow formed of a line interrupted by dots. —·—·—·—>
One piece may be driven by another, and yet not always move when the latter moves; as is the case when a stud or pin lifts a bolt once in the course of its revolution.	By an arrow, the first half of which is a full line, and the second half a dotted one. ——········ >
One wheel or lever may be connected with another by a ratchet, as the great wheel of a clock is attached to the fusee.	By a dotted arrow with a ratchet tooth at its end. ····⊾·············· >

Each of the vertical indicating lines must now be connected with that representing the part from which it receives its movement, by an arrow of such a kind as the preceding table indicates. Thus in the Saw-mill Notation, the cog-wheel *A* is connected with the cog-wheel *B* by a plain arrow: the wheel *B*, upon whose axis is fixed the crank *C* and the excentric *E*, is accordingly connected with them both by barred arrows; *F* with *G* by a ratchet-arrow; and *G* with *K* by an interrupted arrow.

361. The last and most essential circumstance to be represented is the succession of the movements which take place in the working of the machine. These movements are generally periodic, for almost all machinery after a certain number of successive operations recommences the same course which it had just completed, and the work which it performs usually consists of a multitude of repetitions of the same course of particular motions.

One of the great objects of the notation in question, is to furnish a method by which at any instant of time in this course or *cycle* (Art. 17) of operations of any machine we may know the state of motion or rest of every particular part; to present a picture by which we may on inspection see not only the motion at that moment of time, but the whole history of its movements, as well as that of all the contemporaneous changes from the beginning of the cycle. In order to accomplish this, the compartment termed *Comparison of Motion* contains adjacent to each of the vertical indicating lines, which represent any part of the machine, other lines drawn in the same direction; these accompanying lines denote the state of motion or rest of the part to which they refer, according to the following rules, and may be called *the motion lines.*



1. Unbroken lines indicate motion.

2. Lines on the right side indicate that the motion is from right to left.

3. Lines on the left side indicate that the direction of the motion is from left to right.

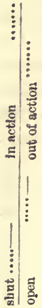
4. If the movements are such as not to admit of this distinction, then when lines are drawn adjacent to an indicating line and on opposite sides of it, they signify motions in opposite directions. (*Thus in the Saw-mill* A *and* B *revolve opposite ways, and their motion lines are accordingly drawn on opposite sides of their indicating lines.*)

5. Parallel straight lines denote uniform motion.

6. Curved lines denote a variable velocity. It is convenient as far as possible to make the ordinates of the curve proportional to the different velocities (Art. 13). (*The motion of the saw-frame* D, *and of the lever and click* F, *are examples of this rule.*)

7. If the motion may be greater or less within certain limits; then if the motion begin at a fixed moment of time, and it is uncertain when it will terminate, the line denoting motion must extend from one limit to the other, and must be connected by a small cross line at its commencement with the indicating line. If the beginning of its motion is uncertain, but its end determined, then the cross line must be at its termination. If the commencement and the termination of any motion are both uncertain, the line representing motion must be connected with the indicating line in the middle by a cross line.

8. Dotted lines imply rest. It is also convenient sometimes to denote a state of rest by the absence of any line whatever. (*This rule, combined with No.* 6, *is employed in exhibiting the intermittent motion of the ratchet-wheel* G, *pinion* H, *and rack* I.)



9. The thing indicated may be of such a nature that instead of motion it may be required to exhibit rather the periods of its being in action or out of action, opened or closed, bolted or unbolted, and so on; as in the case of clicks, bolts, or valves; in which cases lines may be used in the above manner, but words must be added in explanation of this new employment of the signs. The line should be on the right side when the piece is out of action, unbolted, or open, and on the left side when in the reverse state. Dotted lines will be employed if the piece rests in both states; and if it be necessary to exhibit the time occupied by the motion of transition from one state to the other, this can be done by a short continuous line at the beginning of each; thus if a valve fly open suddenly and close gently, it will be represented as in the margin. (*The detent* K *is an example of this rule.*)

If any other modifications of movement should present themselves, it will not be difficult for any one who has rendered himself familiar with the symbols and method just explained, to contrive others adapted to the new combinations which may present themselves.

362. As an example of the way in which very minute circumstances of motion are shown in this manner, it may be remarked, that the motion of the saw-frame, excentric, and click-lever, is necessarily continuous; but that the motion given to the ratchet-wheel by the click does not begin at the instant the change of motion in the click takes place. The click must first move through a small space until it abuts against the tooth of the ratchet-wheel which is ready to receive it. On the other hand, it is evident that the ratchet-wheel and the click will both *cease* their motion in that direction together. When the click moves backwards the ratchet-wheel with the pinion and wood-carriage will remain at rest until the saw begins its cut, when they will be driven slightly backwards until the ratchet-tooth abuts against the end of the detent. All these accidents of motion in the ratchet-wheel and its connected pieces are exhibited by the notation, as will appear by comparing the motion lines of *G* with those of *F*. It is true, that in the actual machine these small motions are reduced exceedingly by giving a great number of teeth to the ratchet-wheel; but I have exaggerated them to show the susceptibility of the notation, which when applied to complex machinery is of the very greatest service; more especially in assisting in the invention or improvement of machines.

363. The system of motion lines is not intended to exhibit accurately the law of motion of the pieces, as in the graphic

representation of Art. 13, although it is founded upon the same principle; but merely its general phases.

When the simultaneous motions are required to be precisely exhibited, their motion curves may be, however, exactly laid down and compared, by placing them side by side; their parallel axes of abscissæ then become the indicating lines of Babbage's system. In this case, however, I am inclined to think the second method (Art. 14) is preferable, in which the ordinates are proportional not to the velocities but to the spaces; of the use of which I have already given an example in Art. 298.

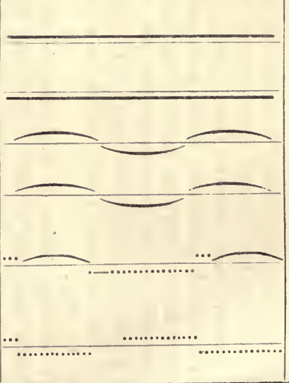
364. I have found some advantages in the amalgamation of the system of Babbage with that of which an explanation has been given in Art. 332.

For in defining trains of mechanism in the present work, I have shown that they consist of principal pieces moving each according to a given path, and connected one with the other in succession by means of drivers and followers, which are attached to these moving pieces. Now the drivers and followers carried by any one of these pieces must all move according to the same law, since they move as one piece; and a single indicating line with its velocity numbers and motion curves is quite sufficient for every such piece: whereas, as we have seen, in the notation just exhibited, every part of the machine has such an indicating line and figure attached to it, and consequently all the parts that are united together merely repeat the same indication as *B*, *C* and *E*; or *G* and *H*, in page 288. In the next page I have shown the Saw-mill under the form of Notation which I have been in the habit of employing, and which it will be seen at once differs only from that of page 288 by being united with the old clock-makers' form already explained; by which means the *genealogy*, so to speak, of the motion is perhaps more clearly perceived, and the number of indicating lines reduced.

365. To represent a machine in this form, rule as many parallel lines as there are principal moving pieces in the train, writing the name or nature of each in the first column. Upon each line write all the followers and the driver which are carried by the piece to which it belongs; taking care to place every follower vertically under its own driver, if possible. Every follower may be connected with its driver by an arrow formed according to the rules in Art. 360, or by a simple line. The arrow is only necessary if the nature of the machine renders it necessary to place some of the followers above their drivers. The connecting lines might also receive additions, by which the nature

SAW-MILL.

Names of Pieces	Velocity per minute	Origin of Motion	Comparison of Motion	
Main Shaft	11	Spur-wheel A. (96)		
Crank Shaft	50	......Pinion B. (22)—Crank C. (30)—Excentric E. (4)		
Saw-frame	......	....................Saw-frame D		up down
Lever on Stud	......	..........Click F.————————Lever F......		up down
Spindle	......	Ratchet-wheel G. (60)—Pinion H. (20)................		
Wood-carriage	6	.................................Rack I...........................		
Detent on Stud	......	.........Detent K		holds yields



of the connection, as by sliding, wrapping, link-work, &c. might be shown; but the names of the parts are generally sufficient for this purpose; and there is a great mischief in unnecessarily multiplying symbols. Numbers attached to toothed wheels are their numbers of teeth, to pullies their diameters in inches, to cranks and excentrics their throw in inches, unless otherwise stated. In the column of Velocity the numbers attached to revolving pieces show their angular velocity in turns per minute, and to sliding pieces their linear velocity in inches per minute, unless otherwise stated in words. In the column of Comparison of Motion, the rules in Art. 361 are followed, but that when two or more pieces move together in a system, one indicating line is made to serve for them all by connecting those to which it applies by a bracket. Thus the variation of motion in the ratchet-wheel spindle and the wood-carriage being the same, one line is used for them both. Columns may be added for the pitch of the wheels, or any other particulars that may be required.

It rarely, however, happens that the whole notation is necessary. For some machines the table of the origin of motion is required, for others that of the comparison of the motion; and of the system of the latter, and of its utility when properly applied, it is impossible to speak too highly.

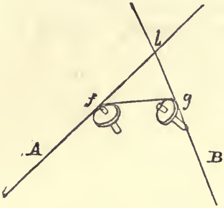
CHAPTER XV.

REDUPLICATION.

366. This term I ventured, in my first edition, to apply to a mode of modifying motion which depends upon a totally different principle from the sliding, rolling, and wrapping connections to which our previous pages have been devoted. It is principally employed in the construction of tackle of all sorts, used on shore for raising weights, and in the rigging of ships.

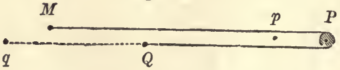
367. If an inextensible string $AfgB$ be passed over any number of fixed pins or pullies, as f and g, and if the extremities A,B of the string be compelled to move each in the direction of its own portion, Af, gB of the string, then the motion of one of these extremities will evidently be communicated unaltered to the other, and every intermediate portion of the string will move with the same velocity. This is unaffected by the form of the pins over which the string passes, and they may therefore be fixed cylinders or else pullies, that is to say, wheels mounted on revolving axes, which are generally substituted for fixed pins, for the mere purpose of reducing the friction of the string in passing over them.

Fig. 261.



If however some of the pins (or axes of the pullies) be attached to a piece capable of motion, and the string be passed back and forwards over the fixed and movable pins alternately, this *reduplication* will cause the several intermediate portions of the string to move with different velocities, and the movable piece will receive a velocity compounded of these in a manner which we will proceed to investigate. Thus let the string, fig. 262, be

Fig. 262.



attached to a fixed point M, and P be a pin attached to a piece capable of sliding in the direction PM. If the string be passed over P and brought to Q, and Q be moved to q, it will draw P after it to a point p.

Now as the length of the string is unaltered by this motion, we have $MP+PQ=Mp+pq$, or $(Mp+Pp)+(Pp+pQ)=Mp+(pQ+Qq)$.

$\therefore$ $Qq=2Pp$, and the velocity of the point Q is double that of the point P. If the string be passed over M, and again over P to Q, the velocity of the extremity will be quadrupled, and so on. This may be explained and demonstrated by the following machine and the subsequent investigation.

Fig. 263.

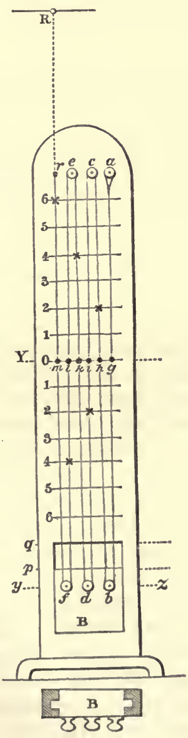
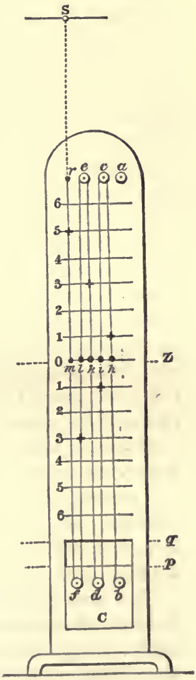


Fig. 264.



368. A long upright board attached to a foot has a rectangular opening at its lower extremity, in which a panel B is capable of sliding freely in the vertical direction through a given height pq, which is limited by the contact of the upper and lower edges of the panel with the top and bottom of the opening. The surface of the panel coincides with that of the long board, and it carries three smooth brass knobs, b, d, f, of the kind that are employed for the handles of drawers. Three similar brass knobs are fixed at a, c, e to the long board.

Between these knobs the board is graduated by transverse lines into a series of equidistant vertical spaces equal to the distance pq, through which the panel rises and falls.

A string is attached by a loop to the fixed knob a, and passed over the lower and upper knobs alternately, as shown in the figure. Its upper extremity at r is tied to a pin which is inserted in a hole of the board when the machine is at rest. The panel B is loaded with sufficient lead to keep the string moderately tight.

A set of wooden beads, $g\,h\,i\,k\,l\,m$, are attached to the string, each one by means of a small peg, which, being made slightly conical, is passed through the hole in the bead, and thus wedges it on the string with sufficient firmness to keep it in its place, and yet admit of an adjustment when the tension of the string is accidentally altered.

The beads must be so adjusted, that when the panel is in its lower position they shall rest in the horizontal line $Y\,Z$, marked as the zero of the scales.

Let the end of the string at r (fig. 263) be now drawn upwards, the panel B will rise, and the beads will travel from the zero line upwards and downwards alternately and with different velocities, until, when the panel has arrived at the top of its course, each bead will be in the position indicated by the character ×, placed vertically above or below its zero position in the figure.

Thus the bead g being immediately suspended from the fixed knob a, remains on the zero line, h, k and m rise respectively and simultaneously to 2, 4, and 6, while the alternate beads i and l fall to 2 and 4; and these numbers represent the respective ratios of the velocities of the beads to the motion of the panel.

If the loop at a be detached from that knob, and the end of the string be secured to the lower knob b (as in fig. 264), then the motion of the beads will be as follows: as indicated by the character +, h being attached to the panel B directly by the string bh, will rise through the same space with it to the line 1, k and m to 3 and 5, while i and l will descend to 1 and 3.

The string may be passed over one, two, or three of these knobs, and the velocity of its upper extremity will vary accordingly, being always equal to the number of strings attached to the sliding panel, which can be shown as follows.

369. *To find the velocity ratio of the strings and slide.*—It must be remarked that the velocity of any string, as dke, which proceeds from the slide to a fixed knob (as e) is the same in magnitude after it has passed over the knob, but is reversed in direction;

thus the velocity of *ke* upwards is equal to the velocity of *el* downwards. But the velocity of a string as *id* which passes over a moving knob *d* is not the same after it has passed over the knob, because it is compounded with the velocity of the rising panel.

Let the space *pq* through which the slide moves $= u$, and the corresponding distance through which the upper end *r* of the string travels $= w$. The initial position of *r* being for convenience assumed at the same level as the upper row of knobs *e, c, a*.

Let *n* be the number of strings by which the slide is suspended. Then the length of the string when *B* is at the lowest position $= n \times ef$. And when *B* is at the highest position $= w + n\,(ef - pq)$, and these are equal $\therefore \frac{w}{u} = n$, or the distance ($w$) through which the end *r* of the string rises = the distance (u) through which the block rises, multiplied by the number of strings (n). When the end of the string is fixed to the knob *a*, *n* is an even number. But if fixed to the movable knob *b*, *n* is an odd number.

These velocities of the strings and slide are with respect to the fixed frame. To find the velocities of the respective convolutions of the string to the moving slide *B*, we must suppose that fixed and the board to be moved, inverting the machine, and making the number of strings at the knobs $a, c, e = n_1$, and w_1 the space through which the free end of the string moves. Thus we have $\frac{w_1}{u} = n_1$, which is an odd number when the end of the string is fixed to the frame at *a*, and an even when fixed to the slide at *b*.

Thus *n* is even when n_1 is odd, and *vice versâ*, and when the machine is in the position of the figure, and the string *r* is raised, drawing with it the slide *B*, the velocities of the string with respect to the knobs *a, c, e* of the fixed frame are 0, 2, 4, and with respect to the knobs *b, d, f* of the moving slide as 1, 3, 5. When *b* is the point of attachment, the velocities at *c, e, n* are 1, 3, 5, and at *d, f* are 2, 4.

370. In practice the friction of the fixed knobs is diminished by substituting pullies, excepting in the case of the *dead-eyes*, which are employed in adjusting the tension of the shrouds of ships. As the velocity ratio of the free extremity of the string to the moveable piece is due solely to the reduplication, it is wholly unaffected by the diameter of the pully or pin, and by the relative position of these in their respective frames or blocks.

The disposition of the pullies on parallel axes in a horizontal line, as in figs. 263 and 264, is very rarely used except for demonstration, and from the form in which the string is disposed it is termed *lacing*. The commonest arrangement is to place the pullies or *sheaves*,* as they are termed, side by side on a common axis in a series of parallel mortices formed in a wooden block. One of these, called the *fixed block*, is suspended from a fixed point, and corresponds to the fixed knobs *a*, *c*, *e*. The other, called the *movable block*, which corresponds to the panel *B*, swings freely, suspended by the ropes, and is attached to the weight or other piece which is to receive the slow motion. As it is generally inconvenient to apply the power which gives motion to the free extremity *r* of the rope in the direction from below upwards, that extremity is usually passed over a pully, which is added to the fixed series *a c e* for the mere purpose of bringing the free end downwards. This pully does not affect the velocity ratio, for that depends solely on the number of strings at the movable block. The free portion of rope is called *the fall*.

When the *pullies* are arranged in the above manner side by side on a common axis, the cord assumes a spiral form, winding upwards and downwards continuously, and the entire assemblage is termed a *winding tackle*, for tackle † is the general term for a fixed movable block or blocks with their cord or cords.

The strings can be brought into one plane by arranging the sheaves on parallel axes, one below the other, as in the figure. But the sheaves, in order to separate the strings and keep them parallel, require to be made of diminishing diameters. This arrangement is termed *long tackle*, and the wooden blocks that contain these sheaves assume a form which gives them the name of *fiddle blocks*. The sheaves may be arranged upon a common axis, and made of gradually increasing diameters, as in fig. 266. This in a diagram is convenient for the purpose of showing the number of sheaves and the course of the string as it winds upwards and downwards upon them.

Fig. 265.

But the diameters admit of being so arranged as to allow of the whole series of sheaves in each block being made in one piece.

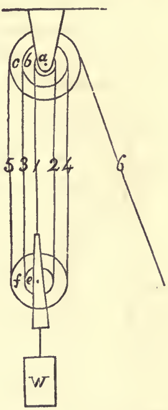
For by Art. 369, as the lower block in the figure is suspended by five strings, the velocity of the strings marked 1, 2,...3, 4,... 5, 6 with respect to the upper block are as 1, 3, 5.

* From *Scheibe*. Germ.

† This term appears to have been derived thus: τροχαλια, Gr.; *Trochlea*, Lat.; *Taglia*, Ital.; *Taakel*, Dutch. In French, *Mouffle* is used either for the block alone, or for the block and its sheaves; and *Pully* (Eng.), as well as *Poulie* (Fr.), is used either for the sheave or for the complete block and its sheaves.

But the velocity of the string 1 with respect to the lower block to which it is fixed is 0, and those of the pairs 2, 3...4, 5, with respect to the lower block, are as 2 and 4. Now, since the velocity of the circumference of a wheel varies directly as the radius, it follows that if the radii of the sheaves in the upper block be as 1, 3, 5, and the three be in one piece, their circumferences will move with velocities exactly proportional to those of the strings, and similarly if the radii of the lower sheaves be as 2 and 4. Blocks so fitted up form what is termed *White's Tackle*, from the name of the inventor.*

Fig. 266.



The practical difficulty in this elegant device is that, unless the grooves in the compound pullies are turned with mathematical accuracy in respect of their diameters, the rope will slide on the defective circumferences, and an injurious friction be introduced. But as the acting radius of a pully is measured by the real radius plus the radius of the rope, it is hardly possible to fulfil the condition of making the acting diameter in true arithmetical progression.†

371. It must be observed that in any given tackle the velocity ratio is different according as one or the other is made the fixed block, which is possible with tackle not permanently attached as a part of the rigging, but composed of two blocks, each furnished with a hook, so as to admit of being temporarily attached to anything that requires to be moved. Thus in fig. 265 the block from which the *fall* proceeds is made the fixed block, and $n=5$; but if this block were employed as the movable block, we should have $n=6$; for the *fall* has now become one of the strings which suspend the movable block. The number of sheaves is always less by one than the number of strings at the *fall-block.*

Blocks are termed single, double, treble, and so on, according to the number of sheaves they carry. The sheaves in a block in ships' tackle never exceed two, except in the case of the cat-head and cat-block, which contain three each, and constitute the tackle which serves to hoist the anchor.

A *luff-tackle* consists of a single block and a double block, and its velocity ratio is therefore 3 or 4, according as the single or

* White's *Century of Inventions*, p. 33.

† The real forms, constructions, and uses of tackle, may be learnt from the various books on seamanship, of which the latest and best is Nare's *Seamanship.*

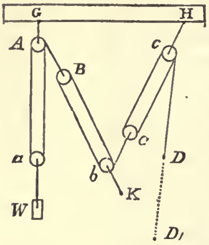
double block is the movable one, or, in other words, as the fall-block is fixed or movable.

A *gun-tackle* consists of two double blocks, and its velocity ratio is 4 or 5, according as the fall-block is fixed or movable.

A *whip* is a single fixed block.

372. Several tackles may be combined, as shown in fig. 267. Thus let A be the fixed block, a the movable block of a tackle in which there are n_1 strings at a, and of which AB is the fall; let the extremity of this fall be tied to the movable block B of a second tackle of which b is the fixed block, and n_2 the number of strings at B. Also, let the fall bc of the second tackle be tied to the movable block C of a third tackle of which c is the fixed block, and cD the fall, and n_3 the strings at C; let a velocity V_4 be given to D, and let V_1, V_2, V_3 be the velocities of W, B and C respectively;

Fig. 267.



$$\text{then } V_4 = n_3 V_3 = n_3 n_2 V_2 = n_3 n_2 n_1 V_1.$$

If there be m tackles in this series *or train*, and they have all the same number of strings, we should find in a similar way $V_{m+1} = n.^m V_1$.

Now the total number of strings in this combination $= n \times m$; whence the following problem.

373. Given the velocity ratio $\frac{V_{m+1}}{V_1} = n^m$ of the train of tackles, to find the number and nature of the separate tackles that will require the fewest strings.

$$\text{Here } n = \text{constant} = C \text{ suppose};$$

$$\therefore m = \frac{1C}{1n} \text{ and the number of strings}$$

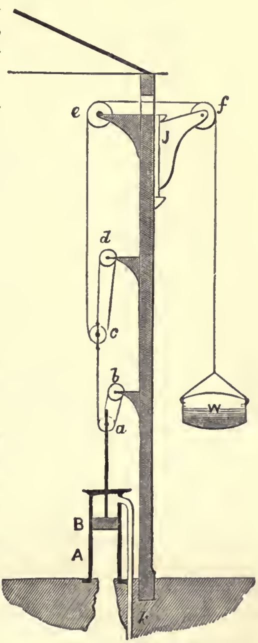
$$= mn = \frac{n \,.\, 1C}{1n},$$

which is at a minimum when hyp. log. $n=1$, and $n=2{\cdot}72$; the nearest whole number to which being 3, it appears that a series of luff-tackles will produce a given velocity ratio with fewer strings than any single tackle or combination of equal tackles. In fact, sailors combine two luff-tackles in this manner, which they term *luff upon luff*.

If, however, instead of attaching each tackle to a fall from the fixed block of the previous one, it be tied to a fall from the movable block, one sheave will be saved out of each tackle without altering the velocity ratio, and the total number of sheaves will be $(n-1).m$; which will be at a minimum when $n-1.=2{\cdot}72$, and $\therefore n=3{\cdot}72$.

A combination of this kind in which $n=2$, and therefore each pully hangs by a separate string, is commonly represented in mechanical treatises.

Fig. 268.



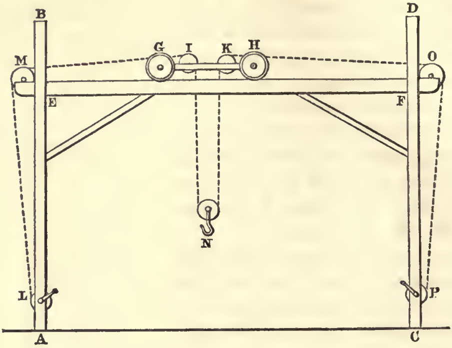
374. As an example of the application of the principle of reduplication to *increase* the range of motion of a piece, we may take the hydraulic crane of Sir W. Armstrong.*

A is a closed cylinder, into the upper extremity of which water at a high pressure obtained from an elevated source can be admitted through a pipe *k*, so as to drive the piston *B* downwards. The upper end of the piston-rod carries a pully *a*. A chain, also fixed to the top of the piston-rod, passes over a pully *b*, mounted on a bracket attached to the wall inside of the warehouse. It then descends, passes under the pully *a* and upwards, to be fixed to the block of a pully *c*. From the top of this block, a second chain passes over a second pully *d*, carried by a bracket attached to the wall, and then descending passes under the pully *c* and upward to *e*, whence it is carried horizontally outwards to the pully *f* of the crane-jib *J*, and thus downwards to be affixed to the load *W*. When the rod of the piston *B* descends, the block and pully *c* travel downwards with a velocity three times greater than the piston-rod and pully *a*, and the rope *cef* travels with a velocity threefold that of the pully *c*. Consequently the stroke of the piston-rod is multiplied ninefold, and a piston with a stroke of twelve feet raises the load *W* to a height of 108 feet.

* This crane is fully described in Glynn's '*Rudimentary Treatise on Cranes, &c*; and its construction minutely illustrated by detailed drawings. Fig. 268 is derived from his fig. 20, by omitting all details of construction, for which I beg to refer my readers to the excellent monograph above quoted, which forms vol. xxxiii of the series of *Rudimentary Treatises* originally published by Weale, and now by Virtue and Co.

375. The following diagram * exhibits the principle upon which cranes termed *traversing-cranes* are constructed, by which heavy

Fig. 269.



goods or materials in warehouses or buildings in course of erection can be lifted and conveyed to their proper positions. All detailed constructions of framework are omitted in this figure.

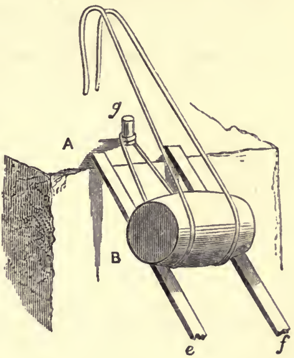
The crane is sustained by two triangular frames of timber, seen edgewise at *AB, CD*. These frames support two parallel beams of timber, as *EF*, trussed underneath. On these beams is laid a railway, upon which travels a carriage *GH* containing the pullies *I,K* for the chain, which passes between the two beams to the lower block *N*. The ends of the chain pass from the carriage in opposite directions along and above the beam to the fixed pullies at each end *M* and *O*, and thence down to the barrels of winches *L* and *P*. By winding one of these winches and unwinding the other at the same time at the same rate, the carriage and the load suspended from it travels from one end of the beam to the other, the load remaining at the same level.

But by winding or unwinding one of the winches only, the load is simply raised or lowered, so that the pully *N* can be placed at any point of the vertical plane *AEFC*. But in the complete traversing-crane, each triangular frame *AB,CD* is mounted upon two waggon-wheels resting on rails, which enable the entire frame *ABDC* to be moved to any part of the length of the building or warehouse, and therefore its load to be transferred to any position in the space bounded by the length of the rails and the area *ACEF*.

* *Vide* Glynn, *On Cranes*, p. 43, as in the last note, for ample details and figures.

The so-called 'parbuckle' is an example of direct reduplication employed by sailors to lower casks from a quay into a barge, and *vice versâ*, and also by draymen.

Fig. 270.



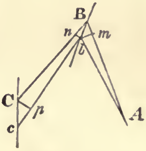
In the diagram A is the surface of the quay, B its vertical face.

Two parallel planks e and f rest below upon the barge, and above upon the edge of the quay.

The middle of a rope of sufficient length is made fast to the timber-head g by a round turn, the ends of the rope are passed under and over the cask, embracing it as shown, and the two hands of the operator grasping the two free ends of the rope, the cask is kept steady during its motion. This apparatus is a combination of the inclined plane and single hanging pully e. If the diagram, Art. 367, Fig. 262, were inverted and inclined downwards to the right, it would represent the half of the parbuckle, M being attached to the timber-head and P representing the cask.

376. In the examples of reduplication already considered, the strings and the motion of the follower are all parallel, and the velocity ratio constant. If the strings and the paths make angles with each other, a varying velocity ratio will ensue; as in the following example. Let the string be fixed at A, fig. 271, and passing over a pin B, let it be attached to a point C; let Bb be the path of the pin, Cc that of the extremity of the string, and when C is moved to c, very near to its first position, let B be carried to b; draw perpendiculars bm, bn, Cp, upon th. two directions of the string in its new position.

Fig. 271.



Then since the length of the string is the same in both positions, we have $AB+BC=Ab+bc$, that is,

$$Am+mB+Bn+nC=Ab+bp+pc,$$

But ultimately,

$$Ab=Am, \text{ and } bp=nC; \quad \therefore\ mB+Bn=pc,$$

$$\text{or } Bb\,(\cos bBA+\cos bBC)=Cc\,.\cos cCB;$$

$$\therefore\ \frac{Bb}{Cc}=\frac{\cos cCB}{\cos bBA+\cos bBC};$$

where the angles are those made by the direction of the string with the respective paths of the pin B and of the extremity C. But by the motion of the system these angles alter, and thus the velocity ratio varies.

If the strings and the path of B become parallel, the cosines become unity, and $\frac{Bb}{cC}=\frac{1}{2}$, as before (Art. 367).

PART THE SECOND.

ON AGGREGATE COMBINATIONS.

CHAPTER I.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF AGGREGATE MOTION.

377. The motion of a point with respect either to its path or velocity may be considered as the resultant of two or more component motions. If it happen that the latter taken separately are more simple and more easily communicated than the resultant motion, it is evident that this may be advantageously obtained by communicating simultaneously to the given point the component motions. For an example of an aggregate path, let it be required to make a point describe an epicycloid. Every epicycloidal path may be resolved into two circular paths, one of which represents the base of the epicycloid, and the other the describing circle. And if the point be attached to a disc or arm which revolves uniformly round its own center, while at the same time that center revolves uniformly round the center of the base in a plane parallel to that of the first revolution, the point will describe an epicycloid, the nature and proportions of which will depend upon the proportion of the radii of the two circular component paths, and upon the relative time and directions of their revolutions. In this example a very complex path is referred to two paths of the simplest nature, and the question is one case of a general problem that may be thus enunciated:—*To cause a point to move in a required path by communicating to it simultaneously two or more motions in space.*

378. As an example of motion complex in velocity, but simple with respect to its path, let a body be required to travel in a right line by a reciprocating motion, but always making its

forward trip through a space greater than its backward trip, and thereby gradually advancing from one end of the path to the other. This motion may be resolved into a reciprocating motion of equal advance and retreat, combined with a simple slow forward motion.

If therefore the body be mounted on a carriage or frame which advances slowly in the required direction, and if at the same time an ordinary reciprocating motion of constant extent be given to the body with respect to the carriage; the question will be answered by referring the given compound motion to two of a simple and practicable nature.

379. Again, let a body be required to move so very slowly in a right line, that in the ordinary methods a long train of wheel-work or of other combinations would be required to reduce sufficiently the velocity of the original driver. But if this small velocity be considered as the difference of two velocities in opposite directions, then it may be obtained by mounting as before the body on a carriage which proceeds with any convenient velocity in one direction, while the body moves with respect to the carriage with a nearly equal velocity in the opposite direction.

These examples belong to a second problem which may be thus stated:—*To produce the motion of a piece in a given path by communicating to it simultaneously two or more motions in that path, either in the same or in opposite directions.*

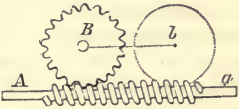
380. In these examples, however, it appears that the frame or part of the machine which determines the path of one of the component motions is itself in motion. In the first example, the center of motion of the revolving piece which carries the describing point itself travels in a circle; and in the second example, the slide upon which the point that receives the aggregate motion is made to move, is itself also in motion. And this, from the nature of Aggregate Combinations, will always be the case; and as these bodies which travel in moving paths have to derive their motion from a driver whose path is in the usual manner stationary, it appears that to carry this aggregate principle into effect, requires that we should have the means of communicating motion from a driver to a follower, when the respective position of their paths is variable.

I shall therefore begin by giving examples of the methods by which this may be effected.

To connect a Driver and Follower, the relative position of whose paths is variable.

381. If the center of motion of a toothed wheel itself travel in a circle parallel to the plane of rotation, then a second wheel concentric with the circular path and in geer with the travelling wheel will remain in geer with it in all positions of its center; or if the center of the wheel travel in a right line parallel to the plane of rotation, a rack parallel to its path will always remain in geer with the wheel, and communicate a motion to it; as will also an endless screw, as in fig. 272, where *Aa* is a long endless screw, *B* the travelling wheel whose center of motion moves in the path *B b*, parallel to the axis of the screw. The screw will therefore act upon the wheel whatever be the position of its center upon this line, and will also allow the center to be moved into any position upon the surface of the cylinder that would be generated by the motion of *B b* round *A a*, the plane of the wheel of course always passing through the axis *A a*.

Fig. 272.



Again, if the wheel be required to travel in the direction of its own axis, as from *A* to *a*, fig. 273, a *long pinion B b* will retain its action upon it in all its positions.

Fig. 273.

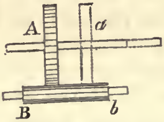
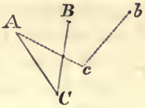


Fig. 274.



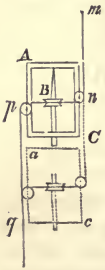
But if the center of the wheel is to travel in any other curve in a plane perpendicular to its axis, let *A*, fig. 274, be a fixed center of motion, *B* the travelling center of motion, and let *AC*, *CB* be a frame jointed at *C*; then if *B* be moved into any position within the circle whose radius is $AC + CB$, the frame will follow it, the angle *ACB* becoming greater or less according to the radial distance of *B* from *A*. Let a center of motion be placed at *C*, then will three wheels whose centers are *A*, *C*, and *B*, remain in geer in all these positions of the frame, and thus allow *B* to travel in any curve without losing its connection with the central wheel at *A*.

382. The same principles also apply to centers of motion con-

nected by sliding contact or wrapping connectors; for generally, it is evident, that if two parallel axes be connected by any of the contrivances for communicating unlimited rotation, one axis may travel round the other in the circle whose radius is the perpendicular distance of the axes, without disturbing their connection. Other expedients are also employed, which belong rather to constructive mechanism. Thus, instead of the long pinion *B b*, fig. 273, a short pinion may be used which can slide along its axis, but not turn with respect to it, and this pinion may be made to follow the wheel *A* in its motions. But, in fact, as we advance in our subject, the combinations necessarily increase in number and complexity under each head to such a degree, that it becomes impossible to include them all in the limited space of such a treatise as this. I shall, therefore, merely give examples of one or two of the least obvious arrangements; others will occur during the calculations of Aggregate Motion in the succeeding chapters.

383. A travelling pully which derives its rotation from another pully with a fixed axis of motion, may have its own axis carried about to any relative position with the first, provided the wrapping band have a suspended stretching pully to keep it tight in all these changes of distance, and that the pully travel only in its own plane, and consequently its axis always remains parallel to that of the other pully. For if it move out of that plane the wrapping band will be thrown off the pully (Art. 254). Fig. 275 is one arrangement by which the pully may be also allowed to move in the direction of its axis.*

Fig. 275.



B is the pully whose axis is mounted in a frame *AC*, to whose sides are fixed the axes of guide-pullies *n*, *p*; the wrapping band is passed over these pullies as at *m n p q*, making one turn round the pully *B* in its passage: the ends *m n*, *p q* of the band are carried parallel to the axis of *B*, and passed over proper guide-pullies to the driving wheel. The frame *AC* may evidently be moved into any other position *ac*, in the plane *m q*, without disturbing either the tension of the band or its connection with *B*.

384. Two arms *AP*, *CD* (fig. 197, p. 209), being connected by a link *PD*, the center of motion *C* of one of them may be shifted into various positions with respect to *A*, without breaking the connection of the system; but the velocity ratio of the arms

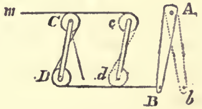
* Lanz and Betancourt (*Anal. Essay*, D. 20) have a somewhat similar arrangement.

will necessarily be different in every new position. If the arms have only a small angular motion, as in the Article referred to, the center *C* may receive a small travelling motion in a direction perpendicular to *PD*, without materially altering the velocity ratio.

Fig. 276 is an expedient by which this communication can be maintained between shifting centers without affecting the velocity ratio.

AB is the arm whose center of motion *A* is fixed, *CD* the arm whose center of motion travels in the line *Cc*; guide-pullies *C*, *D* are mounted, one concentric to *C*, and the other at the extremity *D* of the arm. A line is fixed at *m*, passed over the pullies *C* and *D*, and attached to *B*. If *B* be moved to *b* it will, by means of this line, communicate the same motion to *CD* round *C* as if it were a link jointed in the usual way at *D* and *B*. But the peculiar arrangement of the line allows the center of the arm to be removed to any other point in *Cc*, as to *c*, without interrupting the connection of *B* with its extremity. The arm is supposed to be returned by a spring or weight.

Fig. 276.



CHAPTER II.

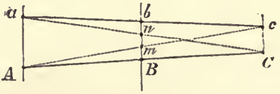
ON COMBINATIONS FOR PRODUCING AGGREGATE VELOCITY.

385. I SHALL in this chapter proceed to show the principal methods of obtaining the complex motion of a body in a given path by the simultaneous communication to it of two or more simple motions in that path; arranging the solutions under the same divisions as in the first part of this work, but taking them in a somewhat different order, for the sake of convenience.

BY LINK-WORK.

386. Let a bar ABC, fig. 277, be bisected in B, and let a small motion Aa perpendicular to the bar be communicated to the

Fig. 277.



extremity A, C remaining at rest; then will the central point B move through a space $Bn = \frac{Aa}{2}$. On the other hand, had A remained at rest, and a small transverse motion Cc been given to the other extremity C, the central point B would have moved through a space $Bm = \frac{Cc}{2}$. If these two motions are communicated either simultaneously or successively to the two extremities. the center B will be carried through a space $Bb = \frac{Aa + Cc}{2}$. Or, if starting from the position Ac, the two motions had been communicated in the opposite directions, so as to carry the bar into the position aC, then the center of the bar would receive a motion

$mn = \frac{Aa - Cc}{2}$. The length of the bar being always supposed so great, compared with the motions, that its inclination in the different positions may be neglected, and therefore the lines *Cc*, *Bb*, *Aa*, be all considered perpendicular to *AC*. Hence *two small independent motions being communicated to the extremities of a bar; its center receives half their sum or difference, according as the motions are in the same or in opposite directions.*

If the motions be communicated to *A* and *B*, then *C* will receive the whole motion of *A* in the opposite direction, and twice the motion of *B* in the same direction. The bar *AC* has been divided in half at *B* for simplicity only, for it is evident that by dividing it in any other ratio we can communicate the component motions in any desired proportions. But in general it is the law of motion which is to be communicated, and the quantity is of less consequence, especially if reduced for both motions in the same proportion.

387. Let *FG*, fig. 278, be a bar whose center is *E*, and to whose extremities are fixed pins *F* and *G*, upon which the centers of other bars, *AB*, *CD* turn. Then if four independent motions be communicated to the points *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, the motions of *A* and *B* will be concentrated upon *F*, and those of *C* and *D* upon *G*, and the motions of *F* and *G* being concentrated in like manner upon *E*, this point will receive the four motions. By jointing other levers to the extremities of these, and so on, any number of independent motions may be concentrated upon the point *E*.*

Fig. 278.

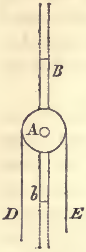
BY WRAPPING CONNECTORS.

388. If a bar *Bb*, fig. 279, be capable of sliding in the direction of its length and carry a pully *A* round which is passed a cord *DE*, then it can be shown in the same manner, that the bar will receive half the sum of independent motions communicated to the extremities *D*, *E*, the bar being supposed to be urged in the direction *bB*, by a weight or spring. This is a more compendious contrivance than the former, as the motions may be of considerable extent. If the component motions be communicated

* Another example of aggregate velocity by Link-work is the well-known reticulated frame termed *Lazy tongs*, which resembles a row of X's, thus XXXXX. It is too weak from its numerous joints to be of much practical service. It first occurs in Valturius *de re militari*, l. x. 1483.

to one extremity of the string D and to the bar, then will the other extremity E receive the entire motion of D in the reverse direction, and also twice the motion of Bb in the same direction.*

Fig. 279.



389. If a second similar combination be placed at the side of this, with its bar parallel to that of the first, and if a cord whose ends are tied to the upper extremities of each bar be passed over a third intermediate pully, the center of this latter pully will receive the aggregate motion of the cords of the two systems, as shown for the lever in Art. 387.

390. As an example of the employment of these combinations, let C, fig. 280, be an axis of motion upon which is fixed a small barrel round which the cord e is rolled, and also a disk with an excentric pin c, which by means of a link cb communicates a reciprocating motion to an arm Aa, whose center of motion is A. The extremity of this arm carries a revolving pully D, and the cord which is coiled round the band is laid over this pully and fixed to a heavy piece E, which moves in the vertical path Ef. Now when C revolves, the center a of the pully D moves up and down through a small arc which is nearly a right line parallel to fE, and by virtue of this motion the string f and the body E will receive a reciprocating motion of double its extent. But the string e will be also slowly coiled upon the barrel by which it, as well as E, will receive a slow travelling motion in a constant di-

Fig. 280.

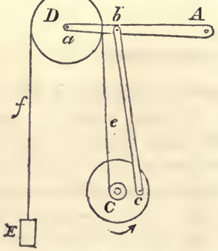
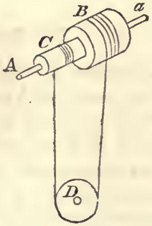


Fig. 281.



rection upwards. By what has preceded, therefore, the body E receiving these motions simultaneously, will, as in the example of

* The first application of this principle appears to be the *Rouet de Lyon*, for winding silk. *Vide Enc. Méth. Manufactures*, t. ii. p. 44.

Art. 378, move vertically with a reciprocating motion, of which the downward trip is shorter than the upward one.

391. Let Aa, fig. 281, be an axis to which are fixed two cylinders B and C, nearly of the same diameter, and let a cord be coiled round B, passed over a pully D, and then brought back and coiled in the opposite direction round C. When Aa revolves, one end of the cord will be coiled and the other uncoiled, and if R be the radius of B, and r of C, A the angular velocity of the axis, the velocities of the two extremities of the cord will be AR and Ar; and by Art. 388, the center of the pully D will travel with a velocity equal to half the difference of these velocities, since they are in opposite directions, or to $\frac{A(R-r)}{2}$. This velocity is the same as would be obtained if the center of the pully D were suspended from the axis Aa by a cord wrapped round a single barrel whose radius $=\frac{R-r}{2}$.

392. This combination belongs to a class which has received the name of *differential motions*, their object being to communicate a very slow motion to a body, or rather to produce by a single combination such a velocity ratio between two bodies that under the usual arrangement a considerable train of combinations would be required *practically* to reduce the velocity, for, *theoretically*, a simple combination will always answer the same purpose. Thus in the above machine, although theoretically a barrel with a radius $\frac{R-r}{2}$ would do as well as the double barrel, yet its diameter in practice would be so small as to make it useless from weakness. Whereas each barrel of the differential combination may be made as large and as strong as we please.

If a considerable extent of motion, however, be required, this contrivance becomes very troublesome, on account of the great quantity of rope which must be wound upon the barrels. For by one turn of the differential barrel the space through which the pully is raised $=\pi(R-r)$, but the quantity of rope employed is the sum of that which is coiled upon one barrel, and of that which is uncoiled from the other $=2\pi(R+r)$. Now in the equivalent simple barrel the quantity of rope coiled is exactly equal to the space through which the body is moved, and therefore in this case $=\pi(R-r)$, so that for a given extent of motion

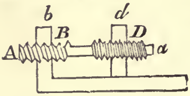
$$\frac{\text{rope for differential barrel}}{\text{rope for common barrel}}=2\,\frac{R+r}{R-r}.$$

when $R-r$ is by hypothesis very small. This inconvenience has been sufficient to banish the contrivance from practice, for although it is represented in all mechanical books under the name of the Chinese windlass, it is never actually employed.

BY SLIDING CONTACT.

393. *Aa*, fig. 282, is an axis upon which are formed two screws *B* and *D*, whose pitches are *C* and *c* respectively. *B* passes through a nut *b* fixed to the frame, and *D* through a nut *d*, which is capable of sliding parallel to the axis of the screw.*

Fig. 282.



Now when a screw is turned round it travels with respect to its nut through a space equal to one pitch for each revolution, consequently one turn of *Aa* will cause it to move with respect to *b* through the space *C*. But the same motion will cause the nut *d* to move with respect to its screw through a space *c*. The nut *d*, therefore, receives two simultaneous motions, for by the advance of the screw *Aa* through the fixed nut *b*, the nut *d* is carried forwards through the space *C*, but by the revolving action of the screw *Aa* it will be at the same time carried backwards through the space *c*: its motion during one rotation of the screw *Aa* is therefore equal to the difference of the two pitches $=C-c$. If *C* be greater than *c* this will be positive, and the nut will advance slowly when the screw *Aa* advances; but if *c* be greater than *C*, the nut will move slowly in the opposite direction to the endlong motion of the screw. If $C=c$ then $C-c=0$, and the nut *d* receives no motion, which is indeed obvious. All this supposes that the threads of the two screws are both right-handed or both left-handed. If one be right-handed and the other left-handed, each revolution of the screw *Aa* will cause the nut *d* to advance through a space $=C+c$.

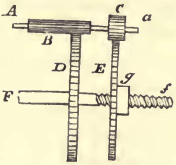
394. In fig. 283,† *Ff* is a screw which passes through a nut *g*, this nut is mounted in a frame so as to be capable of revolving but not of travelling endlong in the direction of the axis of the screw. So that if the nut were turned round, and the screw itself prevented from revolving, this screw would receive an endlong motion in the usual manner, at the rate of one pitch for each revolution of the nut. A toothed wheel *E* is fixed to the nut,

* This contrivance is claimed by White (*Century of Inventions*, p. 84), and also for M. Prony, by Lanz and Betancourt (*Essay*, D. 3).

† This combination occurs in White's *Century of Inventions*.

and engaged with a pinion C, which is fixed to the axis Aa, parallel to the screw. To the screw is also fixed a toothed wheel D, which engages with a long pinion B upon the same axis Aa which carries the pinion C. When Aa revolves, therefore, it communicates rotation both to the screw and to the nut. If B and C, D and E were respectively equal, it is plain that the nut and screw would revolve as one piece, and consequently no relative motion take place between them; but as these wheels are purposely made to differ, the nut and screw revolve with different velocities, and thus a motion arises between the nut and its screw, which causes the latter to travel in the direction of its length, with a velocity ratio that may be thus calculated.

Fig. 283.



Let the letters $B\ C\ D\ E$ applied to the wheels, represent their respective numbers of teeth, and let P be the pitch of the screw. Also, let the synchronal rotations of the axis Aa, the nut and the screw, be $L L_n$, and L_s respectively,

$$\therefore L_n = \frac{LC}{E} \text{ and } L_s = \frac{LB}{D}.$$

But the endlong motion of the screw depends upon the *relative* rotations of the screw and nut, and not upon their absolute rotations. Now it is obvious, that if the screw make L rotations, and the nut L_n rotations in the same direction, that the screw and nut will have made $L - L_n$ rotations with respect to each other, and therefore that the screw will have advanced endlong through a space

$$=(L_s - L_n).\ P = L.P\left(\frac{B}{D} - \frac{C}{E}\right),$$

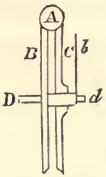
which may be made very small with respect to L.

This combination is applied to machinery for boring, for the motion of a boring instrument consists of a quick rotation combined with a slow advance in the direction of its axis, which is precisely the motion given to the screw Ff. Nothing more is therefore required than to fix the boring tool to one end of this screw.

The long pinion B (Art. 381) is employed for the obvious purpose of maintaining the action of B upon D during the endlong motion of the screw, and this endlong motion is in fact the difference of two motions that are simultaneously given to the screw. For $A\,a$ revolving, if B and D were removed the rotation of the nut would cause the screw to travel endlong with one velocity, and if C and E were removed instead of B and D, then the rotation of the screw in its fixed nut would cause it to travel endlong with another velocity; but these two causes operating simultaneously, the screw travels with the difference of these velocities.

395. A slow relative motion of two concentric pieces may be produced, as in fig. 284, in which $D\,d$ is a fixed stud, B an endless screw-wheel revolving upon the stud, and C a second endless screw-wheel revolving upon the tube which carries the preceding wheel B. A is an endless screw so placed as to act at once upon both wheels.* Now if these wheels had the same number of teeth they would move as one piece, but if one of them has one or two teeth more or less than the other, this will not disturb the pitch of the teeth sufficiently to interfere with the action of the endless screw. And as the revolutions of this screw will pass the same number of teeth in each wheel across the plane of centers, it follows that when one wheel has thus made a complete revolution, the other will have made more or less than a complete revolution by exactly the number of deficient or excessive teeth.

Fig. 284.



Let B have N teeth, and C, $\overline{N+m}$ teeth, then since the same number of teeth in each wheel will simultaneously pass the plane of centers, $N\times\overline{N+m}$ teeth of each will pass during N rotations of C, and $\overline{N+m}$ of B, which are therefore their synchronal rotations, and their relative rotations in the same time are $\overline{N+m}-N=m$.

This contrivance is used in counting the revolutions of machinery, for by attaching an index to the tube which carries B, and graduating the face of C into a proper dial-plate, b revolves so slowly with respect to C, that it may be made to record a great number of rotations of A before it returns again to the beginning of the course. Thus if B have 100 teeth, and C 101, the hand will make one rotation round the dial during the passage of 100×101 teeth of either wheel across the plane of centers, that is, during 10,100 rotations of the screw. Also the same hand b may read off sub-divisions upon a small dial attached to the extremity of the fixed axis d.

* From Wollaston's Odometer, for registering the number of turns made by a carriage-wheel.

396. This contrivance does not strictly belong to the problem we are at present considering, but it has a kind of natural affinity with it that induced me to give it a place here. Similarly, a thick pinion upon an axis parallel to *D d* may be employed to drive the two wheels in lieu of an endless screw, but the relative motion will not be so slow.* But by employing two pinions of different numbers of teeth to drive the two wheels a very slow relative motion may be obtained; thus, if in fig. 283 the screw and nut be suppressed, and the wheel *E* be the dial-plate, and the wheel *D* carry the index, as in fig. 284, then we have found

$$\frac{L_s - L_n}{L} = \frac{C}{E} - \frac{B}{D},$$ which may be made very small.

BY EPICYCLIC TRAINS.

397 A train of mechanism the axes of which are carried by an arm or frame which revolves round a center, as in figs. 285, 286, 287, is termed in this work an *Epicyclic train*.

Fig. 285.

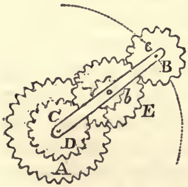


Fig. 286.

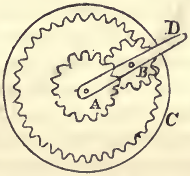
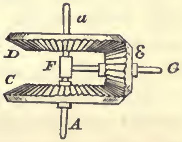


Fig. 287.



The two wheels which are at each end of such a train, or at least one of them, will be always concentric to the revolving frame.

Thus in fig. 285, *C B* is the frame or *train-bearing arm*, a wheel *A* concentric to this frame geers with a pinion *b*, upon whose axis is fixed a wheel *E* that geers with a wheel *B*. And thus we have an epicyclic train *A* (Art. 332),

b——*E*

B,

of which if the first wheel *A* be fixed, and a motion be given to the arm, the train will then revolve round the fixed wheel, and the relative motion of the arm to the fixed wheel will communicate rotation through the train to the last wheel *B*; or the first

* This combination occurs in a clepsydra, by Marcolini, described in the notes to the ninth book of *Vitruvius*, by Dan. Barbaro, 1556. *Vide* also Art. 355.

wheel as well as the arm may be made to revolve with different velocities, in which case the last wheel B will revolve with a motion that will be presently calculated.

If the wheel E, instead of geering with B, be engaged with a wheel D, which, like the wheel A, is concentric to the arm, then we have an epicyclic train A

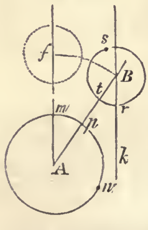
$$b \text{——} E$$
$$D,$$

of which both the extremities are concentric to the arm. In such a train we may either communicate motion to the arm and one extreme wheel in order to produce an aggregate rotation in the other extreme wheel, or motion may be given to the two extreme wheels A and B of the train, with the view of communicating the aggregate motion to the arm.

Fig. 286 is a simple form of the epicyclic train, in which the arm $A\,D$ carries a pinion B, which geers at once with a spur-wheel A and an annular wheel C, both concentric with the train-bearing arm.

Fig. 287 is another simple form in which $F\,G$ is the arm, $A\,a$ the common axis; D, C, two bevil-wheels moving freely upon it, and E a pinion carried by the arm, and geering at once with the two bevil-wheels. These two arrangements contain the least number of wheels to which an epicyclic train can be reduced, if its two extreme wheels are to be concentric to the arm; and, as in fig. 285, motion may either be given to the two wheels in order to produce aggregate motion in the arm, or else to the arm and one wheel, in order to produce aggregate motion in the other. Or very commonly, one of the concentric wheels is fixed, and motion being then given to the arm, will be communicated to the other wheel, or *vice versâ*, according to a law which we shall proceed to investigate. In these examples toothed wheels only are employed, but the subsequent formulæ will apply as well to epicyclic trains in which any of the combinations of Class A are used.

Fig. 288.



398. *To find the velocity ratios of Epicyclic trains.* Let AB, fig. 288, be the train-bearing arm revolving round A, and carrying a train of which the first wheel A is concentric to the arm, and the last wheel B may either be concentric with A or not. These two wheels are connected by a train of any number of axes carried by the arm or frame AB. Now the revolutions of the wheels of the train may be estimated in two

ways: First, with respect to the *fixed* frame of the machine, that is, by measuring the angular distance of a given point on the wheel from the fixed line Af; or, if the wheel be excentric as B, from a line Bk parallel to Af. Secondly, they may be measured with respect to the arm which carries them. The first may be termed the absolute revolutions, and the second the relative revolutions, or motions relative to the train-bearing arm.

Let the arm with its train move from the position Af to AB, and during the same time let a point m in the wheel A move to n from any external cause, and the point r in the wheel B move to s by virtue of its connection with the wheel A, all being supposed for simplicity to revolve in the same direction as the arm. Then mAn, rBs are the *absolute* motions of the wheels A and B, and pAn, tBs their *relative* motions to the arm,

but $mAn = mAp + pAn$, and $rBs = rBt + tBS = mAp + tBS$;

where mAp is the motion of the arm.

If, on the other hand, the wheels had moved in the opposite direction to the arm, then

$$mAn = pAn - mAp, \text{ and } rBs = tBs - mAp,$$

and these are true whatever be the magnitude of the angles described, and are therefore true for entire revolutions, for the angular velocity ratios in these trains are constant. Hence it appears that the absolute revolutions of the wheels of epicyclic trains are equal to the sum of their relative revolutions to the arm, and of the revolutions of the arm itself, when they take place in the same direction, and equal to the difference of these revolutions when in the opposite direction.

399. Let a, m, n, be the synchronal absolute revolutions of the train-bearing arm, of the first wheel of the train, and of the last wheel respectively; and let ε be the epicyclic train, that is, let it represent the quotient of the relative revolutions of the last wheel divided by those of the first; ε is therefore the quantity which is represented by $\frac{L_m}{L_1}$, or by $\frac{D}{F}$ in Chapter XIII, the motions of the wheel-work being estimated with respect to the train-bearing arm alone. Also, the first and last wheel of the epicyclic train are included in the expression ε, although one or both of them may be concentric to the arm.

Then the relative revolutions of the first wheel with respect to the arm $= m - a$, and of the last wheel $= n - a$, and as the motions of the train, considered with respect to the arm, will be the same as those of an ordinary train, we have $n - a = \varepsilon \cdot \overline{m - a}$.

$$\varepsilon = \frac{n-a}{m-a};$$

$$\text{whence } a = \frac{m\varepsilon - n}{\varepsilon - 1},\ n = a + \overline{m-a}\,.\,\varepsilon,$$

$$\text{and } m = a + \frac{n-a}{\varepsilon}.$$

If the first wheel of the train be fixed, which is a common case, its absolute revolutions $= 0$; $\therefore m = 0$, and we have

$$a = \frac{n}{1-\varepsilon},\ \text{and } n = \overline{1-\varepsilon}\,.\,a.$$

If the last wheel of the train be fixed, then $n = 0$, and we have

$$a = \frac{m\varepsilon}{\varepsilon - 1},\ \text{and } m = \left(1 - \frac{1}{\varepsilon}\right) a.$$

But when these wheels are not fixed,

$$a = \frac{m\varepsilon - n}{\varepsilon - 1} = \frac{m\varepsilon}{\varepsilon - 1} + \frac{n}{1-\varepsilon},$$

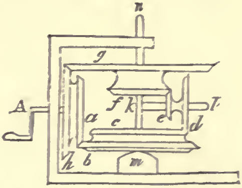
that is, the revolutions of the arm are equal to the sum of the separate revolutions which it would have received from the train, supposing its extreme wheels to have been fixed in turn.

In the formulæ of this Article the rotations of the first and last wheel and of the arm are all supposed to be in the same direction; if either of them revolve in the opposite, the sign of m, n, or a must be changed accordingly. With respect to the sign of ε, see Art. 403.

400. But in trains of this kind it often happens that if neither the first nor last wheel of the epicyclic train be fixed, then either motion is communicated from some original driver to the two extreme wheels of the epicyclic train with a view to produce an aggregate motion of the arm, or else the original driver communicates motion to one of these extreme wheels and to the arm, for the purpose of producing the aggregate motion of the other extreme wheel.

Fig. 289 is an example of the first case. *mn* is an axis to which is fixed the train-bearing arm *kl*, which carries the two wheels *d* and *e* united together and revolving upon the arm itself. The wheels *b* and *c* are united and revolve together upon the axis *mn*, but are not attached to it. Likewise the wheels *f* and *g* are fixed together, and revolve freely round the axis *mn*. The wheels *c*, *d*, *e*, and *f* constitute an epicyclic train, of which *c* is the first, and *f* the last wheel. An axis *A* is employed as a driver, and carries two wheels *a* and *h*, the first of which geers with the wheel *b*, and thus communicates motion to the first wheel *c* of the epicyclic train, and the wheel *h* drives the wheel *g*, which thus gives motion to the last wheel *f* of the epicyclic train. When the axis *A* is turned round it thus communicates motion to the two ends of the epicyclic train, through which the train-bearing arm *kl* receives an aggregate rotation, which we shall presently calculate.

Fig. 289.



As an example of the second case, we must suppose the wheels *g* and *f* to be disunited, *g* being now *fixed* to the axis *mn*, and *f* only running loose upon it. The driving axis *A* will thus communicate, as before, rotation to the first wheel of the epicyclic train *c* by means of the wheels *a* and *b*, and will also by *h* cause the wheel *g*, the axis *mn*, and the train-bearing arm *kl* to revolve, by which the compound rotation will be given to the loose wheel *f*. In this second combination, however, the last wheel *f* of the train is not necessarily concentric to the train-bearing arm, which it must be in the first case.

401. To obtain a formula adapted to this first case. Let the driving axis be connected with the first wheel of the train by a train μ, and with the last wheel by a train ν; and let the synchronal rotations of this driver with these wheels be p;

$$\therefore m=\mu . p, \text{ and } n=\nu . p;$$

$$\therefore \frac{a}{p}=\frac{\mu\varepsilon-\nu}{\varepsilon-1}=\frac{\mu}{1-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}}+\frac{\nu}{1-\varepsilon}.$$

The first part of which is due to the action of the train μ, and the second to that of the train ν.

For suppose the train μ removed then would the first wheel of the epicyclic train remain fixed, and $m=\mu p=0$;

$$\therefore \frac{a}{p} = \frac{\nu}{1-\varepsilon},$$

and in like manner, if the train ν were removed,

$$\frac{a}{p} = \frac{\mu}{1-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}}.$$

The arm moves, therefore, with the sum or difference of the separate actions of the two trains from the original driving axis.

402. In the second case, let the driving axis be connected with the first wheel of the epicyclic train by a train μ, and with the arm by a train a,

$$\text{then } m = \mu p, \text{ and } a = ap;$$

$$\therefore n = ap\overline{1-\varepsilon} + \mu p\varepsilon,$$

$$\frac{n}{p} = a\,.\,\overline{1-\varepsilon} + \mu\varepsilon.$$

The revolutions, therefore, of the last wheel of the epicyclic train are the aggregate of those due to the train a, which produces the motion of the arm, and of those due to the train μ, which produces the motion of the first wheel of the epicyclic train.

403. The only difficulty in the application of these formulæ lies in the signs which must be given to the symbols of the trains. But these it must be remembered, are each of them the representatives of a fraction, whose numerator and denominator are respectively equal to the synchronal rotations of the last follower and first driver of the train.

One direction of rotation being assumed positive, the opposite one will be negative, and therefore if the extreme wheels revolve in the same direction, whether that be back or forwards, the symbol of the train will be positive; and if they revolve in the opposite direction it will be negative. The rotations of the train μ, ν are *absolute*; and those of ε *relative to the arm.* To find the sign of ε, we must suppose the arm to be for the moment fixed, and then analyse the train in the usual manner to find whether the motions of its extreme wheels are in the same or in opposite directions, and the directions of rotation must be estimated accordingly. In a similar way, the signs of μ and ν are easily determined by considering them separately, and observing whether their extreme wheels move in the same or in opposite directions. If in the same, then μ and ν have the same signs; and if in opposite, then different signs. In the formulæ the symbols are all supposed positive, and therefore in every particular case positive trains retain the signs which are already given to them in these formulæ, but negative trains take the opposite signs. And although the term epicyclic train strictly implies that all the axes of the train are carried excentrically round the centre of the arm, yet I must repeat that the first and last wheel must be included in it, although one or both may happen to be concentric with the arm.

404. Let, for example, these principles and formulæ be applied to the simple epicyclic trains in figs. 285, 286, 287, and suppose the letters to represent the numbers of teeth. The epicyclic train formed by the wheels A, B, C, in fig. 286, is of such a nature that the extreme wheels A and C revolve in opposite directions, therefore ε is negative, and so also in the train C, E, D, in fig. 287, but in the train $\begin{array}{r}A\\ b\text{———}E\\ D\end{array}$ or $\begin{array}{l}A\\ b\text{———}E\\ D\end{array}$ of fig. 285, the extreme wheels revolve the same way, and therefore ε is positive. Also in fig. 285,

$$\varepsilon=+\frac{AE}{bB}, \text{ in fig. 286 } \varepsilon=-\frac{A}{C},$$

$$\text{and in fig. 287 } \varepsilon=-\frac{C}{D}=-1.$$

Let the first wheels of these trains be fixed, then when the arm revolves we have

$$\text{for 285.} \quad n=\left(1-\frac{AE}{bB}\right)a,$$

$$\text{286.} \quad n=\left(1+\frac{A}{C}\right)a,$$

$$\text{287.} \quad n=2a,$$

where n and a are the synchronal rotations of the last wheel of the train and of the arm respectively.

In fig. 287, therefore, it appears that when one wheel C is fixed, the other revolves twice as fast as the arm in the same direction.

In fig. 289, in its first case $\varepsilon=\frac{ce}{df}$, and if the arm were fixed, c

and f would revolve opposite ways, therefore ε is negative; $\mu=\frac{a}{b}$ and $\nu=\frac{h}{g}$, also g and b revolve opposite ways, and therefore μ and ν must have different signs, and thus the formula becomes

$$\frac{a}{p}=\frac{\mu\varepsilon-\nu}{1+\varepsilon}=\frac{\frac{ace}{bdf}-\frac{h}{g}}{1+\frac{ce}{df}}=\frac{aceg-hbdf}{bg(df+ce)}.$$

But under the second case, ε is negative, as before;

$$\mu=\frac{a}{b}\;a=\frac{h}{g},$$

and these have different signs;

$$\therefore\ \frac{n}{p}=a\,(1+\varepsilon)-\mu\varepsilon=\frac{h}{g}\left(1+\frac{ce}{df}\right)+\frac{ace}{bdf}.$$

405. Epicyclic trains are employed for several different purposes, each of which will be exemplified in turn.

(1.) For the representation of planetary motion, and for all machinery in which epicyclic motion is a part of the effect to be produced, as in the geometric pen and epicycloidal chuck, where real epicycloids are to be traced, or in the machinery for laying ropes. Some of these effects more properly belong to the next chapter.

In all these cases a frame containing mechanism is carried, by the action of machinery, round other fixed frames, and the motion can only be communicated to the machinery in this travelling frame upon the principle of epicyclic trains.

(2.) When a velocity ratio is required to be accurately established between two axes whose centers are fixed in position, and this ratio is composed of unmanageable terms when applied to the formation of a simple train, the epicyclic principle will generally effect the decomposition required, as we shall presently see.

(3.) For producing a small motion by what is termed the Differential principle, of which examples by other aggregate combinations have been already given.

(4.) To concentrate the effect of two or more different and independent trains upon one wheel or revolving piece, when one or both of them are variable in their action.

This was first applied to what are termed Equation clocks, in which the minute-hand points to true time, and its motion therefore consists of the equable motion of an ordinary minute-hand, plus or minus the equation, or difference between true and mean time.

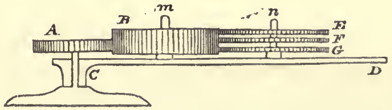
The same principle has been applied with the greatest success to the bobbin and fly-frame.

406. The train which is carried on the arm, and the arm itself, receive various forms; the train should be as light as possible, and consist of few wheels, especially when it revolves in a vertical plane; because being excentric its weight interferes with the equable rotation of the arm or wheel which carries it, unless it be balanced very carefully. When the excentric train is necessarily heavy, this difficulty is in some degree got over by making the train-bearing axis vertical, as in planetary machinery and in rope-laying machinery.

EXAMPLES OF THE FIRST USE OF EPICYCLIC TRAINS.

407. Ex. 1. *Ferguson's Mechanical Paradox.*—This was contrived to show the properties of a simple epicyclic train, of which the first wheel is fixed to the frame of the machine.

Fig. 290.



It consists of a wheel A, fig. 290, of 20 teeth, fixed to the top of a stud which is planted in a stand that serves to support the apparatus. An arm CD can be made to revolve round this stud, and has two pins m and n fixed into it, upon one of which is a thick idle wheel B of any number of teeth, which wheel geers with A and also with three loose wheels E, F, and G, which lie one on the other about the pin n.

When the arm CD is turned round, motion is given to these three wheels which form respectively with the intermediate wheel B and the wheel A three epicyclic trains.

Now in this machine the extreme wheels of each epicyclic train revolve in the same direction, and therefore ε is positive, and the formula applicable to this case is $\frac{n}{a}=1-\varepsilon$, where n and a are the absolute synchronal rotations of the last wheel and of the arm. But the object of this machine is only to show the directions of rotation.

If $\varepsilon=1$ $\frac{n}{a}=0$, and the last wheel of the train will have no absolute rotation. If ε be less than unity $\frac{n}{a}$ will be positive, and the last wheel will revolve absolutely in the same direction as the arm. But if ε be greater than unity $\frac{n}{a}$ will be negative, and the absolute rotations of the arm and wheel will be in opposite directions.

Let E, F, G have respectively 21, 20, and 19 teeth, then in

$$\text{the upper train } \varepsilon=\frac{A}{E}=\frac{20}{21}$$

is less than unity, and E will revolve the same way as the arm:

$$\text{in the middle train } \varepsilon=\frac{A}{F}=\frac{20}{20}$$

equals unity, $\frac{n}{a}=0$ and F will have no absolute revolution:

$$\text{and in the lower train } \varepsilon=\frac{A}{G}=\frac{20}{19}$$

is greater than unity, and G will revolve backwards.

The principle of the middle train, $\frac{A}{F}$, is employed in the mechanism of an elaborate rotary book-desk by Ramelli, fig. 188, published in 1588.

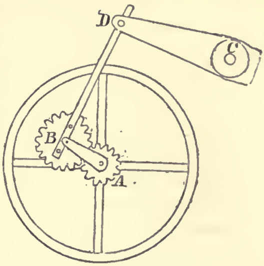
It follows from this that when the arm is turned round, E will revolve one way, G the other, and F will stand still, or rather continually point in the same direction. Which being an apparent paradox, gave rise to the name of the apparatus, which is well adapted to show the more obvious properties of trains of this kind. But Ferguson was not the first who studied the motions of epicyclic trains; Graham's orrery in 1715, appears to be the original of this curious class of machinery, but for which no general formula appears to have been hitherto given.*

408. Ex. 2. The contrivance termed *sun and planet-wheels* was invented by Watt as a substitute for the common crank in

* In Rees' *Cyclopædia*, Art. 'Planetary Numbers,' are a few arithmetical rules for the calculation of planetary trains, given without demonstration.

converting the reciprocating motion of the beam of the steam engine into the circular motion of the fly-wheel. The rod DB, fig. 291, has a toothed wheel B fixed to it, and the fly-wheel has a toothed wheel A also attached to it, a link BA serves to keep these wheels in geer. Now when the beam is in action the link or arm BA will be made to revolve round the center A, just as a common crank would, but as the wheel B is attached to the rod DB so as to prevent it from revolving absolutely on its own center B, every part of its circumference is in turn presented to the wheel A, which thus receives a rotatory motion, the proportionate value of which is easily ascertained by the formula already given.

Fig. 291.



The wheels AB with the arm constitute an epicyclic train $\frac{A}{B}=\varepsilon$, in which ε is negative, since the wheels revolve in opposite directions considered with respect to the arm, and in which the last wheel B has no absolute rotation, being pinned to the rod DB; the formula

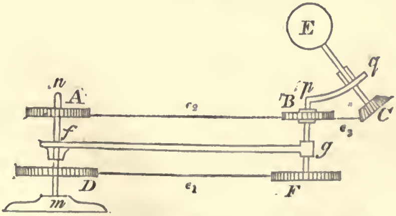
$$m=a+\frac{n-a}{\varepsilon}$$

becomes

$$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{making } n=0 \\ \text{and } \varepsilon=-\frac{A}{B}\end{array}\right\}\frac{m}{a}=1+\frac{B}{A}.$$

In Watt's engine the wheels were equal and therefore $m=2a$, and the fly-wheel revolved twice as fast as the crank-arm.

Fig. 292.



409. Ex. 3. *Planetary Mechanism.* mn is a fixed central

axis, upon which a train-bearing arm *fg* turns, carrying two separate epicyclic trains ε_1 and ε_2.

One of these, ε_1, has a first wheel *D*, and a last wheel *F*, connected by any train of wheel-work, and the axis of this last wheel passes through the end of the arm *fg*, and carries a second arm *pq*.

The other train ε_2 has a first wheel *A* connected to its last wheel *B*, by any train of wheel-work, but this last wheel is united to the first wheel of an epicyclic train ε_3 borne by the arm *p q*, of which train the last wheel is *C*. The question is, to find the absolute rotations of this last axis. The arrangement is one that occurs in some shape or other in most orreries, for the purpose of representing the diurnal rotation of the Earth's axis, in which case *f g* is the annual bar, and *E* a ball representing the Earth.

Let the absolute synchronal rotations of the bar $fg=a$, those of $D=m_1$; of *F* (and therefore of the arm *p q*)$=n_1$; of $A=m_2$; of *B* (and therefore of the first wheel of the train ε_3)$=n_2$; and of *C* (and therefore of the Earth)$=n_3$.

$$\text{Then } n_1=a\,.\,\overline{1-\varepsilon_1}+m_1\varepsilon_1$$

$$n_2=a\,.\,\overline{1-\varepsilon_2}+m_2\varepsilon_2$$

$$n_3=n_1.\,\overline{1-\varepsilon_3}+n_2\varepsilon_3.$$

In an orrery by Mr. Pearson for equated motions, described in Rees' 'Cyclopædia,' the arm or annual bar *f g*, is carried round by hand, and the wheels *A* and *D* are fixed to the central axis. In this case m_1 and m_2 vanish, and we obtain the formula

$$\frac{n_3}{a}=1-\varepsilon_1+\varepsilon_1\varepsilon_3-\varepsilon_2\varepsilon_3.$$

But the arm *p q* which carries the Earth's axis must preserve its parallelism, and therefore having no absolute rotation $n_1=0$. The train ε_1 will therefore $=+1$;

$$(1.)\qquad \text{and } \frac{n_3}{a}=\varepsilon_3-\varepsilon_2\varepsilon_3=\varepsilon_3\,.\,\overline{1-\varepsilon_2},$$

which must be positive, since the Earth performs its daily and annual revolutions in the same direction. The train ε_3 in Mr. Pearson's orrery consists of three wheels of 40 each *en suite*; $\therefore\ \varepsilon_3=+1$,

$$\text{also his train } \varepsilon_2=\frac{269\times26\times94}{10\times10\times18},$$

in which the extreme wheels revolve in opposite directions, therefore ε_2 is negative;

$$\therefore \frac{n_3}{a} = 1 + \frac{269 \times 26 \times 94}{10 \times 10 \times 18} = \frac{164809}{450}.$$

In making these calculations it must be remembered that the absolute period of E is a sidereal day and its period relative to the arm fg is a solar day, also the period of fg is a year. Now from Art. 398 it appears that the absolute revolutions of any wheel or piece of an epicyclic train are equal to the sum of its relative revolutions and the revolutions of the arm when they revolve in the same direction, and the same reasoning shows that the number of sidereal days in a year is equal to the number of solar days $+1$.

Also n_3 and a are the synchronal absolute rotations of the arm or annual bar fg, and Earth's axis CE; therefore $\frac{n_3}{a}$ = number of sidereal days in a year; but the fractions in Art. 346 represent the number of solar days in a year, and we may therefore employ them for $\frac{n_3}{a}$ by adding unity as above. We may thus obtain other and simpler trains than that already given. The train ε_3 being carried by a small arm should be as simple and light as possible. But it may be reduced to only two wheels by making ε_3 negative, and at the same time ε_2 positive, since $\frac{n_3}{a}$ *must* be positive.

For example, employing the fraction $\frac{94963}{260}$ (vide p. 280) and remembering that the rotations n_3 are sidereal days, we have

$$\frac{n_3}{a} = 1 + \frac{94963}{260} = \frac{95223}{260} = \frac{3}{2} \times \left(\frac{7 \times 29 \times 157}{2 \times 5 \times 13} - 1\right),$$

which compared with (1.), gives

$$\varepsilon_3 = -\frac{3}{2}, \text{ and } \varepsilon_2 = \frac{7 \times 29 \times 157}{2 \times 5 \times 13} = \frac{203 \times 157}{10 \times 13}.$$

Otherwise,

$$\frac{10 \times 164809 - 27 \times 58965}{10 \times 450 - 27 \times 161}$$

$$= \frac{56035}{153} = \frac{5 \times 7 \times 1601}{3^2 \times 17}$$

$$=\frac{7}{3}\times\frac{8005}{51}=\frac{7}{3}\times\left(\frac{8056}{51}-1\right)$$

$$=\frac{7}{3}\times\left(\frac{2^3 19.53}{3\times 17}-1\right)$$

with an error of 33″·9 in defect.

$$\text{Again}\quad \frac{7\times 164809-18\times 58965}{7\times 450-18\times 161}=\frac{92293}{252}=\frac{17\times 61\times 89}{2^2\times 3^2\times 7}$$

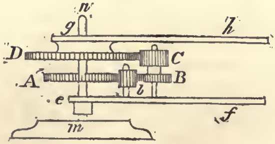
$$=\frac{61}{9}\times\left(\frac{23\times 67}{4\times 7}-1\right)$$

with an error of 13″·7 in defect.

410. Ex. 4. In the ordinary construction of a planetarium, difficulty arises on account of the number of concentric tubes which are required to communicate the motion of the wheels to the arms which carry the planets. This is avoided in a planetarium by Mr. Pearson. By interposing an epicyclic train between each pair of planetary arms he makes them each derive their motion from the next one in the series, so that the tubes are entirely dispensed with. Referring to Rees' 'Cyclopædia,' Art. Planetary Machines, for an elaborate description and drawings of this machine, I shall quote one portion as an example of the use of our formulæ.

A fixed stud *m n*, fig. 293, carries the whole of the arms in order, of which the arms of Mercury and of Venus are only shown

Fig. 293.



in this diagram, the others being disposed in the same manner. Between these arms a wheel *A* is fixed to the stud, and the arm of Venus carries an epicyclic train, of which *A* is the first wheel, and the last wheel *D* is fixed to the arm of Mercury. If, then, the period of Venus = ♀ and of Mercury = ☿, we have

$$\frac{n}{a}=1+\varepsilon,$$

since ε by virtue of the intermediate idle wheel *b* is negative,

$$\text{where } \frac{n}{a} = \frac{♀}{☿} = \frac{1553}{608}, \text{ nearly};$$

$$\therefore \varepsilon = \frac{AC}{BD} = \frac{945}{608} = \frac{63 \times 30}{16 \times 76},$$

which are Mr. Pearson's numbers.

If on the other hand *e f* were the Earth's arm, and *g h* that of Venus, we should have

$$\frac{⊕}{♀} = \frac{3277}{016} = 1 + \frac{AC}{BD}; \therefore \frac{AC}{BD} = \frac{⊕ - ♀}{} = \frac{1261}{2016} = \frac{13 \times 97}{2^5 . 3^2 . 7}.$$

To examine whether the idle wheel b cannot be dispensed with, it must be observed that it is introduced to make ε negative, and that if it were removed ε would be positive, and $\frac{n}{a} = 1 - \varepsilon$. Now, because the two arms must revolve in the same direction, $\frac{n}{a}$ is positive, therefore ε if positive must be less than unity, which makes n less than a, and the train-bearing arm revolve quicker than the other. If, then, the arm of Mercury were to carry the train instead of the arm of Venus, the idle wheel would be got rid of.

Supposing, therefore, in the figure, that Mercury is changed for Venus, the whole being inverted, we have

$$\varepsilon = + \frac{AC}{BD}, \text{ and } \frac{☿}{♀} = 1 - \frac{AC}{DB} = \frac{608}{1553},$$

$$\text{whence } \frac{AC}{BD}, = 1 - \frac{☿}{♀} = \frac{945}{1553} = \frac{2 \times 5 \times 53}{13 \times 67} \text{ nearly},$$

$$\text{or on the second supposition } \frac{♀}{⊕} = \frac{2016}{3277} = 1 - \frac{AC}{BD};$$

$$\therefore \frac{AC}{BD} = \frac{⊕ - ♀}{⊕} = \frac{1261}{3277} = \frac{13 \times 97}{29 \times 113}.$$

EXAMPLES OF THE SECOND USE OF EPICYCLIC TRAINS.

411. The second use which I have mentioned of epicyclic trains is for the establishment of an exact ratio of angular velocity between two axes when the terms of the ratio are unmanageable if applied to the arrangement of the ordinary trains of wheel-work, and when an approximation (Art. 342) is not admissible.

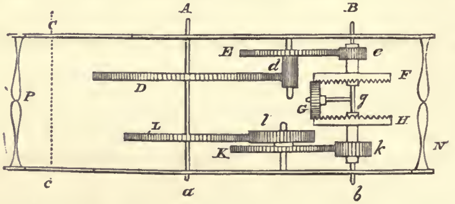
In Art. 401 we have shown that if ε be an epicyclic train, and if a driving axis be connected with the first wheel of the train ε by a train μ, and with the last wheel of the train ε by a train ν, we have

$$\frac{a}{p}=\frac{\mu}{1-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}}+\frac{\nu}{1-\varepsilon},$$

when a and p are the synchronal rotations of the train-bearing arm and of the driving axis respectively.

As the epicyclic train is in this case employed merely to concentrate the effect of the two trains μ and ν upon the axis of the train-bearing arm, the epicyclic train itself may be employed in

Fig. 294.



the simplest form, as in fig. 294, which shows one form of the mechanism which results.

Bb is the axis of the train-bearing arm *Gg*, this arm carries a wheel *G* which geers with two equal crown-wheels *F* and *H* which are concentric to the axis *Bb*, but are each fixed to tubes or cannons which run freely upon it.

The epicyclic train consists therefore of these three wheels, *F*, *G*, and *H*, of which *F* may be considered to be the first wheel, and *H* the last wheel.

Aa is the driving axis, and this carries two wheels *D* and *L*; *D* serves to connect the axis with the first wheel *F* of the epicyclic train by means of the train of wheel-work *d*, *E* and *e*; and *L*, together with *l*, *K* and *k*, constitute a train of wheel-work which connects the axis *Aa* with the last wheel *H* of the epicyclic train. We have therefore

$$\mu=\frac{DE}{de}, \text{ and } \nu=\frac{LK}{lk}.$$

If the motion of the epicyclic train be considered with respect to the arm, it is clear that its extreme wheels F, H move in opposite directions, therefore ε is negative and equal to $-\frac{FG}{GH}=-1$,

$$\therefore \frac{a}{p}=\frac{1}{2}(\mu+\nu)=\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{DE}{de}+\frac{LK}{lk}\right).$$

If therefore a ratio of angular velocity $\frac{a}{p}$ be given, of which the numerator or denominator, or both, are not decomposable, we must endeavour to find two manageable fractions whose sum shall be equal to the proposed fraction, and employ them to form a train of wheel-work similar to that shown in fig. 294.

This employment of epicyclic trains is given by Francœur,* from whom I have derived the calculations in the following articles. He attributes the mechanism to Messrs. Péqueur and Perrelet, about 1823, but the first idea of this method appears due to Mudge, who obtained an exact lunar train by epicyclic wheels before 1767.†

412. *First case.* Let $\frac{a}{p}$ be a fraction of which the denominator is decomposable into factors, but not the numerator.

Let the denominator $p=fgh$, therefore the fraction which represents the ratio of the velocities will be $\frac{a}{fgh}$. The denominator may often be susceptible of a division into three factors in various manners, each of which will furnish a distinct solution of the problem, subject to a condition which will presently appear. To decompose $\frac{a}{fgh}$ into two reducible fractions, assume

$$\frac{a}{fgh}=\frac{fx}{fgh}+\frac{gy}{fgh},$$

that is to say, $a=fx+gy$. It is easy to resolve this equation in prime numbers for x and y, and obtain an infinity of values for x and y that will satisfy the problem, and give

$$\frac{a}{fgh}=\frac{x}{gh}+\frac{y}{fh};$$

f and g must however be prime to each other, since a is prime, which is the condition already alluded to.

For example, let $\frac{271}{216}$ be the fraction proposed. Since $216=$

* *Dict. Technologique.* t. xiv. p. 431.

† Vide Mudge *On the Timekeeper*, or Reid's *Horology*, p. 70.

$4 \times 9 \times 6$ we may assume $271 = 9x + 4y$, $f = 9$, $g = 4$. The ordinary methods employed in equations of this kind will give $x = 31 - 4t$, $y = 9t - 2$, where t is any whole positive or negative number, $gh = 24$, $fh = 54$. Hence we have

$$x = 27,\ 23,\ 19 \ldots \quad 31,\ \ 35,\ \ 39,$$

$$y = 7,\ 16,\ 25 \ldots \quad -2,\ -11,\ -20,$$

corresponding to $t = 1,\ 2,\ 3 \ldots \quad -0,\ -1,\ -2,$

The fraction $\frac{271}{216}$ is therefore equal to

$$\frac{27}{24} + \frac{7}{54},\ \ \frac{23}{24} + \frac{16}{54},\ \ \frac{19}{24} + \frac{25}{54},$$

$$\text{or to } \frac{31}{24} - \frac{2}{54},\ \ \frac{35}{24} - \frac{11}{54},\ \ \frac{39}{24} - \frac{20}{54}, \text{ and so on.}$$

The first set referring to the case in which the crown-wheels turn in the same direction, the second to that in which they turn different ways.

But since 8 and 3 have no common factor, the denominator 216 might have been decomposed into $8 \times 3 \times 9$, whence assuming $271 = 8x + 3y$, we should have had

$$x = 3t - 1,\ y = 93 - 8t, \text{ and}$$

$$x = 2,\ 5,\ 8 \ldots\ldots -1,\ -4,\ -7 \ldots$$

$$y = 85,\ 77,\ 69, \ldots\ldots\ 93,\ 101,\ 109 \ldots$$

whence the new decompositions

$$\frac{2}{27} + \frac{85}{72},\ \ \frac{5}{27} + \frac{77}{72},\ \ \frac{8}{27} + \frac{69}{72},\ \ \frac{93}{72} - \frac{1}{27},$$

and so on, all of which are solutions of the question.

Generally the proposed denominator must be resolved into prime factors under the form $m^{\alpha}.\, n^{\beta}.\, p^{\gamma} \ldots\ldots$ and any two of the divisors of this quantity may be assumed for f and g, provided they be prime to each other. Thus if the equation $a = fx + gy$ be resolved in whole numbers, the component fractions will be $\frac{x}{gh} + \frac{y}{fh}$, where h is the product of all the remaining factors of the denominator, after f and g have been removed.

413. Ex. 1.—A mean lunation $= 29^{d}.\ 12^{h}.\ 44'.\ 3'' = 2551443''$, therefore the ratio of a lunation to twelve hours $= \frac{850481}{14400}$, of

which the numerator is a prime. But this fraction may be by the above method resolved into two:

$$\text{thus } \frac{850481}{14400} = \frac{40 \times 50}{6 \times 6} + \frac{71 \times 79}{50 \times 32}.$$

And if these fractions be employed for the trains μ and ν, the axes Aa, Bb will revolve with the required ratio,

$$\text{for } \frac{a}{p} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\mu+\nu) = \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\frac{80 \times 50}{6 \times 6} + \frac{71 \times 79}{25 \times 32}\right) = \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\frac{DE}{de} + \frac{LK}{lk}\right).$$

And the periods are inversely as the synchronal rotations. If, therefore, a period of twelve hours be given by a clock to the axis Bb, Aa will receive a period accurately equal to a lunation.

The mechanism may be thus represented in the notation already explained.

Axes	Trains	Periods.
First Axis............	79 —— 80	Lunation.
Upper Stud	. | .... 6 —— 50	
Upper Cannon	. ... 6 —— Crown Wheel F.	
Lower Stud	32 —— 71	
Lower Cannon	...... 25 ———— Crown Wheel H	
Train-bearing Axis.	———————— Epicyclic Wheel G..	12 hours.

If the fraction be resolved into a difference instead of a sum, as in the example $\frac{271}{216} = \frac{35}{24} - \frac{11}{54}$, this may be translated into mechanism, by making the trains μ and ν of different signs, that is, by making their extreme wheels revolve different ways.

414. Ex. 2.—Mean time is to sidereal time nearly as 8424 : 8401.

$$\text{Now } \frac{8401}{8424} = \frac{31 \times 271}{39 \times 216} = \frac{31}{39} \times \left\{\frac{19}{24} + \frac{25}{54}\right\};$$

$$\therefore \frac{a}{p} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\mu+\nu) = \left(\frac{19}{24} + \frac{25}{54}\right); \quad \therefore \mu = \frac{19}{12} \, \nu = \frac{25}{27},$$

and we obtain the following train, which differs from fig. 294 only in fixing the wheels E and K upon a single axis, which also carries a wheel of 39, geering with a wheel of 31 upon Aa, as appears in the following notation.

Axes	Trains	Periods
First Axis............	31...................................	Sidereal Day.
Second Axis	39—19—25	
Upper Cannon	.........|......27—Crown Wheel F.	
Lower Cannon	........12———Crown Wheel H	
Train-bearing Axis.	..................Epicyclic Wheel G..	Solar Day.

415. *Second case.*—The fraction in the first case has been supposed to have a decomposable denominator. Let now both denominator and numerator be prime. Form two fractions $\frac{a}{A}$ and $\frac{a_{\prime}}{A}$, in which A is an arbitrary quantity and commodiously decomposable into factors, and proceed to obtain from each of these fractions the sums or differences of two decomposable fractions as before, which may be employed in wheel-work as follows.

Let an axis *Aa*, fig. 294, be connected to one axis *Bb*, by two trains and an epicyclic train, as in the figure, and also to another axis *Cc* by a precisely similar arrangement. Then if the synchronal rotations of the axes *Aa*, *Bb*, *Cc* be A, a and $a_{\prime}$, μ, ν the trains which connect *Aa* with *Bb*, and $\mu_{\prime}$ $\nu_{\prime}$ the trains that connect *Aa* with *Cc*, we shall have

$$\frac{a}{A}=\frac{\mu+\nu}{2} \text{ and } \frac{a_{\prime}}{A}=\frac{\mu_{\prime}+\nu_{\prime}}{2};\ \therefore \frac{a}{a_{\prime}}=\frac{\mu+\nu}{\mu_{\prime}+\nu_{\prime}},$$

will be the ratio of the synchronal rotations of *Bb* and *Cc*.

Suppose for example that it be required to make one axis perform 17321 turns, while another makes 11743 ; both being prime numbers, the fraction $\frac{17321}{11743}$ is irreducible, and indecomposable into factors.

Assume a divisor $5040=7\times 8\times 9\times 10$, and form separately two trains whose velocities are represented by

$$\frac{17321}{5040} \text{ and } \frac{11743}{5040}.$$

For the first we have

$$\frac{17321}{5040}=\frac{1480}{630}+\frac{783}{720}=\frac{148}{63}+\frac{87}{80},$$

whence the trains $\frac{74}{63}$ and $\frac{87}{40}$, as in the first method. (Art. 412.)

For the second train,

$$\frac{11743}{5040}=\frac{830}{633}+\frac{729}{720}=\frac{83}{63}+\frac{81}{80},$$

whence the trains $\frac{166}{63}$ and $\frac{81}{40}$.

If we represent the wheels which in the left-hand train correspond to F, G and H, by f, g and h, we have the following notation of the resulting machine.

Axes	Trains	Synch. Rotations
Axis Aa	87—74—9—6	5040
	9—83	
	21—Crown Wheel F.	
	8—36	
	20—Crown Wheel H	
Axis Bb	———— Epicyclic Wheel G. ————	11743
	63 ———— Crown Wheel f.	
	40 ———— Crown Wheel h	
Axis Cc	———— Epicyclic Wheel g.	17321

EXAMPLES OF THE THIRD USE OF EPICYCLIC TRAINS.

416. The third employment of epicyclic trains, is to produce a very slow motion. In the formula $\frac{a}{p}=\frac{\mu\varepsilon-\nu}{\varepsilon-1}$ Art. 401, all the trains are at present taken positive. Let ε be made negative, and let μ and ν have different signs,

$$\therefore \frac{a}{p}=\frac{\mu\varepsilon-\nu}{\varepsilon+1},$$

in which, by properly assuming the numbers of the trains, a may be made very small with respect to p, and therefore the arm to revolve very slowly. This leads to such an arrangement as that of fig. 289 (Art. 400),

$$\text{for } \frac{a}{p}=\frac{aceg-hbdf}{bg(ce+df)} \quad \text{(Art. 398),}$$

and in this expression the two terms of the numerator having no common divisor, may be so assumed as to differ by unity, by which an enormous ratio may be produced.

For example, put a, c, e, g each equal 83,

$$b=106,\ d=84,\ f=65,\ h=82,$$

and we get

$$\frac{a}{p}=\frac{83^4-82\times106\times84\times65}{106\times83\,(83^2+84\times65)}=\frac{1}{108646502}.$$

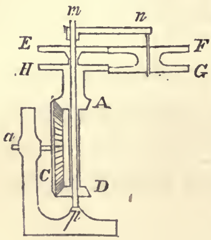
If in this machine we suppress the wheels h and e by making a turn both b and g, and d turn both f and c, we have*

$$\frac{a}{p}=\frac{a}{bg}\times\frac{cg-bf}{c+f}=\frac{20}{100\times99}\times\frac{101\times99-100^2}{101+100}=\frac{1}{99495}.$$

417. If on the contrary we wish to make the shaft, whose revolutions are p, revolve slowly with respect to the arm; then the numerator of the fraction $\frac{a}{p}$ must be a sum, and the denominator a difference; therefore ε must in the expression $\frac{a}{p}=\frac{\mu\varepsilon-\nu}{\varepsilon-1}$ be positive, and nearly equal to unity, and μ and ν must have different signs.

Fig. 295 is a combination that will answer the present purpose: mp is a fixed axis upon which turns a long tube, to the lower end of which is fixed a wheel D, and to the upper a wheel E; a shorter tube turns upon this, which carries at its extremities the wheels A and H. A wheel C is engaged both with D and A, and a train-bearing arm mn, which revolves freely upon mp, carries upon a stud at n the united wheels F and G. The epicyclic train therefore is formed of the wheels EFG and H, and is plainly positive, the extreme wheels EH revolving in the same direction.

Fig. 295.



Let H be the first wheel; $\therefore\ \varepsilon=\frac{HF}{GE}$,

also $\mu=\frac{C}{A}$ and $\nu=\frac{C}{D}$ with different signs, since A and D revolve different ways;

* Putting $a=20$, $b=100$, $c=101$, $g=99$, and $f=100$. This latter combination is given with these numbers by White (*Century of Inventions*).

$$\therefore \frac{a}{p} = \frac{\frac{C}{A} \cdot \frac{HF}{GE} + \frac{C}{D}}{\frac{HF}{GE} - 1},$$

put $A = 10$, $C = 100$, $D = 10$, $E = 61$, $F = 49$, $G = 41$, $H = 51$, and we shall obtain $\frac{a}{p} = 25000$, that is, 25000 rotations of the train-bearing arm mn will produce one of the wheel C.

418. Generally, however, the first wheel of the epicyclic train is fixed, in which case the formula becomes $\frac{n}{a} = 1 - \varepsilon$. If ε be positive and very near unity, this will be very small, or n small with respect to a, that is, the motion of the last wheel of the train slow with respect to that of the arm. In the simple forms of epicyclic trains, figs. 285, 286, and 287, the two latter are excluded, because ε is negative, but the former with the train

A is usually selected, A being a fixed wheel, and
b——E
D

$\frac{n}{a} = 1 - \frac{AE}{bD}$ is made as small as possible; which is effected by making $AE - bD = \pm 1$.

Thus if $\varepsilon = \frac{101 \times 99}{100 \times 100}$ be the numbers of the wheels,

$$\text{we have } \frac{n}{a} = \frac{1}{10000},$$

but as these large numbers are inconvenient for the wheels that are carried upon the arm,

$$\text{let } \varepsilon = \frac{111 \times 9}{100 \times 10}; \therefore \frac{n}{a} = \frac{1}{1000},$$

$$\text{or let } \varepsilon = \frac{31 \times 129}{32 \times 125}, \therefore \frac{n}{a} = \frac{1}{4000}.$$

419. This combination is used for registering machinery for the same purpose as the contrivances in Arts. 395 and 396; and since the concentric wheels A and D (fig. 285) are very nearly of the same size, the pinions b and E carried by the arm may be made of the same number of teeth, or in other words, a thick pinion

substituted for them which geers at once with the fixed wheel A and the slow-moving wheel D.*

Let M, $M-1$, and K be the numbers of teeth of D, A, and the thick pinion respectively, then

$$\frac{n}{a}=1-\frac{K\times(M-1)}{K\times M}=\frac{1}{M},$$

where M is the number of teeth of the slow-moving wheel.

EXAMPLES OF THE FOURTH USE OF EPICYCLIC TRAINS.

420. The fourth employment of epicyclic trains consists in concentrating the effects of two or more different trains upon one revolving body when these trains move with respect to each other with a variable velocity ratio. I have already shown how this may be effected when the extent of motion is small, as in Arts. 386, 389, but by epicyclic trains an indefinite number of rotations may be produced.

As an example of this application I shall take the equation clock, as it is the earliest problem of this class which presents itself for solution in the history of mechanism, and actually occupied the attention of mechanists for a long period.† The object of this machine is to cause the hands of a clock to point on the usual dial, not to mean solar time, but to *true solar time*. For this purpose we may resolve its motion as astronomers resolve the motion of the sun; namely, into two, one of which is the uniform motion which belongs to the mean time, and the other the difference between mean and true time, or the equation. If, then, two trains of mechanism be provided, one of them an ordinary clock, and the other contrived so as to communicate a slow motion corresponding to the equation of time, and if we then concentrate the effects of these separate trains upon the hands of our equation clock by means of an epicyclic train, we shall obtain the desired result. There are three possible arrangements, as in Art. 397, (1) the equation may be communicated to one end of the train, and the mean motion to the other, the arm receiving the solar motion;‡ (2) the equation may be given to one end of the train, and the mean motion to the arm, the other end of the train will then receive the solar motion; (3) the equation may be commu-

* In Roberts' self-acting mule.

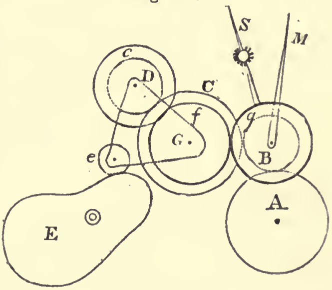
† *Vide* the *Machines Approuvées of the Acad. des Sciences.*

‡ Employed in the equation clock of Le Bon, 1722.

nicated to the arm, and the mean time to one end of the train, when the other end of the train will receive the solar motion.* I shall describe the mechanism of the latter arrangement.

421. Fig. 296 is a diagram which will serve to show the wheel-work of that part of an equation clock by which the motion is given to the hands. This wheel-work is commonly called the dial-work. *G* is the centre of motion of the epicyclic train, *GDe* the train-bearing arm. The wheels *f* and *C* turn freely upon the axis *G*, and the axis *D* carried by the arm has two wheels *D* and *c* fixed to it, which geer with *f* and *C* respectively.

Fig. 296.



The epicyclic train consists, therefore, of the four wheels *C*, *c*, *D* and *f*, of which let *C* be the first wheel. In this arrangement the equation is to be communicated to the train-bearing arm, and the mean motion to the first wheel *C* of the epicyclic train. Now for this purpose *C* is driven by the wheel *B*, dotted in the figure, which derives its motion from a wheel *A* connected with an ordinary clock, and as the minute-hand *M* of the clock is fastened to the axis of *B*, this minute-hand will show *mean time* upon the dial in the usual manner.

The equation is communicated to the train-bearing arm *GDe*, as follows. *E* is a cam-plate, which by its connection with the clock is made to revolve in a year (Art. 346). A friction roller *e* upon the train-bearing arm rests upon the edge of the cam-plate, and is kept in contact with it by means of a spring or weight. The cam-plate is shaped so as to communicate the proper quantity of angular motion to the arm. We have seen how one end of the epicyclic train receives the mean motion, and *f*, which is the other extremity of the train, geers with a wheel *g* concentric to the minute-wheel *B*, and turning freely upon it; the solar hand *S* is fixed to the tube or cannon of *g*, and thus receiving the aggregate of the mean motion and the equation, will point upon the dial to the true time which corresponds to the mean time indicated by *M*.

* In the clocks of Du Tertre, 1742, and Enderlin.

The formula which belongs to this case is, (Art. 402),

$$n = a \,.\, \overline{1-\varepsilon} + m\,\varepsilon,$$

in which ε is positive and $= \frac{Cc}{Df}$. Now if the synchronal rotations of the minute-hand M and of C be M and m respectively, we have $m = M . \frac{B}{C}$, and if those of f and g be n and s, we have $n = s \,.\, \frac{g}{f}$; substituting these values in the formula, we obtain

$$s = a . \frac{Df - Cc}{Dg} + M . \frac{Bc}{Dg},$$

of which the first part belongs to the equation, and the second to the mean motion.

Now the mean motion of S must be the same as that of M; $\therefore \frac{Bc}{Dg} = 1$. And for that part of the motion of S which is due to the equation, the expression $a . \frac{Df - Cc}{Dg}$ shows the proportion between the angular motion of the train-bearing arm and of the hand s, synchronal rotations being directly proportional to angular velocity (Art. 20). If the arm is to move with the same angular velocity as the hand,

$$\text{then } \frac{Df - Cc}{Dg} = 1,$$

and this is readily effected by making $f = c = g$ and $C = 2D$; also, since $Bc = Dg$ where $c = g$, we must have $B = D$, and these are the actual proportions employed by Enderlin. But if it be required that the arm move through a less angle than the hand, through half the angle, for example, then $C = 3D$, and so on.

422. In the treatises on Horology, and in the machines of the French Academy, may be found a great number of contrivances for equation clocks, which was a favourite subject with the mechanists of the last century. The machine itself is merely curious, and the desired purpose may be effected in a much more simple manner, if indeed it be worth doing at all, by placing concentrically to the common fixed dial a smaller movable dial, and communicating to the latter the equation, by which the ordinary minute-hand of the clock will simultaneously show mean time on the fixed, and true time on the movable dial, without the intervention of the epicyclic train.*

* This is done in the early equation clocks of Le Bon, 1714, Le Roy, &c.

Nevertheless, I have selected this machine as the best for the purpose of explanation, as being easily intelligible. The most successful machine of this class is undoubtedly the Bobbin and Fly-frame, in which, by means of an epicyclic train, the motions of the spindles are beautifully adjusted to the increasing diameter of the bobbins and consequent varying velocity of the bobbins and flyers. But this machine involves so many other considerations, that the complete explanation of it cannot be given in the present stage of our subject.

CHAPTER III.

ON COMBINATIONS FOR PRODUCING AGGREGATE PATHS.

423. I HAVE already stated in the beginning of this work that pieces in a train may be required to describe elliptical, epicycloidal, or sinuous lines, and that such motions are produced by combining circular and rectilinear motions by aggregation. The process being, in fact, derived from the well-known geometrical principle by which motion in any curve is resolved into two simultaneous motions in co-ordinate lines or circles.

If the curve in which the piece or point is required to move be referred to rectangular co-ordinates, let the piece be mounted upon a slide attached to a second piece, and let this second piece be again mounted upon a slide attached to the frame of the machine at right angles to the first slide. Then if we assume the direction of one slide for the axis of abscissæ, the direction of the other will be parallel to the ordinates of the required curve. And if we communicate simultaneously such motions to the two sliding pieces as will cause them to describe spaces respectively equal to the corresponding abscissæ and ordinates, the point or piece which is mounted upon the first slide will always be found in the required curve.

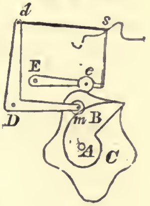
This first slide, being itself carried by a transverse slide, falls under the cases described in the first Chapter of this Part, and the motion may be given to it by any contrivance for maintaining the communication of motion between pieces the position of whose paths is variable, as, for example, by a rack attached to the slide and driven by a long pinion. For the purpose of communicating the velocities to the two slides, any appropriate contrivance from the first part of the work may be chosen.

424. If the curve in which the point is to move be referred to polar co-ordinates, these may be as easily translated into mechanism, by mounting the point upon a slide and causing this slide to revolve round a center, which will be the pole. Then connecting these pieces by mechanism, so that while the slide revolves round

its pole the point shall travel along the slide with the proper velocity, this point will always be found in the given curve.

425. Fig. 297 is a very simple arrangement, by which a short curve may be described upon the above principles.

Fig. 297.



E is the center of motion of an arm *Ee* which is connected by a link with the describing point *s*; *D* is the center of motion of a second arm *Dd* which is connected by a link *ds* with the same describing point *s*. If now *Ee* be made to move through a small arc, it will communicate to *s* a motion round *d* which will be nearly vertical, and if *Dd* be made to move through a small arc, it will communicate to *s* a motion round *e*, which will be nearly horizontal; and as the motion of the describing point *s* is solely governed by its connection with these two links, these motions may be separately or simultaneously communicated to it. *A* is an axis, upon which are fixed two cam-plates, the lower of which, *C*, is in contact with a roller *e* at the end of the arm *Ee*, and the upper, *B*, in contact with a roller *m* at the end of an arm *Dm*, fixed at right angles to the arm *Dd*.

When the axis *A* revolves the cams communicate simultaneously motions to the two arms, which motions are given to the describing point, one in a direction nearly perpendicular to the other; the point will thus describe a curve of which the horizontal co-ordinates are determined by the cam *B*, and the vertical by the cam *C*.

In practice the shape of the cams may be obtained by trial: the machine must be previously constructed, and plain disks of a sufficient diameter substituted for the cams, then if the required path of *s* be traced upon paper, and it be placed in succession upon a sufficient number of positions upon this path, the cam-axis being also shifted, the corresponding positions of the rollers *e* and *m* may be marked upon the disks, and the shape of the cams thus ascertained.

426. If the object of the machine be merely to trace a few curves upon paper or other material, the principle of relative motion * will enable us to dispense with the difficulties that are introduced by the necessity of maintaining motion with a piece whose path itself travels. For since every complex path is resolvable into two simple paths, let the describing point move in one component path, and the surface upon which it traces the curve move in the other component path with the proper relative

* Already employed in Arts. 355, 395, 396.

velocity, then will the curve be described by the relative motion of the point and surface.

Thus to describe polar curves, the surface upon which the curve is to be described may be made to revolve while the describing point travels with the proper velocity along a fixed slide, in a path the direction of which passes through the axis of motion of the surface. And as in this arrangement the axis of motion of the surface and the path of the describing point are both fixed in position, the simultaneous motions may be communicated to them by any of the contrivances in our first Part, without having recourse to the principle of Aggregate Motion. And thus, in general, a firmer and simpler machine will be obtained.

Also the tracing of curves upon a surface is sometimes accomplished under the Aggregate principle by causing the *surface* to move with the double motion, while the describing point is at rest.*

427. Screw-cutting and boring machines are reducible to this head. For the cutting of a screw is in fact the tracing of a spiral upon the surface of a cylinder, and the motion of boring is also the tracing of a spiral upon the surface of a hollow cylinder; the tool being in both cases the describing point, and the plain cylinder the surface. Now as the tracing of this spiral is resolvable into two simultaneous motions, one of revolution with respect to the axis of the cylinder, and the other of transition parallel to that axis, we have in the construction of machines for boring and screw-cutting the choice of four arrangements.

(1) The cylinder may be fixed and the tool revolve and travel. This is the case in all simple instruments for boring and tapping screws, in machines for boring the cylinders of steam engines, and in engineers' boring machines.

(2) The tool may be fixed and the cylinder revolve and travel. Screws are cut upon this principle in small lathes, with a traversing mandrel, as it is called.

(3) The tool may revolve and the cylinder travel. The boring of the cylinders of pumps is often effected upon this principle.

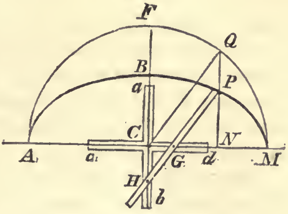
(4) The cylinder may revolve and the tool travel. Guns are thus bored, and engineers' screws cut in the lathe.

428. But motion in curves may be often more simply obtained by means of some geometrical property that may admit of being employed in mechanism, as the ellipse is described by the trammel,

* The motion which must be communicated to a plane to enable it to receive a given curve from a fixed describing point, is not the same as that which would cause a point, carried by the moving plane, to trace the same curve upon a fixed plane. *Vide* Clairaut, *Mém. de l'Acad. des Sciences*, 1740.

fig. 298. This consists of a fixed cross *abcd*, in which are formed two straight grooves meeting in *C*, and perpendicular to each other; a bar *PGH* has pins attached to it at *G* and *H*, which fit and slide in these grooves, and a describing point is fixed at *P*. When the bar moves it receives simultaneously the rectilinear motion of the pin *H* in the groove *ab*, and that of the pin *G* in the groove *cd*, by which the describing point *P* traces a curve *MPB*, which can be shown as follows to be the ellipse.

Fig. 298.



When *HP* coincides with *ab*, *G* comes to *C*, and therefore $GP = BC$, and when *HP* coincides with *Cd*, *H* comes to *C* and therefore $HP = CM$.

With center *C* and radius *CQ* equal to *HP*, describe a semicircle *AFM*, and through *P* draw *QPN* perpendicular to *cd* produced, join *CQ*, then *QP* is parallel to *CH*, also $HP = CM = CQ$, $\therefore$ *CHPQ* is a parallelogram.

$$\therefore \frac{CQ}{GP} = \frac{QN}{PN}.$$

But $CQ = CF$ and $GP = BC$,

$$\therefore \frac{QN}{PN} = \frac{CF}{BC},$$

and the curve is an ellipse.

429. Thus also epicycloids or hypocycloids are described mechanically in Suardi's pen,*, by fixing the describing point at the end of a proper arm upon the extreme axis *B*, fig. 285, of an epicyclic train in the manner already explained in the first Chapter (Art. 377). And in this instance we may also avail ourselves of the principles of Art. 426, and describe these curves by causing the plane and the arm which carries the describing point to revolve simultaneously with the proper angular velocity ratio, round parallel axes fixed in position.

430. But the most extensively useful contrivance of this class is that which is termed a *parallel motion*, by which a point is made to describe a right line by the joint action of two circular motions, and as this is a contrivance of great practical importance, it is necessary to examine it in detail.

* Adams' *Geometrical and Graphical Essays*.

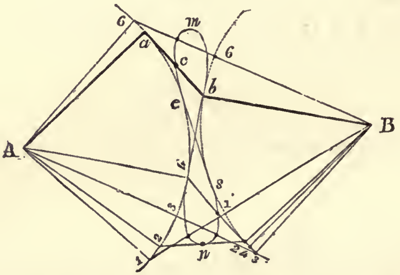
ON PARALLEL MOTIONS

431. A parallel motion is a term somewhat awkwardly applied to a combination of jointed rods, the purpose of which is to cause a point to describe a straight line by communicating to it simultaneously two or more motions in circular arcs, the deviations of these motions from rectilinearity being made as nearly as possible to counteract each other.

The rectilinear motion so produced is not strictly accurate, but by properly proportioning the parts of the contrivance, the errors are rendered so slight that they may be neglected.

432. Let *Aa*, *Bb*, fig. 299, be rods capable of moving round fixed centers *A* and *B*, and let them be connected by a third rod or link *ab* jointed to the extremities of the first rods respectively.

Fig. 299.

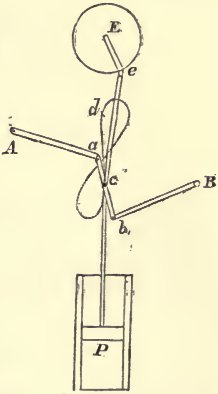


The rods *Aa*, *Bb* are termed radius rods, and the combination is simply a piece of link-work, so proportioned as to be capable only of performing alternate reciprocations.* This system may be moved in succession through a series of positions, the principal ones of which are indicated by the figures 1, 1, 2, 2, 3, 3, 4, 4, *a*, *b*, 6, 6, 1, 1, and so on repeatedly. If a tracing point *c* be attached to some part of the link near its center, it will describe a curve *mcesn*4*bm*, somewhat resembling the figure 8. If the position of the tracing point be properly assumed, a very considerable length of the intersecting portion of this curve will be found to approximate so nearly to a right line, that it may, for all practical purposes, be considered and employed as such.

* *Vide* above, p. 224, and figs. 211, 215, 217 at p. 222.

433. For example, let *Ee*, fig. 300, be a crank or excentric, which, by its revolution is intended to communicate a reciprocating motion to the piston *P* through a link *ec*, jointed to the top of the piston-rod *Pc*. In the common mode the upper end *c* of the piston-rod would be guided in a vertical line, either by sliding through a collar or in a groove. If, however, the end *c* be jointed to the center of a link *ab* connecting two equal radius rods *Aa*, *Bb*, whose centers of motion *B*, *A* are attached to the frame of machine; then the path of *c* will be a certain segment *cd* of the curve described in Art. 432; and if the motion of *c* be not too great with respect to the length of the radius rods, this curve will vary so slightly from a right line that it may be safely employed instead of a sliding guide. An algebraical equation may be found for the entire curve,* but it is exceedingly involved and complex, and of no use in obtaining the required practical results, which are readily deduced by simple approximate methods, as follows.

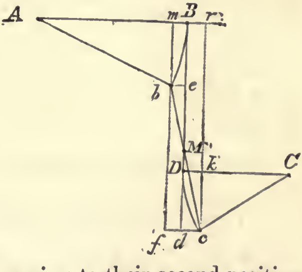
Fig. 300.



434. Let *A*, *C*, fig. 301, be the centers of motion, *AB*, *CD* the radius rods, *BD* the link, and let the link be perpendicular to the two radius rods in the mean position of the system *ABDC*.

Let *AB* be moved into the position *Ab*, and *Cc*, *bc* the corresponding positions of the other rod and the link. Draw *bf* parallel to *BD*. Now in the first position the link *BD* is perpendicular, and in the second position this link is thrown into the oblique position *bc*, by which the upper end is carried to the left, and the lower to the right of the vertical line *BMd*, through spaces *be*, *dc*, which are respectively equal to the versed sines of the angles described by the radius rods *AB*, *DC* in moving to their second positions *Ab*, *Cc*. But as the ends of the link move different ways, there

Fig. 301.



* This is completely worked out by Prony, *Architecture Hydraulique*, Art. 1478.

will be one point M between them that will be found in the vertical line BMd, and its place is determined by the proportion

$$bM : Mc :: be : dc.$$

$$\text{Let } AB=R,\ CD=r,\ BD=l,$$

$$BAb=\theta,\ DCc=\phi, \text{ and } bM=x;$$

$$\therefore \frac{x}{l-x}=\frac{R \text{ versin } \theta}{r \,.\, \text{versin } \phi}=\frac{R \,.\, \sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}}{r \,.\, \sin^2\frac{\phi}{2}}=\frac{r}{R}\times\frac{R^2 \,.\, \sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}}{r^2 \,.\, \sin^2\frac{\phi}{2}}.$$

Now as the angle BAb never exceeds about 20° in practice the inclination cbf of the link is small, and Bb $(=R\theta)$ very nearly equal to Dc $(=r\phi)$; and as these angles are small we may assume without sensible error $R \sin\frac{\theta}{2}=r \sin\frac{\phi}{2}$;

$$\therefore \frac{x}{l-x}=\frac{r}{R}, \text{ and } x=\frac{lr}{R+r},$$

which is the usual practical rule.

This rule may be simply stated in words, by saying that the segments of the link are inversely proportional to their nearest radius rods.

Ex. Let $R=7$ feet, $r=4$ feet, $l=2$ feet.

$$\therefore x=\frac{2\times 4}{7+4}=\frac{8}{11}=\cdot 727 \text{ feet}=8\cdot 72 \text{ inches.}$$

435. The deviation of the point M from the line BD may be measured with sufficient accuracy as follows, and it is necessary to know it in order to ascertain how great a value of the angle θ may be safely employed. For simplicity I shall confine myself to the case in which the radius rods AB, CD are equal in length, and taking their length equal to unity, let the link $BD=l$, draw bf, rc parallel to BD, and let the inclination fbc of the link to the vertical $=\gamma$;

$$\therefore \gamma=\frac{fc}{l}, \text{ since } fbc \text{ is small,}$$

$$=\frac{\text{versin } \theta+\text{versin } \phi}{l}=\frac{2 \text{ versin } \theta}{l}, \text{ very nearly.}$$

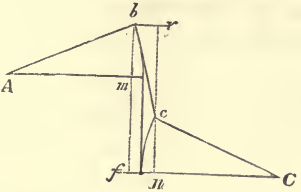
Now $mf=rc$, that is, $\sin\theta+l\cos\gamma=l+\sin\phi$;

$$\therefore \sin\phi=\sin\theta-l \text{ versin } \gamma=\sin\theta-\frac{l\gamma^2}{2}=\sin\theta-\frac{2}{l}\times(\text{versin } \theta)^2.$$

From this expression the value of ϕ corresponding to any given value of θ may be calculated.

When the radius rods are inclined upwards, we have (fig. 302), retaining the same notation,

Fig. 302.



$$bm + mf = rc + cn, \text{ that is, } \sin\theta + l = l \cdot \cos\gamma + \sin\phi;$$

$$\therefore \sin\phi = \sin\theta + \frac{2}{l} \times (\text{versin}\,\theta)^2.$$

Let the link be half of the radius rods; therefore

$$\sin\phi = \sin\theta \pm 4\,(\text{versin}\,\theta)^2,$$

where the upper sign is taken when the radius rods are above the horizontal line, and the lower sign when below.

Also the deviation of the central point M of the link from a vertical right line is equal to

$$\frac{\text{versin}\,\theta}{2} - \frac{\text{versin}\,\phi}{2} = \frac{\cos\phi - \cos\theta}{2}. \quad \text{(Art. 386.)}$$

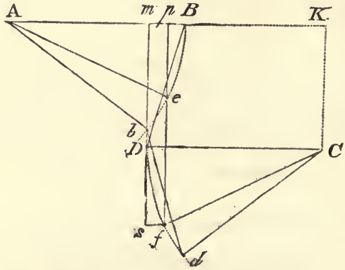
The actual values of ϕ, and of the deviation which correspond to the principal values of θ, are given in the following table.

Values of θ	ABOVE HORIZONTAL LINE		BELOW HORIZONTAL LINE	
	Values of ϕ	Deviation	Values of ϕ	Deviation
25°	27° 15′	·00864	22° 48′	·00777
20°	20° 54′	·00274	19° 7′	·00258
15°	15° 17′	·00064	14° 44′	·00060
10°	10° 3′	·00007	9° 57′	·00007

Thus if the radius rod or *beam* AB have 3 ft. radius, the deviation at 25° amounts to $\cdot 0086 \times 36$ inches $= \cdot 31$ inches, and at 20° to ·097 inch; generally the entire beam is made equal to three times the length of the stroke, and therefore describes an angle of about 19 degrees on each side of the horizontal line.

436. Even this error may be greatly reduced by a different mode of arranging the rods. Supposing the rods to be of equal length and equal to unity, let Ab, fig. 303, be the extreme

Fig. 303.



angular position of the rod AB, let $BAb = \theta$, and let the horizontal distance AK of the centers of motion A, C, be made equal to $AB + CD - \text{versin } \theta$, instead of being equal to the sum of the radii AB, CD, as in the former case. In this arrangement the radii being supposed parallel in the first position AB, CD, it is clear from the mere inspection of the figure, that the link is inclined to the left in one position as far as it is inclined to the right in the other very nearly; and therefore the central point of the link in the lowest position bd will be in the vertical line which passes through the place of its central point in the position BD.

But as the link is continually changing its inclination in the intermediate positions between these two, there will be in these intermediate positions a deviation of the central point from this vertical line, which it is easy to see will be at a maximum when the link is vertical. Let this happen when the radius rod is at an angle $BAe = \theta_{,}$,

and let $DCf = \phi_{,}$, and $mDB = dbs = \gamma$;

then we have $mD + Ds = pe + ef$,

that is, $l \cdot \cos \gamma + \sin \phi_{,} = \sin \theta_{,} + l$;

$$\therefore \sin \phi_{,} = \sin \theta_{,} + l \cdot \text{versin } \gamma = \sin \theta_{,} + \frac{l \cdot \gamma^2}{2}.$$

$$\text{But } \gamma = \frac{Bm}{l} = \frac{\text{versin } \theta}{l};$$

$$\therefore \sin \phi_{,} = \sin \theta_{,} + \frac{(\text{versin } \theta)^2}{2l},$$

also the deviation of the middle point $= \dfrac{\cos \phi_{,} - \cos \theta_{,}}{2}$.

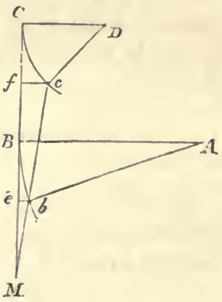
The following table exhibits the corresponding values of the angles and deviation, supposing as before that $l = \frac{1}{2}$; and also that versin $\theta = 2$ versin $\theta_{,}$ which is very nearly true.

θ	$\theta_{,}$	$\phi_{,}$	Deviation
20°	14° 7′	14° 20′	·00046
25°	17° 36′	18° 8′	·00143
30°	21° 1′	22° 6′	·00347
35°	24° 33′	26° 38′	·00785

In practice the angle θ never exceeds 20°. Let the radius rods be 3 feet in length, then the deviation in inches is 36 × ·0005 = ·018 instead of ·097, as in Art. 435.

437. If the radius rods AB, DC are arranged on the same side of the link CB, and the link be produced downwards, as in fig. 304, then the upper rod being made shorter than the lower will move through a greater angle, and carry the upper end c of the link through a deviation cf greater than be, which is that produced by the longer rod. There will therefore be a point M in the link below the lower rod, which will remain in the line CB produced; and this point will be found by the proportion

Fig. 304.



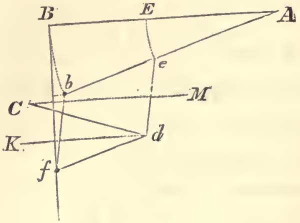
$$\frac{cM}{bM} = \frac{fc}{be} = \frac{r \text{ versin } \phi}{R \text{ versin } \theta} = \frac{R}{r} \times \frac{r^2 \sin^2 \frac{\phi}{2}}{R^2 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2}},$$

when $AB = R$, $CD = r$, $BAb = \theta$, $CDc = \phi$.

But $r \sin \frac{\phi}{2} = R \sin \frac{\theta}{2}$ very nearly, whence $\frac{cM}{bM} = \frac{R}{r}$ gives the position of the point M.

438. The complete parallel motion which is most universally adopted in large steam-engines is shown in fig. 305.

Fig. 305.



When so employed the beam of the engine becomes one of the radius rods of the system. *Ab* is half this beam whose center of motion is *A*. It has two equal links *ed*, *bf* jointed to it, of which *bf* is termed the *main link*, and *ed* the *back link*, and these are connected below by a third link *df*, termed the *parallel rod*, and equal to *be*. The radius rod or *bridle-rod Cd* is jointed to the extremity *d* of the back link *ed*, and its center *C* is fixed at a vertical distance below *A* equal to *ed* or *bf*. The length of the rods are so proportioned that *f* shall be the point to which the rectilinear motion is communicated, or *parallel point* as it is termed. To find the proportions let

$$Ae = R,\ be\ (=fd) = R_{\prime},\ Cd = r,$$

draw *Kd* parallel to *AB*;

$$\therefore\ Kdf = BAb\ (=\theta), \text{ and let } MCd = \phi,$$

then, as before, the point *d* is carried towards *K* through a space equal to *Cd* versin $\phi = r$ versin ϕ, and the point *f* receives simultaneously this motion towards *K*, and a motion in the opposite direction arising from the inclination of the parallel rod *df*, which motion is equal to *df* versin $fdK = R_{\prime}$ versin θ. If these two motions be equal the point *f* will remain in the vertical line *Bf*, as required;

$$\therefore\ r \,.\, \text{versin}\ \phi = R_{\prime}\ \text{versin}\ \theta, \text{ or } \frac{r}{R_{\prime}} = \frac{\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}}{\sin^2\frac{\phi}{2}}.$$

But the rods *Ae*, *Cd*, connected by the link *ed*, form a system similar to that of Art. 434, and, as before, we may assume

$$Ae.\sin\frac{\theta}{2} = Cd\sin\frac{\phi}{2}, \text{ or } R\sin\frac{\theta}{2} = r\,.\,\sin\frac{\phi}{2} \text{ very nearly};$$

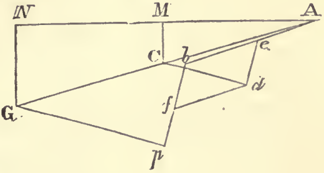
$$\therefore \frac{\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}}{\sin^2\frac{\phi}{2}} = \frac{r^2}{R^2} = \frac{r}{R_{\prime}};\ \therefore\ r = \frac{R^2}{R_{\prime}},$$

that is, *Ae* is a mean proportional between *cd* and *df*.

439. Since the joints *Ae, ed, Cd,* considered separately, form a system similar to the first simple arrangement, it follows that if the proper point be taken between *d* and *e* an additional parallel motion is obtained; so that this form combines two parallel motions in one, and is commonly so employed in steam-engines, by suspending the great piston-rod from *f* and the lesser air-pump rod from the link *ed*. The three parallel motions described (figs. 303, 304, and 305) are all due to Mr. Watt, and are to be found in his patent of 1784.

440. Let *AbfedC*, fig. 306, be an arrangement similar to the last; produce *bf*, and make $bp = ed\,\dfrac{Ab}{Ae}$.*

Fig. 306.



Join *AC* and produce it to *G*, making $AG = AC \cdot \dfrac{Ab}{Ae}$, join *Gp*.

Suppose *Gp* to be a new radius rod, moving round a fixed center *G*, it is clear in all positions of this arrangement that the lines *Gp* and *Cd*, *bp* and *ed* will remain parallel, on account of the fixed proportion of these lines respectively, therefore the point *f* would describe its straight line if *fd* were removed. But in that case the arrangement *Ab, bp, pG* considered separately forms a simple parallel motion of the first kind, and it appears that the more complex arrangement is equivalent to a simple one, occupying a greater space in the proportion of $AN : AM :: Ab : Ae$. Hence the convenience of the complex system.

441. There are various modifications of the latter arrangements, but the proportions of the rods may always be found in a similar manner to those already given. For example, in steamboats the beam is placed below the machinery, and the entire arrangement of the parallel motion inverted and otherwise altered to accommodate it to the necessity of compressing the entire machine into the smallest possible space.

Fig. 307 represents an arrangement of the parallel motion for steam-boats, in which *Ab* is the beam, *A* its center of motion; a short bridle-rod, *Cd*, is employed, and the parallel rod *dm* is jointed to the main link *bf* below the parallel point *f*.

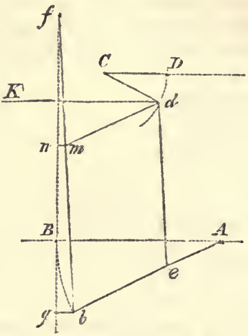
Let $Ae = R$, $eb = dm = R_{\prime}$, $Cd = r$, $DCd = \phi$, $BAb = \theta$. Draw

* From Prony, *Arch. Hyd.* Art. 1491.

AB, *Kd* horizontal, and *fB* vertical; then the point *d* is carried towards *fB* through a horizontal space

$$= Cd \text{ versin } DCd = 2r \cdot \sin^2 \frac{\phi}{2}.$$

Fig. 307.



And the point *m* is carried horizontally to the left by this movement of *d*, and at the same time to the right through a space $= dm \times \text{versin } Kdm = 2R_{,} \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2}$, since $dm = eb$ and $Kdm = BAb$.

The horizontal deviation of *m* from the vertical *fB* is therefore equal to $mn = 2R_{,} \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} - 2r \sin^2 \frac{\phi}{2}$.

Also the deviation of *b* from the vertical *fB*, is equal to $bg = Ab \times \text{versin } BAb = 2 \cdot \overline{R + R_{,}} \cdot \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2}$,

and since *f* is the parallel point, we have

$$\frac{fm}{fb} = \frac{nm}{bg} = \frac{R_{,} \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} - r \sin^2 \frac{\phi}{2}}{\overline{R + R_{,}} \cdot \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2}}.$$

But in the system *Cd*, *de*, *eA*, we may assume

$$r \sin \frac{\phi}{2} = R \sin \frac{\theta}{2}, \because \sin^2 \frac{\phi}{2} = \frac{R^2}{r^2} \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2};$$

$\therefore$ putting $fm = x$, and $mb = l$, and arranging the terms,

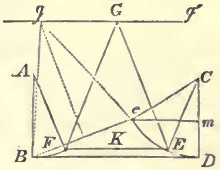
we have $\dfrac{x}{l + x} = \dfrac{R_{,} r - R^2}{(R + R_{,}) r}$, and $x = \dfrac{l}{R} \cdot \dfrac{R_{,} r - R^2}{R + r}$.

If $R_{,}r = R^2$, $x = 0$ and the parallel point coincides with m, as in Art. 438. If $R_{,}r < R^2$, x becomes negative and the parallel point will fall between m and b.

442. Let an isosceles triangle *GFE*, fig. 308, be suspended by two equal radius rods *CE*, *AF*, moving on fixed centers *A* and *C*, and jointed to the two extremities of the base *FE* respectively.

If now this triangle be swung from its central position (that is, when the apex is equidistant from the points of suspension *A* and *C*), so as to carry its apex *G* to a little distance on either side, as for example to the position *g*, and to a similar one on the opposite side *g′*, then a describing point at *G* will draw a curve which will be found to vary very little from a right line whose direction is parallel to the base of the triangle when in its central position *GFE*, provided the proportions of the system be so arranged, that the three points *gGg′* are situated in a right line. This arrangement, which is the invention of Mr. Roberts of Manchester, furnishes a parallel motion which is in many cases more convenient than the former ones, especially if the path required be horizontal.

Fig. 308.



To investigate the proportions, draw the arcs *FB*, *DE*, make *AB*, *CD* perpendicular to *FE* and join *BD*. Let the extreme position be that in which the radius rod *AF* becomes perpendicular and coincident with *AB*, and the middle position that in which the base *FE* of the triangle is horizontal, and therefore parallel with *BD*. Then it remains to find such an altitude for the point *G*, that its vertical distance above *BD* may be the same in the middle and in the extreme position, in which case as the two extreme positions are symmetrical to the middle one, a right line parallel to *BD* will pass through the three positions of the apex *G*, as required.

Let $AB = CD = r$, $FE = b$, $BD = d$, $GK = h$,

$DCE = BAF = \theta$, $DCe = \phi$, $eBD = \psi$,

Then in the middle position, we have

$$2r \cdot \sin\theta + b = d, \qquad (1)$$

in the extreme position,

$$b\cos\psi + r \cdot \sin\phi = d, \qquad (2)$$

$$\text{and also } b \cdot \sin\psi = r \cdot \operatorname{versin}\phi, \qquad (3).$$

Again, in the middle position, the altitude of G above BD is

$$h + r \,.\, \text{versin}\ \theta,$$

and in the extreme position the altitude of g above BD is

$$h \,.\, \cos \psi + \frac{b}{2} \sin \psi,$$

and these are equal by the conditions of the problem;

$$\therefore\ h + r \,.\, \text{versin}\ \theta = h \,.\, \cos \psi + \frac{b}{2} \sin \psi. \quad (4).$$

In these four equations we are at liberty to assume three of the quantities ϕ, ψ, θ, r, d, b, h, and the others may be determined; the most convenient is to assume values for r, d, and b. If $r = d = 1$, then the following table shows a few corresponding values of b and h.

b	h
$\frac{2}{3}$	3·95
·577	1·100
$\frac{1}{2}$	·943
·414	·654

But a convenient expression may be found by approximation, as follows: supposing that the angles of the system ϕ, θ and ψ are much smaller than those shown in the figure;

$$\text{for by (3) and (4)}\ \frac{h}{r} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}\ \text{versin}\ \phi - \text{versin}\ \theta}{\text{versin}\ \psi},$$

in which if we assume

$$\text{versin}\ \phi = \frac{em^2}{2r^2},\ \text{versin}\ \theta = \frac{\left(\frac{em}{2}\right)^2}{2r^2} = \frac{1}{4} \,.\, \frac{em^2}{2r^2},$$

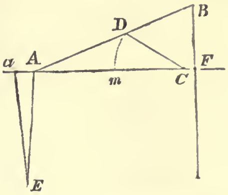
$$\text{versin}\ \psi = \frac{mD^2}{2b^2},\ \text{where}\ mD = \frac{em^2}{2r},$$

$$\text{and}\ em = d - b,$$

$$\text{we finally obtain}\ \frac{h}{r} = \frac{b^2}{(d-b)^2}.$$

443. Let the lever AB, fig. 309, be jointed at the extremity A to a rod or frame EA moving round a fixed center E, and so long that the small arc Aa, through which the extremity of the lever A moves, may be taken for a right line in the direction of the line AF. CD is a bridle rod whose fixed center of motion C is in the line AF. Let $CD=r$, $AD=R$, $DB=R_{,}$, $DCA=\phi$, $DAC=\theta$, then, supposing as before for convenience that the machine is in a vertical plane and the line AF horizontal, the point D is carried horizontally to the right through a space $=r$ versin ϕ, and the point B receives this motion, and is also carried to the left horizontally by means of its inclination through a space $=R_{,}$ versin θ, and if these be equal, the horizontal distance of B from A will be the same as when the rods coincided with the horizontal line AF; therefore we must have

Fig. 309.



$$R_{,} \text{ versin } \theta = r \text{ versin } \phi, \qquad (1)$$

$$\text{also } Dm = R \sin \theta = r \,.\, \sin \phi \qquad (2).$$

From these two equations the value of $R_{,}$ may be obtained for any given values of R, r and θ; also,

$$\text{since } R_{,} \,.\, \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} = r \sin^2 \frac{\phi}{2}, \text{ by (1)};$$

$$\text{and } R \sin \frac{\theta}{2} = r \,.\, \sin \frac{\phi}{2} \text{ very nearly, we obtain}$$

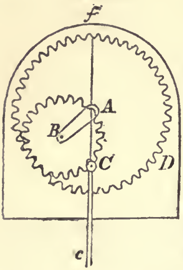
$$R_{,} r = R^2.$$

If the distances AD, DC, DB be equal, and the point A be made to travel in an exact straight line by sliding in a groove instead of the radial guide, then the parallel point will describe a true straight line perpendicular to AF, instead of the sinuous line which in all the other arrangements is substituted for it. For in this case the angle DAF is equal to DCA in all positions, and since $DB=DC$, a perpendicular from B upon AC will always pass through the same point C. In this respect this parallel motion has the advantage over all others.

If the friction of a sliding guide at A be considered objectionable, a small parallel motion of the first kind (Art. 434) may be substituted for it.

444. Toothed wheels are sometimes employed in parallel motions; their action is necessarily not so smooth as that of the link-work we have been considering, but on the other hand the rectilinear motion is strictly true, instead of being an approximation, as will appear by the two examples which follow.

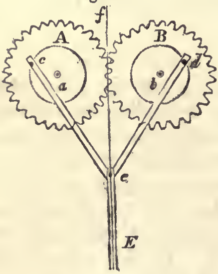
Fig. 310.



445. Ex. 1. In fig. 310 a fixed annular wheel D has an axis of motion A at the center of its pitch-line. An arm or crank AB revolves round this center of motion, and carries the center of a wheel B, whose pitch line is exactly of half the diameter of the annular wheel with whose teeth it geers. By the well-known property of the hypocycloid any point C in the circumference of the pitch-line of B will describe a right line coinciding with a diameter of the annular pitch-circle. If then the extremity C of a rod Cc, be jointed to this wheel B by a pin exactly coinciding with the circumference of its pitch-circle, the rotation of the arm AB will cause C to describe an exact right line Cf, passing through the center A. This is termed White's parallel motion, from the name of its inventor; * and the law of its motion is exactly the same as that described above (p. 215, fig. 204), which is known as Booth's motion (patented in 1843).

446. Ex. 2. Two equal toothed wheels, A and B, fig. 311, carry pins c and d at equal radial distances; and symmetrically placed with respect to the common tangent of the pitch-circles fe. If two equal links ce, de, be jointed to these pins and to the extremity of a rod eE, the point e will plainly always remain in the common tangent, by virtue of the similar triangles formed by the rods, the tangent fe, and the line cd.

Fig. 311.



The velocity ratio of e to the wheels is not however the same as that produced by the common crank and link of fig. 202, p. 214, for the path of e does not pass through the center of motion of the crank.

* *Vide* White's *Century of Inventions.*

If however r be the radius of the crank ac or bd, R the radius of the pitch-circles of the wheels, l the length of the link ce or ed, and the angle $cab=\frac{\pi}{2}+\theta$, then it can be easily shown that the distance of e from the line of centers ab is equal to

$$\sqrt{l^2-(R\pm r\sin\theta)^2}\pm r\,.\cos\theta.$$

PART THE THIRD.

ON ADJUSTMENTS.

CHAPTER I.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

447. In the elementary combinations which have occupied the two previous Parts of this subject, the angular velocity ratio and directional relation in any given combination are determined by the proportion and arrangement of the parts, and will either always remain the same, or their changes will recur in similar periods. But it is necessary in many machines that we should have the power of altering or adjusting these relations. These adjustments may be distributed under three heads.

(1.) To break off or resume at pleasure the communication of motion in any combination.

(2) To reverse the direction of motion of the follower with respect to that of the driver; that is, to change their *directional relation.*

(3.) To alter the *velocity ratio* either by determinate or by gradual steps.

These changes may be either made by hand at any moment, or they may be effected by the machine itself, by means of a class of organs especially destined for that purpose; and which are in fact a kind of secondary moving powers to the machine.

448. The communication of motion may be broken off by detaching pieces that remain united during the action of the combination, and therefore move as one. Thus wheels and pullies are connected with their shafts for this purpose, by means of catches or bolts; and shafts are connected endlong with each other by couplings, or other contrivances which admit of being released or put in action at pleasure. Otherwise the communication may be broken off by disengaging the driver from the

follower, which in the two kinds of contact action is effected by withdrawing the pieces from each other; in wrapping connections, by either slackening the belt or by slipping it off the pully; and in link-work, by disengaging the joints of the links.

449. But the whole of these contrivances as well as those by which the directional relation is changed, belong to constructive mechanism, and as they involve no calculations relating to the velocity ratio, which is the principal object of the present work, I shall not enter into any details respecting them, referring in the mean time to the Encyclopædias and other treatises on machinery, in which they are fully explained.* The case is different with respect to the third kind of adjustments, in which the velocity ratio is the subject of alteration, and I shall therefore give examples of the principal methods of effecting this purpose.

The adjustments of the velocity ratio may consist either of (1) Determinate changes, which for the most part require the machine to be stopped, or of (2) Gradual changes, which do not require the machine to be stopped.

* *Vide* especially Buchanan's *Essays on Mill-work* by Rennie, in which these combinations are very fully treated of.

CHAPTER II.

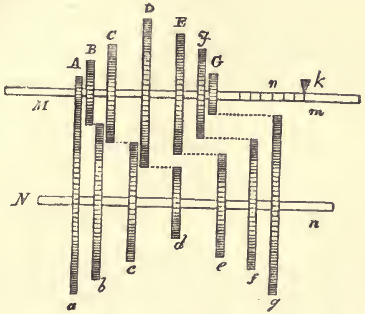
TO ALTER THE VELOCITY RATIO BY DETERMINATE CHANGES.

450. LET there be two axes *A*, *B*, whose position in the machine is fixed; and let it be required to connect these by toothed wheels in such a manner that the velocity ratio may assume any one of a given set of values. The simplest method is to provide as many pairs of wheels as there are to be values, and let the sum of the pitch-radii of each pair equal the distance *AB* of the centers. Then to obtain any one of the required ratios, we have only to screw the proper pair of wheels to the ends of the axes. Sets of wheels for this purpose are commonly termed *Change-wheels.* It is generally convenient that all the change-wheels should be of the same pitch, and the numbers may be calculated as in the following example. Let the given set of values for the velocity ratio or the *change-ratios* be $\frac{1}{1}, \frac{2}{1}, \frac{3}{1}, \frac{4}{1}, \frac{3}{2}, \frac{5}{4}$. Then, since the pitch and distance of the centers are the same in every pair, the sum of their numbers of teeth must be the same; and this sum must also be divisible by the sum of the numerator and denominator of each of the above fractions, or by 2, 3, 4, 5, 9. The number required is therefore a multiple of $2^2 . 3^2 . 5 = 180$, and if 180 be taken as the least possible number, we have the following pairs of wheels, which manifestly fulfil the conditions:

Ratios	Wheels
1	90 ... 90
2	60 ... 120
3	45 ... 135
4	36 ... 144
$\frac{3}{2}$	72 ... 108
$\frac{5}{4}$	80 ... 100

451. To save the trouble of screwing and unscrewing the wheels, the entire set may remain fixed upon their respective axes, if arranged upon the principle of fig. 312.

Fig. 312.



Mm, *Nn* are the two axes; *A*, *a* . *B*, *b* . *C*, *c* . &c. the respective pairs of change-wheels, and the sum of the radii of every such pair being equal to the distance of the axes, the teeth of any pair that are set opposite to each other will work. For this purpose the upper axis is capable of sliding endlong, and is retained in any required position by a bolt *k*, which enters into a groove *m* turned upon the axis. In the figure *A* and *a* are shown in action, but i :any other pair, as *D*, *d*, are required to work together, the bolt *k* must be removed, and the axis shifted endlong until *D* and *d* come into geer. The same motion will bring the groove *n* opposite to the bolt by which the shaft may be secured in this new position, and similarly for any other pair of wheels.

The wheels must be, however, so placed upon the shafts, that only one pair will come opposite to each other at the same time. To effect this, the wheels are arranged in the order of their magnitudes, placing the smallest at each end of the upper group, and the others in alternate order with the largest in the middle, and the wheels of the lower shaft in the reverse order, for a reason which will presently appear.

Let m be a quantity rather greater than the thickness of each wheel. Then, A and a being in contact, let the lateral distance of B from $b = m$, that from C to $c = 2m$, from D to $d = 3m$...... and that from the n^{th} wheel to its fellow $= (n-1).m$.

But as every successive wheel B or C is too great to be pushed past the previous wheel a or b of the lower group, these upper wheels, to make the axis as short as possible, must each lie close to the previous wheel when the upper group is in its extreme position to the left; and therefore the smallest distance between the wheels of the upper set will be from A to $B=0$, from B to $C=m$, from C to $D=2m$, and so on; between the lowest set from a to $b=m$, from b to $c=2m$... and so on; and if the wheels were each arranged in one conical group, as from A to D, and from a to d, the length of shaft required for n wheels would be the sum of the thickness of all the wheels + their distances, which, for the upper shaft, is equal to

$$[n+\{0+1+2+\ldots(n-2)\}]m=\left\{(n-1)\cdot\frac{(n-2)}{2}+n\right\}m$$

and for the lower shaft equal to,

$$[n+\{1+2+3+\ldots(n-1)\}]m=\frac{n+1}{2}\cdot nm.$$

By arranging the wheels in two conical groups, as in the figure, they occupy a much shorter length upon the shafts; for the central wheel D can be pushed past its own wheel d, and the same reasoning will then be true for the conical group $DEFG$ and $defg$.

Thus the length of shaft required for n wheels in two groups of $\frac{n}{2}$ each, will be for the lower shaft,

$$\frac{n}{2}\,\frac{\frac{n}{2}+1}{2}\,.m+\frac{n}{2}\,m,$$

(where $\frac{n}{2}\,m$ is the space between the two groups),

$$=n\,.\frac{n+6}{8}\,m,$$

which is much less than the former, and similarly for the upper shaft.

In our example, the wheels on the upper and lower shafts occupy spaces of $13m$ and $19m$ respectively, and if they had been arranged each in one conical group would have occupied spaces equal to $22m$ and $28m$.

Similar arrangements to this are adopted in cranes for raising weights, in which the choice of three or four velocity ratios is required between the handle and chain-barrel.

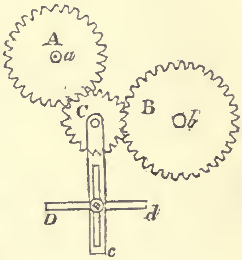
452. But it is often inconvenient to make the sum of the radii of change-wheels equal to the distance of the centers, and requires moreover, as many different pairs of change-wheels as there are to be changes in the velocity ratio, unless indeed some of these

ratios be merely the inverse of others. The more usual method therefore is, to screw a pair of wheels of the proper numbers to the end of the axes, without regard to their radii, and afterwards to connect them by an idle wheel. Art. 322.

Thus let *a* and *b*, fig. 313, be the axes upon which a pair of change-wheels *A* and *B* have been fitted.

C is the idle-wheel, which may revolve upon a pin or stud fitted to the end of a piece *Cc*, which has a long slit at its extremity. A slit *Dd* in the transverse direction is formed in the frame of the machine, and the piece *Cc* which carries the idle wheel is fixed in its place by a bolt passing through the two slits at their intersection.

Fig. 313.



By this method of fixing the idle wheel it admits of being shifted about so as to be put in geer with the two change-wheels whatever be their diameters.

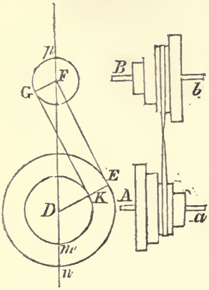
There are various other methods of shifting and fixing the variable center of the idle wheel, but the effect is the same in all. If it be required also to have the power of changing the directional relation, another piece like *Cc* must be provided, upon which two idle wheels in geer are mounted, and this piece must be brought into such a position that one of these wheels shall geer with *B* and the other with *A*; *A* and *B* will therefore turn in opposite directions, whereas in fig. 313 they turn in the same direction.

The number of change-wheels is greatly reduced in this manner, because they admit of being combined in any pairs; thus, in the example (Art. 450), six change-wheels will be sufficient instead of twelve, thus:

Ratios	Wheels
1	24 ... 24
2	24 ... 48
3	24 ... 72
4	24 ... 96
$\frac{3}{2}$	48 ... 72
$\frac{5}{4}$	48 ... 60

453. *On Speed Pullies.*—Let there be two parallel axes, *Aa*, *Bb*, fig. 314, upon each of which is fixed a group of pullies adapted for belts or bands, and of different diameters. A ready mode is thus provided of changing the angular velocity ratio of the shafts by merely shifting the belt from one pair of pullies to another. Such groups of pullies are termed *Speed Pullies.* The diameters of every pair of opposite pullies ought to be so adjusted that the belt shall be equally tight upon any pair. If the belt be crossed, it is easy to show that this object will be attained by making the sum of the diameters of every pair of opposite pullies the same throughout the set.

Fig. 314.



For let DK, FG be the radii of any pair, make GK a common tangent to the pullies, draw FE parallel to GK and describe a circle with radius $DE = DK + FG$.

Then $\frac{1}{2}$ length of belt $= mK + KG + Gp$,

$$\text{and } mK + Gp = Dm \,.\, mDK + FG \,.\, GFp$$

$$= DE \times mDK \text{ for } mDK = GFp$$

$$\therefore \tfrac{1}{2} \text{ length} = nE + EF,$$

which is constant for any pair of pullies of which the sum of the radii equals DE.

454. In any group of speed-pullies if D be the diameter of any follower, and K the constant sum of the diameters, $K-D$ will be the diameter of its driver. And if L, l be the synchronal rotations of the driver and follower respectively,

$$\frac{l}{L} = \frac{K-D}{D} = \frac{K}{D} - 1,$$

$$\text{and } D = \frac{KL}{L+l},$$

in which equation putting for L and l the required series of values, the corresponding diameters of the speed-pullies may be obtained.

455. To save founders' patterns it is usual in practice to make the two groups of speed-pullies exactly alike, placing the small end of one opposite to the large end of the other.

A regular geometrical series of values of $\frac{L}{l}$ may be obtained for such a pair of similar pullies, as follows: Let r be the common ratio of this series, n the number of terms, then the extreme terms of the series must evidently be the reciprocals of each other, therefore the series will be (putting $m=\frac{2}{n-1}$ for convenience) of the form,

$$\frac{1}{r^m}\,\frac{1}{r^{m-1}}\,\frac{1}{r^{km-2}}\ldots\ldots r^{m-2},\ r^{m-1},\ r^m.$$

But if K be the constant sum of the diameters, and D_1 D_2 ...the diameters of the pullies in order, the same series will be

$$\frac{D_1}{K-D_1},\ \frac{D_2}{K-D_2},\ \ldots\ldots\frac{K-D_2}{D_2},\ \frac{K-D_1}{D_1},$$

and comparing the corresponding terms we have

$$\frac{D_1}{K-D_1}=\frac{1}{r^m};\ \therefore\ D_1=\frac{K}{1+r},\ \text{similarly}\ D_2=\frac{K}{1+r^{m-1}},$$

and so on.

456. Ex.1. To find the diameters of a set of speed-pullies that shall give four values for $\frac{l}{L}$, with a common ratio of 1·38; the sum of the diameters of the corresponding pullies being 25 inches.

$$\text{Here } K=25,\ r=1{\cdot}38,\ n=4,\ m=\frac{3}{2};$$

$$\therefore\ D_1=\frac{250}{26}=9{\cdot}6,\ D_2=\frac{250}{22}=11{\cdot}4,$$

$$D_3=K-D_2=13{\cdot}6\ ;\ \text{and}\ D_4=K-D_1=15{\cdot}4,$$

are the diameters in inches.

Ex. 2. Let there be a set of six speed-pullies in each group, of which the diameters of the extremes are 13 in. and 4 in.: to find the intermediate diameters.

The first and last terms of the geometrical series of six velocity ratios is $\frac{4}{13}$ and $\frac{13}{4}$, hence the common ratio being found by logarithms as usual, gives $r=1{\cdot}61$.

$$\text{Also}\ K=17,\ m=\frac{5}{2};$$

whence the successive diameters are 4, 5·6, 7·5, 9·5, 11·4, 13, in inches.

457. If a great number of changes of velocity be required either in the case of speed-pullies or toothed wheels, a *train* of axes must be employed, with the power of introducing a given number of changes between each, in which case the total number of changes in the system will be the continual product of the numbers of changes that can take place between each pair. Considering only a set of four shafts for the sake of simplicity, let A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4, be the angular velocities of the axes in order, and let the series of changes in the value of $\frac{A_1}{A_2}$ form a geometrical series whose common ratio is r, and first term a; $\therefore\ \frac{A_1}{A_2}=ar^{n-1}$ is the n^{th} term of this series. Similarly, let the m^{th} term of the series of values of $\frac{A_2}{A_3}=bs^{m-1}$, and the k^{th} term of the series of values of $\frac{A_3}{A_4}=ct^{k-1}$. $\therefore$ Angular velocity ratio of the extreme axes of the train when the n^{th}, m^{th}, and k^{th} values of the respective ratios are employed

$$=\frac{A_1}{A_4}=abc\,.\,r^{n-1}\,.\,s^{m-1}\,.\,t^{k-1}=Cr^{n-1}\,.\,s^{m-1}\,.\,t^{k-1} \text{ suppose.}$$

Let the number of changes or terms of which each of these series consists be m, n, and k respectively, then may the entire set of changes in the system be arranged in a continuous geometrical series with a common ratio t, as in the margin; provided we have

C
Ct
Ct^2
$\vdots$
Ct^{k-1}
Cs
Cst
Cst^2
$\vdots$
Cst^{k-1}
$\vdots$
$Cs^? t^{k-1}$
$\vdots$
$Cs^{m-1}\,t^{k-1}$
Cr
Crt
$\vdots$
$Cr^{n-1}\,s^{m-1}\,t^{k-1}$

$$\frac{Cs}{Ct^{k-1}}=t,\ \therefore\ s=t^k$$

$$\text{And also } \frac{Cr}{Cs^{m-1}\,t^{k-1}}=t;$$

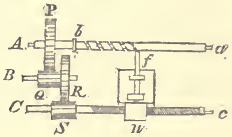
$$\therefore\ r=s^{m-1}\,t^k=s^m=t^{km}.$$

If however we had counterchanged the values by making $\frac{A_1}{A_2}=ct^{k-1}\ \frac{A_2}{A_3}=ar^{n-1}$, and so on, the same value would have been obtained for $\frac{A_1}{A_4}$. It appears therefore that to form a regular geometrical series of changes whose velocity ratio shall be t, the separate series of change-values of the velocity ratios $\frac{A_1}{A_2}$, $\frac{A_2}{A_3}$ &c., must be so arranged that the common ratio of some one of these series must be t, and if there be k changes or terms in this series, then the common ratio of a second must be t^k; also if this have m changes, the common ratio of a third set must be t^{km}, and so on.

458. Ex. 1. Change-wheels are employed in lathes for cutting screws of any required pitch, and also in self-acting lathes. The diagram, fig. 315, represents the general arrangement of this mechanism.

Ab is the spindle or mandrel of the lathe, to which is united in the usual way a cylindrical rod *ba* upon which the screw is to be cut. *Cc* is a long screw revolving in bearings fixed to the frame of the lathe, and giving motion by means of the nut *n* to a sliding table or *saddle* upon which is clamped the pointed tool *f*, which is intended to cut the screw.*

Fig. 315.



Every revolution of the screw *Cc* will therefore advance the tool through the space of one pitch, and if the spindle *Aa* revolve with the same velocity as the screw, the tool will trace upon the surface of *ba* a screw exactly of the same pitch as *Cc*. But if *Aa* revolve with a less velocity than the screw, *ba* will have a greater pitch.

If *Aa* and *Cc* be connected by a set of change-wheels *P*, *S*, as in fig. 313, we can, by properly choosing the numbers of these wheels, obtain any desired pitch for the screw *ba*.

B is an intermediate axis supported by a slit piece as in fig. 313, and either carrying an idle wheel or two additional change-wheels *Q* and *R*. The pitch of screws is commonly defined by stating the number of threads in an inch. Let the screw *Cc* have n threads in the inch. Then one turn of *Cc* advances the tool through the space of $\frac{\text{inch}}{n}$, and one turn of *Aa* advances the tool through the space which corresponds to $\frac{PR}{QS}$ turns of *Cc*, that is, through $\frac{PR}{QSn}$ inches. The pitch of the screw *Aa* is therefore $\frac{QSn}{PR}$ threads in the inch. Thus by providing the proper change-wheels, a screw of any required pitch can be cut. The pitches usually cut upon these lathes extend from about four to fifty threads in the inch, and a set of twenty change-wheels will be

* This construction of a screw-cutting engine was first employed, I believe, by Ramsden, and is at present universally followed. Vide *Desc. of the Engine for Dividing Math. Inst.* by Ramsden.

generally sufficient to supply all the values required for $\frac{QS}{PR}$. These should be arranged in a table, and the wheels corresponding to each written opposite to them, to save the trouble of computation during the work.

459. If the apparatus, fig. 315, is used for turning cylinders instead of for cutting screws, the arrangement will not essentially differ, for the motion by which a tool traces a cylinder is precisely the same as when it cuts a screw, only that the spiral thread is much closer. In a lathe for turning, the number of cuts will be from 50 to 1,000 in an inch.

In computing the change-wheels for this purpose, we may employ the principle of Art. 457, as in the following Example.

460. Ex. 2. Let it be required to compute a set of change-wheels for a self-acting turning lathe, that shall have a choice of twelve different pitches for the cuts, varying from about 50 to 1,000 in the inch.

The motion to be produced in the tool f is very slow, and an endless screw may be therefore substituted for the wheel P, and as this will place the axis B at right angles to Cc, the wheels R and S must be bevil wheels.

Let the screw Cc have 9 threads to the inch, therefore $n=9$, and $P=1$, being an endless screw, therefore the number of cuts in the inch $=9 \cdot Q \cdot \frac{S}{R}$.

This quantity by the conditions of the problem is to have twelve values, forming a geometrical series of which the first and last terms are 50 and 1,000, and therefore the common ratio

$$=t=\left(\frac{1000}{50}\right)^{\frac{1}{11}}=20^{\frac{1}{11}}=1{\cdot}313 \text{ by logarithms.}$$

By Art. 457, it appears that if we give to Q four values, and to $\frac{S}{R}$ three values, these sets must each form a geometrical series, of which if the common ratio of the first $=t=1{\cdot}313$, that of the second must $=t^4=2{\cdot}972,=3$ very nearly.

Let the intermediate change of $\frac{S}{R}$ be made by employing two equal wheels, then the three values of $\frac{S}{R}$ will stand thus, $\frac{1}{3}$, 1, 3, and the same pair of wheels will serve for the two extreme values by merely reversing their positions as driver and follower; thus

$\frac{20}{60}, \frac{40}{40}, \frac{60}{20}$, may be the three values of $\frac{S}{R}$, which are obtained by four wheels only.

Geometrical Series	Q	$\frac{S}{R}$	Cuts in the Inch
1000	37		999
761·6	28	$\frac{60}{20}$	756
580·	21		567
441·7	16		432
336·4	37		333
256·2	28	$\frac{40}{40}$	252
195·1	21		189
148·6	16		144
113·2	37		111
86·2	28	$\frac{20}{60}$	84
65·6	21		63
50	16		48

The geometrical series of values of $9 \cdot Q \cdot \frac{S}{R}$ being obtained, as in the first column of the table, we have for the four middle terms $\frac{S}{R} = 1$, and therefore the values of Q, that is, the numbers of teeth of the endless screw-wheels will be obtained by dividing these terms by nine and taking the nearest whole numbers, by which we get 37, 28, 21, 16.* The difference between the last column of the table and the first is occasioned by the necessary substitution of whole numbers for decimals in the teeth of the wheels.

This system requires eight wheels for the twelve changes, but by a slightly different arrangement seven wheels may be made to answer the same purpose.

Let three values be given to Q and four to $\frac{S}{R}$, then the common ratio of the values of Q being as before $t = 1·313$, that

* These numbers of teeth are the same as those of a lathe by Mr. Clements, *Trans. Soc. Arts*, vol. xlvi.

of the values of $\frac{S}{R}$ will now be $t^3 = 2{\cdot}26$, and these values may be obtained by four wheels thus,

$$\frac{20}{68}, \frac{32}{48}, \frac{48}{32}, \frac{68}{20}.$$

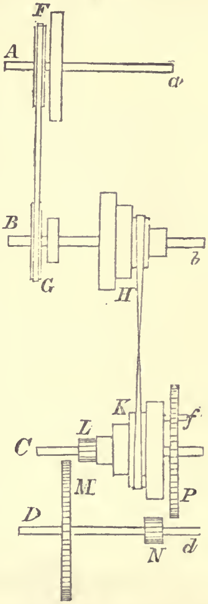
Let the screw *Cc* have ten threads in the inch, then we easily find the numbers for the endless screw-wheel *Q* to be 29, 22, 17, and the table for this second system will stand as follows, employing only seven wheels, namely, two pair of bevil-wheels, and three screw-wheels.

Geometrical Series	Q	$\frac{S}{R}$	Cuts in the Inch
1000	29		986
761·6	22	$\frac{68}{20}$	748
580	17		578
441·7	29		435
336·4	22	$\frac{48}{32}$	330
256·2	17		255
195·1	29		193
148·6	22	$\frac{32}{48}$	147
113·2	17		113
86·2	29		85
65·6	22	$\frac{20}{68}$	65
50	17		50

461. Ex. 3. In large engineers' lathes for turning metal the motion is derived from a shaft which revolves uniformly under the action of a steam-engine; but it is necessary to have the power of changing the velocity of the mandrel of the lathe, to accommodate the different diameters of the work, or the material of which it is composed. The usual arrangement for this purpose is shown in the diagram fig. 316. *Aa* is the shaft which is driven uniformly by the steam-engine, *Bb* a second shaft termed the counter-shaft. Two pullies are fixed at *F* and two others opposite to them at *G*, and an endless band upon either pair will thus

enable *Aa* to drive *Bb*. *Cc* is the mandrel of the lathe, upon which is fixed a toothed wheel *P*: a group of four or more speed-pullies *K* runs loose upon the mandrel, but may be locked fast to the wheel *P*, at pleasure, by a bolt *f*.

Fig. 316.



Opposite to *K* a similar group of speed-pullies is fixed at *H* to the counter-shaft *Bb*, so that if *K* be locked fast to the mandrel motion is given to the latter from the counter-shaft, by means of an endless band placed upon any pair of the speed-pullies. But if the pullies *K* be loosed from the wheel *P* by withdrawing the bolt *f*, their motion is conveyed to the mandrel by means of a pinion *L* which is attached to the end of the speed-pullies. In this case the spindle *Dd* is pushed endlong through a small space, so as to bring its toothed-wheel *M* into geer with *L*, and at the same time its pinion *N* into geer with *P*, so that the mandrel and its wheel *P* now derive their motion from the shaft *Dd* which is turned by the speed-pullies. In this latter arrangement the motion of the mandrel *Cc* is very much slower than that of the speed-pullies.

In this system then we have two changes between *Aa* and *Bb*, or two values of $\frac{F}{G}$ * ; four between *Bb* and the speed-pullies *K*, or four values of $\frac{H}{K}$; and two changes between the speed-pullies *K* and the mandrel; that is unity and $\frac{LN}{MP}$; making the total number of changes of the velocity ratio between *Aa* and *Cc* equal to $2 \times 4 \times 2 = 16$; and we may arrange them (by Art. 457) in a geometrical series whose common ratio is *t*. Thus let the common ratio of the series of four values of $\frac{H}{K} = t$, and that of the two values of $\frac{F}{G} = t^4$, then will that of $\frac{MP}{LN} = t^8$.

* The letters of reference opposite to each group of change wheels are here used to represent the pair which is in action.

For example, let the shaft *Aa* revolve at the rate of sixty turns in a minute, and let it be required that the mandrel *Cc* shall revolve from 2 to 270 in a minute. A geometrical series of sixteen terms of which 2 and 270 are the extremes, would have a common ratio of

$$1{\cdot}38 = t; \therefore t^4 = 3{\cdot}7, \text{ and } t^8 = 13{\cdot}68.$$

The diameters of the speed-pullies with the ratio of 1·38 have been already obtained in Ex. 1, Art. 456, and are 9·6, 11·4, 13·6, 15·4, and as the quick ratio between the speed-pullies and mandrel is unity, we have, when the mandrel revolves at its extreme ratio of 270 in a minute,

$$\frac{270}{60} = \frac{15{\cdot}4}{9{\cdot}6} \times \frac{F}{G};$$

$$\text{whence } \frac{F}{G} = 2{\cdot}8 \text{ is the quick value of } \frac{F}{G};$$

$$\text{and its second value} = \frac{2{\cdot}8}{t^4} = \frac{2{\cdot}8}{3{\cdot}7} = {\cdot}75.$$

If the diameters of the pullies at *F* be 15 in. and 28 in., those at *G* must be 20 in. and 10 in.

Again, to find the numbers of the train of toothed wheels, we have

$$\frac{MP}{LN} = t^8 = 13{\cdot}68 = \frac{1368}{100} = \frac{2 \,.\, 3^2 .19}{5^2}.$$

Now the pinions *L* and *N* ought not to have less than twelve leaves, and it appears from this fraction that they must be multiples of five, we may therefore give them fifteen leaves each; whence the convenient train

$$\frac{MP}{LN} = \frac{54 \times 57}{15 \times 15}.$$

The following table shows the result of these arrangements.

Geometric Series of Turns per min. of *Cc*.	Values of *H*.	Values of *K*.	Values of *F*.	Values of *G*.	
2	9·6	15·4	15	20	train $\frac{54 \times 57}{15 \times 15}$ employed.
2·8	11·4	13·6			
3·8	13·6	11·4			
5·3	15·4	9·6			
7·4	9·6	15·4	28	10	
10·3	11·4	13·6			
14·2	13·6	11·4			
19·7	15·4	9·6			
27·4	9·6	15·4	15	20	pullies *K* bolted to mandrel.
37·9	11·4	13·6			
52·6	13·6	11·4			
73·	15·4	9·6			
101·2	9·6	15·4	28	10	
140·4	11·4	13·6			
194·7	13·6	11·4			
270·	15·4	9·6			

462. In adjusting trains upon these principles it must be remarked, that for a given series of velocity ratios between the extreme axes, the total number of separate changes will be the least when the number of changes allotted to the component series are equal, or $m=n=k$ (Art. 457). But the nature of the mechanism will not always allow of this with convenience. For example, since the ratios of the component geometrical series are necessarily each greater than the previous one in order, as t, t^k, t^{km}, &c.... ; it appears that the differences of value in the radii of the pullies or wheels of the first set is much less than in those of the succeeding ones, and therefore it may be better to assign a greater number of change values to that series whose common ratio is the smallest, or t; although by so doing the last ratio t^{km} is increased, because a group of speed-pullies will always readily supply a series of values provided their common ratio is not too great. Indeed, the values of the separate common ratios would

be diminished by assigning a greater number of changes to that series whose common ratio is t^{km}; that is, by giving a higher value to n which does not enter into the common ratios, than to k and m which do; thus in the last example, the respective values of k, m, n, are 4, 2, 2; if we take for these, 2, 2, 4, we obtain $t=1·38$, $t^2=1·904$, $t^4=3·7$, which avoids the great common ratio 13·68, but here the ratio 3·7 is too great for a set of four speed-pullies.

Again, if the respective values of k, m, n were made 3, 3, 2, the number of component changes would be the same as before, that is, $3+3+2=8$, but the total number of changes would be increased to $3 \times 3 \times 2 = 18$, and the common ratios would be $t=1·33$, $t^3=2·37$, $t^9=13·42$, so that by putting three pair of speed-pullies at F, G, and three at H, K, with the common ratios of 2·37 and 1·33 two more changes are added to the system without increasing the number of speed-pullies, and the great ratio 13·42 rather lessened. However, it is plain that the nature of the mechanism that admits of being conveniently employed and the amount of changes required must always be taken into account in every particular case, and a number of different trains calculated to choose from. When change-wheels are employed, as in Art. 450, their number may sometimes be reduced by computing their teeth upon the principles of Art. 455, which plainly apply as well to tooth-numbers as to the diameters of speed-pullies. Thus every pair of the series is used twice, since every two terms equidistant from the ends are the inverse of each other.

463. In link-work adjustments are very simply made by drilling holes in the arms and shifting the joint-pins from one to another, or by more elaborate constructive devices for altering the efficient lengths of the arms of the links; the details of which do not fall within the plan of our present work.

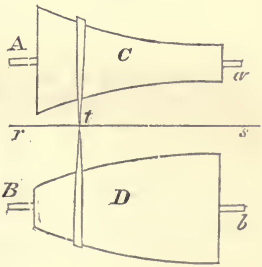
CHAPTER III.

TO ALTER THE VELOCITY RATIO BY GRADUAL CHANGES.

464. In the methods of the last Chapter it is obviously necessary that the machines should be stopped in order to effect the necessary changes of the wheels, or in the position of the bolts, and so on; and besides, the series of changes themselves are not continuous, and we have only the choice of a few given intermediate ratios between the extremes. We have now to consider how the velocity ratio may be altered by gradual changes, so as to enable us to take any value for it between the extremes. The same constructions will generally enable the changes to be made without interrupting the motions of the machine.

465. Let *Aa, Bb*, fig. 317, be parallel axes, *C, D* solids of revolution or long pullies connected by an endless strap. If this strap be crossed and the sum of every opposite pair of diameters of these solids be constant, the strap will be tight in any position upon them. A bar *rs* slides in the direction of its own length, and is provided at *t* with a loop or with friction rollers, between which the belt passes, and which serve to retain it in its place. In Art. 254 it is shown that a belt may be guided *by its advancing side* to any point of the surface of a revolving cylinder; and this guide-loop embracing the sides of the belt which are advancing to the two pullies is sufficient to retain them in any position upon their surfaces, provided the tangents to the generating curves of the solids do not make too great an angle with the axis. If the bar were removed, the two ends of the belt would be drawn each towards the large end of its pully, by Art. 256; but the loop is sufficient to prevent this action. By sliding the bar and belt to different points the velocity ratio will be gradually changed as

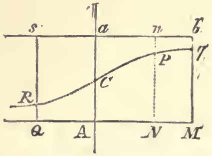
Fig. 317.



the acting diameters of the driver and follower are thus both gradually altered.

466. The solids are easily formed to suit the condition of the constancy of their added diameters; for draw AM, ab, fig. 318, parallel and at a distance equal to the given sum of the radii, and let CPq be the generating curve of one pully round AM, then will the same curve generate the other pully by revolving round ab.

Fig. 318.



467. Let $AN=x$, $NP=y$, $nP=y_{,}$, A and a be angular velocities of the axes AM, ab, respectively.

$$\frac{A}{a}=\frac{y_{,}}{y}.$$

Now if the strap is to remain equally tight in every position, we must have $y+y_{,}=c$;

$$\therefore\ \frac{A}{a}=\frac{c-y}{y}.$$

If the solids be cones, of which $AM=l$, and $Mq=r$,

$$\text{we have } y=\frac{xr}{l};\ \therefore\ \frac{A}{a}=\frac{c-\frac{r}{l}\cdot x}{\frac{r}{l}x}=\frac{\frac{lc}{r}-x}{x}.$$

If equal shifts of the belt between A and M are to produce equal differences in the velocity ratios, we have

$$\frac{A}{a}\propto x\propto\frac{c-y}{y}.$$

If equal shifts of the belt are to produce a geometrical series of velocity ratios, then

$$\frac{NP}{nP},\ \text{or}\ \frac{y}{c-y}=g^{x},$$

and when $x=0$, $NP=nP$; therefore the origin of x is at the point A, if $AC=aC$,

$$\text{and } \frac{c}{y}=g^{-x}+1;\ \therefore\ y=\frac{c}{g^{-x}+1}$$

is equation to curve.

$$\text{Also, } c-y=c-\frac{c}{g^{-x}+1}=\frac{c}{g^{x}+1};$$

which shows that if we set off from the point A equal abscissæ AN, AQ, in opposite directions the ordinates NP, sR will be equal.

468. But in practice it is more usual to make the solid pullies into cones, because the strap is apt to slip when the inclination is great. In this case the desired succession of velocity ratios is obtained by making the shifts of the belt unequal.

When cones are employed,

$$\frac{A}{a}=\frac{\frac{lc}{r}-x}{x}, \text{ and } x=\frac{lc}{r}\times\frac{1}{1+\frac{A}{a}},$$

from which the shifts or values of x can be computed for any required succession of values in $\frac{A}{a}$.

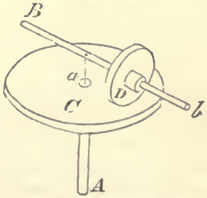
Sometimes a cone and cylinder are employed for the two solids, but in that case a stretching pully is required for the belt, because the sum of the corresponding diameters is no longer constant. If the cone be the driver the velocity ratio $\frac{a}{A}$ will vary directly as the distance of the belt from the apex of the cone.

469. Variable velocity ratios are also obtained from wrapping connectors by means of pullies so contrived as to expand and contract their acting diameters, the structure of which belonging to constructive mechanism, may be found in Rees' 'Cyclopædia;' they are termed Expanding Riggers.

470. The *disk and roller* is often used for the purpose of obtaining an adjustable velocity ratio by rolling contact.

Aa the driving axis, to which is fixed a plain disk *C*. *Bb* the following axis whose direction meets that of *Aa*. A plain roller *D*, whose edge is covered with a narrow belt of soft leather, is mounted upon the axis *Bb*, so that it can be made to slide at pleasure to different distances from the point of intersection of the axes, but yet is prevented from turning with respect to *Bb*. This roller and its axis will therefore receive from the disk a rotation by rolling contact; and if r be the radius of the roller, R the adjustable radius of its point of contact with the disk, A and a the respective angular velocities of *Aa* and *Bb*, we have

Fig. 319.

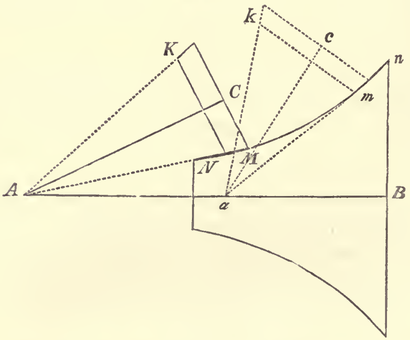


$$\frac{a}{A} = \frac{R}{r} \text{ varies directly as } R.$$

But the rolling contact of the surfaces is imperfect, for perfect contact in the case of intersecting axes can only take place between cones whose apex coincides with the point of intersection. The following combination is more perfect in its action, but not so simple in construction.

471. Let AB, fig. 320, be the axis of the driver, which is a solid of revolution whose generating curve is Nn. The follower is a conical frustum KM, whose axis AC must be mounted in a

Fig. 320.



frame in such a manner that the apex A of the cone may travel in a line Aa coinciding with the axis of the driver, and that the axis AC shall have the power of turning in position about the point A, so as to enable the frustum to rest upon the surface of the solid pully in every position of AC, and thus to receive motion from it by rolling contact. Thus km is a position of the frustum in which it touches the solid at m, and its apex has moved from A to a, still remaining in the line AaB. If now the line AM touch the generating curve Nn in all these positions of AC, the portion of the solid in contact with the frustum is so small that it will nearly coincide with the corresponding frustum of a cone whose apex would be at A, and therefore coincide with that of the follower. The contact action therefore will in this case be complete.

But AM the tangent of Nn is thus shown to be of a constant length, Nn is therefore the equitangential curve or tractory

(Peacock's Ex. p. 174), to find the equation to which, we have, if AB be the axis of x,

$$\tan = \frac{y\sqrt{dx^2+dy^2}}{dy} = t \text{ a constant.}$$

$$\therefore\ dx = \frac{dy}{y}\sqrt{t^2-y^2} \text{ is equation to curve;}$$

which integrated gives

$$x = \sqrt{t^2-y^2} + \frac{t}{2}\log\frac{t-\sqrt{t^2-y^2}}{t+\sqrt{t^2-y^2}};$$

whence from assumed values of y the curve may be constructed by points.

$$\sqrt{t^2-y^2} \text{ is the subtangent} = s \text{ suppose;}$$

$$\therefore\ x = s - \frac{t}{2}\log\frac{t+s}{t-s}.$$

y	s	x
·9	4·72	6·75
1·	4·70	6·29
1·1	4·68	5·80
1·2	4·65	5·29
1·3	4·62	4·88
1·4	4·59	4·53
1·5	4·56	4·23
1·6	4·53	3·97
1·8	4·46	3·47
2·0	4·37	2·97
2·2	4·27	2·54
2·4	4·16	2·17
2·6	4·04	1·85
2·8	3·90	1·54
3	3·76	1·30

In the above table values of y are taken from 3 inches to 9, and the constant tangent $t=4{\cdot}8$ inchcs. From this the curve may be easily constructed by points.

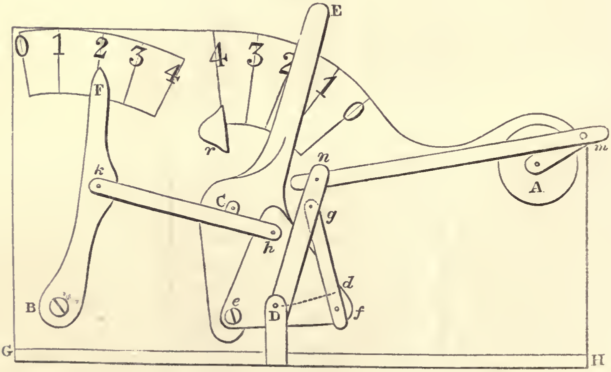
472. The solid cam (Art. 237), may be used to obtain adjustable motion, in which case the screw a and its nut must be

removed, and the cam may then be shifted at pleasure so as to bring any section of into action upon the follower *Dd*; and also this section may be allowed to continue its action as long as we please; thus we may, by properly forming the successive sections of the solid, retain at pleasure the law of motion that belongs to any one of them, or gradually change it into that which is appropriated to any other section, by shifting the cam so as to bring that section under the follower.

473. In link-work gradual changes of the velocity ratio are effected by fixing the pins upon the arms in slits or sliding pieces, that thus allow of gradual changes in the effective lengths of these arms upon which the velocity ratio depends. This may be managed in various ways. I shall conclude this Part with a piece of link-work by which such changes may be effected without the use of these adjustable pins.

This I contrived and constructed in 1840, and inserted a description of its action with a diagram in the first edition of the present work, but afterwards I gave it the more complete form which is represented in the subsequent figure.

Fig. 321.



The parts of the link-work are sustained by a flat vertical board standing upon a horizontal base of wood indicated by the parallel lines *GH*.

The parts of the mechanism are disposed in four vertical layers reckoning from the back-board outward, as will appear below.

A, fig. 321, is the fixed center of a crank or excentric *Am*, which by means of a link *mn* communicates in the usual way a reciprocation of constant extent to the arm *Dn*, whose center of motion *D* is sustained by a metallic piece in the form of a square, the horizontal branch of which is carried under the base-board, into whose lower surface it is housed and fixed with screws. The vertical branch *D* is in front of the four layers, and sustains the arm *Dn* by an axial pin or stud. This arm is in the *fourth layer.*

Behind *Dn* a lever *ECe* is jointed to the vertical back-board by a stud or screw *C*. This lever is in the *first layer.* At its lower part it is jointed to a triangular board *hef* in the *second layer* by a stud or screw *e*. At the opposite angle *f*, a joint pin or stud receives the end of the link *fg* in the *third layer*, which at its upper end *g* is jointed to the back of the oscillating piece *Dn*.

When the crank is rotated, *Dn* oscillates, and by communicating that oscillation to the angle *f* of the triangle causes it to oscillate about the angle *e*. But the oscillation thus communicated by *Dn* to *hef* is not constant in extent, for the motion given to the point *f* is that which it would receive if *Df* were an arm fixed at right angles to *Dn*. But by turning the handle *EC*, the center pin *e* by which the triangle *ehf* is jointed to the piece *ECe*, is moved so as to alter the distance *Df*. The handle *EC* has a feather edge on the left side which is in contact with the graduated scale behind it, indicating five positions. When the handle is placed at zero the joint pin *f* is brought behind and coincident with *D*, the link *gf* therefore moves as one piece with *nD* and no oscillation is given to the triangle about *e*. On the other hand when the edge of *CE* is moved to 4 the center *e* comes behind *D* and the whole oscillation of *Dn* is communicated to the triangle *hef*. The oscillation of *hef* about its shifting center *e* is conveyed by the link *hk* to an arm *BF* moving on a fixed center screw at *B* and provided with a graduated scale to show the extent of its motion, which is always limited by zero on the left hand, and by 1, 2, 3, or 4 on the right hand, according as the fiducial edge of *E* is fixed at the number which corresponds to the extent of angular motion required.

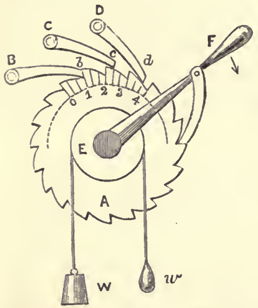
As the travelling of the center *e* does not stop the motion of the system, this combination affords a ready method of adjusting the relative velocity in link-work, or of entirely cutting off the motion of the follower *BF* without stopping the motion of the driver *Am*.

I will conclude this part with a few examples of combinations for which I neglected to find a place in the previous pages.

DIFFERENTIAL DETENTS.

474. Ratchet wheels * are sometimes employed in machinery which requires them to be moved through very small angles, or angles with very small differences. Thus the teeth become weak. But this defect can be remedied by the arrangement shown in fig. 322. *A* is an ordinary ratchet wheel with strong teeth, *Bb, Cc, Dd* are three detents, of which *Bb* is holding the wheel by butting against the radial side of the tooth at *b*. The weight *W* suspended by a cord coiled round a pully *E* is merely introduced to represent the direction of the force acting to resist the rotation of the wheel. The graduations by which the upper teeth are each divided into three equal angles are also given to facilitate the explanation of the principle of this peculiar mechanism.

Fig. 322.



It will be seen that *Bb* abuts as already said against the radial side of the tooth at *b*1; the second detent *Cc* is resting on the upper part of the tooth 2*c* at a distance of one-third of its pitch, from the radial side of the tooth 2*c*; the third detent *Dd* rests at a distance of two-thirds of the pitch from the radial side of the tooth 3*d*. Neither *Cc* nor *Dd* are employed for holding the wheel.

If the wheel be now turned by grasping the lever *EF* or pulling the small weight *w* in the direction for raising the weight *W* through a space of one-third of the pitch of the teeth, the butting end *c* of the detent *Cc* will drop into the space 1, 2, behind it and abut against its radial side 2*c*. If the wheel be again moved, the butting side *d* of *Dd*, which was brought by the last motion within one-third of the pitch towards the radial side 3*d*, will now drop into the space 2, 3, and hold the wheel. A third motion will bring the end *b* of the detent *Bb* to drop over the radial side of the tooth marked *o*. The result is that this wheel, with 20 teeth,

* *Vide* p. 239.

can be held fast in positions that are measured by three times that number of small angles. The size of the teeth gives strength to resist heavy strains.

By employing more detents, *e.g.* five, which is readily effected by arranging their butting sides at distances equal to one-fifth of the pitch, instead of one-third as in the figure, smaller angular motions are obtained. These arrangements are employed in power looms.

SAXTON'S DIFFERENTIAL PULLY.*

475. This contrivance was intended to enable a team of horses travelling on an ordinary highway to drive a coach at a rate of 30 miles an hour. It was proposed in 1833 by an

Fig. 323.

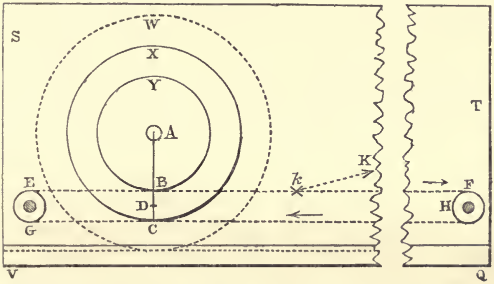
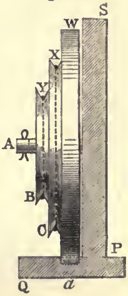


Fig. 324.



American engineer named Saxton, in the infancy of railroads; but the only journeys it performed were in the Adelaide Gallery, where a working model was exhibited for a considerable time. Like many really valuable kinematic combinations, this contrivance, wholly inapplicable to the purpose that its inventor intended it to fulfil, may be applied with good effect to other machinery. The diagrams, figs. 323 and 324, represent elevations of the face and end of a model of the parts on which the action depends.

A long narrow horizontal board *VQ* fig. 323, *PQ* fig. 324, to which a vertical board *ST* is jointed, sustains the moving parts. These are 1st, the cylindrical wheel *W*, whose circumference rolls in a groove sunk in the base-board at *a*, fig. 324, and indicated by the dotted line above *VQ* in fig. 323. A double-grooved

* *Vide* Art. 386.

pully is attached to the face of the wheel W. In this model the acting radii AB, AC, of the grooves are as 2 to 3.

At the ends of the vertical board pullies E and F are fixed, of such a diameter as will enable their upper tangent line EF to touch the acting diameter of the small carriage-pully YB, and the lower tangent line GH to touch the diameter XC of the large carriage-pully.

The four pullies, EG, BYB, FH, CXC, are connected by the endless band which is supposed to be extended along the road, upon which the carriage is to be drawn. Suppose now that a force is applied at K to pull the rope band in the direction Kk, the pully at FH causes the lower portion HG to travel in the opposite direction.

At every instant, therefore, the vertical radius AC of the great double pully being solicited by two equal and opposite forces applied to B and C, the radius AC turns about an instantaneous center D bisecting the line BC. Thus the point A is carried in the direction of the radial motion with a velocity $=\frac{AD}{BD}\times$ velocity of B. Evidently the point A moves with the velocity (V) of the carriage, and the point B with the velocity (v) of the horse. Let the larger radius AC of the double pully $=R$, and the lesser radius $AB=r$. Then $\frac{\text{vel. of carriage}}{\text{vel. of horse}}=\frac{V}{v}=\frac{AD}{BD}=\frac{R+r}{R-r}$;

$$\text{for } BD=\frac{R-r}{2} \text{ and } AD=AB+BD=r+\frac{R-r}{2}=\frac{R+r}{2}.$$

In the diagram $\frac{R}{r}=\frac{3}{2}\therefore\frac{V}{v}=5$ and the carriage travels five times as fast as the horse.

This principle may be conveniently applied to the communication of motion to various parts of machinery which are mounted on travelling frames, as for example in the manner of the mule carriages of spinning and weaving mechanism. In the footnote *

* 'An Investigation of the Principle of Mr. Saxton's Locomotive Differential Pulley and Description of a Mode of Producing Rapid and Uninterrupted Travelling by Means of a Succession of such Pulleys set in Motion by Horses or by Stationary Steam Engines,' by John Isaac Hawkins (*Third Report of British Association*, p. 424, 1833). He concludes by stating that 'in this way 388 horses, each acting, at their most effective or walking pace of two miles and a half per hour, on a mile of rope, might easily drive a coach containing eight persons from London to Edinburgh in 13 hours at the rate of 30 miles an hour, the coach passing from truck to truck without stopping, and the truck returning to take another coach every five minutes: 500 passengers a day for the whole distance would be very moderate labour for that number of horses.'

I quote from the third Report of the British Association (1833) a paper written by Mr. J. H. Hawkins, then a leading engineer, which will show the wild ideas concerning travelling by steam which were entertained by the inventors of that day.

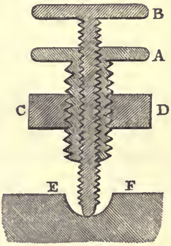
TROUGHTON'S DIFFERENTIAL FOOT-SCREW.

476. The portable astronomical instruments which rest upon a flat tripod require, for the purpose of levelling them, that each arm (or rather foot) should be provided with a foot-screw. These screws are vertical and are tapped with fine-threaded screws, each received in a hole near the extremity of one of the feet. The lower end of the screw is flat and rests in a small cup sunk on the top of the table or support, which is placed on the ground or floor on which the apparatus rests.

The foot-screws are employed to level the instrument, for which purpose the thread must be fine and accurately true in every part.

Troughton's differential screw enables the fineness of the thread to be dispensed with, in the manner shown by fig. 325, which represents a vertical section through the axis of one of the screws made transversely to one of the feet *CD*.

Fig. 325.



Each screw is double, consisting of an outer and inner one, each having a milled head. The outer screw, whose head is *A*, is tapped into the hole of the tripod foot. The inner screw is finer than the outer one, and is tapped into a hole bored in the axis of the latter. In the instrument described in the 'Memoirs of the Astronomical Society,' vol. i., p. 37, the exterior screw *A* has 30 turns, and the inner screw *B* 40 turns in the inch. The action of the contrivance is as follows.

(1.) If we turn *A* and *B* together, the effect in raising or depressing the end of the tripod is that which is due to the natural range of the screw *A*.

(2.) If we turn *B* alone, it is that which is due to the range of the screw *B*.

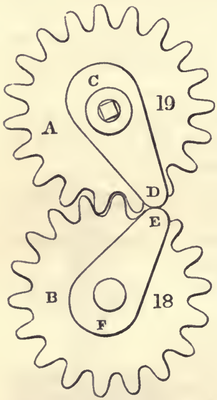
(3.) If we turn *A* alone, the friction of the foot of *B* in the cup of the support will prevent *B* from moving, and the effect upon the foot of the tripod is equal to the difference of the ranges of the two screws.

One complete revolution of *A* clockwise will cause it to descend into its nut, which is the end of the tripod, through $\frac{1}{30}$ of an inch, which, if *A* rested on the support, would raise the tripod by that quantity. But *A*, in descending one revolution, is carried downwards by the thread of *B* through $\frac{1}{40}$ of an inch, and this motion is also communicated to the tripod, consequently the combined result raises the tripod-end through $(\frac{1}{30}-\frac{1}{40})=\frac{1}{120}$ of an inch.

AMERICAN WINDING STOP.

477. The principle of the hunting cog* is employed in American clocks to prevent the over-winding of the spring.

Fig. 326.



For this purpose the winding arbor *C* has a pinion *A* of 19 teeth fixed to it close to the front plate. A pinion *B* of 18 teeth is mounted on a stud so as to be in geer with the former. A radial plate *CD* is fixed to the face of the upper wheel *A*, and a similar plate *FE* to the lower wheel *B*. These plates terminate outward in semicircular noses *D*, *E*, so proportioned as to cause their extremities to abut against each other as shown in the figure when the motion given to the upper arbor by the winding has brought them into the position of contact. The clock being now wound up, the winding arbor and wheel *A* will begin to turn in the opposite direction. When its first complete rotation is effected the wheel *B* will have gained one tooth distance from the line of centers, so as to place the stop *D* in advance of *E* and thus avoid a contact with *E*, which would stop the motion. As each turn of the upper wheel increases the distance of the stops, it follows from the principle of the hunting cog, that after 18 revolutions of *A* and 19 of *B* the stops will come together again and the clock be prevented from running down too far. The winding key being applied, the upper wheel *A* will be rotated in the opposite direction, and the winding repeated as above.

478. The following property of numbers is susceptible of appli-

* *Vide* p. 261, above.

cation to various purposes and should be known to mechanists. It may be enunciated as follows. To arrange the thicknesses of a set of blocks which will allow them to be combined so as to form a pile of any height included in a given arithmetical progression, whose first term and common difference is the thickness of the least block, and its sum necessarily that of the entire set.

Let the least thickness $=1$, and the next $=2$. 3 is obtained by setting 2 upon 1. 4 requires a new block ($=2^2$) and by combining it with the previous ones we obtain

$$5=4+1$$
$$6=4+2$$
$$7=4+2+1=2^3-1$$

Thus the combinations of three blocks whose thicknesses are $1, 2, 2^2$, give an arithmetical series of thicknesses from 1 to 7 ($=2^3-1$).

Generally, the number of combinations of m different things taken by ones, twos, and threes up to $m, =2^m-1$.

But every number less than 2^n is compounded of some number of terms in the series $1, 2, 2^2, 2^3 \ldots\ldots 2^n$, for if any given number be transformed into the binary scale it will assume the form $N=a2^n+b2^{n-1}+\ldots\ldots p2^2+9\cdot 2+w$ where a, b, c, are each less than 2 and consequently either 0 or 1.*

Hence if we have m blocks whose respective thicknesses are the terms of the series $1, 2 \ldots\ldots 2^{m-1}$ their combinations will supply 2^m-1 thicknesses, including every arithmetical number from 1 to 2^m-1, *e.g.* let $m=4$, the thicknesses of the blocks will be 1, 2, 4, 8, and their combination will supply all the numbers from 1 to 2^4-1 ($=15$).†

Having occasion, some years ago, to arrange a spindle to carry a pair of circular saws to cut mortises or the sides of grooves, this principle appeared to me to be applicable to my purpose.

The saws were necessarily kept apart by one or more washers, determined by the width of the groove or mortise, and by the above rule four washers whose respective thicknesses are $\frac{1}{16}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, and $\frac{1}{2}$ of an inch gave me 15 distances with a common difference of $\frac{1}{16}$ inch. The width of the mortise is manifestly equal to the sum of the thicknesses of the two saws and that of the selected group of washers.

* *Vide* Barlow *On Numbers*, p. 238.

† This proposition is usually illustrated by a series of weights corresponding to the series 1 to 2^n, by which any number of pounds can be made up by selection.

PART THE FOURTH.

ON MECHANISTIC COMBINATIONS FOR THE ACTION OF WHICH PROPERTIES OF FRICTION ARE EMPLOYED.

CHAPTER I.

ON FRICTION IN GENERAL, AND THE MODES OF DEMONSTRATING ITS PROPERTIES.

479. I HAVE in the preface to the present work stated that I have omitted altogether the consideration of the resolution and composition of forces and pressures, confining myself to combinations for the modification of motion only. Yet there is a numerous class of kinematic devices, the action of which depending upon properties of frictional pressures ought not to be excluded from a treatise on the modification of motion.

In the following chapter I have described and classified these frictional combinations, but have avoided the introduction of complex analytical formulæ, which are in several of the modes of employing friction necessary for the precise calculations of the magnitude of the pressures which are due to the nature of the mechanism, but not required for the explanation of its mode of action. In such cases I have referred to authors who have already published such calculations.*

480. Let the *upper* surface of a fixed solid body be wrought into a horizontal plane, and let a second solid have its *lower* surface wrought into a horizontal plane, which is to be placed in contact with the former fixed plane.

Now let a pressure be applied to move the upper solid, usually

* The list begins with Amontons, 1699, and continues with Parent, 1700, 1704, Sauveur, Varignon, Leupold, Desaguliers, Euler, &c. &c., and extending to our time includes the names of most of the writers on mechanics and experimentalists on mechanical properties of materials, *e.g.* Morin, Moseley, Whewell, &c. &c. &c.

by weights placed in a scale suspended to a cord which proceeds horizontally from the upper solid to a pulley which turns it vertically downwards, so that weights may be suspended from it. Thus we have a force variable at pleasure by which we can measure the resistance opposed to its motion, which is partly due to the pressures which keep them in contact, and partly to the constitution of the bodies and the state of the surfaces in respect to smoothness or roughness, dryness or lubrication. The resistance is termed *friction.*

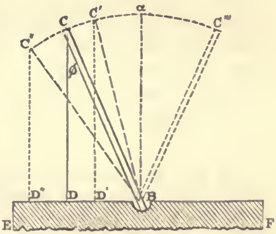
The constitution of the bodies cannot be defined by laws, but must be expressed by coefficient numbers obtained by experiments, in the same manner as specific gravities, elasticities, &c. Experiments made with great care, and repeated by different persons, have shown the proportional magnitude of the friction in different substances. These results are recorded in two manners. *The first,* by writing down the fraction which, for each pair of substances, expresses the ratio of their friction to the pressure by which the bodies are kept in contact. This ratio is usually noted by f

$$\therefore f = \frac{\text{friction}}{\text{pressure}}.$$

481. *The second method* is by the employment of oblique abutting pressures, as follows.*

Let EF be a fixed plane unpolished surface, supposed for convenience horizontal, on which the similar lower plane surface of a block DB rests, and let a force applied to the upper extremity of a rod CB be exerted to press this upper block upon the fixed surface below it by *abutting* obliquely upon it. It should terminate below with a blunted point. From any point in the rod let fall a normal CD to the surface of the loose block. Thus we have a triangle right-angled at D. If CB represent the butting force in the direction of the rod, we may resolve that force into CD which *presses* the surfaces normally together, and DB parallel to the surfaces, which is exerted in the production of

Fig. 327.



* This elegant and accurate method was discovered by M. Parent. and is the subject of his Essay in the *Memoirs of the Academy of Paris.* (*Vide Mém. Acad. Par.* 1704, p. 173.)

a direct *push* of the movable block upon the fixed surface EF in opposition to that resistance.

Thus the oblique or butting force produces by its normal or pressing component, a force which governs the magnitude of the frictional resistance, and by its horizontal or pushing component a force which is in direct opposition to that passive resistance.

Let the angle BCD made by the butting force with the normal pressing force CD be such that the pushing component DB be exactly equal to the frictional resistance. *No motion of the movable block will take place however the magnitude of the butting force be varied, because the ratio of the pressing component to the pushing component remains the same.* This particular value of the butting angle was termed the angle of equilibrium by Parent, but is now named the limiting angle of resistance.

If this angle be diminished by inclining the rod forward as at BC' the pressing component CD is increased as at $C'D'$ and the pushing component diminished to $D'B$ and thus the frictional resistance is increased by the greater pressure and the pushing force diminished. Hence the block *cannot be made to slide* whatever effort be exerted at C'. On the other hand if the limiting angle be increased by inclining the rod backward, the pressing component is diminished to $C'' D''$ and the pushing component increased to BD_2. So that the block *cannot be prevented from sliding whatever be the amount of force applied to C''.*

The passages in italics are the translated words of Parent* from his paper in the 'Memoirs of the Academy of Paris,' 1704, p. 173.

The butting rod or piece CB (fig. 328) may be terminated below by a convex surface resting either on a fixed plane BD or a curved surface GBF.

In the first case the point of contingence B of the two surfaces must be joined by a right line BC with the point of application

* The Rev. H. Moseley was the first to perceive that this limitation of the space within which the force rod CB pressing on a given point of a substance in frictional contact with a fixed surface acts without producing motion, is not confined to one normal plane but may radiate in all directions from this point B, and is exerted in an infinity of different directions included within a certain angle, CBD, to the normal, aB, or rather *within the surface of a certain right cone*, having the normal for its axis and the point of resistance B, for its vertex.—*Moseley on the Equilibrium of the Arch: Camb. Phil. Tr.*, 1835, vol. v. p. 302. In his *Mechanical Principles of Engineering*; 1843, p. 149, he claims to have *first given* in the above paper, not only the properties of the *cone of resistance* but also those of *the limiting angle of resistance*, which latter I have shown above to have been discovered and demonstrated a century and a half before, by Parent.

C of the pressure at the other extremity of the rod, and the angle which this right line makes with the normal Ba will be that which is equivalent to ϕ.

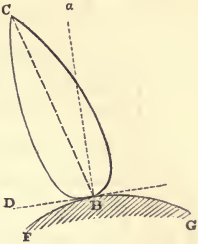


Fig. 328.

If the lower extremity of the rod be a curved surface resting on another curved surface, the angle of the rod with the common tangent plane of these surfaces passing through the point of contingence must be taken.

When experiment has shown us the limiting angle ϕ which belongs to a given pair of materials we can express the value of the three sides of the triangle CDB thus

Let butting force or total reaction $(CB) = R$

$$\therefore \text{ normal pressure } N = (CD) = R \cos \phi$$

$$\text{friction } F = (DB) = R \sin \phi$$

$$f = \frac{\text{friction}}{\text{pressure}} = \left(\frac{DB}{CD}\right) = \tan \phi$$

The triangle formed *for any given pair of surfaces* by the friction F $(= DB)$, the normal pressure N $(= CD)$, and the total reaction R $(= CB)$, which is their resultant, remains similar to itself however the magnitude of the reaction R may vary, for by the fundamental law it has a right angle included between sides of given proportion. The angles are therefore constant, and it may be said that the total reaction makes with the normal a constant angle, which is termed *the friction angle* and will be designated by ϕ, and we obtain

$$(1)\ \frac{F}{N} = \tan \phi = f;$$

$$(2)\ \frac{F}{R} = \sin \phi = \frac{f}{\sqrt{1+f^2}};$$

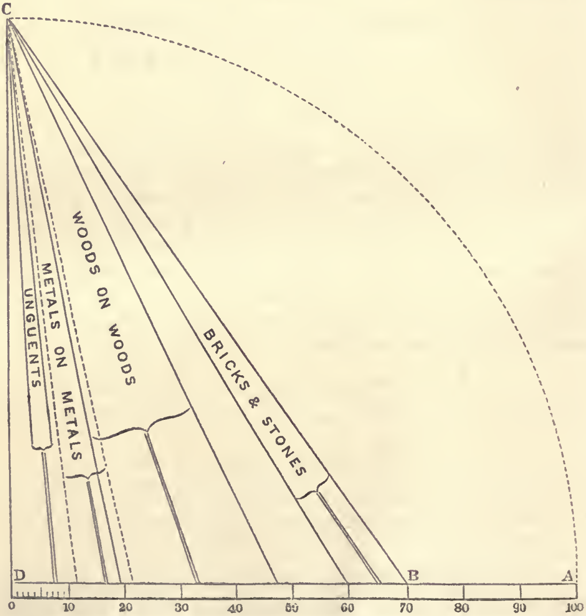
$$(3)\ \frac{N}{R} = \cos \phi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+f^2}}.$$

482. The following table is a summary in numbers of the average results of the numerous experiments made by the investigators named above for determining the constants or values of f obtained by putting the different classes of materials in frictional contact.

Materials in contact	f: $\frac{BD}{CD}$ or	$\frac{\text{friction}}{\text{pressure}}$	ϕ
With unguents . .	·08	$\frac{1}{12}$	5°
Metals on metals . .	·17	$\frac{1}{6}$	10°
Wood on wood . .	·33	$\frac{1}{3}$	18°
Bricks and stones . .	·65	$\frac{2}{3}$	33°

483. Fig. 329 embodies and exhibits to the eye the results of the experiments made by Morin to determine the magnitudes

Fig. 329.



of the limiting angle DCB. This is reduced from a large drawing in which I laid down all the various combinations of materials with each other given by that excellent experimentalist. In the above figure I have confined the lines to the expression of the extreme and mean values that appertain to the combination of materials of any one class with each other, as metals on metals, woods on woods, bricks and stones together. For each class the least and greatest angles are drawn and the two lines connected by a bracket, from the central cusp of which a light double line drawn to join the scale points to the mean value of DB which belongs to the class in question.

484. The magnitude of the friction between a pair of plane surfaces the one fixed and the other movable, is governed by three principal laws which follow, and have been confirmed by innumerable experiments.

The 1st law is that *the magnitude of the frictional resistance between a given pair of surfaces of any materials is proportional to the pressure that keeps them in contact.*

This is easily exhibited by placing weights in the scale until the upper surface begins to move. Then doubling the pressure by added weights it will be found that the weights in the scales must also be doubled to produce motion, and so on, remembering that part of the frictional pressure is due to the weight of the movable block.*

The 2nd law is that *the frictional resistance is unaffected by the area of contact*, which is shown by first exhibiting the movable piece with its largest surface in contact and then placing it on edge upon the fixed plane.†

The 3rd law is that *the frictional resistance is wholly unaffected by the relative velocity of the rubbing surfaces.*

The first law being admitted, the second law can easily be proved by reasoning alone, when the pressure which produces friction is equally distributed over the area of contact. For

* The metal blocks should be made of a definite number of ounces in weight, and the multiplication of the weight which produces the frictional pressure can be easily effected by adding one, two, &c., of weight equal to the unit; wooden blocks are so light that their weight may be neglected in estimating the amount of the frictional pressure.

† The two first simple laws may be illustrated roughly by the following homely experiments. Firstly, a brick laid upon the horizontal surface of another brick will require the same force exerted parallel to that surface to move it whether it be laid flat or set on edge. Secondly, if a third brick be laid on the moving brick the force required to move the two will be doubled because the weight of the moving mass is doubled. The first experiment exemplifies the second law, the second experiment the first law. These two laws were discovered and stated by Amontons, the first experimenter on the subject. *Mem. of the Academy of Sciences at Paris*, December 29, 1699, p. 206.

if this area be doubled, every element of the area will have to bear half the pressure that it sustained before the change; and as the friction on each element is proportional to the weight, we have twice the number of elements each sustaining half the friction, and the total resistance of the friction is therefore unaffected.

485. In addition to these laws it must be mentioned that the friction of two surfaces which have been for some time in contact is not only increased, but is subject to causes of variation and uncertainty from which the friction of motion is exempt. Also it is well known that if the surfaces in contact are subjected to vibrations impressed on the bodies in question by blows or other causes the friction is diminished. Thus, when carpenters wish to loosen the wedge which fixes the cutting iron of their planes they strike the end of the plane smartly, and the vibrations thus impressed upon the wood immediately unlock the wedge by diminishing the friction so as to allow it to be properly adjusted.

Also the vibrations generated in wheel carriages by travelling over rough roads or pavements are apt to loosen the nuts by which the parts of such carriages are united, by diminishing the frictional adhesion of the nut to the surface upon which it is screwed down, which surface by its elasticity reacts upon the nut and repels it, thereby necessarily compelling it to rotate slightly on the screw thread. This loosening of a nut can be prevented by adding another nut, which must be screwed hard down upon the first, to increase the pressure upon the screw thread.

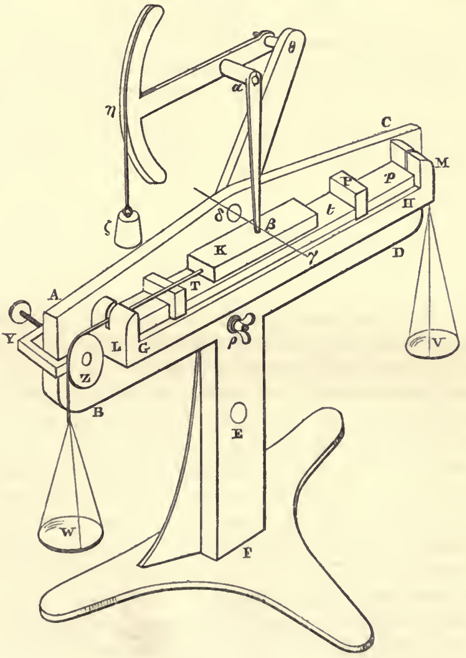
The construction of the coupling links of railway carriages offers another device by which the unscrewing of the connecting screws from their nuts from the above cause is wholly prevented. The instrument in question is so familiar to railway travellers that a short description will suffice to explain its action.

Its object is to connect railway carriages with each other and with the engine so as to form a train. From a central cylindrical block two screws extend in opposite directions, one being right-handed the other left-handed.

The nuts of these screws are each attached to a long staple. As the opposite screws have opposite inclinations the effect of turning the central connecting block is either to cause both screws to enter their nuts and thus to draw the nuts and their attached staples closer together, or if turned in the opposite direction to cause the nuts and staples to diverge. When the apparatus is to be employed, the staples, set at their greatest distance, are applied at each end to the respective hooks of the two carriages which require to be coupled, the compound screw is then turned in the direction which causes the staples to approach and draw the carriages together so that the buffers may come into proper contact. The central block has an arm fixed to it, terminated by a ball, which hangs downwards and is employed as a handle to enable the block and its two screws to be rotated.

If the double screw were simply turned by a spanner when thus regulating the distance of the staples, the vibration of the carriages when in motion would gradually loosen the nuts, and cause the double screw piece to revolve on its axis in the direction of the strain which tends to increase the distance of the

Fig. 330.

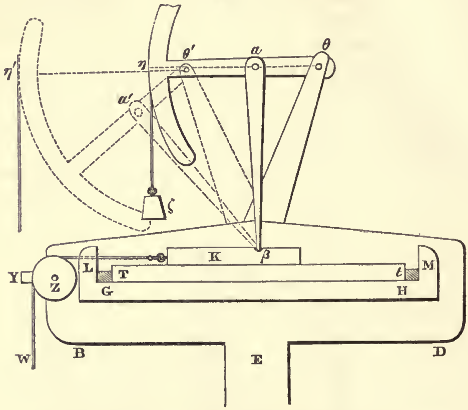


staples. But this effect is completely stopped by the heavy ball, for the jolting and vibration of the moving carriages is never able to throw the ball over the coupling link.

486. Figs. 330 and 331 represent the apparatus I employ for

the exemplification of the two first laws of friction. It is also provided with an additional portion to show the phenomena of butting

Fig. 331.



friction. This portion, which is marked with the Greek characters $\alpha\beta\gamma\delta\eta\theta\rho$, is removed when the apparatus is in use for the first-named purpose.

ABCD is a back-board, to which a piece *E* is framed which serves as a leg to connect it with a cast-iron foot *F* when in use. *GH* is a horizontal shelf projecting from the face of the back-board and employed to support the surfaces which are operated upon. It is terminated at each end by fixed blocks *LM*, each of which has a vertical slit for the passage of the cords which proceed from the scale-pans *WV*. A set of prisms of wood and metal must be prepared, of which the lower ones as *Tt* may be nearly as long as the distance between the blocks *L* and *M* and a little narrower than the shelf *GH*. They may be fixed by small wedges.

The upper or moving blocks, as *K*, must be much shorter and nearly as broad as the lower block.

The brass and iron upper blocks may be 3 inches long, 2 inches broad, and $\frac{5}{8}$ of an inch thick. Those of wood 8 inches long for the lower and 5 for the upper, the same breadth of 3 inches, and $\frac{7}{8}$ of an inch thick.

The experiments are performed by placing weights upon the movable block, and then others in the scale until the block begins to slide. The former weights, including that of the block, represent the pressing force, and the latter the pushing or pulling force that is equal to the frictional resistance.

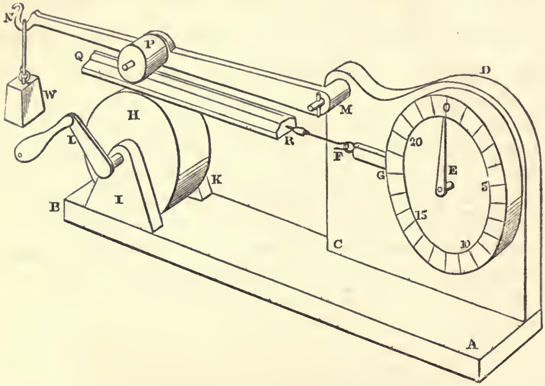
To ascertain the value of the *limiting angle* for any pair of surfaces, blocks as above described must be prepared, and the weights which just produce motion in the moving body be measured. This being compared with the weight of the moving block will give the ratio $\frac{DB}{CD}=\frac{\text{pushing force}}{\text{pressing force}}=f=\tan\phi$; where f is the coefficient of friction for the bodies employed, and ϕ the limiting angle of resistance.

The results of butting friction given above may be shown by the apparatus in figs. 330, 331. This consists of a radial arm $\beta\theta$, which is attached to the back of the board AC by a center bolt at δ, and clamped fast at any desired angle by a second bolt ρ which grasps the circumference of the lower edge of the arm. The latter is expanded into an arc of a circle, whose center is β and radius $\beta\rho$. A second arm $\theta\eta$ is horizontal in its mean position, and turns on a pivot stud at θ, and terminates outward in a circular segment, grooved to receive a line and weights. At a another pivot projects from the face of the second arm, and supports the upper end of a butting bar $a\beta$, which turns freely upon it and is finished below with a blunted hemispherical termination which is received into a hollow sunk in the face of one of the upper friction blocks already described. This bar represents CB in fig. 327 above, and admits of being set at any angle to the face of the moving block. As shown at $a\beta$, fig. 331, it presses the block vertically (as at aB, fig. 327). But if the arm $\beta\theta$ be removed to the position $\beta\theta'$ (drawn in dotted lines) the butting bar is brought into the direction $a'\beta$, corresponding to CB in fig. 327. It will be seen that this bar can in fact be set at any required angle from the perpendicular outwards by fixing the arm $\beta\theta$ accordingly.

Also that the butting pressure conveyed by the butting bar and generated by the weight ζ is constant and equal to $\frac{\zeta\times n\theta}{a'\theta}$. For as the adjusting motion of the bar $\beta\theta$ takes place about an axis $\delta\gamma$, fig. 330, the direction of which contains the hollow in which the blunt end of the butting bar is received, the triangle $\theta a\beta$ remains constant, and therefore the bar $a\beta$ receives a perpendicular thrust in all positions as at $\theta' a'\beta$, until the butting bar is carried beyond the limiting angle, when the movable block will be pushed out of the first position. The projecting blocks at P and G are placed to prevent the block from slipping too far.

487. Fig. 332 is a piece of apparatus which I constructed in 1840, principally to exemplify the third law of friction, which declares it to be unaffected by the velocity with which the rubbing surfaces move in contact.* The figure shows the machine in its simplest form.

Fig. 332.



On a base-board *AB* an upright board *CD* is fixed, for the support of the apparatus. The measure of the frictional resistance is obtained by a Marriott's spring dynamometer. This convenient instrument is constructed to show the weight of goods or parcels, and consists of a spiral cylindrical spring contained in a case which has a ring at the top to suspend it from a fixed hook. A slender rod affixed to the lower end of the spring hangs downward and is terminated by another hook. When a body is to be weighed it is hung on the latter hook, and its weight extends the spiral spring downwards, until the increasing resistance of its elasticity equals the weight. The rod is provided with an index protruding through a vertical slit in the case which indicates the weight on an engraved scale. In a larger form of the instrument, which is the most applicable to our purpose, the rod in its motion communicates rotation to an axis which protrudes from the center of a cylindrical dial and carries a hand like a clock face. The scale of weights is engraved on its circumference.

* No apparatus had been previously contrived to exhibit this law to an audience; for it had been proved by observing the motion of a sledge along a long horizontal bar, for the purpose of ascertaining whether or no its motion be uniformly accelerated, thus requiring care and time, with a solid and exact apparatus wholly incompatible with the arrangements of lecture rooms.

In the figure one of these dynamometers is affixed to the upright standard *CD* in such a manner that the rod *GF*, to which the pressure is applied, is horizontal instead of vertical.

A cylinder *H* of hard wood is mounted on a horizontal axis carried by two standards *I* and *K*, and furnished with a handle *L*.

An iron lever *MN*, is jointed at *M* to the standard *DC*, by means of a strong stud, and is terminated at *N* by a hook. Vertically above the axis of the great cylinder *H* a strong stud is rivetted to the lever, and a small cylinder *P* revolves upon it.

A slip, *QR*, of wood or other material is compressed between the rollers *H* and *P*, and connected by a wire link *RF* with the end of the rod *FG* of the dynamometer.

The action of the machine is as follows. If the handle be turned, the bar *QR* is drawn between the cylinders *H* and *P* by the frictional adhesion produced by the weight of the iron lever and its appended weight *W*. But this motion of the bar draws out the rod *GF* of the dynamometer, and extends the spring until it reaches the position in which the force exerted by its tension exactly balances the friction of the lower surface of the wooden bar upon the top of the cylinder *H*. The dynamometer index therefore shows the magnitude of the friction.

If the cylinder *H* be turned further in the same direction the bar will remain in the same position, with small variations due to the inequalities of the rubbing surfaces of the cylinder and bar. But the index will, with this exception, point to the same number of pounds whether the cylinder be turned slowly or rapidly; thus showing that the amount of friction is unaffected by the magnitude of the velocity with which the moving surface travels in contact with the fixed surface.

The pressure which maintains the frictional contact of the bar *QR* with the cylinder *H*, is produced by the weight of the iron lever, the cylinder *P*, and the weight of the bar *QR*, but the latter is so small that it may be neglected.

Let the hook of a small Marriott's dynamometer in its cylindrical form be applied to the hook *N*, and that end of the lever raised.

Let *R* be the number of pounds indicated. This will be the pressure which maintains the frictional contact estimated at the point *N*. Let $R=7$. An additional weight of 7 lbs. appplied to the hook will double the pressure, and accordingly upon turning the lower cylinder, the index of the great dynamometer will show a result double that of the first experiment.

In my apparatus, when no additional weight is put on, the index stands at about $1\frac{1}{2}$ lb.; 7 lbs., 14 lbs., &c., raise the friction to 3 lbs., $4\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. and so on, exemplifying the first law, which declares it to be proportional to the pressure.

The wooden bar is provided with a narrow fillet projecting upwards on which the roller rests, and the lower surface is in contact with the great cylinder along the whole breadth of the bar.

If the bar be reversed, so as to place the fillet in contact with the friction cylinder *H*, the quantity of friction under each pressure will be found to remain the same as before.

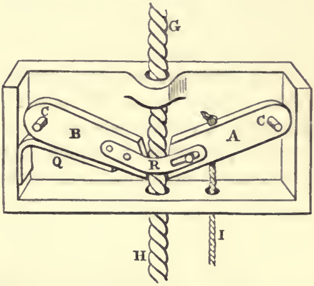
Thus the second law is exemplified.

CHAPTER II.

EMPLOYMENT OF BUTTING FRICTION.

488. THE instrument shown in fig. 333, invented by M. Perrault before 1699, is termed by him a *hand.*

Fig. 333.



It is employed to govern the course of a vertical rope *GH,* which passes upward and is carried over a pully above, then brought down and attached to any heavy load that requires to be hauled up. The construction of the mechanism allow the rope's end to be hauled downwards but holds it fast when it is let go. The effect is similar to that of a ratchet bar and detent, which allows the bar to slide in one direction, but prevents it from moving in the opposite.

The rope *GH* is passed through two holes, the one at the upper part of the frame, and the other at the lower, which are somewhat larger in diameter than the rope. Two arms, or rather jaws, *A, B,* move on center pins *C, C,* and are inclined downward, their inward ends are cut obliquely, and bite the rope by abutting upon it with their pointed extremities. A metal plate *R,* is rivetted to the left jaw *B*, and projects beyond it, and, as shown in the figure, is pierced with a slit. A pin projecting from the jaw *A* is passed through this slit, so that if either jaw be moved about its center the other will also be moved by this connection.

The drawing shows that the arm *B* is urged upwards by a spring *Q,* and that on the contrary the jaw *A* has a cord *I* at-attached to it to pull it downwards at pleasure. The action of the machine will now be understood.

The jaw *B* being urged upwards carries with it the jaw *A*, by means of the slit and pin, and the rope is therefore pressed between the two, because the points which touch the rope lie below the line of centers *CC* of the jaws, and therefore if a force be applied to the upper part of the rope *G* to draw it up, the biting points will approach each other as they move upward, and press more and more powerfully upon it; and if the angle *CRG* be less than the limiting angle of the materials the sliding of the rope upwards is impossible, but when the rope is pulled downwards, its friction upon the biting points carries them downwards and outwards.

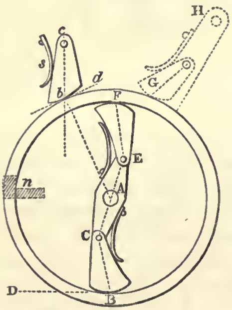
When it becomes necessary to draw the rope upward, the cord *AI* must be pulled downwards, which will cause the biting points to retire from the rope and leave it free.

The spring *Q*, when the machine is left, always preserves the biting position of the jaws.

This principle was laid aside and forgotten for more than a century, until 1815, when M. Dobo, a French mechanist, applied it to a ratchet-wheel.*

489. This wheel is a plain circular disk with a hoop rising up round the circumference as shown in the section at *n*. A cylindrical shaft which is fixed to the disk passes through a tubular socket, and a transverse piece *EC* is attached to the front end of the shaft. The tubular socket being fixed to the frame of the machine behind, the wheel and the shaft with its attached arms are so far free to revolve in either direction independently of each other.

Fig. 334.



But a connection is established between them by means of the pieces or pauls *BC*, *EF*, which are jointed to the arm, and terminate outwards with convex surfaces that bear against the concave inside rim of the hoop, and are pressed into contact with it by springs; for it will be seen that the radius *AC* and the line *BC*, which connect the hinge pin *C* with the contact point *B*, make a considerable angle, and therefore the arm *AC* and the piece *BC* are together greater than the radius of the disk. Joining *AB* it is plain that the tangent

* *Vide Bulletin de la Societé d'Encouragement*, tom. xiv. p. 12.

of the great circle at B is perpendicular to AB, and that the pressure of the curved piece CB meets that tangent at an angle $=$ CBD. If this angle be greater than the frictional angle of the substances in contact, the clicks BC, EF will not be able to slide along the inner surface of the hoop, and will therefore carry it along as the click or paul of a ratchet pushes the circumference of a wheel by pushing against the radial sides of the angular notches. As the transverse arm EC carries a friction paul at each end the action is doubled.

If the rotation of this arm is made in the opposite direction, the pauls BC, EF would simply turn the hoop backwards by virtue of the pressure produced by the springs upon the pauls. But a piece or detent cbd turning on a center c fixed to the frame is pressed by the spring at s into contact with the outer rim of the hoop wheel by its convex edge bd. Thus the pressure at b reacting upon the axis or center c of the detent, causes a pushing force to be exerted in the direction $c\ b$ which makes an angle cbd with the tangent of the outer circumference of the hoop wheel; and, as already shown, if this angle be greater than the limiting angle θ of the surfaces of the detent and hoop, it will be impossible to move the circumference in the direction that would diminish that angle (namely clockwise), but if it be pressed in the opposite direction from d towards b the angle cbd will be diminished and the pressure at b relieved so as to allow the wheel to be turned. This pressure has the advantage of preventing the wheel from being carried by the momentum of its own weight beyond the position in which the force which has moved it has left it.

In fact the action of this apparatus is equivalent to an ordinary ratchet wheel with a detent. The difference being that in the latter case the angles through which the wheel can be moved are limited to whole numbers of teeth, and in the friction detents and pauls the beginning and end of the angles depend solely on the will of the operator.

Instead of applying the motion or 'live' pauls to the inside of the wheel, a paul similar to the detaining paul cbd which presses on the outer circumference may be mounted on a lever AH whose axis A coincides with that of the wheel. The oscillation of this lever will push the wheel in the same manner as the inside pauls of M. Dobo, and thus a wheel with spokes and a plain cylindrical circumference can be used.

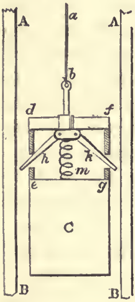
Messrs. Worssam have constructed a ratchet wheel in this manner, which they term a 'silent feed.' The circumference of the wheel has an angular groove turned in it and the curved circumference of the paul is made with the same angle outward, and therefore grasps the circumference with greater firmness.

490. The principle of abutting friction has been applied to the construction of lifts and hoists for mines, buildings in progress, &c., by providing them with contrivances to stop the descent of the load when the suspending rope breaks. The earliest device for this purpose is due to Dr. Hooke, and is described below (p. 416).

A modern patented machine represented in the diagram fig. 355 may serve as a specimen of this class of frictional apparatus.

AB, *AB*, are posts between which the case or vessel *C*, which contains the load or persons, is guided. A cross-head *d f* is attached to the case by bars *de*, *fg*, and a rod terminated upwards by an eye at *b*, and capable of sliding through the socket in the middle of the cross-head is fixed to a block at its lower end, which block sustains the whole weight of the case *C*. Two levers *h k* jointed to the block at their upper ends and diverging downward, pass through mortises in the suspending bars, as shown in section, and a strong spring *m* connects the block with the top of the case.

Fig. 335.



The rope *ab* supports the weight of the case, which rests upon the block to which the butting levers are jointed. If the rope break, the spring will immediately draw the block downwards, and the butting levers will be compelled to spread outward, and thus to jam their lower extremities against their lateral posts *AB*, *AB*, and thus prevent the farther descent of the case *C*.*

* This example is the arrangement patented as Bunnett's safety apparatus for lifts and hoists, &c.

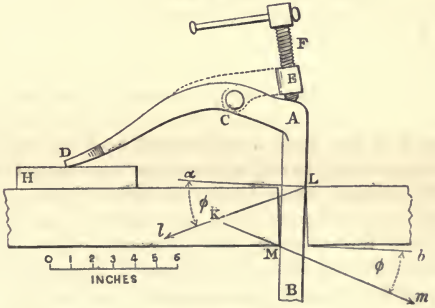
CHAPTER III.

EMPLOYMENT OF JAMMING OR TWISTING FRICTION.

491. ONE of the earliest examples of this class is the carpenter's 'holdfast,' which is an old contrivance, being figured and described in Moxon's 'Mechanick Exercises,' 1677.

This instrument consists of a cylindrical shank *AB* and a beak *AD* of a peculiarly curved form as shown in the figure, which exhibits it with its shank inserted into the cylindrical hole *LM*,

Fig. 336.



bored vertically through the bench. The end *D* of the beak terminates with a flat kind of paw of a circular form, which presses on the upper surface of the work *H* which is to be 'held fast.' I have introduced the dotted lines and the clamping screw at *F*, to show a modern improvement to this instrument which will be described below.

The mode in which this holdfast is enabled to press down the work fast upon the bench is well described in the quaint words of Moxon as follows.

'It performs this office with the knock of an *Hammer* or

Mallet upon the *head* (*A*)* of it; for the *Beak* (*D*) of it being made crooked downwards, the end of the *Beak* falling upon the flat of the *Bench*† keeps the *Holdfast* above the flat of the *Bench,* and the *hole* in the *Bench* the *Shank* is let into being bored straight down and wide enough to let the *Holdfast* play a little, the *Head* of the *Holdfast* being knockt, the point of the *Beak* throws the *Shank* aslope in the *hole* in the *Bench* and presses its back-side (*L*) hard against the edge of the *Hole* on the upper *superficies* of the *Bench,* and its Foreside (*M*) hard against the opposite side of the under superficies of the Bench, and so by the point (*D*) of the *Beak* the *Shank* of the *Holdfast* is wedged between the upper edge (*L*) and its opposite edge of the round hole in the Bench.'

Our author has omitted to mention that the wedging or jamming pressure of the shank in the hole produced by the vertical blow upon the head *A* of the holdfast is immediately unlocked by a horizontal blow upon the back of the head *A,* which drives it in a direction that relieves the pressure at *L*; a blow upwards on the lower end of the shank at B will produce the same effect.

Instead of constructing the beak *AD* in one piece with the shank, it is in the best holdfasts now made separate, in the form shown by the dotted lines at *CEF.* The stem is finished at the top by a short branch *AC,* which is bored traversely at *C,* and split so as to embrace the beak *ED,* which is attached to it by a joint pin *C.*

The end *E* of the beak is cylindrical in form, and furnished with a strong screw *F* having a lever passing through its head.

When the screw is turned so as to make it descend, its lower end pressing upon *A* causes *E* to rise and carry up the joint pin *C,* at the same time pressing *AB* downwards. For as the beak *ED* rests upon *D,* the effect of the motion described is to cause the angle *DEB* to become more acute, and thus to place the stem in the oblique position with respect to the cylindrical hole *LM* which produces the jamming or twisting friction on which the action of the instrument depends, and which in the simple form of the hook was obtained by blows, which are liable to jar or displace the work by their vibrations.

In the improved form the effect results from the quiet steady application of screw pressure; and if the screw *F* be turned in the opposite direction, the jamming friction is unlocked. The forces acting on the shank are the two reactions of the opposite

* The capital letters in parenthesis refer to my figure.

† Query 'the flat of *the work*.'

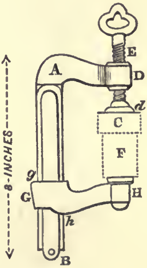
sides of the cylindrical hole at L and M; La, Mb, being the normals to the surfaces in contact at the opposite sides of the shank, and Ll, Mm, the reactions when the shank is at the point of moving upwards, ϕ being the limiting angle. These reactions meet at the point K, and their resultant is a force acting downward.

The reaction at D acts upwards, and forms with the resultant at K, a *couple* of forces in opposite directions, which tend to turn the hook clockwise, and thus to increase the pressure at L and M.

The linear direction of a force applied for the purpose of unlocking the jamming friction at L and M must pass upwards on the opposite side of K from D, or in any direction that will tend to turn the holdfast contrary to that impressed on it by the reaction at D.*

492. The same principle has been applied to screw hammers and to clamps, of which the figure of Weston's patent clamp is an example. It consists of a stem AB (fig. 337) with an arm AD, through the outer extremity of which the clamping screw E is tapped.

Fig. 337.



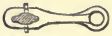


Fig. 338.

The lower or movable arm slides freely on the stem, the section of which is given at fig. 338.

When two pieces C, F have to be clamped together, the clamp is so placed that its pressing washer d rests on the selected part of the piece C. The piece F being then adjusted in position, the lower arm GH is now slid upwards into contact with F, and the clamping screw put in action. Its pressure at H upon the arm GH being opposed by the jamming friction of its socket on the stem at G, which is similar to the friction of the stem of the carpenter's holdfast in the cylindrical hole of the bench, it generates two diagonally opposite points of contact, the one at the lower part of the socket at h, and the upper one at g.

* The Holdfast (*Valet*, Fr.) has been selected as an example in the excellent *Traité des Mécanismes* of M. J. N. Haton Delagoupillière, Paris, 1864, p. 381, and pl. xvi. fig. 256, from which I have extracted the description of the action of the pressures in the above article.

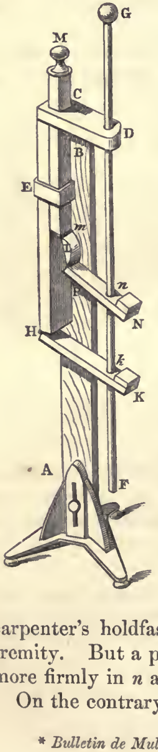
ROD-RATCHET WORK.

493. Fig. 339 is a lecture model by which the principle and action of a ratchet motion invented by M. Saladin of Mulhouse in 1839* can be shown.

The model, fig. 339, is wholly constructed with wood and hinges.

The purpose of it is, to give to a vertical cylindrical rod *GF* an intermittent rising motion, through indefinite steps, the extent of which are only limited by the will of the operator and the dimensions of the machine.

Fig. 339.



The standard *AB* supports the mechanism. The rod is sustained by passing through holes *k*, *n*, and *D*. The latter hole is bored vertically through the bracket *CD*, and is of a magnitude that allows the rod to move through it with ease.

The lower hole *k* is bored transversely through a bar *HK*, which is hinged to the frame at *H*, and has a lump of lead fixed on its extremity *K*. The hole is larger than the diameter of the rod, which therefore passes through it easily. A second bar *PN*, like the last, has a loose hole at *n*, and a lead weight at *N*. But this bar is hinged to a piece *L* which is itself hinged to a vertical bar *Mm*, surmounted by a knob at *M*, which is supported by passing through a square opening at *C* in the upper bracket at *C*, and by a band of metal at *E*. The loaded bars *PN*, *HK* hang in a position which enables them to grasp the round rod as the hole in the carpenter's bench grasps the stem of the holdfast in the last example. If the hand be applied at *G*, and drawn upwards, the rod will rise through the two holes *nk*, as the grasp of the carpenter's holdfast is unlocked by striking it at its lower extremity. But a pressure downwards on *G* will only jam the rod more firmly in *n* and *k*.

On the contrary, when the knob *M* is raised by hand, the bar

* *Bulletin de Mulhouse*, tom. xii, p. 296, 1839, or Delagoupillière, p. 302.

PN will retain its grasp and raise the rod, and the latter will rise easily through the hole at k, because the rod itself is drawn through the lower hole k in the direction which unlocks the jam.

Thus by raising and depressing the knob M through distances varying at pleasure, these motions are communicated to the bar, which thus rises by unequal steps.

To lower it it is only necessary to raise by hand the outer ends N, K, of the bars PN, HK, which will thus loosen their grasp and the bar will descend.

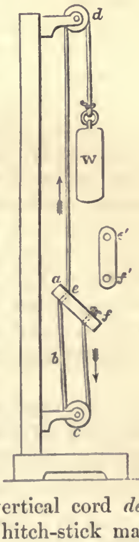
The upper bar PN manifestly corresponds to the click, and the lower HK to the detent of ordinary ratchet-work.

The intermediate piece L is necessary to allow the bar PN freedom of motion, to enable the hole at n to ensure its grasp on the rod.

494. Another example of the employment of diagonal jamming is supplied by the so-called 'hitch-stick,' universally employed for adjusting the tension of tent-ropes.

Fig. 340 shows my lecture model for exhibiting its properties, the arrangement of which was suggested to me by a figure in the excellent 'Traité de Charpenterie' of Emy (1841).* He terms it 'Amarrage variable.'

Fig. 340.



It is shown in the act of sustaining a weight W, which by the property of the contrivance can be easily fixed at any height from the base of the machine.

The hitch-stick is a piece of wood $e'f'$, with two holes bored through it near its extremities. The cord which is to sustain the weight has a knot at its end f, and is passed through the hole f in the stick, thence under the lower pully C and through the other hole e and over the upper pully d to the weight W. The tension thus given to the string acts upwards through the hole a and by means of the pully downwards upon the knot f. Thus the outer end of the stick is pulled downwards and exerts a twisting or jamming grip upon the diagonally opposite ends of the hole e, as in the carpenter's holdfast, which fixes the weight at the desired height.

But if the hitch-stick is brought into the horizontal position by depressing its end a, the vertical cord deb will pass through the axis of the hole, and the hitch-stick may

* Tom. ii. p. 593, and fig. 42, pl. 152.

be shifted up or down the rope, thus raising or depressing the weight W to the required position. When the hand is removed from the stick, the upward tension of the rope will enable it to pull down its outer end f, and thus renew the grip on the rope at a.

When this contrivance is employed for tent ropes, a stake is driven obliquely into the ground, and the loop bcf passed over it. The pully C is introduced into the model to enable the action of the contrivance to be shown more conveniently.

495. Dr. Hooke communicated to the Royal Society (July 11, 1683) a 'Contrivance to stop great Weights falling,' of which he exhibited a model which acts upon the principle of the diagonal friction of the shank of the holdfast, or rather that of the grip of the hitch-stick.

His description is printed in Derham's work 'Philosophical Experiments and Observations of the late eminent Dr. Robert Hooke, &c.' (1726), p. 111, accompanied by a coarse woodcut, apparently copied from a rough sketch, as it contains some palpable errors. For the purpose of studying the action of the machine, I constructed a rough model, which enabled me to discover the connections necessary to ensure the success of the contrivance, and subsequently to put it into a form which has provided me with a most amusing and interesting experiment for the lecture room.

"The Experiment" (in Hooke's own quaint words) "was a very plain and easy way, how to stay a weight from falling, when the Rope, or Chain by which it is drawn up or let down, shall chance to break. This was effected by a small Arm extended out from the top of the Weight to the Side, with a Hand or Pipe, at the End thereof, which grasped or inclosed, another Rope or Chain, extended from the Top to the Bottom; which Hand or Pipe was so wide, as to slip freely upon the said Rope so long as the Weight was suspended by its own Rope; but so soon as that in any way fail'd, the Hand grasped the Side Rope fast, and hindered the Weight from descending to the Bottom."

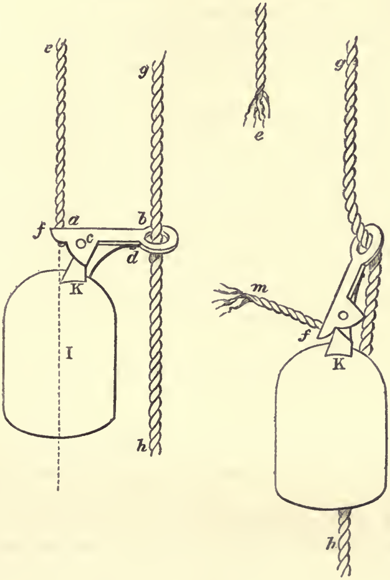
. . . .

"The explicating it by a Scheme* makes it the more intelligible, I represents the Weight, ab the Arm, moving with a joint at c upon the other Part of it k, *fast into the Weight*, ef represents the Rope, by which the Weight is either drawn up or let down,

* Fig. 341 is traced from Hooke's cut, with the corrections necessary to allow the action to take place, as will appear below. Fig. 342 is an additional sketch added by myself to illustrate the result of the fracture of the rope.

fasten'd to the Elbow *f*; by which Means the Wrist, and Hand of the Arm, *is kept at Right Angles with the Part fast in the Weight*, and so the Hand slips freely upon the greater Rope *gh*, extended from the Top to the Bottom, to which the Weight can

Fig. 341. Fig. 342.



descend; *d* represents a spring, by which, so soon as the Rope of the Weight, which holds by the Elbow *f*, fails, the Arm is extended straight; by which the Hand *b*, presently holds fast the Rope, or Chain *gh*, by being made oblique to the Perpendicular, and, so creeking the Rope, and so hinders it from falling; as by the Experiment shewn, plainly appear'd."

Our Author then proceeds to enumerate the applications of this contrivance to clock or chime weights in towers, to the buckets employed in mines for drawing up and letting down men, or ores, stones, and other things, or for men and materials when constructing high buildings.

In Hooke's woodcut the direction of the vertical line *ef* of the suspending rope, which ought manifestly to pass through the center of gravity of the weight when produced, is made to pass considerably to the left of it, which is absurd, and evidently the result of the draughtsman's or wood-engraver's carelessness.

In my construction of the machine, I introduced a change in the articulation of the *arm joint* with the part *K* which is '*fast into the Weight*,' by constructing it with a stop in the hinge, which ensures the horizontal position of the arm, which is essential to the free sliding of the ring *b* upon the safety-rope as it may be termed.

The part *K* fast in the weight, in my diagram is inclined upwards to the right, so as to bring the line of the suspending rope *ef* perpendicularly above the center of gravity of the weight.

The arm *fb* is a lever whose fulcrum is *c*, from which the weight *I* is suspended, and the elbow *f* is sustained in opposition to that weight by the tension of the rope *fe*, and also by the action of the spring *d*, which tends to turn the arm *ab* upwards, in opposition to the upward tension of *fe* upon the short lever arm *cf*. When *ef* breaks, the spring *d* immediately throws up the arm as seen in fig. 342.

496. It often happens that when the knobs of a drawer are grasped to open it, it will after coming out a little way stick fast all of a sudden, and after much pulling and pushing in different directions, will unexpectedly give way suddenly under a desperate effort, and perhaps tumble out, strewing its contents at the feet of the operator.

A drawer rests and slides upon a wooden bar at each end, fixed against the sides of the chest, and is in the same condition as the shank of the holdfast, namely, that its sliding sides are in loose contact with the sides of the chest. If, therefore, the drawer is pulled in a direction parallel to these sides, it will come freely out; but if a twist is given to it, it will immediately be placed in the condition of diagonal jamming, which will be discovered by the front or face of the drawer becoming out of parallelism with the front of the chest, and may be unlocked by judicious pressure at the more prominent end of the face.

It must be remembered that the contents of a drawer are rarely distributed so as to cause the center of gravity of the moving mass to be in the central transverse vertical plane. Hence the pressures which produce the frictions upon the two bars which support the drawer are unequal, and the knobs being at equal distances from the ends, it follows that, supposing the two pulls to be made with equal force, their resultant will be in the central transverse plane, and will thus form with the resultant of the unequal frictions and excentric center of gravity a *couple* of forces, which will cause the small rotation of the drawer which jams it fast.

CHAPTER IV.

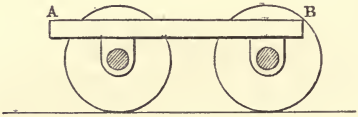
EMPLOYMENT OF FRICTION WHEELS.

497. THE substitution of rolling contact for sliding by the wheels of carriages is a simple and direct application of the three laws of friction already investigated (*vide* Art. 484 above).

Let AB be the frame of a carriage supported on three wheels.

Let R be the radius of the wheel and r of the axles.

Fig. 343.



The machine rests therefore upon three points, and the weight $(= W)$ may be assumed to be equally distributed upon them.

Suppose the wheels to be prevented from revolving on their axles, and let the machine be drawn along the ground through a distance equal to the circumference of the wheel $= \pi R$. The amount of friction $= 3 \times f W \pi R$.

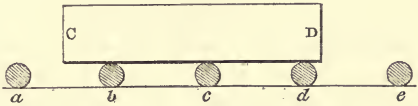
If, however, the wheels are left free to revolve, the rubbing friction is transferred to the contact of the cylindrical axes with their boxes, and the amount of rubbing in each revolution is the length of the circumference of the axle, and $\therefore = 3 f W \pi r$. Thus the ratio of friction of a sledge and a wheel carriage of equal weight drawn through any given distance $= \frac{R}{r}$, and this is increased by the fact that the friction of the sledge on the ground is greater than that of the axles, which admit of lubrication.

That the application of wheels to carriages is of great antiquity is shown by the mention of them in the first books of the Scriptures.

498. Another device to facilitate the conveyance of irregularly-shaped heavy bodies, such as cubical masses of stone intended for buildings, was to enclose the mass in a wooden case of a cylindrical form, so that it could be rolled along the ground by men, or if furnished with pivots at each end, could be drawn by horses. This method is described in the tenth book of Vitruvius, who attributes it to Ctesiphon, but it must in all probability have occurred much earlier.

A more direct and complete substitution of rolling for sliding is commonly employed when heavy packages have to be moved

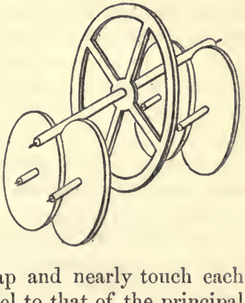
Fig. 344.



from one place to another on flat or inclined ground, by placing long cylindrical rollers beneath the heavy case. As the load is pushed forward the cylinders travel in the same direction, but (as is easy to see) with a velocity of half that of the load, from under and behind which they therefore escape in turn, and are taken up by the assistants and transferred to the front in order.

499. The friction of the shafts or axes of machinery in their bearings may be diminished by the employment of friction wheels, or rather *anti-friction* wheels. These are arranged in the manner shown in the diagram (fig. 345), which represents the wheels of Atwoods' machine, invented about 1780 for the purpose of making experiments on the rectilinear motion of bodies, which are performed by suspending unequal weights to the two ends of a string which is carried over a pully, and observing the times of their descent. As the friction of the axis of the pully might interfere with the results, each extremity of the axis is supported by a pair of wheels or rollers, mounted in a suitable frame, so that their neighbouring surfaces overlap and nearly touch each other. Their axes are short and parallel to that of the principal wheel. Thus by the overlapping of the rollers an angular trough or notch is formed at each end of the machine, by which the long axis of the pully is supported as shown in the figure. When

Fig. 345.



the pully revolves, its axis, pressed into contact with the rollers by the weight of the great wheel and that of its suspended load, causes them to rotate, and thus the sliding friction of the principal axis is transferred to the axes of the friction rollers.

If the principal axis rested in bearings at each end the quantity of friction in each revolution would be measured by the length of the circumference of the axis. But each revolution of the principal axis produces a fraction of a revolution $=\frac{r}{R}$, where R and r are the radii of the friction rollers and their axes.

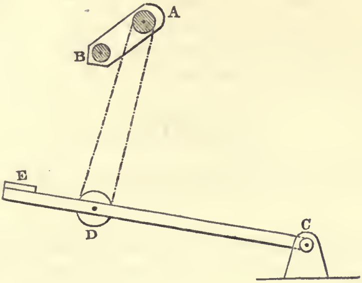
The ends of the principal axis terminate in points which rest against a part of the frame of the friction rollers at each end.

Friction wheels were about the beginning of this century applied to heavy machinery. But it was found that the axes of these wheels were liable to stick fast in their bearings from the accumulation of dust and thick oil. When this happens, the axis of the principal wheel rotating upon the fixed circumference of the friction wheel thus prevented from moving, begins to wear a notch at the point of the circumference upon which it rests, and thus prevents it from revolving. This, and the additional complication caused by the employment of these wheels drove them out of practice, and finally the introduction of cast-iron and machine tools into the construction of mechanism rendered the surfaces of the cylindrical axes so much more perfect in form as to reduce the friction to an amount that was no longer injurious.

500. Mr. Whitworth's chain-link for the treadle of lathes is a remarkable and thoroughly practical application of the principle of substituting rolling contact for sliding, to prevent the wearing out of the surfaces. In the ordinary lathe the axis of the fly-wheel is bent into the crank form, and the link which connects it with the treadle terminates upward in a hook, which is simply kept in its place by the weight of the treadle; but the crank has an angular groove sunk in its circumference to receive and steady the hook laterally. Without great care in oiling and cleaning, the friction of the hook is apt to grind itself and the crank groove, and eventually to break the hook or the axle, which necessitates an expensive repair.

But in Mr. Whitworth's treadle-link the crank AB is provided with a strong cylinder A to receive a broad endless chain of metal constructed on the principle of watch chains. The lower loop of the chain passes over a cylindrical pully roller D which turns on an axis carried by the treadle. Thus the crank-pin and the treadle-pully are connected like two pullies with an endless band. The crank cylinder being in one piece with the axis of the fly-wheel, revolves with it, and the chain rolls upon its surface,

Fig. 346.



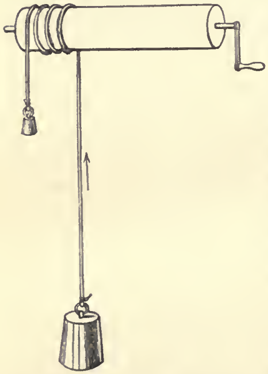
rising and falling with it and with the treadle, of which *C* is the axis and *E* the tread. The grinding friction which destroys the ordinary crank is therefore removed.

CHAPTER V.

EMPLOYMENT OF COIL FRICTION.

501. When a cord is coiled about a cylinder, for example, in the manner of fig. 347, with weights attached to its extremity, the friction of the cord upon the surface increases with great rapidity, and can be shown to be independent of the magnitude of the diameter of the cylinder, and to depend solely on that of the angle embraced. This is best shown by *fixing the cylinder* so as to prevent its rotation, and suspending unequal weights to the two pendent ends of the cord respectively. If the cord be simply passed over the upper surface of the fixed cylinder it will be in contact with the upper half of its circumference, and the tension produced in the cord by the weights will generate friction throughout that portion of its length. If the difference of the weights is greater than this frictional resistance the heavier weight will descend and draw up the smaller one. But if the difference be less than the frictional resistance, the weights will remain at rest.

Fig. 347.



Taking the mean value of friction at one-third of the pressure which generates it, it can be shown that any weight tied to one end will support a weight about three times as great at the other end.

If an additional coil of the cord is taken over the cylinder the small weight will support one twenty-seven times as great, and every additional coil multiplies the friction about nine times (in round numbers), and the half coil three times. For it is manifest that if a cord be coiled round a horizontal cylinder with its ends hanging down, a half coil is necessarily included in the sum of the coils. But if the ends are from the nature of the mechanism supported in a horizontal direction the half coil is not formed. Thus we obtain the following series of multiples of the smaller weight that give the values of the larger weight that correspond to the number of coils.

Coils	Weight Supported
0·5	3
1	9
1·5	27
2	81
2·5	243
3	729
3·5	2187
4	6561

If the small weight be raised slightly by hand the rigidity of the cord will lift the half coil so as to detach it from contact and also diminish the pressure of the remaining coils. Thus the great weight will begin to descend, but the skilful grasp of the hand upon the opposite end of the cord will either instantly renew the contact, or diminish it so as to govern the descent of the great weight, or stop it altogether at the pleasure of the operator. For this purpose cylindrical posts are planted in the ground along the margins of navigable rivers, at quays and other appointed landing places. The free end of a rope, of which the other end is attached to any vessel or boat approaching its landing place, is taken on shore, and by passing two or three turns round one of these posts, this free end can he held fast by a single man until the vessel is securely moored in its proper berth.

In this operation the single man represents the small weight at one end of the coils in fig. 347, and the great weight the vessel.

In the above example we have considered the case of coiling round fixed cylinders. But we must now pass to a cylinder or barrel as it is called which is mounted on a horizontal axis, as in fig. 347.

The ancients were perfectly acquainted with the grasping power of a series of coils, which seems to have been one of the first properties of friction that was introduced into practice. In the early turning lathe of the thirteenth century the material was made to revolve by a cord attached to a spring pole above and a treadle below; the cord being coiled several times round the work. In the sketch book of Wilars de Honecort a coiled cord is employed in several machines to communicate rotation.

Another early application was to the raising of water from deep wells, which was effected by taking three or four coils round a long cylindrical barrel, like our figure, and attaching a bucket to each end. By turning the barrel one bucket descends, reaches the water, and is finally immersed, while the other, already filled, ascends to the top, where it is emptied by the person who is employed to draw water. The barrel is now turned in the reverse direction, the full bucket drawn up to be emptied, and the empty one let down to be filled.

By the property of coil friction the empty bucket will, like the small weight in our figure, enable the coils to grasp the cylindrical surface so firmly as to sustain the full bucket. But the rotation of the barrel causes the cord to wind itself in a spiral direction, so that the group of coils are compelled to travel from one end of the cylinder to the other. The diameter of the well must be of sufficient dimension to allow of this motion being performed without bringing the buckets in contact with the sides of the well alternately.

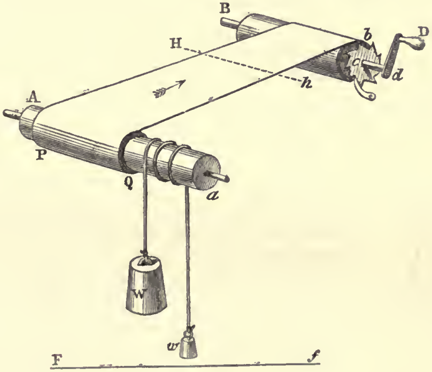
This arrangement may be seen in use for the purpose of drawing up or lowering materials or rubbish when the repairs of sewers or underground works are carried on.

If the small weight be removed and the end of the cord be attached to the frame, the weight W will, by the frictional adherence of the coils to the cylinder, produce a tension in $aw = W$, neglecting the friction of the axis of the cylinder, and the machine will be in the same condition as if both ends of the cord were hanging down with a weight W at each end. But if one end of the cord is attached to the frame and force be applied to the handle of the cylinder which tends to rotate it within the coils, in opposition to the fixed side of the cord, this force, estimated by its moment on the surface of the cylinder, must be greater than the frictional resistance of the coils on that surface. On the other hand, if the force applied to the handle acts in the same direction as the tension of the fixed side, the rigidity of the cord will diminish the pressure of the coils and reduce it to a smooth resistance which prevents acceleration, or running loose, as already explained.

Thus the cylinder is in the condition of a ratchet wheel with an infinite number of very small teeth which admit of rotation in one direction but forbid it in the opposite. This is applied in practice to reels upon which cords or threads are wound. A pully being turned upon one end of the reel, a cord tied to the frame is passed round the pully two or three times and a small weight hung to the end, or a spring applied to keep it tight. This acts as a drag to prevent the wheel from acquiring a too rapid rotation when portions of thread are drawn off from it.

502. This principle is employed in the hand-loom for weaving cloth. The diagram shows the two rollers, or *beams* as they are

Fig. 348.



called, between which the longitudinal threads which are to be knit together into cloth are stretched.

Aa is the warp beam, *Bb* the cloth beam. The weaver is seated in front of the cloth beam. The sheet of warp threads extends about two-thirds of the distance between the beams to the line *Hh*, where the action of the treadles and other machinery receives it to convert it into cloth. When a few inches of cloth have been completed by the weaver it is necessary for him to roll it up on the cloth beam *Bb*, which is provided with a handle *Dd*, and a ratchet wheel *C* and click to retain its tension.

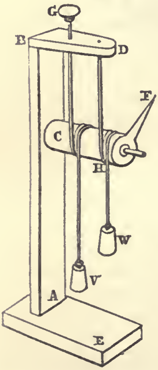
When he turns the handle at D the cloth and warp AE travel in the direction of the arrow, and thus rotation is communicated to the warp beam Aa. This raises the great weight W, and lowers the small weight w, until it touches the floor Ff, when the rigidity of the rope wa acts upwards to slacken the spiral friction coils and thus allow the cylindrical roller to turn within them. When the winding up of the cloth is stopped the great weight W descends through a small space, which is sufficient to renew the grasp of the spiral and also to raise the weight w from the floor.

The tension of the warp is equal to $\overline{W-w} \cdot r$, where r is the radius of the warp beam.

This periodical winding up of the woven portion of the warp is termed *pacing* the web, and the above mode of effecting it is called the *friction pace*.

503. In the combination shown in fig. 349 the cylinder is bored with a smooth hole in the direction of its axis, which enables it to rotate freely on a fixed horizontal axis, which is supported by the vertical post AB attached to a base E. The post sustains a projecting bracket BD, and the cylinder is provided with an index by which its motions are shown when the apparatus is in action.

Fig. 349.



A small cord is fixed to a button G, passed through a hole in the bracket, taken one or more turns round the cylinder, and carried downwards to be attached to a weight V.

A second cord is passed through the hole at D near the front of the bracket, secured by a knot, and carried downwards in the same manner as the former to be taken the same number of turns round the cylinder and attached to an equal weight W.

If we now draw upwards the knob G the coils of its cord embracing the cylinder will cause it to turn on its axis.

We have already seen that the arrangement of the cord DW prevents the cylinder from revolving counter-clockwise, and leaves it free to be turned the reverse way, while on the other hand the motion given by raising and lowering the knob G grasps the cylinder and communicates rotation to it. As this rotation is in the direction of the clock, when the knob is raised the cord DW serves merely to steady the motion. When the knob is lowered the weight V maintains the tension of the cord GV. But the rigidity of the portion which is pushed downward enables the coils at C to relax and turn about the surface of the cylinder (fixed by the portion DH). Thus we obtain another combination equivalent to ratchet-wheel work in which the angles through which the revolving cylinder or axis are moved are indefinite.

In the capstan of a ship the axis is vertical, and the rope or messenger by which the cable is hauled in is coiled two or three times round it. The capstan is turned in the direction which will cause the group of coils to travel downwards, and when it is thus brought to the bottom of the machine the rotation is stopped and levers or handspikes employed to force or prize up the group of coils. To facilitate this operation the capstan is made of a conical form narrowing upwards. The operation is termed 'surging the messenger.'*

504. But the necessity of interrupting the process when these travelling coils are employed in machinery is completely got rid of by an arrangement which was first suggested by Sir Christopher Wren, and exhibited to the Royal Society on May 5, 1670. The Register of the Society (vol. iv. p. 99) contains a figure of his model and his own account of it, of which I subjoin a copy which I have transcribed *verbatim et literatim*, and a reduced fac-simile of the drawing or 'scheme' as Wren terms it.

"A Description and Scheme. Of D^r Wrens Instrument for Drawing up Great Weights from Deep places." Read May 5, 1670.

"Having considered, that the ways hitherto used in all Engins for winding up Weights by Roaps have been but two, Viz. the fixing one end of a roap upon a cylinder or Barril, and so winding up the whole coyle of roap; the other by having a Chain or a loose roap catching on teeth, as is usual in clocks; but finding withall that both these wayes were inconvenient the first, because of the riding of much roap in winding one turn upon another; the other, because of the wearing out of the Chain or roap upon the teeth, I have, to prevent both these inconveniences, devised another, to make the weight and its counterpoyse bind on the cylinder, which it will doe if it be wound three times about.

"But because it will then in turning, scrue on like a worm, and will need a Cylinder of a very great length, therefore if there be

* This is well described, with an excellent figure, in Lever's *Seamanship*, p. 109.

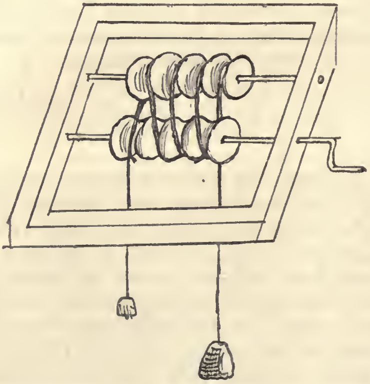
two cylinders, each turned with three notches and the notches be placed alternately, the convex edges to the concave as in the figure here adjoyned, the roap being wound three times about both cylinders, will bind firmly without slyding and work up the weight with a proportionable counterpoyse at the other end of the Roap."

This being thought applicable to clocks Mr. Hooke was ordered to make a trial of it.

This description was copied by Birch (Hist. Roy. Soc., vol. ii. 435), but, as usual with him, translated into modern spelling and in some cases the phraseology interfered with. In one part especially where the original contains the expression '*I have*, to prevent inconvenience, devised, &c.,' which identifies the writer of the description with Wren himself, Birch substitutes the words '*He*, to prevent . . . . devised, &c.' He also omits the figure. Elmes, in his 'Life of Sir Christopher Wren,'* copies Birch.

Fig. 350 is an exact fac-simile of 'The Scheme,' which I have reduced to one half the size (carefully preserving the peculiarities of drawing) of the original, which plainly represents the model

Fig. 350.



that was exhibited to the Society, but is now lost. A square frame,† in a horizontal position, carries two parallel axes, of which one projects outward and is bent into the form of a handle. Each

* P. 274.

† Wren's draughtsman has drawn the junction of the lines of this frame at the two lower angles of the figure carelessly. I have, however, carefully copied the course of his lines in fac-simile.

axis carries a long cylinder with four notches, or rather grooves, turned in it, instead of the three mentioned in the description.

As the arrangement of the cord is not very clearly shown in the original diagram (fig. 350), which omits the parts that are passed under the rollers, I have drawn a restored plan of this model (fig. 351), and a perspective view of the rollers and cord (fig. 352), with slight changes of proportion, and letters of re-

Fig. 351.

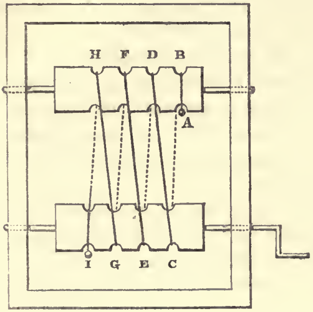
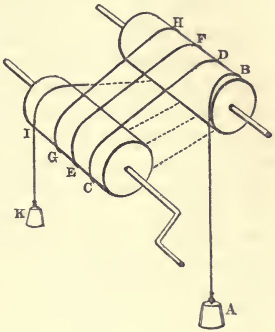


Fig. 352.



ference to facilitate the explanation. In this figure the parts of the cord that pass above the rollers are designated by full black lines, and those that pass below and are omitted in Wren's figure are drawn with intermitted lines. The notches of one roller are placed each opposite to the spaces of the other, and the disposition of the cord is indicated by the order of the letters. *A* is the cord which has the weight which is to be drawn up, tied to it. The course of the cord is over the back roller from *A* to *B*, under the rollers at *BC* and over them at *CD* and so on to *E*, *F*, *G*, over at *GH*, but after passing under *H*, the end of the cord is taken, not under, but over at *I*, whence the end is allowed to hang down vertically, and has a small weight tied to it of sufficient magnitude to keep the cord in contact with the surface of the notch.

By the happy device of two grooved rollers, the two ends of the cord which respectively carry the counterpoise and the load to be raised remain in the same vertical lines during the action of the machine, and the property of frictional adhesion produced by successive coiling is perfectly effectual, for although each coil is received on one side by a semicircular groove and on the other by an opposite and similar groove, the accumulation of frictional resistance is produced precisely as if entire circular grooves were employed.

Thus the increase of diameter in the cylinder produced by the accumulation of successive layers of coiled rope and the travelling motion of the hanging cords are entirely got rid of.

The contrivance has been reproduced several times, as by M. Boulogne in a machine for towing boats, in 1702;* by J. Bernouilli the younger; and by Ludot, both in 1741; and by Mr. Boswell, rewarded by the Society of Arts in 1805, principally with reference to the capstan; and by other inventors. But Sir Christopher Wren's claim has never been mentioned.

Wren applies his contrivance to the raising of weights, but if it is required for producing the back and forward motion of a horizontal sliding carriage, as, for example, a mangle, the horizontal axes of the grooved rollers must be sustained by a frame, which supports their axes in one horizontal plane, above and transverse to the direction of the moving carriage.

The ends of the rope must be brought down and their directions respectively turned to right and left from the vertical plane to that of a horizontal central line in the mid-plane of the carriage, by passing them over guide pullies, so that they can be attached to its two ends.

By turning the handle attached to the axis of one of the grooved rollers, motion is given to the sliding carriage. But this handle requires to be turned alternately to the right and left. But by the intervention of certain contrivances described above (Chap. IV., p. 78), this reversal of direction is dispensed with, and the reciprocation communicated by turning the handle constantly in the same direction.

* *Machines Approuvés*, t. iv.

CHAPTER VI.

SUBSTITUTION OF WINDING COILS FOR RUBBING FRICTION.

505. In 1699 M. Perrault introduced a crane for raising heavy weights, in which the rubbing friction of the axles of pullies was dispensed with.

Figs. 353, 354 represent the model which I have constructed for lectures, and are sufficient to show the principle of the machine.

Fig. 354 is a perspective sketch, and fig. 353 an elevation.

A pully *P*, grooved in its circumference, is fixed to a plain cylinder *Qq*.

Fig. 353.

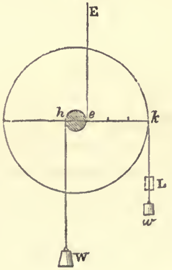
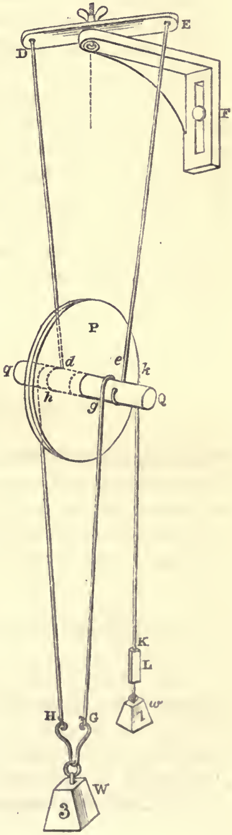


Fig. 354.



A pair of cords *Ee*, *Dd* attached to the right side of the cylinder serve to suspend it from a frame above, which in my model consists of a bar of wood *DE* which is bolted when used to one of the brackets *F* that I habitually employ in my lectures, and the latter attached to a post.

Another pair of cords *hH*, *gG* are fixed to the left side of the cylinder and hooked below to the load which is to be raised, which in the model is represented by a single weight W. The peculiar form of the hook GH is required for the purpose of obtaining two separate suspending eyes at G and H; for if the cords were brought down to a single hook above the weight, the latter would, by increasing the tension of the cords, compel them to twist round each other.

Fig. 353 shows that if the pully be made to rotate clockwise the cords Ee, hH will be simultaneously wound about the cylinder, and also as they are suspended from points D, E, h, g which are wider apart above than below, the winding will be in spirals upon the cylinder, and no superposition will occur.

The weight w is placed in equilibrium by a cord kK coiled about the large pully P as shown in the figures.

Neglecting the weight of the pully and cylinder, it is evident that the parallel cords, of which the middle one eE is fixed at its upper extremity and the outer ones pendent, will hold the cylinder in equilibrium at all altitudes if $W \times he = w.\ ek$. In the figure $\frac{ek}{he} = 3$, and a weight of three pounds balances one, and a small power acting upon w will cause the pully and cylinder with the attached load to mount upwards or descend at the pleasure of the operator. Let the weight of the pully and cylinder $= S$, their center of gravity is in the axis of the cylinder, and if $L =$ the weight that will counterbalance them we have

$$\frac{L}{S} = \frac{eh}{2ek} = \frac{1}{6}.$$

This elegant contrivance is manifestly unsuited to the purpose of a crane for lifting heavy weights. But its quiet and steady action in a model shows that it may be applicable to instruments for the frictionless communication of motion in mechanism which is not exposed to great strains.

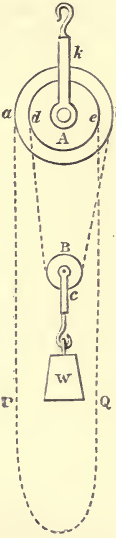
DIFFERENTIAL PULLY FOR RAISING WEIGHTS.

506. This pully is formed in one piece, with two pully grooves turned in its circumference whose radii are $Aa = R$ and $Ab = r$. The pivot or axis of this pully is fixed to it, and the whole sustained by a staple Ak which embraces the pully and receives the axis in its eyes as at A. Let the radius of the pivot $= \rho$.

The load W is suspended from a single pully B.

An endless cord or chain connects the upper pully with the lower pully, and is applied to the pullies in the following order. Beginning at *a* it passes over the large pully to *b*, then downward to *c* under the small pully *B*, then up to *d* and over the small upper pully to *e* and thence hangs down in a loop *PQ*.

Fig. 355.



The load *W* is therefore sustained by the two parts *cb*, *cd* of the endless cord, and is only prevented from running down by the friction of the pivot *A*.

The grasp of a workman's hands at *P* is sufficient to turn the pully. But when the pully is thus turned it will draw the weight upwards on the side *bc*, and let it down on the side *dc*. But as it is drawn up from the side of the larger pully at *b* and let down by the smaller pully at *d*, it is really raised by the difference of these motions.

Let R, r, ρ be the respective radii of the large pully the small pully and the pivot, and $f=$ friction of the pivots in the eyes, we have the moment of friction $= Wf\rho$,

and the action of the weight $W = \frac{W}{2}(R-r)$.

If $\frac{R-r}{\rho}$ be equal to or less than f, the weight W will be supported whatever be its magnitude, but if greater the weight will descend.

But the peculiar convenience of this machine is that any heavy load within the strength of its construction may be hauled up and sustained at any height when the raising force is withdrawn, by applying hands to the rope at *P*, and similarly be let down by pulling at the other side at *Q*. This pully appears to have been invented in 1830 by Mr. Moore of Bristol, an amateur mechanic; the principle is identical with that of the Chinese windlass * (*vide* fig. 281, p. 314 above), but is freed from the inconvenience of requiring a great quantity of rope, which is inseparable from that machine.

The differential pully was afterwards described in Dr. Carpenter's

* 'The Chinese windlass has remained in an incomplete form for ages, like most other Chinese inventions. It is not perhaps generally known, that a windlass of this kind was seen by the Allies to be in use for raising one of the drawbridges of the city of Pekin.' Extract from *The Engineer*, December 2, 1865.

'Mechanical Philosophy &c.,' 1844, and patents taken by Mr. Weston in 1859, and by others, as appears from a law-suit tried in December 1865, and fully reported in 'The Engineer,' p. 409, of that year.

The cord must not be allowed to slide in the pully grooves, and therefore in Weston's construction, chains acting on pins or hollows in the grooves are employed.

PART THE FIFTH.

ON UNIVERSAL JOINTS.

CHAPTER I.

HISTORY AND APPLICATIONS.

507. Dr. Johnson gives seven different definitions of the word 'joint,' of which the second is that which is applicable to mechanism; namely, '*Hinge*; junctures which admit motion of the parts;' or rather, of parts that are connected.

But in scientific language I prefer to employ the term 'lines of flexure' for hinge-joints. Such joints were termed in Old English, gimmals or gimbals. 'The derivation of these words is doubtless from the French *gémeaux* (*gemella*, Lat.), twins; which is applied properly not only to a *hinge* composed of two portions of exactly similar form and size jointed together, but to anything else which is formed of twin pieces of like dimensions united in any manner.' *

The contrivances which bear the name of 'universal joints' have been employed for two different purposes.

First, to connect any object, such as a lamp, mariner's compass, chronometer, or wheel-carriage, with its base or support, in such a manner that when the support is moved into different angular positions the object shall remain parallel to its normal position. The connection must have the property of compelling the two parts, object and base, to preserve one constant point in common, about which their relative motions are performed.

Secondly. As a point of flexure to connect in such a manner, two rods or shafts whose directions meet in a constant point, as to enable one to bend or incline in all aspects with respect to the

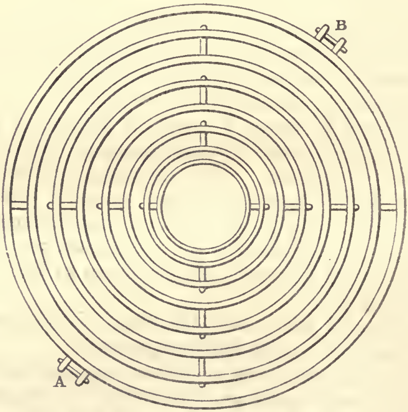
* *Vide Promptorium*, p. 194, by A. Way; published by the Camden Society. London, 1843.

other about this intersection point, but so that a rotation of the one rod about its length, will compel the other also to rotate about its own length.

For the first purpose this contrivance has been used from remote antiquity. In the manuscript sketch-book of Wilars de Honecort, an architect of the thirteenth century,* there is a drawing, and coeval explanatory inscription. Fig. 356 is a reduced fac-simile of the drawing, accompanied by a literal translation of the inscription.†

'*If you desire to make a chauferette (calefactorium) or hand-warmer, you must construct a kind of apple of brass in two halves which fit together, inside the apple place six brazen circles, let each circle have two pivots, and in the middle place a little brazier with two pivots. The pivots must be placed in contrary directions, so*

Fig. 356.



that in all positions the brasier may remain upright, for every circle supports the pivots of the next. If you make this contrivance exactly as the description and drawing shews it, you may turn it about in any way, and the cinders will never fall out. It is excellent for a bishop, for he may boldly assist at high mass, and as long as he holds it in his hands they will be kept warm so long as the fire remains alight. This machine requires no farther explanation.'

* Published at Paris in fac-simile in 1858, with notes, by Lassus, and afterwards by myself in 1859 in London, with many additional comments.

† Plate xvi. p. 54.

It must be remarked that one intermediate ring between the object which is to be kept in a horizontal position, and the outer case which may be inclined in any direction, is sufficient, as will be seen in the next chapter.

The last purpose of this class to which the *gimbals* were employed was in the fifteenth century, for the construction of wheel-carriages that when overturned would nevertheless preserve the body of the vehicle and its occupants in their level position without injury.

It is remarkable that when Hooke was appointed Curator of the Royal Society in 1662, and engaged to supply at every meeting three or four of his own experiments, one of the first things was a Chinese cart with one wheel; and in the next year he showed a scheme of an engine or carriage which goes on one wheel and with one horse, and will not fall but be kept perpendicular, even on the declivity of a hill. In one of these carriages a man was once overturned, and as he afterwards related, 'I knew it not till I lookt up and saw the wheel flat over my head.'

Hooke continued his projects for carriages of this kind in succeeding years, and took a patent for several new-fashioned chariots August 31, 1664.

We may now consider the history of the universal joint in its application to the connection of rods whose directions meet in a point.*

The earliest representation of this connection is to be found in the 'Technica Curiosa' of the Jesuit Schottus, published in 1664, where we find in plate vii. the drawing which I have given in fac-simile (fig. 357). It occurs in the ninth book, entitled 'Mirabilia Chronometrica,' which, as Schottus informs us in the preface, is composed of extracts from an unpublished manuscript entitled 'Chronometria Mechanica Nova,' the work of a writer whom he terms Amicus,† and in a manner which intimates that he was no longer alive.

The universal joint, therefore, as represented in the engraved figure, might have been invented many years before the publi-

* The universal joint is attributed by French writers to Cardan, who lived in the sixteenth century (1501–1575). But the only trace of such a machine that I have been able to discover in his voluminous works (10 vols. folio), is a diagram of three hoops joined to each other in succession by diametral axes, as above described. Cardan tell us, that he saw it in the house of a friend, and is unable to assign a use for it. It appears to me to be a portion of a rolling lamp or brasier, like that of W. de Honecort. (*Op. Cardani*, t. x. p. 488. De Armillarum Instrumento.)

† Pp. 618, 727.

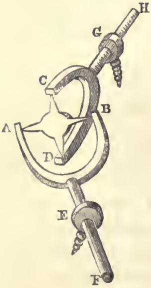
cation of the 'Technica Curiosa,' and not necessarily by this 'Amicus,' whose account of it I subjoin.

'In clock towers it frequently happens that from want of room it is impossible to place the dial in the same part of the building as the wheel-work of the clock. Therefore the motion must be communicated from the mechanism in various directions obliquely, upwards, downwards, or sideways, to the hands of the dial plate.

'This can be effected by means of axes provided with conical (bevel) wheels, but much more simply by the following wonderful device "*paradoxum.*" It must be premised that there is a well-known combination of concentric rings, each one connected to the next by pivots, which is employed for the construction of lamps which can be rolled upon a plane surface without spilling the oil. Our *paradox* is not unlike this, but is rather its twin brother, as the subsequent description and figure will show.'

'*ABCD* is a *cross* consisting of four arms united by a small ball or any convenient connection. The opposite arms *AB*, are inserted in holes at the ends of the prongs of a *fork* (*fuscinula*) *ABF*. The other pair of arms *CD* are similarly received by the *fork* *CDH*, and the forks are supported by fixed rings, *GE*.'

Fig. 357.



'If the extremity *H* of one fork receive rotation from the clock, the other fork, by virtue of the connection described *will necessarily revolve with exactly the same velocity. Therefore if one fork receives a uniform circular motion, the other fork will also be compelled to rotate uniformly.**

I must here observe that this unfortunate remark, which the next chapter will show to be quite contrary to the truth, proves that the writer had not accurately examined the laws of the combination.

But he states truly that the 'prongs of one fork will not strike against those of the other, if the angle made by the axes is greater than a right angle.'

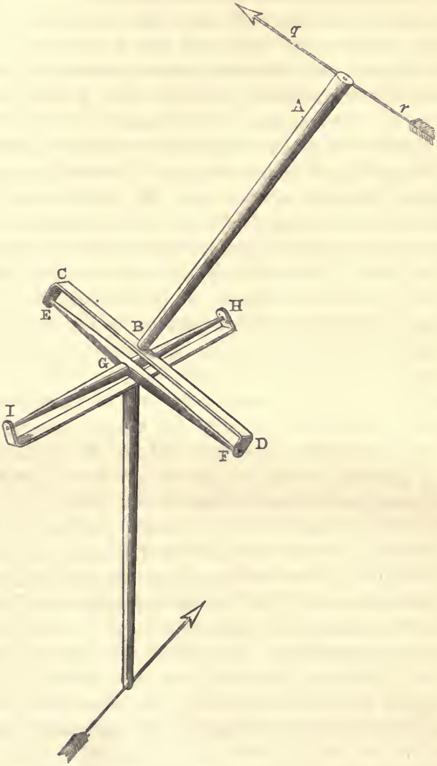
Our author also adds that 'a series of axes may be arranged, each connected to the next by a joint of this kind. These axes may be disposed in a zigzag course, or along the sides of a polygon, or gradually rising in a spiral form against the sides of a

* . . . necesse est sequatur et altera fuscinula parique cum priore illa feratur velocitate; unde si fuerit unius fuscinulæ motus regularis circularis, erit similis et alterius ac omnium quotquot artificio simili connexarum.

polygonal prism so as to convey motion from the bottom to the top of a tower. They may also be disposed in an endless chain.'

Three years after this publication of the joint of Amicus, namely, March 14, 1667, at the meeting of the Royal Society, Mr. Hooke produced a contrivance to make a motion of a clock

Fig. 358.



to go along with the shadow on a wall, for which he offered a demonstration; affirming that the same instrument would be applicable to all planes, to make all sorts of dials, &c. He had previously announced (in November 1663) that he was occupied with the contrivance of a machine to describe all kind of dials, and he now brought in at the next meeting, March 21, 1667, his description of this machine, with a drawing, of which fig. 358 is a reduced fac-simile. The original is in the Register of the Society, from which I traced my copy, preserving all its characteristics with its letters of reference.

The original paper is printed at length in Birch's 'History of the Royal Society,' but with modern spelling.

This instrument is essentially the same in principle as that of Amicus, but the forms of the arms and connecting medium are altogether different, and Hooke's demonstration is derived from the purpose of the machine.* But in his 'Animadversions' in 1674, and in his 'Description of Helioscopes,' 1676, he employs universal joints in which the semicircular form of the branches are the same as those of Amicus, and the medium similarly a disk with four pivots, or a cross as in fig. 359, below. We may suppose that in the interval of six or seven years the work of Schottus must have reached England, and suggested the improved form of his joint. It is difficult to discover from his writings whether Hooke imagined himself to be the inventor of the universal joint, or whether he took it up as a well-known device, and improved the construction to adapt it to his purposes. Amicus affiliates the joint with the gimbals of the rolling lamps, and Hooke, as I have already mentioned, was engaged, from the beginning of his curatorship in 1662, for several years in the contrivance of uninvertible carriages, all of which involved the principle of gimbals, which led him to the first form of his universal joint, as given in the dial machine in 1667.

This is certain, however, that whereas Amicus, in 1664, has told us that the velocity communicated through this joint was uniform, Hooke, on the contrary, shows by his applications and peculiar construction of it that he was thoroughly acquainted, not only with the existence of variations in the velocity ratio, but with their geometrical laws. He, whose life extended from 1635 to 1703, was a complete master of the mathematics of his period; educated at the University of Oxford, and also skilled in practical mechanism, constructing habitually his own contrivances and apparatus.

The favourite subjects of his period were the construction of sun-dials and of quadrants, armillary spheres, and other devices containing graduated arcs and lines for the graphic solution of the problems of spherical trigonometry and dialling.

In the next chapter it will be shown that the relative motion

* *Vide* Art. 511.

of the axes of the universal joint is identical with the relative rotation of the earth to that of the shadow of a style parallel to the earth's axis upon a dial plate in any given position, at any place of the earth's surface.

In July, 1683, sixteen years after the publication of his first form of the universal joint, he communicated to the Royal Society a mode of connecting two axes by a double universal joint, so that the *uniform motion* of the one should produce an *equally uniform* motion in the other, the axes being in any relative positions.

This was effected by an intermediate piece or axis connecting the horizontal axis with the perpendicular or otherwise inclined axis.

He tells us that this intermediate piece must be a double cross (or medium), so formed that the semicircular arms of the intermediate piece between the two axes shall be in the same plane, and that its axis shall lie equally inclined to both the other axes. This property of the combination is simply stated without demonstration, but is easily derived from the velocity ratio of the single Hooke's joint.

After Hooke, no more was published concerning the joint until Gray gave drawings of the single and double joint in his 'Experienced Millwright' in 1804, the former of which was copied by Imison about the same time. Jervas Wright employed a universal joint (with a ring medium) in a machine for sowing wheat and other grain, patented July 30, 1784. 'Repertory of Arts,' vol. xv. 1801.

MM. Bétancourt and Breguet employed it in a telegraphic machine in 1808,* and gave the old formula in the modern fashion of their time, stating also the geometrical property that 'the angles about the axes are those which would be described, starting from the vertical, by two radii, of which one is the orthogonal projection of the other on its own plane of motion.' This, as I have explained below, was shown by the ancient elliptical dialling diagrams.

M. Poncelet demonstrated the same formula by spherical trigonometry, and supplied the differential expressions for the velocity ratio, which had not previously been considered.

MM. Lanz and Bétancourt also introduced the *joint brisé* into their 'Essai sur le Composition des Machines' (O. 8, pl. No. 6), 1808, referring to Schottus, and adding that M. Droz had applied it to a *laminoir* of his invention.

* *Bulletin de la Soc. Philomatique*, No. 16; also Borgnis, *Théorie de la Mécanique nouvelle*, p. 283 (*joint brisé ou universel*), 1821.

In the first edition of the present work I gave many details of this contrivance and its theoretical properties, which had escaped previous notice, and have endeavoured in this second edition to fill up the sketch given in the first.

The *joint brisé* is said by Lanz and Bétancourt to be greatly employed on a large scale in Holland, for changing the inclination of the Archimedean screws turned by windmills for drainage, p. 60.

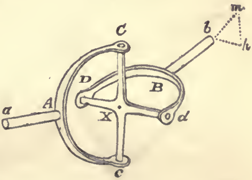
CHAPTER II.

CONSTRUCTIONAL FORMS AND THEORY.

508. In the preceding chapter I have endeavoured to give the history of the 'Universal joint.' In the present I propose to describe its various forms, and to develope the formulæ by which the laws of the motion communicated from one axis to the other are defined.

509. Fig. 359 represents one of the simplest forms of the universal joint for the communication of rotation. But every form of it may be described, in the nomenclature of Hooke, as consisting of five several parts, namely, two *axes* *Aa*, *Bb*, to the respective ends of which are fastened two *arms* *CAc*, *DBd*, which embrace and take hold of the four points or pivots at *C*, *c*, *D*, *d*, of the *medium* *CDcd*. Each of the semicircular arms has two center holes, into which the sharp ends of the medium are put, which center holes Hooke calls the *hands* of the *arms*. The two points *C*, *c* taken hold of by the hands of the driving axis *Aa*, Hooke terms the *points*. The other two points *Dd* taken hold of by the second pair of hands he terms the *pivots*.

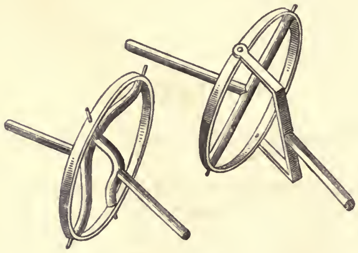
Fig. 359.



He proceeds to insist that 'great care must be had that the pivots and points lie exactly in the same plane, and that each two opposite ones be equally distant from the center, that the middle lines of them cut each other at right angles, and that the axes of the two rods may always cut each other in the center of the medium cross or plate, whatever change may be made in their inclination.

'The shape of this medium may be either a cross (as in fig. 359), whose four ends hath each of them a cylinder, which is the weakest way; or secondly, it may be made of a thick plate of brass, upon the edge of which are fixed four pivots, which serve for the hands of the arms to take hold of (as in fig. 357). This is much better than the former, but hath not that strength and

Fig. 360. Fig. 361.



steadiness that a large Ball hath, which is the way I most approve of, as being strong, steady, and handsome.' The four figs. 360, 361, 362, and 363, are forms employed by myself.

Fig. 362.

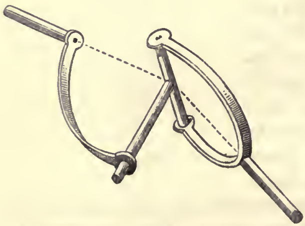
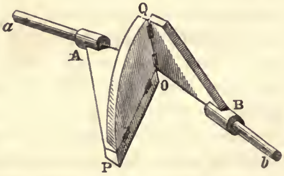


Fig. 363.



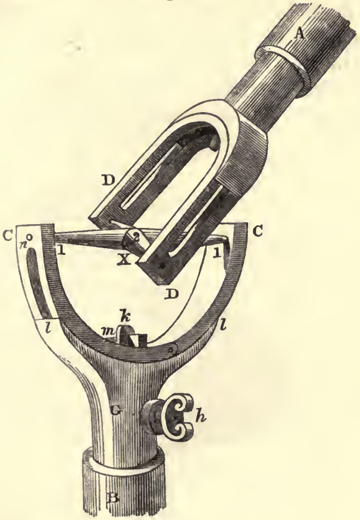
In the last I have substituted thin boards for the arms and medium, hingeing them in the manner shown in the figure, where O is the intersection of the linear axes, Bb, Aa the axes, BOQ, AOQ triangular boards fixed to the axes and connected by a quadrantal board and hinges. The triangular boards correspond to the *arms*, and the quadrantal board to the *medium* of Hooke's nomenclature. But I prefer to term them *radial planes* and *link plane*, of which more above.*

510. Fig. 364 is reduced from Hooke's tab. ii. fig. 10 of his 'Description of Helioscopes,' p. 14, to show his complete form of the joint, when applied to astronomical mechanism. This consists in constructing the arms so as to enable their lines of flexure as

* *Vide* p. 250.

CC to be inclined and fixed at any required angle to the axis of the shaft, the line *CC* always remaining in the plane which contains

Fig. 364.



the axis and arms. This adjustment is required to set the axis 1 1 of the medium cross to the inclination of the sun's declination, 'so that the arms *CC* at the end of the first axis, may by their revolution make the line 1 1 of the cross describe such a cone about the first axis, as the motion of the Sun doth about the axis of the Earth, making the center of the Earth the Apex of that cone, which will be done if the said semicircular arms be moved, and set to the declination of the Sun for that day.' This adjustment is employed, for example, in describing an elliptical dial by the orthographical projection to obtain 'the lines that divide the Ellipsis of either Tropick,'* also when the joint is employed in carrying round the hand of a clock in the shadow of a style perpendicular to its face, when the inclination of the arms is made to vary daily, by the clockwork alone, in correspondence with the sun's declination.†

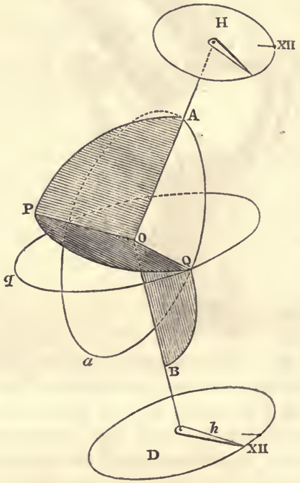
But modern science has entirely banished 'Dialling,' in which the philosophers of Hooke's period revelled, and the only employment of the 'universal joynt' in a modern observatory, is for the at-

* *Helioscopes*, pp. 17, 21 and 16. † P. 20.

tachment of long pendent handles to the adjusting screws of large instruments which would otherwise be inaccessible without ladders; thus employing it as a joint of flexure. It is also used in connecting a series of shafts in machinery, so as to transmit their rotations uniformly from one part of the frame or machine to another, as will be shown below.

511. Hooke's first application of his form (fig. 358 above) of the universal joint was to the construction of a machine to graduate

Fig. 365.



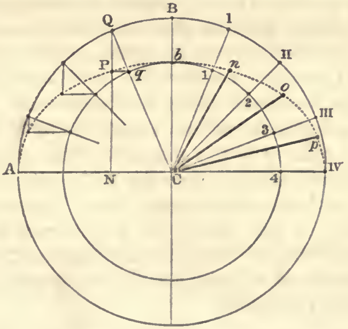
sun-dials, as we have seen, and was founded upon the theorem, that if two axes *AO*, *OB*, that meet at a point *O* are connected by that joint, and mounted in a frame, that is so adjusted in position that one of the axes, *AO*, shall be parallel to the direction of the style of the proposed dial, and that the other, *OB*, shall be perpendicular to the plane *D* of that dial, then if the first be moved by a clock once round in twenty-four hours, the other shall move its index on the plane of the dial to which it is adapted, in the same velocity with the shadow of the sun in that plane. Consequently, to graduate a dial-plate the first axis must have an index travelling over the surface of the twenty-four hour plate *H*, and by setting the index in turn to each of the hours, and at each hour marking the place of the lower index *h* on the blank dial-plate *D*, it will be accurately and easily completed.

In the diagram I have employed my own solid-angular form of the universal joint (Fig. 365 above, and page 249). It is composed of a driving radial plane *AOP* fixed to the horal axis *AO*, a follower radial plane *OQB* fixed to the dial axis *BO*, and a link plane *POQ* connected to the respective radial planes by lines of flexure *OP*, *OQ*. The angles *AOP*, *AOQ*, *POQ* are right angled at *O*. *OQ* is perpendicular to the axis *OB*, and travels in a plane parallel to the dial *D*.

Let the axis *AO* be the edge of the style, therefore the plane *AOQ* produced contains the sun, and *OQ* is the shadow of that edge, and indicates the hour line on the dial. The index *h* which is fixed to the axis *OB*, and travels over the blank dial *D*, is parallel to *OQ*. I have extracted this method of proving the identity of the laws which express the velocity ratio of the two rods connected by the universal joint with the velocity of the shadow of the style over the dial plate, from Hooke's paper 'On an Instrument for Describing all Kind of Plane Dials;' but have translated it into modern English, and illustrated it with a new diagram.

512. Having shown that the velocity ratios of the universal joint are the same as those of the sun-dial, we may employ for the

Fig. 366.



former a simple construction for the delineation of the relative successive angular positions of the horary lines of a sun-dial which was first employed by Clavius in 1581,* for dials whose style was

* *Gnomonices,* 1581. pp. 92, 149. Ferguson reproduced as his own the construction

parallel to the Earth's axis, and next by Foster, 1654, in his 'Elliptical or Azimuthal Horologiography.'

About the center C describe two circles with radii Cb, CB. Divide their circumferences into the same number of equal parts by points B I, II, III, and b 1, 2, 3, &c.

Through the former points draw lines parallel to BC, and through the latter points lines parallel to CN, and let them intersect in the points n, o, p, &c. These points are plainly in the circumference of an ellipse whose major and minor semi-axes are the respective radii of the two circles, for $\frac{QN}{PN}=\frac{QC}{qC}=\frac{BC}{bc}$.

Hence for a sun-dial, if $bC=BC.\frac{\text{sin lat.}}{\text{radius}}$ and the outer circle be divided in twenty-four equal parts, the lines Cb, Cn, Co, will be the hour lines. Also for Hooke's joint by fig. 365. If radii cB, Cn, Co, be drawn to the points on the circumference of the ellipse, they represent the angular positions of the driver's radius which respectively correspond to the positions CB, CI, CII, CIII, of the follower's radius. It is evident that the ellipse and the radii that are directed to its circumference form the orthographical projection of the semicircle and its radii on a plane which intersects the circle on the diameter AN, and makes an angle with it of which bC is the cosine.

Therefore, when Hooke applies this joint to the construction of the dialling machine (p. 441 above) he manifestly shows that he knew the formula, and also that his contemporaries were familiar with it, for when he moves by means of this joint, a quadrant about a vertical axis by clockwork, so as to keep its vertical face in the azimuth of a celestial object, he declares that this motion 'is geometrically and strictly such as it ought to be to keep the Plain of the quadrant exactly in the Azimuth of the celestial object, *as any one ever so little versed in geometry will easily find*; and I shall hereafter more at large demonstrate, when I come to shew what use I have made of this Joynt, for a universal Instrument for Dialling, for equalling of Time, for making the Hand of a Clock move in the shadow of a Style, and for performing a multitude of other Mechanical operations.'

for dialling in the Appendix to his Treatise Lectures; *Select Mechanical Exercises*, 1790, p. 95, as 'A *new* geometrical method of constructing sun-dials;' as he alsodid with the *Dialling cylinder* which had been previously given by Schöner, in 1562. Ferguson also claims the Universal Dialling Cylinder in these words following: 'The best machine I ever contrived is the Eclipsareon, &c. My next best contrivance is the Universal Dialling Cylinder, of which there is a figure on the eighth plate of the Supplement to my *Mechanical Lectures*.'

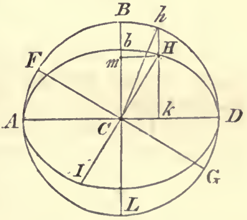
He also employs the joint 'for dividing and describing all manner of Ellipses in any Analemmatical projection, and for making all manner of Elliptical Dials *in Mr. Foster's way*,' plainly alluding to the method given in this article, which I have traced to Clavius. Samuel Foster, who died in 1652, was Professor of Astronomie in Gresham College, when Hooke was made Curator of the Royal Society in 1662. Of this treatise the construction which I have given Fig. 366, is the basis, and is evidently the origin of the expression employed by Hooke, when he says that the motion of one axis is communicated to the other 'according to a proportion which for distinction sake I call *Elliptical* or *Oblique*,' p. 14, 'Description of Helioscopes,' 1676.

In p. 22 he mentions other uses of this 'Joynt, for *drawing Ellipses, drilling* and *boring of bending Holes*, for *turning Elliptical and swashwork*; but has given no details of the actual mechanism which he employed or proposed to employ.

513. The analytical formulæ for the velocity ratios of the Hooke's joint may be directly obtained from the following construction, which is a simplified form of the last.

To find the angular velocity ratio of axes connected by a Hooke's joint. Let C be the intersection of the axes, the circle $ABDL$ that described by the extremities of the driver's arms, the plane of the paper being supposed perpendicular to the driving axis. Let the plane which contains the two axes intersect the paper in BCL, and let the ellipse AbD be the projection of the circle described by the extremities of the follower's arms. If θ be the inclination of one axis to the direction of the other produced, we have

Fig. 367.



$$bC = BC . \cos\theta.$$

Let FCG be that branch of the medium cross which is jointed to the driver; then as this branch is always in the plane of the circle ABD, the projection of the other arm which is jointed to the follower will be perpendicular to it. Draw HCI at right angles to FCG, passing through the center C and terminating at H in the circumference of the ellipse. This will be the projection of that branch of the cross which is jointed to the follower, and H the position of its extremity.

If, therefore, the motion of the driver's branch CG of the cross be reckoned from the position CL, LCG is the angle which it has described in passing to CG, and as the follower's branch of the cross was at the beginning of this motion at CD, CH is the projection of its position when CL has moved to CG, and we have to find the magnitude of the projected angle DCH. Now in the projected circle AbD, all lines parallel to the major axis ACD are unaltered in length by the projection $\therefore$ Hm drawn parallel to CD represents the real magnitude of the sine of the projected angle HCB to the radius CD. Draw through H the line hk perpendicular to CD. Then will BCh be the true value of the projected angle BCH.

Consequently, DCh is the angle through which the follower's branch of the cross, therefore the follower axis, has been moved by the motion of the driver from CL to CG.

As CH is perpendicular to CG the angles LCG, DCH are equal, and $\therefore$ we have total angular motion of $\frac{CL \text{ the driver}}{CD \text{ the follower}} = \frac{DCH}{DCh}\left(=\frac{a}{\beta} \text{ suppose}\right)$.

But Hk, hk are the tangents of these angles to radius Ck

$$\therefore \frac{\tan DCH}{\tan DCh} = \frac{\tan a}{\tan \beta} = \frac{Hk}{hk} = \frac{bC}{BC} = \cos\theta.$$

The above expressions give the entire angles described simultaneously from the common starting point D by the respective axes, and thus also the simultaneous positions of indexes attached to those axes.

To find the velocity ratio of the axes we must differentiate the expression, $\tan a = \cos\theta . \tan\beta$ . . . 1

$$\text{which gives } \frac{da}{d\beta} = \frac{\cos^2 a}{\cos^2\beta} . \cos\theta \quad . \quad 2$$

$$= \cos\theta . \frac{1+\tan^2\beta}{1+\tan^2 a} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 3$$

Eliminating in turn a and β from (3) by means of (1) we obtain,

$$\frac{da}{d\beta} = \frac{\cos\theta}{1-\sin^2\beta . \sin^2\theta} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 4$$

$$= \frac{1-\cos^2 a . \sin^2\theta}{\cos\theta} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 5$$

These give a maximum value ($=\cos\theta$) for the ratio, when $\sin\beta = 0$, which happens when $\beta = 0, \pi, 2\pi$, &c.,

and $\therefore$ $\sin\beta=0$ and (4) becomes $\frac{da}{d\beta}=\cos\theta$.

The minimum value $=\frac{1}{\cos\theta}$ happens when $a=\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{2}$, and therefore $\cos a=0$.

From (3) and (1) we also obtain $\frac{da}{d\beta}=\frac{\cos^2\theta+\tan^2 a}{\cos\theta\,(1+\tan^2 a)}=1$, when the angular velocities are equal.*

$$\therefore \cos^2\theta+\tan^2 a=\cos\theta+\cos\theta\,.\,\tan^2 a.$$

$\cos^2\theta-\cos\theta=\cos\theta\,(\cos\theta-1)=(\cos\theta-1)\,.\,\tan^2 a$ and $\tan^2 a=\cos\theta$.

Again (eliminating a) $\frac{da}{d\beta}=\cos\theta\,.\,\frac{1+\tan^2\beta}{1+\tan^2\beta\cos^2\theta}=1$, at the points when velocities are equal.

$\therefore$ $\tan^2\beta=\frac{1}{\cos\theta}$, consequently the equality of velocities happens when the driving arm has described an arc whose tangent $=\sqrt{\cos\theta}$, and the follower arm one whose tangent is $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\cos\theta}}$, where θ is the inclination of one axis to the direction of the other produced.

The construction of the former demonstration, however, has the advantage of exhibiting graphically the relative positions of the driver and follower by means of the ellipse and circle (fig. 367), where if *HCB* be the angular distance of any given radius *HC* of the driver from its position at the beginning of the motion at *B*, reckoned as above at (1), then will *hCB* be the corresponding angular distance of the radius *hC* of the follower, which coincided with it at starting from *B*.

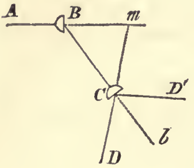
If we follow these radii round the circle, it appears that they coincide at four points *B*, *D*, *L*, and *A*; that at starting from *B*, where the follower's branch of the medium cross is in the plane of the axes, the follower moves slower than the driver at first, and falls behind it, and then accelerates, until it overtakes it at *D*, where the driver's branch is in that plane, beyond which it takes the lead through the next quadrant *DL*, first moving quicker than the driver, and then retarding; so that the driver overtakes it at *L*, and passes it. The motion through *LA* is similar to that through *BD*; and that from *A* to *B* the same as that from *D* to *L*. The amount of retardation and acceleration depends upon the value of θ; and therefore if a single joint be

* Poncelet, *Traité de Mécanique appliquée aux Machines*. Bruxelles, 1845. Art. 74, p. 122.

emp'oyed, the axes must be inclined to each other sufficiently to produce the desired variation of velocity.

514. By means of two joints, however, the axes may be placed parallel or inclined to each other at any angle, and a greater variety of motion be procured.

Fig. 368.



Thus let AB, fig. 368, be the driving axis, and let it be connected to the first following axis BC by a Hooke's joint at B, and let this be similarly jointed to a second axis CD at C. The plane of ABC may be different from that of BCD, so that the axes AB, CD will be neither parallel nor meeting.

First, let the angular motion of the second joint at C be reckoned like that of the first, from the position in which the fork of the follower lies in the plane of the two axes. Then for the motion of the joint B we have, as before,

$$\tan \beta = \frac{\tan a}{\cos \theta};$$

and if γ be the corresponding angles of the axis CD, and $\theta_{,}$ its inclination to BCb,

$$\tan \gamma = \frac{\tan \beta}{\cos \theta_{,}} = \frac{\tan a}{\cos \theta \,.\, \cos \theta_{,}}.$$

If there be a series of similar axes, whose successive mutual inclinations are $\theta, \theta_{,}, \theta_{,,} \ldots \theta_n$, δ the angular distance of a radius of the last corresponding to a,

$$\text{then, } \tan \delta = \frac{\tan a}{\cos \theta \,.\, \cos \theta_{,} \cos \theta_{,,} \ldots \cos \theta_n}.$$

In a system of this kind any desired amount of variation may be obtained, and the last follower may be set at any given angle to the first driver, or even in its own direction produced, by three Hooke joints only.

In the system just described the shafts may lie in different planes, but it is supposed that the joints are all so adjusted that when the following arms of the first joint B lie in the plane ABC of its two axes, that the following arms of every other joint also lie in the plane of their two axes.

Let there be a system of three axes with two joints, as fig. 368, but let the *driving* arms of the second lie in the plane BCD, when the *following* arms of the first lie in the plane ABC, or, which is the same thing, let the first articulating axis B of BC, be in the plane ABC, when the second articulating axis C of BC is in the plane BCD. The angles of the second are therefore now reckoned from a fixed radius distant one quadrant from those of the first.

$$\text{If } \tan \beta = \frac{\tan a}{\cos \theta} \text{ be the equation to the first,}$$

$$\tan \gamma = \frac{\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \beta\right)}{\cos \theta_{,}} \text{ is the equation to the second.}$$

$$\text{But } \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \beta\right) = \frac{1}{\tan \beta};$$

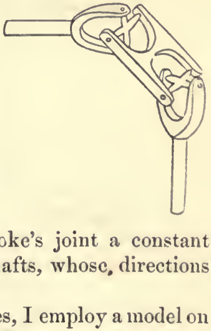
$$\therefore \tan \gamma = \frac{\cos \theta}{\tan a \cdot \cos \theta_{,}}.$$

$$\text{Let } \theta = \theta_{,};\ \therefore \tan \gamma = \frac{1}{\tan a};$$

which shows that if the forks be set as above, and if *the angles of inclination of the axes be equal*, then the variations of motion will counteract each other, and the angular velocity ratio of the extreme axes AB, CD, remain constant.

When the double Hooke's joint is thus employed, it is commonly for this purpose of correcting the varying ratio of angular velocity, and the intermediate piece may therefore be made short, as in fig. 369.

Fig.



If the axes all lie in one plane, the directions of the outer ones meet in a point of that plane, and the setting of the forks is reduced to the simple rule of making those of the intermediate axis in one plane as in the figure.

Care must be taken, however, that the angles which the extreme axes make with the intermediate piece are the same.

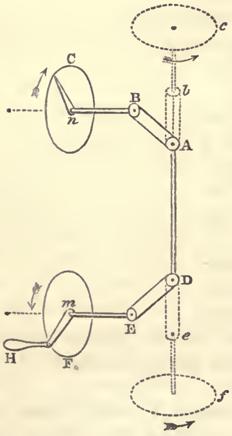
It is thus shown that by this double Hooke's joint a constant velocity ratio is maintained between two shafts, whose, directions are neither parallel nor meeting.

515. For the exhibition of these properties, I employ a model on the plan of the diagram (fig. 368), in which the driving and following axes are mounted independently on bases, which rest upon a board beneath, in which two holes are pierced at a

distance equal to *BC*, for the reception of two screw-bolts with fly nuts, by which the separate bases are fixed to the board. These holes are bored vertically below the points *B* and *C*. Thus the axes *AB*, *DC*, can be set at any required horizontal angles to the direction of the connecting shaft *BC*.

One of the two forks or pairs of arms, as (*B*), which terminates that shaft is fixed to it. The other (*C*) is fitted to it by a collar and binding screw, so that the forks may be set at pleasure in the same plane or in different planes. Each outward extremity, as *A* and *D*, is furnished with a circular dial plate, which is fixed to it, and is simply graduated into quadrants by black radial lines, and each quadrant bisected by a round *red* spot, like the dial in fig. 206, p. 218. These degrees are read off by an index, fixed to each of the pedestals which sustain the axes in such a manner that they project upwards above the circumference of their respective dials. As the apparatus is presented to the spectator in the end-long position, the two dials and indexes are seen simultaneously, and thus it can be shown that when the driving axis and following axis are set at equal angles with the intermediate axis and the forks or arms of the latter in the same plane, the revolving dials will bring their black lines and red spots simultaneously under the respective indexes; but if the forks of the intermediate axis are set so as not to lie in the same plane, the black lines will be brought under the axes simultaneously; but the red spots will exhibit the variations shown in fig. 367 above.

Fig. 370.



516. *To connect two parallel axes so that the rotation of one shall be communicated to the other in the reverse direction.*

Let two parallel axes *Bn*, *Em*, Fig. 370, be mounted in a frame (omitted in the diagram), and their respective extremities *BE* be connected by joint pieces *BA*, *ED* with a shaft *AD*. The joint pieces must be in the form shown in fig. 369. The upper axis is provided at its outward extremity with an index, as at *n*, and the lower also with a handle *H*. By the property of the double Hooke's joint (Art. 514 above), it is shown that when the handle *H* is turned about, the rotation of *mE* will be conveyed by the double joint *ED* to *DA*, and by the double joint *AB* to *Bn*.

But the direction of the rotations of the parallel axes will be opposite, as shown by the arrows, and may be explained as follows. Let the chain of axes be supposed to be laid out in a straight line, as shown by the dotted lines at *fe*, *bc*. If now *ef* be rotated in the direction of the arrow, the whole chain, and therefore *bc* will rotate in the same direction.

Let us now bend *Abc* into its proper position, *b* moves to *B*, *c* to *C*, and the arrow which marks the direction of the rotation will point upwards towards *C* as it pointed towards *c* in the first position.

Similarly when *Def* is bent into the position *DEF*, *f* is carried to the lowest point of the disk at *F*, and the arrow point, which in the straight position pointed horizontally to the right to *f*, is made to point downwards to *F*, which proves the reversion.

Thus we obtain a method of communicating rotation from one axis to a parallel one, so that the direction of rotation is reversed, but the velocity of rotation of the driving arm or handle *Hm* exactly communicated to the follower index *nC*.

CHAPTER III.

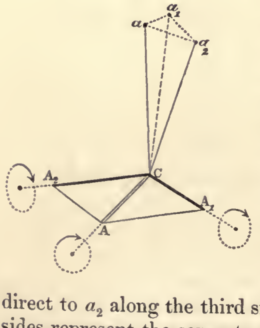
UNIVERSAL FLEXURE-JOINTS AND SWIVEL-JOINTS.

517. We may now proceed to investigate the universal joint considered with respect to its property of connecting the ends of two rods in such a manner that, supposing one to be fixed in position and the other placed so as to coincide with the produced direction of the first, the connection of the ends shall allow the movable rod to be flexed at any angle with the fixed rod and in any given plane which contains that rod.

Manifestly the flexure of the movable rod is performed about an axis of flexure, which passes through the point of intersection of the two rods, and is normal to that given plane. Consequently, we must examine the theory of the composition and resolution of small angular motions about axes which meet in a point, which may be directly demonstrated as follows:

Let CA_1, CA_2 be two axes meeting at C at any given angle, Ca = their common normal at the point of intersection.

Fig. 371.



Let the body rotate about CA_1 through a small angle, by which the normal Ca is carried to Ca_1, and subsequently about CA_2 through a small angle by which Ca_1 is carried to Ca_2. As the angles are small, these motions take place in a plane parallel to the plane which contains the axes CA_1, CA_2.

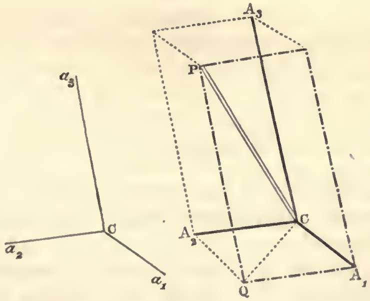
The effect of these successive motions is to place Ca in the same position as if a had been carried direct to a_2 along the third side of the triangle, of which the other sides represent the separate motions. Also the two sides having a common radius Ca are respectively proportional to the angular velocities about CA_1, CA_2 by which they were described, and the third side to the resultant angular velocity. In the plane CA_1A_2 draw CA perpendicular to the plane Caa_2 and A_2A parallel to CA_1.

Now because the lines CA, CA_1, CA_2 are respectively perpendicular in direction to the planes Caa_2, Caa_1, Ca_1a_2, the triangle CA_2A is similar to the small triangle a_2a_1a, and in a parallel plane, therefore, its sides are respectively proportional to the angular velocities described about the axes represented in direction by these lines.

Hence, if two lines radiating from a point represent in direction and magnitude the axes and angular velocities of two small rotations, the diagonal of the parallelogram constructed within the two lines, whose rotations are in the same direction, will represent in direction and magnitude the resultant rotation.

In the above form of the junction of two rods by two axes of flexure, the joint is termed a universal *flexure-joint.* But when a third axis of flexure is introduced which is not contained in the plane of the other two, we obtain a connection of the rods, by which not only transverse bendings in all directions are possible, but also rotations of one rod about the point of connection, after the manner of a ball and socket, as will appear from the following proposition. Such a joint is termed a 'universal *swivel-joint*,' and its theory is the subject of the following article.

Fig. 372.



518. A small rotation about an axis CP in any given position can now be resolved into three component rotations upon three axes meeting in one of its points C, and respectively parallel to three given lines Ca_1, Ca_2, Ca_3, not in the same plane.

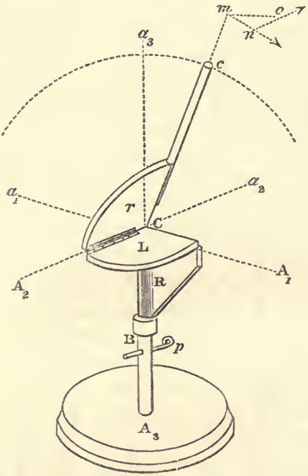
Let the line CP represent the given rotation in direction and magnitude, and let a plane parallel to that of two of the lines, as

Ca_1, Ca_2 pass through C. From P draw PQ parallel to a_3C, and meeting this plane in Q. Join CQ and construct upon it as a diagonal the parallelogram CA_1QA_2, whose sides are respectively parallel to Ca_1, Ca_2.

The rotation CP can now be resolved into CQ, QP, of which the former can be resolved into CA_2, A_2Q,

We thus obtain a parallelopipedon, the diagonal of which representing the rotation in position and magnitude, the component rotations are respectively represented by the edges of the solid.

Fig. 373.



519. Fig 373 represents my apparatus, by which the nature of the resolutions and composition of axes of flexure in general can be readily illustrated.

A circular base has a piece of upright brass tube inserted firmly into its centre. This tube is employed for the support of a combination exactly similar to fig. 363 (p. 446 above), consisting of a rod *Cc* affixed to a quadrantal radial plane *r*, which, by a similar link plane *L*, is connected to a second quadrantal radial plane *R*, the rod of which is inserted into the brass tube, which it fits freely, so as to allow it to revolve steadily when required. But this rotation can be prevented by a wire pin *p* passed through a transverse hole drilled through the tube and rod.

In this condition the upper rod *Cc* can be flexed upon the plane *L* by the hinge CA_2, so as to bring the point *m*, which is in the axis of the rod produced, to the position *n*, so that *mn* is a small arc of a circle contained in a plane perpendicular to the axis CA_2. If now the rod and quadrant *r* be flexed about the axis CA_1, without disturbing the angle mCA_1, the point *n* may be moved through a small arc *no* of a circle, whose radius is a perpendicular dropped upon CA_1. In these motions the extremity *m* travels in the surface of a sphere with radius *Cm*, and the arc *mo* is the arc of a great circle of that sphere, which if described by moving the rod *Cm* directly from *Cm* to *Co*, would cause it to rotate upon an axis passing through *C* and normal to the triangle *Cmo*.

If it be required to rotate the rod *Cc* upon its own axis, that axis not being in the plane of the other two A_1a_1, A_2a_2, we must, by the last article, introduce a third axis CA_3 into the system, by removing the pin *p*, which will leave the cylindrical rod which is fixed to *R*, free to revolve in the tube. Grasp the rod *Cc* in the hand and twist it round without disturbing its inclination, and it will cause the entire system to rotate about the vertical axis. During the motion, the combination will of itself by virtue of its connections resolve the rotation of *Cc* into the three axes, flexing by A_2a_2 and A_1a_1, and rotating CA_3.

520. The joints by which the members of crustaceous animals and insects are united, furnish many beautiful examples of these principles. These formed the subject of a communication made by me to the Philosophical Society of Cambridge in March 1841, of which the following paragraphs give the substance.

Every separate joint in these animals is a hinge-joint very curiously constructed, but of course possessing but a single axis of flexure; these axes, however, are grouped so as to produce compound joints having two or three axes of flexure, and therefore either forming universal flexure-joints, or swivel-joints, in the manner explained in the previous article.*

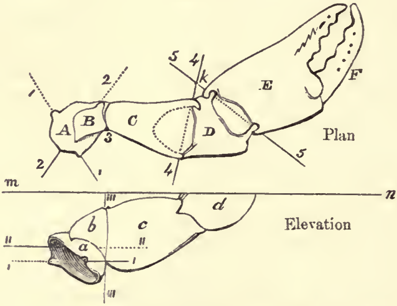
As an example of this we may take the front claw of the common crab, represented in fig. 374. This consists, in fact, of five separate pieces, *A, B, C, D, E,* not including the movable jaw *F* of the actual claw; each piece is jointed to the next by a hinge-joint. But upon our principles the entire limb may be

* In this class of combinations if the axes of the joints pass each other without meeting, it can easily be shown that the moving piece has still the unlimited choice of direction for the resultant axis, and that it will lie somewhere between the component axes.

considered to consist of two principal members C and E; of which the first is jointed to the body of the animal by a universal swivel joint of three axes of flexure, and the second to the first by a flexure joint of two axes, or Hooke's joint.

For the piece C is united to the claw E by means of an intermediate piece D, and the axes of the joints which connect them

Fig. 374.



are shown by the line 5, 5 between E and D, and 4, 4 between D and C. These axes meet in a point k, and therefore by what has preceded, it appears that E moves with respect to C about the point k, and that it is at liberty to turn round any axis of flexure passing through that point and in the plane 5, k, 4. So that this is in fact a natural Hooke's joint. The swivel joint which connects the piece C with the body of the animal is more complex; and to exhibit its arrangement, two projections are given, one upon a plane perpendicular to the other, and intersecting it in the line mn.

We may suppose the claw to be laid down on the table in the upper figure, in which case this becomes the plan and the lower the elevation, although the figures are drawn without any relation to the position of the claw with respect to the body of the animal, but only so as best to exhibit the joints, as will appear presently.

A ring A or a is attached to the body of the animal by a joint whose axis is 1, 1, in the plan, and I, I, in the elevation. This is jointed to a second ring B, or b, by an axis 2, 2, or II, II; and B is jointed to C by a third axis vertical in the plan, whose projection is therefore a point 3. It is shown at III, III, in the elevation. C is therefore connected to the body of the animal by a compound joint of three axes, whose directions nearly meet, but of which no two are parallel, neither are they in three parallel planes, and therefore, by foot note p. 461, *C* is at liberty to move about an axis situated at any angle with respect to the body. The compound joint, in fact, corresponds to the ball and socket joint employed for the shoulder of vertebrate animals. Its motions in different directions are of course limited by the extent of angular motion of which each separate hinge is capable.

The diagram is reduced from a very careful drawing. I found that the axis 2, 2 was as nearly as possible in a plane perpendicular to 3, and that when the ring *A* was placed in its mean position, the axis 1, 1 was also in a plane perpendicular to 3. This determined the choice of the position of the planes of projection.

That of the plan is parallel to the joints 1,1, 2,2, and therefore perpendicular to the joint 3, which thus becomes a point. The plane of the elevation is parallel to the point 3.

As to the joints 4,4, 5,5, the joint 4,4 is in the drawing a little overstrained to allow 5,5 to come into parallelism with the plane of the paper; and 4,4 is also not in reality exactly perpendicular to 3. However, it must be understood that my object here is not to show the relation of the limb to the body of the animal, but merely the principle of arrangement of the joints.

The claw *E* is shown in its extreme outward position with respect to *C*; in its mean position it would be at right angles to the paper; and in the extreme inward position *E* and *C* would come into contact, to allow of which the shape of the intermediate piece and position of the hinges are beautifully adapted.

Thus my series of mechanistic combinations has conducted me to an example from the numerous and marvellous constructions which characterise the machinery of the animated forms, with which the world has been peopled by its Beneficent, All-wise, and Merciful Creator, from the careful and reverent study of whose wondrous works, we derive all our practical science, under His Almighty guidance and protection, which is never withheld from those who humbly ask it, in the spirit of faith and truth.

LONDON: PRINTED BY
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE
AND PARLIAMENT STREET

LIST OF THE PUBLISHED LITERARY AND SCIENTIFIC WORKS OF THE AUTHOR.

Ref. Nos.			Date
1	AN ATTEMPT TO ANALYSE THE AUTOMATON CHESS PLAYER	London	1821
2	ON THE PRESSURE PRODUCED ON A FLAT PLATE WHEN OPPOSED TO A STREAM OF AIR ISSUING FROM AN ORIFICE IN A PLANE. (Cambridge Phil. Trans. Vol. 3.) . .		1828
3	ON THE VOWEL SOUNDS. (Cambridge Phil. Trans. Vol. 3.)		do.
4	ON THE MECHANISM OF THE LARYNX. (Cambridge Phil. Trans. Vol. 3.)		1828–9
5	REMARKS ON THE ARCHITECTURE OF THE MIDDLE AGES, especially of ITALY. 8vo. .	Cambridge	1835
6	ON THE TEETH OF WHEELS. (Trans. of Institute of Civil Engineers.)	London	1838
7	ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE VAULTS OF THE MIDDLE AGES. (Trans. of Institute of British Architects . . . . and Daly, Revue d'Architecture, t. 4)	London Paris	1841
8	ON THE INTERPENETRATION OF THE FLAMBOYANT STYLE. (Trans. of Institute of British Architects.)	London	1841
9	PRINCIPLES OF MECHANISM. 1st Edition. 8vo.	London	1841
10	REPORT ON HEREFORD CATHEDRAL. 8vo. . (And in Engineers' Journal.)	Hereford	1842
11	DESCRIPTION OF THE 'CYMAGRAPH' FOR COPYING MOULDINGS. (Engineers' Journal, July; and Daly, Revue d'Architecture.)		1842
12	ARCHITECTURAL NOMENCLATURE OF THE MIDDLE AGES. (Trans. of Cambridge Antiquarian Society, Vol. 1.)		1843
13	DESCRIPTION OF THE SEXTRY BARN AT ELY. (Trans. of Cambridge Antiquarian Society, Vol. 1.)		do.
14	HISTORY OF THE GREAT SEALS OF ENGLAND. (Archæological Journal, t. 1.)		1845
15	ARCHITECTURAL HISTORY OF CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL. 8vo.		1845
16	ARCHITECTURAL HISTORY OF WINCHESTER CATHEDRAL. (Archæological Journal, 1846.)		
17	ARCHITECTURAL HISTORY OF YORK CATHEDRAL. (Archæological Journal, 1848.)		
18	ARCHITECTURAL HISTORY OF THE CHURCH OF THE HOLY SEPULCHRE AT JERUSALEM*	London	1849
19	PAPERS ON TOOLS AND TOOL HOLDERS, contributed to Holtzapfel's 'Turning and Mechanical Manipulation,' Notes AU—AV, Vol. 2, 1846 . .		1849
20	DESCRIPTION OF THE ANTIENT PLAN OF THE MONASTERY OF ST. GALL. (Archæological Journal.)		1848

* Also included in Williams' Holy City.

LIST OF THE PUBLISHED LITERARY AND SCIENTIFIC WORKS OF THE AUTHOR.

Ref. Nos.			Date
21	APPENDIX B. OF THE REPORT OF COMMISSIONERS APPOINTED TO ENQUIRE INTO THE APPLICATION OF IRON TO RAILWAY STRUCTURES. July 26, 1849, and reprinted in Barlow's 'Treatise on the Strength of Timber,' &c.		1851
22	PARKER'S GLOSSARY OF GOTHIC ARCHITECTURE. 5th Edition, edited with many Additions and Alterations	Oxford	1850
23	A SYSTEM OF APPARATUS FOR LECTURERS ON MECHANICAL PHILOSOPHY. 4to. . .	London	1851
24	A LECTURE ON MACHINES AND TOOLS FOR WORKING IN METAL, WOOD, AND OTHER MATERIALS; being the Eighth of a Series on the Results of the Great Exhibition of 1851, delivered before the Society of Arts, London. 12mo. (Bogue)		1852
25	THE CLASSIFICATION OF MACHINERY IN THE CLASSIFIED LIST OF THE GREAT EXHIBITION OF 1851, and the Report of Jury VI. (*vide* Volume of Jury Reports, p. 194) . . .	London	1853
26	ARCHITECTURAL HISTORY OF CHICHESTER CATHEDRAL. 4to.		1853
27	REPORT ON MACHINERY FOR TEXTILE FABRICS IN THE UNIVERSAL EXHIBITION AT PARIS.		
28	FAC-SIMILE OF THE SKETCH-BOOK OF WILARS DE HONECORT, an Architect of the Thirteenth Century. Translated and Edited, with many additional Articles and Notes. (J. H. Parker) .	London	1859
29	A WESTMINSTER FABRIC ROLL OF 1253. Translated and Illustrated. Published in the Gentleman's Magazine 1860, and in Scott's 'Westminster Abbey'		1860
30	ON FOUNDATIONS DISCOVERED IN LICHFIELD CATHEDRAL. (Archæological Journal.) . .		1860
31	ARCHITECTURAL HISTORY OF WORCESTER CATHEDRAL. (Archæological Journal, Vol. XX.)		
32	THE CRYPT AND CHAPTER-HOUSE OF WORCESTER CATHEDRAL. (Trans. of Institute of British Architects, p. 213.)		1863
33	PRESIDENTIAL ADDRESS TO THE BRITISH ASSOCIATION ON THEIR MEETING AT CAMBRIDGE. (Report for that Year.). . .		1862
34	ARCHITECTURAL HISTORY OF GLASTONBURY ABBEY. 8vo.		1866
35	ARCHITECTURAL HISTORY OF SHERBORNE MINSTER. (Archæological Journal.) . .		
36	ARCHITECTURAL HISTORY OF THE CONVENTUAL BUILDINGS OF THE MONASTERY OF CHRISTCHURCH (the CATHEDRAL) CANTERBURY		1869
37	PRINCIPLES OF MECHANISM. 2nd Edition .		1870